AL ADWAA

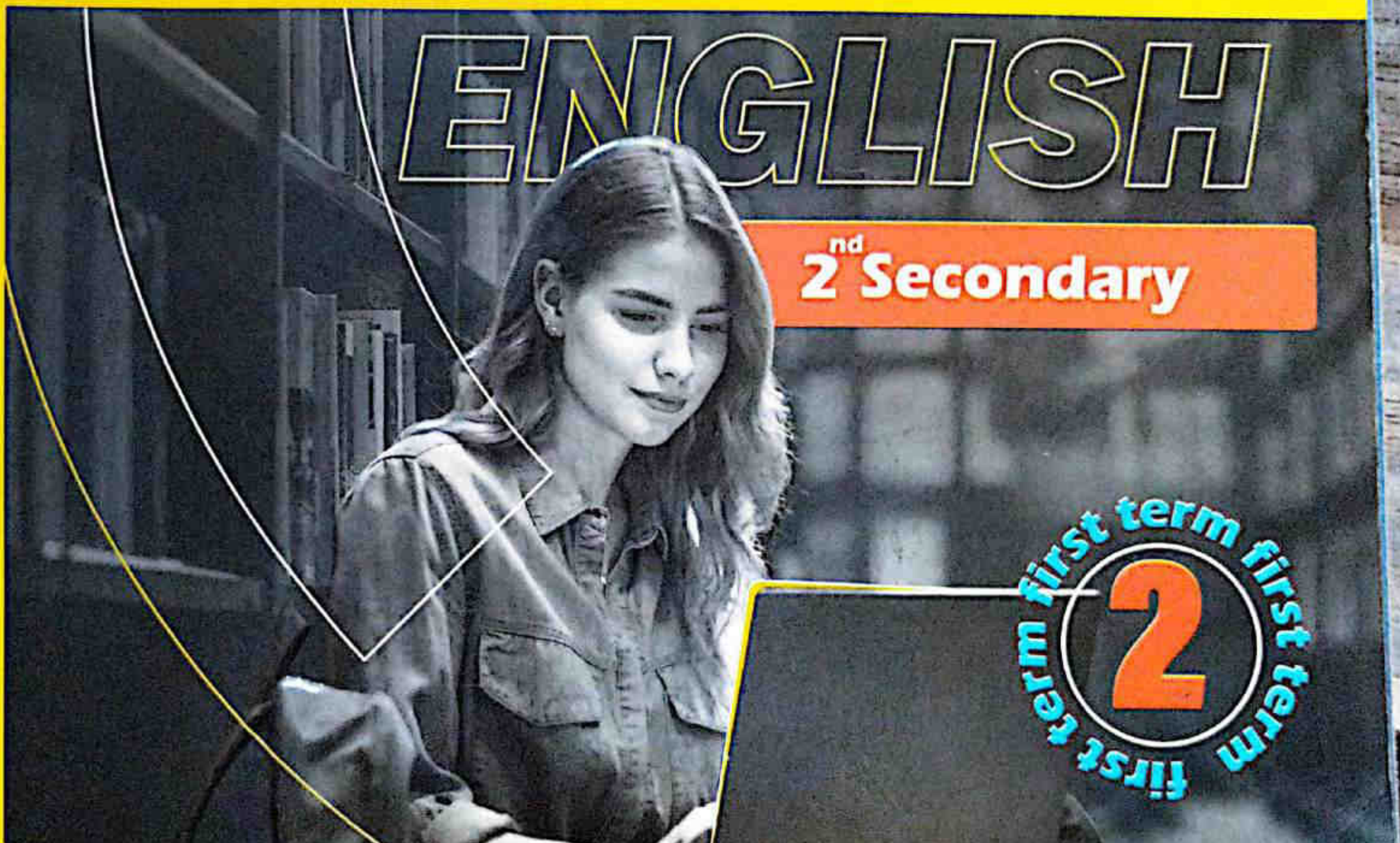
Gem

معاك الكتاب
معاك الـ app

Download
Al-Adwaa App

ENGLISH
ENGLISH
ENGLISH

NEW HELLO! 2023



ENGLISH

2nd Secondary

first term first term first term first term 2

King Lear

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Contents

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ



Unit 1

Staying healthy

Objectives

- **Reading** : A poster about how to perform first aid
- **Writing** : A persuasive email to a friend
- **Listening** : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system
- **Speaking** : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
- **Language** : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
- **Life Skills** : Resilience

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study (Watch a video)

Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Key Vocabulary

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	react (v) (ed)*	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
infection (n)	عدوى	severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب

* My dad didn't react to my request when I asked for extra money.

Vocabulary on Reading

allow (v) (ed)	يسمح	flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ
area (n)	منطقة	immediately (adv)	فورًا
awake (adj)	مستيقظ/واعٍ	injury (n)	إصابة
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	instructions (n)	تعليمات
bleed (v)	ينزف	lock (v) (ed)	يغلق/يحبس
breathing (n)	التنفس	normal (adj)	طبيعى
call (v) (ed)	يتصل/ينادى	place (v) (d) (n)	يضع/مكان
chest (n)	صدر	press (v) (ed)	يضغط
disease (n)	مرض	rise (v)	يرتفع
else (adv)	آخر	sign (n)	علامة
emergency services (n)	خدمات الطوارئ	skill (n)	مهارة
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية	surface (n)	سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشىء)

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
ambulance (n)	عربة الإسعاف	fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
athlete (n)	رياضى (شخص)	handball (n)	كرة اليد
athletic (adj)	رياضى/متعلق بألعاب القوى	heart centre (n)	مركز القلب
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة (أسفل الشىء)	major (adj)	رئيسى
bone (n)	عظم/ عظمة	pioneer (n)	رائد
championship (n)	بطولة	regular (adj)	منتظم
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك	respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة	responsibility (n)	مسئولية
damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف	sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
detail (n)	تفصيل	survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
examination (n)	فحص/اختبار	train (v) (ed)	يدرب/يتدرب
executive director (n)	مدير تنفيذى	trophy (n)	كأس
expert (n)	خبير		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
act (v) (ed)	يتصرف/يمثل	muscle (n)	عضلة
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)	operation (n)	عملية جراحية
blood (n)	دم	performance (n)	أداء
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	prohibition (n)	منع/حظر
gloves (n)	قفازات	pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات	tight (adj)	محكم/مشدود/ضيق
label (n)	ملصق	wrap (v) (ped)	يلف/يغلف

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do an action	يقوم بالتصرف	make sure	يتأكد
perform/do CPR	يجرى عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
do sport	يمارس رياضة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
have/get an infection	يصاب بعدوى	take up a new sport	يهتم بـ / يبدأ رياضة جديدة
care about	يهتم بـ	look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه	reply to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على	rise up	يرتفع لأعلى
lock ... together	يغلق ... معًا	wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
respond to	يستجيب لـ	react with	يتصرف بـ/يتفاعل مع

Read the derivatives well and link them to real life in visual images.

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	عمل/فعل	acting active	قائم بعمل (فعل) نشيط
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	------------------------	
breathe	يتنفس	breath breathing	نفس تنفس	breathy	لاهث/مصحوب بأنفاس مسموعة
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	إرشادى/توجيهى
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform*	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدٍ
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل

* - The team performed very well.
- The performance of the team was very good.
- The performing team was so professional.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/partnership	isolation/disunion عزلة/عدم اتحاد
disease	مرض	illness/sickness	health/well-being صحة
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation/checking	disregard/negligence إهمال
flat	مسطح/مستو	straight/plane	rough/uneven خشن/غير مستقيم
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise/direct	misguide/mislead يسيء التوجيه
immediately	فورًا	instantly/soon	later فيما بعد
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility/sanitation تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound/harm	remedy/cure علاج
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	act/carry out	halt/fail يتوقف/يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress	release/extend يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond	cease/halt يتوقف
responsibility	مسئولية	duty	irresponsibility/distrust عدم مسئولية/عدم ثقة
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme	gentle/mild بسيط/لطيف/معتدل
skill	مهارة	proficiency/craft	incompetence/inability عدم كفاءة/عدم قدرة

Let's check our memory!

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Antibiotics المضادات الحيوية are used to treat the .... in most parts of the body.
   a) injection b) infection c) operation d) reflection
2. Food must be heated to a high temperature to kill harmful ....
   a) plants b) pains c) organs d) bacteria
3. Doctors say that you shouldn't continue to exercise if you suffer from a/an ....
   a) treatment b) break c) injury d) drug
4. Teachers should apply various .... for dealing with weak students.
   a) devices b) techniques c) kits d) jokes
5. The old man's .... stopped suddenly and he was taken to the intensive care unit وحدة الرعاية المركزة.
   a) disease b) temperature c) breathing d) pressure

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text

Did you help an injured person before? How?

HOW TO PERFORM FIRST AID

شديد (1)
ينزف (2)
عدوى (3)
يقوم برد فعل (4)
خدمات الطوارئ (5)
عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى (6)
الصدر (7)
يضغط (8)

1 If you find an ill or injured person, you must check the area around them first to make sure it isn't dangerous. Then move closer to the person and look carefully at him/her. Does he/she seem to be very ill? Does he/she have severe[1] injuries?

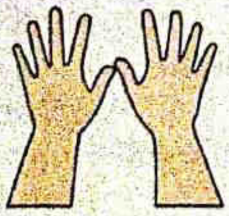
2 If the person is awake but not bleeding[2], you have to ask him/her how he/she feels and what happened. Check his/her body for signs of injury or infection[3]. You don't have to touch the person's body to do this.

3 If the person doesn't reply, touch his/her shoulder or foot and shout to see if he/she reacts[4], and remember to check for normal breathing.

4 If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services[5] immediately (123).

5 If you know how to perform CPR[6], you have to do this to help the person start breathing again. However, you mustn't do CPR unless the person is lying on their back on a flat surface such as the floor.

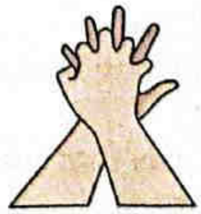
6 Place your hand on the centre of the person's chest[7]. Put your other hand on top of the first hand and lock your fingers together. Make sure that your shoulders are above your hands.



Step 1



Step 2



Step 3

7 You don't have to press[8] down on the person's chest very much – only five to six centimetres. Keep your hands on their chest and allow it to rise up again. You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

Who should you call if a person isn't breathing well?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Do you think healthy athletes must have heart examinations? Why?

Listening Text (1)



Most of us know that we need to stay healthy and many of us enjoy sports. But some young athletes[1] believe that they don't need to worry about heart problems until they get very ill. However, health experts agree that athletes must get a special heart examination[2] before they can be completely sure that they don't have a problem.

For example, in 2006, Mohamed Abdelwahab was an Egyptian footballer from Fayum who seemed to be very healthy. At that time, football clubs didn't have to check their players' hearts, but then Abdelwahab fell down while he was training[3]. Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive[4].

Fortunately[5], Egypt became a pioneer[6] in athletic heart care in 2018 when it established the first Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital.

رياضيون (1)
فحص/اختبار (2)
يتدرب (3)
ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة (4)
لحسن الحظ (5)
رائد (6)
تفصيل (7)
مدير تنفيذى (8)
رئيسى (9)
منافسات (10)
بطولات (11)

It was decided that the AHC had to have the best technology to check every detail[7] of an athlete's heart. And Dr Hazem Khamis, the Hospital Director, has said that the centre will help to protect everyone who enjoys sport in Egypt, and it will work with Liverpool John Moores University to help athletes abroad.

Dr Ahmed Ashraf Eissa, who is the Executive Director[8] of the centre, also believes that anyone who does any kind of sport should check the health of their heart first. For example, the members of the Egyptian national handball team take full tests of their hearts before major[9] competitions[10], such as the World Handball Championships[11].

And now Dr Hazem and Dr Ahmed have published a book together so that everyone can understand the importance of having a healthy heart. It's called Athletic Heart: Between Dreams of a Trophy and Sudden Death. Young athletes, and their families, mustn't miss this chance to learn about the importance of heart examinations to stay fit and healthy.

In your opinion, how can the Athletic Heart Centre in the Middle East in Wadi el Nil Hospital help athletes in Egypt?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Listening Text (2) (Workbook)

يضخ (1)
عضلة (2)
يهتم بـ/يبدأ رياضة (3)
ملصقات (4)

Of course, not everyone will become an athlete or a footballer, but that does not mean we should forget about our hearts. So what should parents do to help their children stay free from heart disease?

Your heart pumps[1] about 380 litres of blood through your body every hour. This is a lot of work. In fact, your heart has to work harder than any other muscle[2] in your body. That is why we need to keep it fit and healthy.

We all need to exercise for 30 minutes every day if we can. We should all get lots of exercise – that means Mum and Dad as well as the children. Try to walk, cycle, swim or play games outside as often as you can. Play together as a family and it will be more fun. If a child decides to take up a new sport[3], send them to visit a doctor to check their heart first. They'll probably be fine, but the doctor will need to do some tests to check.

Eat healthily, too. Show your children that they need to look at the labels[4] before they buy something. They mustn't eat too much of something if it has a lot of salt or fat in it.

Eat well, do lots of exercise and you should have healthy hearts for life!

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most people feel proud when .... from their country do well in the Olympics.
   a) graduates b) athletes c) pioneers d) reporters
2. McDonald's and Pizza Hut are two .... companies in the food industry.
   a) normal b) unimportant c) major d) minor
3. A/An .... is someone who is important in the early development of something, and whose work or ideas are later developed by other people.
   a) employee b) director c) assistant d) pioneer
4. Police officers are investigating the .... death of the famous politician.
   a) sudden b) regular c) exciting d) available
5. We have to .... very hard before taking part in a competition.
   a) gain b) train c) entertain d) complain

Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

CPR — عملية انعاش رئوى قلبى

- breathing air into the mouth of an unconscious person and pressing on their chest to keep them alive by sending air around their body

infection — عدوى

- a disease that affects a particular part of your body and is caused by bacteria or a virus

perform — يقوم بـ/يؤدى

- to do something, especially something difficult or useful

react — يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل

- to behave in a particular way or show a particular emotion because of something that has happened

severe — شديد/خطير

- very bad or very serious

technique — طريقة/أسلوب

- a special way of doing something

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

operation

١- عملية جراحية

٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة

- The famous surgeon has done this operation hundreds of times.
- Connecting the water supply to some villages isn't a simple operation.

process

١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء

٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)

- Birth and ageing may be man's most important natural processes.
- Getting a visa can be a complex process.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2

another آخر (للمفرد)	▸ There's another news programme at ten o'clock.
another + مسافات/كميات/أموال/أوقات	▸ I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days. ▸ I lent my friend another ten pounds.
other + اسم أخرى (للجمع/اسم لا يُعد)	▸ I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas.
the other الأخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)	▸ You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?
others الآخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل)	▸ One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.
else ١- آخر/أيضـًا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ some - any - every - no ولا يأتى بعدها اسم ٢- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)	▸ There's something else I'd like to talk about as well. ▸ I'll give you the report, but don't tell anybody else. ▸ He is awake now, like everyone else. ▸ Who else was at the party yesterday? ▸ What else would you like to buy?

3

sign ١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات ٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)	▸ You must take care of traffic signs while driving on the road. ▸ Do you see any signs of improvement in the patient's condition?
signal ١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون) ٢- إشـارة (ضوئية/صوتيـة) كدليـل أو إعطاء إذن لشيء	▸ The satellite is used for transmitting signals around the world. ▸ The siren was a signal for everyone to leave the building.
landmark علامة بارزة (تميز مكانـًا) مثل برج أو مبنى	▸ The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.

4

athlete رياضـى (شـخص يمـارس رياضـة وخاصـة ألعـاب القـوى)	▸ Athletes are all happy to take part in the Olympic Games.
athletic رياضـى (صفـة لوصـف شـخص أو شـيء رياضـى)	▸ He can play any sport, he's naturally athletic. ▸ School athletic competitions are encouraged to help students live healthily.
athletics ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى) تعامل معاملة المفرد	▸ Athletics is considered the most important competitions in the Olympic Games.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- If the person doesn't reply, touch their shoulder or their foot ....

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر (touch) فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If) ولاحظ أيضًا استخدام ضمير الجمع (their) للإشارة إلى الاسم (person) فى حالة عدم تحديد ما إذا كان مذكرًا أو مؤنثًا.

- If the person isn't breathing, someone must call the emergency services immediately.

- لاحظ استخدام زمن المضارع المستمر (isn't breathing) بدلًا من المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (If).

- You have to do this 100 to 120 times a minute until the person starts breathing again.

- لاحظ استخدام أداة الربط (until) للربط بين جملتين فى زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن تسلسل حدثين.

- Sadly, although the emergency services took him to hospital, Abdelwahab didn't survive.

- يستخدم الظرف عادة لوصف الفعل ويأتى بعده ولكن عند البدء به يكون انطباعًا عن الجملة كلها كما فى (Sadly).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Children need to be taught to have respect for .... people's property.
a) another b) other c) others d) the other

2 There was a big .... above the entrance of the metro station.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

3 We love to watch the Olympic competitions – especially the ....
a) athlete b) athletic c) authentic d) athletics

4 Doctors say that the injured footballer may need a/an .... on his knee.
a) process b) operation c) option d) task

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Practice Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The young lady suffered .... head injuries after the accident and was in the hospital for three months.
a) gentle b) severe c) simple d) normal

2 Ahmed was given a small role in the school play which will be .... at the school theatre.
a) performed b) designed c) made d) reacted

3 Firefighters must be trained well to .... quickly when they hear the alarm.
a) call b) react c) reflect d) allow

4 Psychiatrists say that yoga is a very effective .... for relieving stress of life.
a) objective b) reaction c) technique d) examination

5 The policeman was .... from a wound in his shoulder caused by a gun shot.
a) breathing b) wrapping c) treating d) bleeding

6 You should always read the .... before you start using any new electrical set you buy.
a) constructions b) instructions c) licences d) techniques

7 Several people ignored the no-smoking .... and the police fined يغرم them.
a) mark b) signal c) message d) sign

8 I had an appointment at the dentist's for a routine .... on Monday afternoon.
a) examination b) reaction c) intention d) collaboration

9 The present my sister got for her birthday was beautifully .... in gold paper.
a) wrapped b) locked c) dumped d) removed

10 By midday, the sun had .... high in the sky and it was very hot.
a) risen b) increased c) decreased d) raised

11 Omar's mother did not .... him to take boxing lessons because she believed that this was a dangerous sport.
a) cause b) prohibit c) allow d) educate

12 An .... is a person with a high level of knowledge or skill of a particular subject or activity.
a) export b) explorer c) employer d) expert

13 Anything you share on your Facebook page is shown shortly afterwards to everyone ....
a) other b) else c) another d) others

14 The manager took full .... for the company's great losses and resigned.
a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

15 My friend was given .... by a doctor, which I think saved his life.
a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

16 The audience was clearly delighted with the .... of the actors.
a) perform b) performance c) performer d) performative

17 I'm busy now; I'll phone you again later. The word "later" is an antonym of the word "..................".
a) immediately b) regularly c) gradually d) latter

18 Factories and building companies must provide safety equipment and .... sure it is used carefully.
a) do b) make c) design d) devise

19 Husbands and wives usually disagree .... the best way to spend their money.
a) about b) to c) with d) for

20 The young actress usually replies immediately .... comments on her posts.
a) at b) for c) about d) to

21 Many young women stop .... sports when they get married.
a) going b) letting c) doing d) making

22 To .... healthy, you should exercise at least three times a week.
a) design b) avoid c) stay d) remove

23 The officer died of his gunshot wounds. The word "wound" can be replaced by the word "..................".
a) bruise b) injury c) scare d) trial

24 The medical company announced that the research for the new vaccine was done in .... with the University of Oxford.
a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) elaboration

25 During pandemics, governments have to force people to stay home to stop the spread of the disease ....
a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 He suffered a severe head injury. The synonyms of the word "severe" are .... and ....
a) acute b) easy c) simple d) extreme e) strange

27 A young man pulled the child out of the swimming pool and .... CPR for him saving his life.
a) performed b) made c) did d) applied e) trained

28 The environment authority uses an environmentally friendly .... for treating waste and rubbish from houses.
a) experiment b) result c) technique d) method e) profit

29 Did you .... any new sports when you started high school this year?
a) make b) do c) give d) design e) take up

30 Mary's family .... with horror when they knew about their daughter's accident.
a) refused b) reacted c) pleaded d) responded e) agreed

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

It's highly important to know how and when to use the new grammar.

B Language

Present and past necessity and lack of necessity

التعبير عن الضرورة وعدم الضرورة فى المضارع والماضى

1) Necessity الضرورة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى		Future المستقبل	
must + inf.	It is necessary for ... to + inf.	had + inf.	It was necessary for ... to + inf.	will have to + inf.	It will be necessary for ... to + inf.
have/ has to + inf.					
have/ has got to + inf.		no past			
need/needs to + inf.		needed to + inf.		will need to + inf.	

- It is necessary for us to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
- We must/have to/have got to/need to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
- It was necessary for him to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
- He had to/ needed to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
- It will be necessary for her to book the concert tickets tomorrow.
- She will have to/will need to book the concert tickets tomorrow.

الفرق بين must - have to/has to

لاحظ

• كلاهما يفيد الضرورة والاضطرار لفعل شىء ولكن الاختلاف فيمن يفرض الضرورة.

- تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.

- وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لك اختيار فى فعلها ولا رأى فيها.

- I must call Omar tonight as I promised to phone him.
- I have to wear a uniform at school.

• يمكن استخدام المضارع must/have to للتعبير عن المستقبل.

- They must/have to attend the last session next Friday to get the course certificate.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

• ولبيان الفرق الكامل بينهم يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

have/has to	must
1 شخص آخر يعتقد أنه ضرورى (مفروض من الخارج). ▸ My doctor told me I'm overweight and I have to go on a diet.	يعتقد المتحدث أنه ضرورى (شعور داخلى) . ▸ These pants don't fit me anymore. I must lose weight.
2 تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة، ويمكن استخدامها فى الماضى والمضارع والمستقبل. ▸ She has to take two trains and a bus to get to work every day. ▸ I had to visit my uncle yesterday. ▸ I will have to book the ticket tomorrow.	تستخدم فى المضارع لوصف ضرورة عامة ودائمة أو ضرورة فى المستقبل القريب، وعندما تكون الأوامر رسمية أو عامة فى مستندات أو إشعارات. ▸ When you drive, you must wear a seat belt. ▸ Passengers must keep their bags with them at all times.
3 تستخدم مثل أى فعل عادى فى التصريف مع استخدام has للفاعل المفرد او للضمائر he/she/it وفى السؤال do/does ▸ Does he have to wear a suit to work? ▸ Do I have to bring some forms of ID?	لا تتغير «must» مع الفاعل مفرد او جمع فى الجملة الخبرية أو الاستفهام. ▸ I/He/They must be healthy. ▸ Must I go to the party? I don't really want to. ▸ Must he make so much noise? It's really annoying.
4 فى النفى نضيف doesn't/don't ثم have to ثم المصدر. ▸ She doesn't have to come to the meeting if she doesn't want to. ▸ We don't have to read all these books.	فى النفى نضيف not المختصرة ثم المصدر. ▸ They mustn't use their mobile phones during lessons. ▸ We mustn't stand up while the plane is taking off.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5

تستخدم don't/doesn't have to للشيء غير الضروري وأن الشخص لديه اختيار وغير مضطر لفعله.

- He doesn't have to work on Fridays so he can do what he wants.
- You don't have to pay to visit the Pyramids in Egypt. It's free.

تسـتخدم mustn't فـى النفـى للمنع والحظـر (قوانين) والنصيحة القوية.

- When the traffic lights are red, you mustn't go.
- I mustn't drink any more coffee, otherwise, I won't sleep tonight.

6

تستخدم had to للحديث عن الضرورة فى الماضى.

- Did you have to pay a fine when the police stopped you?
- Did he have to get up early yesterday?
- The doctor told her she had to lose weight.

لا تستخدم must فى الماضى.

- Present simple = must/have to
- Future simple = must/will have to
- Past simple = had to
- Present perfect = have/has had to

have got to

- You can use have got to instead of have to:

- تستخدم have got to بنفس معنى have to

- I've got to work tomorrow. OR I have to work tomorrow.
- When has Hala got to go? OR When does Hala have to go?

Let's check our understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... go to the office very early tomorrow as I have a lot of work to do.

a) need b) had to c) didn't have to d) must

2 Did your brother .... attend the welcome party at the university yesterday?

a) had to b) must c) have to d) has to

3 I missed the train this morning, so I .... go to Alex by bus.

a) has to b) had to c) didn't have to d) must

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2 Lack of Necessity عدم الضرورة

Tense	Structure	Example
Present المضارع	It isn't necessary for ... to + inf.	It isn't necessary for her to go to school by bus.
	don't/ doesn't have to + inf.	She doesn't have to go to school by bus.
	don't/ doesn't need to + inf.	She doesn't need to go to school by bus.
	needn't + inf.	She needn't go to school by bus.
Past الماضى	It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.	It wasn't necessary for them to get up early as it was a holiday.
	didn't have/need to + inf. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله.	They didn't have/need to get up early as it was a holiday. لم يكن واجبًا فلم يستيقظوا.
	needn't have + p.p لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله.	They needn't have got up early as it was a holiday. لم يكن واجبًا ولكنهم استيقظوا.
Future المستقبل	It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.	It won't be necessary for him to walk with a crutch again.
	won't have/need to + inf.	He won't have/need to walk with a crutch again.

didn't have to

- didn't have to + inf. = It wasn't necessary to do something.

لم يكن واجبًا فعل شىء فى الماضى فلم نفعله.

- She didn't have to buy a dress for the party. It wasn't necessary.

needn't have done

- He needn't have done something. = He did it, but now we know that it was not necessary.

- هو لم يكن فى حاجة إلى أن يفعل شيئًا ما = هو فعله ولكن عرفنا الآن أنه كان غير ضرورى.

- Why did he get up at 5 o'clock? He needn't have got up so early. It's a holiday.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

didn't need to

- He didn't need to do something = it was not necessary to do it. It doesn't matter whether he did it or not:

- تعبر didn't need to عن عدم الضرورة فى الماضى، ولا يهم إذا كان فعل الحدث أو لا، وتبين الجملة ذلك، وكلاهما صحيح.

- He didn't need to get up early, so he didn't.

- لم يكن ضروريًا أن يستيقظ مبكرًا؛ لذلك لم يفعل.

- He didn't need to get up early, but it was a beautiful morning, so he did.

- لم يكن ضروريًا أن يستيقظ مبكرًا ولكنه كان صباحًا جميلًا لذلك استيقظ.

3 Prohibition

التحذير/المنع

mustn't/ can't + inf

- It's not permitted
- It's against the law/rules
- It's necessary not
- It's forbidden
- It's prohibited + **to + inf.**
- It's banned

- You mustn't/can't smoke in hospitals.
- It's forbidden/prohibited to smoke in hospitals.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We were travelling around Egypt. We .... our passports.
   a) didn't have to take b) had to take
   c) shouldn't take d) needn't take
2. Sara .... her sunglasses because it was cloudy. She wished she hadn't taken it.
   a) had to take b) needn't have taken
   c) mustn't take d) didn't need to take
3. You .... forget to take your medicine on time.
   a) had to b) don't have to c) have to d) mustn't
4. We've got plenty of time. We .... hurry.
   a) have to b) must c) needn't d) don't need
5. You .... go shopping with us, you can stay at home if you want.
   a) don't have to b) mustn't c) must d) have to

Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Students .... eat or drink during the class. It's not allowed.
a) mustn't b) had to
c) must d) don't have to

2 My mother .... yesterday. My father ordered food from the restaurant.
a) have to cook b) must cook
c) needn't cook d) didn't have to cook

3 My grandfather .... wear a uniform at school. They could wear what they wanted.
a) doesn't have to b) needn't
c) has to d) didn't have to

4 I .... take this book back to the library or I'll pay a fine.
a) mustn't b) have got to c) can't d) need

5 This kitchen equipment wasn't necessary, you .... it. You are wasteful.
a) had to buy b) needn't have bought
c) didn't have to buy d) don't need to buy

6 You .... eat so many sweets. They are bad for you.
a) need to b) have to
c) didn't have to d) mustn't

7 Tomorrow is my day off. I .... get up early.
a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) won't have to

8 My brother .... finish his graduation project yesterday.
a) must b) had to
c) has to d) doesn't have to

9 Children under 5 .... pay for the ticket. It's free.
a) don't have b) had to c) needn't d) will have to

10 It rained heavily yesterday, so I .... water the flowers.
a) didn't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) had to

11 We .... visit our grandmother. She has been ill lately.
a) didn't have to b) needn't
c) must d) don't have to

12 Does he .... arrive at work very early?
a) had to b) has to c) have to d) must

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

13 The school bus broke down, so the pupils .... walk to school.

a) had to b) ought c) must d) would

14 We .... talk to each other because it was an exam.

a) shouldn't b) mustn't

c) don't have to d) weren't allowed to

15 I really .... phone Aya. I promised I'd phone her as soon as I reached home.

a) must b) has to

c) need d) needn't

16 There was a lot of traffic, we .... leave much earlier.

a) needed to b) didn't have to

c) mustn't d) have to

17 She .... home yesterday because her mother was sick.

a) needn't stay b) had to stay

c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

18 You .... phone me at work. We aren't allowed to make personal calls.

a) needn't b) have to c) need to d) mustn't

19 My father will give me a lift to the school, I .... walk to it.

a) mustn't b) have to

c) won't have to d) didn't have to

20 We .... give him our answer today or we will lose the contract.

a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) don't have to

21 The students .... all those notes. All the information is typed for them.

إدارة أسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) needn't have written b) must write

c) have to write d) had to write

22 I really .... buy my mother a present on her birthday.
One should be grateful!

إدارة شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢

a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) needn't

23 You .... worry; you still have a lot of time to answer the other questions.

إدارة القناطر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) need

24 Must we finish this exercise today? No, you ....

إدارة المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) haven't got d) didn't need

25 I .... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.

إدارة الخليفة والمقطم التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) don't have to tidy b) didn't have to tidy

c) had to tidy d) must have tidied

26 Which of the following expresses a lack of necessity?

"She .... cook food today. There is enough food in the fridge."

a) needn't to b) mustn't c) doesn't have to d) has to

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

27 You mustn't park here. It means that ....

a) it is necessary to park here
b) it isn't necessary to park here
c) it's against the law to park here
d) parking isn't forbidden here

28 Which of the following choices gives the same meaning to the following sentence?
"We didn't have to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot."

a) It is necessary for us to wear coats today.
b) We didn't need to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot.
c) We needn't have worn coats yesterday as it was so hot.
d) It wasn't advisable for us to wear coats yesterday.

29 Which of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Yasser needs to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
c) Yasser has got to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
d) Yasser has to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

30 Necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) Osama didn't have to find another job.
b) Osama has got to find another job.
c) Osama doesn't have to find another job.
d) Osama needn't find another job.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 Sorry, I have no time to discuss anything now. I .... be at a meeting at 10 o'clock.

a) may
b) have to
c) must
d) could
e) don't have to

32 It's a smoke-free area. You .... smoke here.

a) mustn't
b) may
c) don't have to
d) can't
e) can

33 .... shout at your boss yesterday.

a) You can't
b) It wasn't necessary for you to
c) You mustn't
d) You needn't
e) You needn't have shouted

34 You .... make me another cup of coffee. I've just had one.

a) don't have to
b) mustn't
c) can't
d) have to
e) needn't

35 Since his mother was ill, he .... prepare the dinner for the family.

a) had to
b) was obliged to
c) didn't have to
d) has to
e) must

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Unit 1

Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Check your vocabulary, grammar, reading and translation skills!

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Some of the passengers suffered .... injuries after the bus accident and needed to have operations.
a) severe b) gentle c) light d) reactive

2 Lifeguards are trained on .... CPR as they save people from drowning.
a) doing b) making c) inventing d) designing

3 My father has a large carpentry .... and he always fixes things at our house.
a) tool b) device c) kit d) trauma

4 We went to a special course to learn how to give first .... to accident victims.
a) help b) aid c) drug d) operation

5 The doctors said that the boy was .... and didn't need medicine.
a) average b) hurt c) common d) normal

6 Children are advised to visit a dentist .... to keep their teeth healthy.
a) gradually b) regularly c) scarcely d) rarely

7 We'll have to wait for .... three weeks for the results.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

8 Mohamed Salah became the first Egyptian footballer to win a major European ....
a) match b) trophy c) reward d) present

9 The room looks tidy. I .... clean it.
a) mustn't b) can't c) didn't have to d) don't have to

10 Ghada .... go to the office. She can do her work from home.
a) doesn't have b) needn't c) has to d) mustn't

11 The employees .... wear formal clothing, but they should look smart.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't

12 You .... drive a car without fastening the seat belt. It's against the law.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

13 According to the company regulations, I .... arrive at work at 8 sharp.
a) need b) can't c) mustn't d) have to

14 I have an important exam tomorrow. I .... study hard for it.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to

15 Does he .... type these letters now?
a) has to b) had to c) must d) have to

16 When a police officer asks to see your driver's license, you .... show it to him/her.
a) didn't have to b) have got to c) has to d) mustn't

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Everyone knows that running is a great way to get into shape, but it also can benefit almost every part of your body and boost[1] your mood. Whether it's your favourite part of the day or something you have to push yourself through, the benefits are undeniable[2].

1. Running improves your health.
2. It prevents disease.
3. You might lose weight.
4. Running boosts your confidence.
5. It relieves stress.
6. Running has the power to eliminate[3] depression

One of the coolest things about the sport of running is that you don't need expensive equipment. All you need is a good pair of running shoes and a safe environment.

No one wakes up and decides to run a marathon without training. Running requires discipline, perseverance[4], and concentration. It's a sport that's good for your body and mind.

Running strengthens your heart, lungs, and muscles. It develops coordination[5] and makes you more aware of your body. Running also gives you energy by increasing your oxygen intake, and it improves your immune system so you don't get sick as easily. It can even help you stay more focused in school because exercise helps you to think more clearly.

Most schools offer cross-country and track programs, but there are also running clubs open to all ages. A simple Internet search can help you find some in your area. The programs show you how running can offer competition or just be for fun. They also teach runners to set realistic[6] goals and take care of their bodies.

If you're looking for more than just a sport, running may be the perfect choice for you.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is the main idea of the fourth paragraph in this article?
 a) Running is one way to keep your body healthy.
 b) You don't need expensive equipment to be a runner.
 c) Running for fun is better than running in a competition.
 d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.

2 What is the author's main purpose for writing this passage?
 a) To give historical information about runners.
 b) To teach readers how to become great runners.
 c) To persuade readers to try running.
 d) To compare and contrast running and watching television.

(1) يعزز/يدفع/ينشط (2) لا يمكن إنكاره (3) يقضي على (4) المثابرة (5) التعاون (6) واقعي

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3 Running strengthens your ....
a) heart, lungs, and muscles
b) hearing
c) hair
d) weakness

4 The words "protects your body from bacteria and disease" refer to ....
a) lungs
b) immune system
c) heart
d) marathon

5 It's required to have .... to practise running.
a) smoking and beverage
b) perseverance and focus
c) leather shoes and a suit
d) money and a vast place

6 Running can benefit the mind as it ....
a) boosts confidence
b) helps people lose weight
c) helps people think clearly
d) keeps you hungry

7 People can find the suitable places for running through ....
a) the newspapers
b) the magazines
c) the internet
d) the school noticeboard

8 The underlined word "discipline" means ....
a) carelessness
b) weakness
c) self-control
d) flexibility

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. A healthy lifestyle has become more important with the spread of new diseases. Healthy food and sport are the most important factors[1] of it.

....

....

2. Egypt was one of the first African countries to provide different vaccines for COVID-19. The Egyptian scientists could even invent a vaccine for the new virus.

....

....

3. Tourism is the second most important source of hard currency[2] in Egypt. It also adds much to our national income[3]. Therefore, the government gives due care to it.

....

....

4. Egypt's youth are renewable energy that must be invested in and benefited from. With their efforts, we can have a great nation and achieve progress in various fields.

....

....

5. The World Health Organisation regards clean water and food as one of the primary rights of human beings. Thus, it calls for fighting pollution.

....

....

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6. Youth[4] are not only the partners of today but also the leaders[5] of tomorrow. Youth are full of energy and enthusiasm[6] to learn, act and achieve.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١ - رغم تخلى كثير من الدول المتقدمة عن الإجراءات الاحترازية[٧] لفيروس كورونا فإن منظمة الصحة العالمية تنصح الدول النامية بالاستمرار فيها بسبب النسبة[٨] القليلة من شعوبها التى أخذت اللقاحات[٩].

....

....

٢ - نفخـر جميعـًا بعلمائنا المتميزيـن[١٠] أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز اللذين قاما بإنجازات[١١] علمية كبيرة سـاهمت فى تقدم البشرية[١٢] فى مجالات عديدة فى كل أنحاء العالم.

....

....

٣ - أصبحـت كرة القدم صناعة كبيرة تجذب[١٣] الكثير من الاسـتثمارات[١٤] وتدر أرباحـًا[١٥] أكثر من العديد من الصناعات الأخرى، كما أنها تلقى اهتمامًا إعلاميًا أكبر من الرياضات الأخرى.

....

....

٤ - الكتاب صديق الإنسـان وهو واحد من أفضل الطرق لاكتسـاب المعرفة[١٦] وإشـباع رغبات المثقفين، لذا يجب تشـجيع الأطفال والشباب على القراءة فى مختلف المجالات.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays."

....

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) عوامل
(2) عملة
(3) دخل
(4) الشباب
(5) قادة
(6) الحماس
(7) precautionary measures
(8) percentage
(9) vaccines
(10) brilliant
(11) achievements
(12) humanity
(13) attract
(14) investment
(15) profits
(16) knowledge

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study (Watch a video)

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

Vocabulary on Reading

brilliant (adj)	بارع/رائع	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
course (n)	مقرر (منهج) تعليمى	reason (n)	سبب
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ	situation (n)	موقف
mistake (n)*	خطأ	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
Olympic (adj)	أوليمبى		

* It is my mistake to give him much money without watching his behaviour.

Vocabulary on Listening

boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	lung (n)	الرئة
brain (n)	المخ	ordinary (adj)	عادى
cell (n)	خلية	organ (n)	عضو فى الجسم
cough (n) (v) (ed)	سعال/كحة/يسعل/يكح	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
cover (v) (ed)	يغطى	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
explanation (n)	شرح/تفسير	separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	spend (v)	يقضى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	virus (n)	فيروس

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
advertisement (n)	إعلان	pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
diet (n)	نظام غذائى	simple (adj)	بسيط
flu (n)	الإنفلونزا	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
label (n) (v) (led)	ملصق/يضع ملصقًا	toy (n)	لعبة (طفل)
microscope (n)	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at any time	فى أى وقت	have the flu	يصاب بالإنفلونزا
do the course	يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا	in the first place	فى المقام الأول
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
get better	يتحسن	sound perfect	يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
complete .... with	يكمل .... بـ	stay up	يسهر
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
interested in	مهتم بـ	think of/about	يفكر فى
get ill	يصاب بمرض	worried about	قلق عن

Special Collocations

become an expert	يصبح خبيرًا	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	take a first aid course	يحصل على دورة فى الإسعافات الأولية

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add*	يضيف	addition additive	إضافة مادة مضافة	additional	إضافى
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفر مناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة داعم	supporting supportive	داعم/مساند داعم

* - He is adding a spoon of sugar.
- This addition is very important to the recipe.
- The additional amount of sugar is enough.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react	misbehave/act up يسىء التصرف
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support	hinder/decrease يعوق/يقلل
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent	ordinary/common عادى
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	advance/enhance	decline/deteriorate يتدهور
persuasive	مقنع	convincing	discouraging/unconvincing مثبط/غير مقنع
pleasure	سعادة/سرور	enjoyment/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن/أسى
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected	connected/combined متصل
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated معقد
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement إعاقة/تثبيط
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily/sadly	fortunately لحسن الحظ

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I tried hard to .... my elder brother to lend me his laptop, but he refused.
   a) persuade b) attack c) order d) assist
2. The presenter always writes notes to .... himself of the important points he will speak about.
   a) remember b) memorise c) remind d) forget
3. It was a great .... to be invited to the important conference in Alexandria Library.
   a) sorrow b) pleasure c) relaxation d) concentration
4. The college runs language .... for all levels, from beginners to professional ones.
   a) games b) courses c) matches d) trips

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Reading Text (1)

Hi, Fares,

How are you?

It's great that some of your friends are going to take a first aid course[1] next week! I really think you should join[2] them because everyone has to know how to do first aid. You never know when someone you know will injure themselves and you'll have to help them. You would want other people to help you too, Right?

I'm sure you would be great at doing first aid because you can think fast[3] and you know how to stay calm[4] in difficult situations. You don't have to become an expert[5], just learn enough so you can help someone until the emergency services arrive. The two-day course your friends want to do sounds perfect.

Talk to you soon!

Mahmoud

(1) منهج تعليمي
(2) ينضم/يلتحق بـ
(3) يفكر بسرعة
(4) يبقى هادئا
(5) يصبح خبيرًا

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The man was arrested and sent to prison as he was the .... behind the robberies.
  a) brains b) reasons c) organs d) causes

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (2) Workbook

Have you ever sent an email? To whom?

To : healthtoday@mail.com

From : shady@mail.com

Dear Health Today,

My cousins, Imad and Munir, are visiting me again for a few days, and it's always a pleasure[1] to see them. Unfortunately[2], because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget how important it is to keep clean and stay healthy. At the moment, many people in my area have the flu[3] and so these things are even more important than usual. What can I do to persuade [4] my cousins to change how they behave? They often come very close to show me things, like photos they have taken on their phones or something funny that they have found. And when they cough[5], they do not cover their mouths. They don't seem to understand why it is so important and it worries me a lot.

(1) سعادة/سرور

(2) لسوء الحظ

(3) الإنفلونزا

(4) يقنع

(5) يسعل/يكح

(6) يُذكر

I'm also worried when I see them come inside because I don't think that they always wash their hands after they have been playing outside, touching things and getting dirty. They will clean their hands when I ask them, but I always have to remind[6] them to do it.

I have heard that young children don't usually get very sick from flu and so they don't give the flu to older people, but I don't know if that is true. Do you think that I am right to worry?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Shady

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What do you think the immune system's main function is?

Listening Text



Our organs[1] are the parts of our bodies that help us to do things, like the brain[2] that thinks, or the heart that sends blood around our bodies. The immune system[3] comes from the cells[4] and organs that work together to protect[5] us from diseases.

The immune system does this by destroying[6] things that get into our bodies like viruses. A virus[7] is a very, very small thing that causes a disease. The disease could be something ordinary[8], like the kind of cold we all get sometimes, or it could be something serious like COVID-19, which first appeared at the end of 2019.

When a virus gets into a part of the body, a message is sent to the immune system. Then the immune system reacts by sending cells to find the virus. Cells are the smallest, separate[9] living things in our bodies and they are small enough to fight against a disease.

Some people's immune systems work better than other people's. We all want our immune systems to be strong so we can stay healthy, so what can we do to help?

أعضاء (1)

مخ (2)

الجهاز المناعى (3)

خلايا (4)

يحمى (5)

تدمير (6)

فيروس (7)

عادى (8)

منفصل (9)

يدعم/يعزز (10)

بانتظام (11)

تغطية (12)

We can boost[10] our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables, especially vegetables with green leaves. We also need to exercise regularly[11]. We don't have to run 50 kilometres every day, but we need to be as active as possible.

We also need to make sure that we get enough sleep. For most people that means at least seven hours every night. Finally, we must do things like washing our hands regularly, which will help us to avoid getting a virus or an infection in the first place.

We also need to do things like covering[12] our mouths when we cough to stop other people getting an infection or virus.

How can we boost our immune system to fight diseases?

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother is the only person who believes in my abilities and always tries to .... me to be better.
   a) join b) add
   c) boost d) discourage

2. Iron is important because we need it to form new blood .... that carry oxygen around the body.
   a) beings b) cells
   c) bones d) races

3. Bacteria and .... are too small for the human eye to see.
   a) viruses b) flies
   c) tissues d) diseases

4. Doctors can now replace a damaged human .... such as the heart and the kidney.
   a) member b) organ
   c) limb d) artery

5. To increase your efficiency at work, it is important to keep work and family life ....
   a) joint b) strange
   c) demolished d) separate

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

Check the answers at the end of the book.



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

boost يدفع/يعزز/يحمس
- to help someone or something improve or get better

cell خلية
- the smallest separate part of a plant or an animal

immune system الجهاز المناعي
- a way that your body protects you from disease

organ عضو
- a part of your body that performs a job, the brain or heart

virus فيروس
- a very small living thing that causes disease

Notes on Vocabulary

Bear in mind that just reading them may help!

1

advertisment إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة	▸ The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.
announcement إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر	▸ The minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

2

spend ينفق (مالًا) على	▸ The young boy spends all his pocket money on buying new video games.
spend يقضى الوقت فى شىء أو أداء شىء	▸ Father doesn't have much free time as he spends his time in his office. ▸ Mrs Reda spent all the day preparing for her daughter's birthday party.

لاحظ أن يأتي (verb + ing) بعد spend.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3	**organ** عضو من أعضاء الجسم	The brain organises the work of other organs in your body.
	member عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كناد أو فريق	To achieve success, everyone must work as a member of a team.
4	**champion** بطل رياضى	Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian champion who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.
	hero بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	The young actor was chosen as the hero of the new series about space.
5	**boost** يعزز/ يزيد (الأرباح أو المبيعات عندما تكون أقل من المطلوب)	Oil exports boosted the economy.
	raise يزيد /يرفع (الأسعار/المعايير/المستويات)	The bank has raised interest rates for the third time this year.
	increase يزيد /يزداد (عددًا أو كمية أو درجة)	We need to increase the number of police officers on the streets.
	expand يوسع /يتسع/ يتمدد	Metals expand when they are heated.

6

two-day course
منهج تعليمى لمدة يومين

لاحظ أن استـخدام كلمة (two-day) فى صيغـة المفرد فى مثل هذه التعبيرات أى اتباعها باسم (course)

وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء.

two-way streets شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين

ten-minute breaks فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- I really think you should join them because ...

- لاحظ عدم استخدام حرف جر بعد الفعل (join) مثل بعض الأفعال الأخرى التى يتضمن معناها حرف الجر مثل (enjoy - admire).

- You never know when someone you know will injure themselves.

- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (themselves) عند الإشارة إلى (someone) رغم أن الفعل بعدها يكون فى صيغة المفرد.

- Unfortunately, because they are both less than seven years old, they sometimes forget .....

- غالبًا ما يستخدم الظرف لوصف الفعل ويأتى بعده ولكن إذا بدأت الجملة بالظرف (Unfortunately) يكون وصفًا للجملة بعده.

- I look forward to hearing from you.

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb + ing) بعد (look forward to).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Al Ahram newspaper is full of .... for cars, especially on Friday.
   a) advertisements b) announcements
   c) advancements d) disappointments
2. You aren't allowed to enter. You are not a/an .... in the club.
   a) part b) individual c) member d) organ
3. My grandfather used to spend most of the afternoon .... to songs by Om Kolthoum.
   a) listen b) listened c) listens d) listening
4. We all wanted to do the .... course to learn about gardening.
   a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
5. The soldiers who fight for their countries should be honoured as real ....
   a) champions b) heroes c) actors d) organs

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

Practise more

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1. The patient's white blood .... count is low, so he/she needs immediate treatment.
   a) organ b) molecule c) cell d) atom
2. The little child inhaled استنشق the smoke and started .... badly.
   a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) smelling
3. All charitable organisations count on the .... of people to help the poor.
   a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement
4. The evidence was not .... enough for the judge to condemn يدين the accused man.
   a) affecting b) supporting c) persuasive d) moving
5. People can fight infection more easily if they have a healthy .... and lifestyle.
   a) order b) right c) fight d) diet
6. The mother was embarrassed because her children .... very badly in the party.
   a) treated b) behaved c) punished d) rewarded
7. Before the plane takes off, the passengers are .... that smoking is not allowed on the plane.
   a) reminded b) remembered c) mentioned d) applauded
8. The .... why I like my job is that I meet all kinds of people.
   a) reason b) explanation c) purpose d) cause
9. The article discusses a number of ways people can .... their immune systems to fight diseases.
   a) increase b) prove c) raise d) boost
10. It would be difficult to .... him to leave his job for a new one.
    a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ
11. The .... which Ola made was not very serious. So, she was not punished by her teacher.
    a) achievement b) course c) favour d) mistake
12. All Egyptian squash champions are sorry that their game is not included in the .... Games.
    a) Athletic b) Olympic c) Advanced d) Competitive
13. I want to .... my English so that I can get a job in the multi-national petroleum company working in Egypt.
    a) increase b) improve c) rise d) train
14. The .... system is the system by which your body protects itself against disease.
    a) digestive b) immune c) respiratory d) nerve

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

15 Everyone was pleased when they heard the .... of the minister about the rise in workers' wages.
a) announcement b) advertisement
c) summary d) option

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

16 Students who aren't hard workers are always worried .... exams.
a) about b) for c) with d) in

17 Mona read the whole research and .... notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

18 Please, read the .... notes at the front of the book. They will help you a lot.
a) explain b) explanation c) explanatory d) explained

19 The manager wouldn't give you the job in the first .... if he didn't think you could do it.
a) place b) location c) position d) area

20 He can only walk with the assistance of crutches عكاز. The word "assistance" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) export b) import c) report d) support

21 You shouldn't try to .... first aid to anyone unless you are trained well.
a) make b) devise c) do d) explore

22 The air hostess asked the passengers not to leave their seats and .... calm.
a) behave b) remind c) sleep d) stay

23 We have made an important .... to our fashion collection recently.
a) add b) addition c) additional d) added

24 The high cost of the drug can hinder its use. The word "hinder" can be the opposite of the word "..................".
a) add b) join c) boost d) separate

25 My parents refused to let me go out because my reasons were not persuasive to them. The synonym of the word "persuasive" is "..................".
a) convincing b) argumentative c) tricky d) discouraging

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 The meal which we had at the new restaurant was delicious and absolutely ....
a) terrible b) perfect c) brilliant d) awful e) strange

27 The company needs to find ways to .... the level of confidence of its staff.
a) boost b) defect c) damage d) improve e) affect

28 Father smiled with pleasure when mother walked in. The antonyms of the word "pleasure" are ....
a) enjoyment b) happiness c) sadness d) delight e) sorrow

29 My little daughter .... ill after eating a bad meal at the restaurant.
a) cured b) did c) became d) got e) made

30 I lay awake in bed for hours thinking .... the trip I am going on the next day.
a) for b) at c) in d) about e) of

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study — Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Necessity/lack of necessity/prohibition (Extra points)

- نستخدم need للضرورة وهى أكثر أدبًا من must أو have to وتُستخدم كفعل أساسى، ويأتى بعدها to ثم المصدر وتأخذ s مع He/ She/ It وفى السؤال تسبق بـ does/do وتستخدم أيضًا كـ modal verb فى السؤال والنفى ليس بعدها to.

need/needs

Main verb

Affirmative الإثبات
- I need to buy the newspaper today.
- He needs to buy the newspaper today.

Negative النفى
- I don't need to buy the newspaper today.
- He doesn't need to buy the newspaper today.

Questions السؤال
- Do you need to buy the newspaper today?
- Does he need to buy the newspaper today?

Model verb

Questions السؤال
- Need I book a room in advance?

Negative النفى
- You needn't give me a lift home.

+ v.ing

Something + need(s) + v.ing
- Your car needs repairing. = needs to be repaired.

must/mustn't

must

Strong advice نصيحة قوية
- You must wash your hands before you eat.

A warm invitation دعوة حارة
- You must come and see us at the weekend.

A strong reminder تذكرة قوية
- We must always remember that tourism is important.

mustn't

Prohibition المنع والحظر والتحريم
- You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 k/h.

A strong negative advice للنصيحة القوية المنفية
- You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Must and have to are equal متساويان

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

نستخدم must أو have to لإبداء الرأى وما نراه ضروريًا أو نوصى شخصًا بفعل شىء.

- It's later than I thought. I must go. / I have to go.
- I haven't spoken to Noha for ages. I must phone her. / I have to phone her. (I say this is necessary).
- Samir is a really nice person. You must meet him. You have to meet him. (I recommend this).

لاحظ

It's a must = It's necessary. تعبير يفيد الضرورة

- You have to prepare yourself well for the next match. It's a must.

Let's check our understanding!

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You .... train harder. The final match is next week.

a) mustn't | b) don't have to
c) must | d) can't

2 You .... waste too much time watching TV.

a) mustn't | b) have to
c) can't | d) must

3 Yasmin .... be careful with what she eats because she has diabetes.

a) needn't | b) could
c) shouldn't | d) needs to

4 You .... take a taxi to the station. I'll give you a lift.

a) mustn't | b) can't
c) needn't | d) had to

5 **Son:** The concert is next week. .... the tickets today?
Mother: Yes, right now.

a) Have I to buy | b) Need I buy
c) Do I must buy | d) Need I to buy

Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

emembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can go with you to the cinema tonight as I .... hand over the homework tomorrow.
a) have to b) should c) don't need to d) had to

2 You .... be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.
a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) must

3 If you want to be a professional player, you .... practise every day.
a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) have to

4 You .... buy that book. You can borrow mine.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) can't

5 You .... speak so loudly on your mobile phone. It's very annoying.
a) needn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't

6 My car didn't start yesterday, so I .... get a bus.
a) have to b) had to c) need to d) must

7 We .... leave now as somebody else needs this room.
a) have got to b) needn't c) don't have to d) can't

8 In some countries, children .... wear school uniforms.
a) has to b) mustn't
c) don't need to d) doesn't need to

9 We .... get ready now. The train leaves in five minutes.
a) needn't b) need to c) don't need to d) shouldn't

10 There's no hurry. You .... finish that report until Friday of next week.
a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

11 You .... walk up the hill because there's a bus.
a) don't have to b) must c) mustn't d) have to

12 Athletes .... get a special heart examination; it is safer to do this.
a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) didn't have to

13 As you've already phoned Mona, I .... her myself.
a) didn't have to phone b) needn't phone
c) mustn't have phoned d) had to phone

14 Yesterday, I .... work for 12 hours to finish the task.
a) had to b) have to c) will have to d) must

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

15 You .... drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.

a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

16 We .... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.

a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) didn't have to

17 **A:** Does Ahmed .... study very much tonight? **B:** No, he doesn't.

a) have to b) must c) has to d) allowed to

18 If you take a sick leave اجازة مرضي for three days, you .... bring in a doctor's note or you won't get paid.

a) have to b) can c) should d) are allowed to

19 The sign says, "No parking". That means you ....

a) shouldn't have to leave your car here b) mustn't to leave your car here
c) cannot leave your car here d) cannot be leaving your car here

20 Do you know if we .... have visas to visit Jordan?

a) don't need b) needn't c) have to d) need

21 We didn't have a test today so I .... for it last night! إدارة غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) needn't revise b) don't need to revise
c) mustn't revise d) needn't have revised

22 I got up early this morning without necessity. I .... الباجور - المنوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) had to get up early b) didn't need get up early
c) needn't have got up early d) needn't get up early

23 You <u>must</u> come to my wedding party. The underlined verb expresses ....

إدارة الفيوم التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) invitation b) suggestion c) offer d) necessity

24 I .... go to a specialist hospital because I had a heart attack. الزقازيق - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢

a) have to b) must c) had to d) didn't have to

25 Teachers .... wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.

إدارة أوسيم التعليمية - الجيزة ٢٠٢٢

a) have to b) don't have to
c) doesn't have to d) has to

26 You have to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock. It has the same meaning as "................".

a) You could see the headteacher at 3 o'clock
b) It's necessary for you to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock
c) You needn't have seen the headteacher at 3 o'clock
d) You aren't allowed to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

27 One of the following expresses a lack of necessity.
You .... go there with me. I can handle it; it's not difficult.

a) must
b) mustn't
c) needn't
d) had better

28 One of the following answers is incorrect.
He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he .... a report.

a) needn't have written
b) was obliged to write
c) had to write
d) needed to write

29 Strong necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) We can't go away! We must help him!
b) You are allowed to borrow more than two books at a time.
c) She needn't buy more oil. There is enough.
d) They didn't have to buy another flat. Theirs was large.

30 You're not supposed to park your car here. ....

a) It's a public parking only
b) It is necessary
c) It is forbidden
d) It is permitted

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 .... immigrate and leave your family alone without a breadwinner عائل?

a) Do you need to
b) Need you
c) Need you to
d) You needn't
e) You need to

32 It's .... for every student to study hard and get high marks.

a) optional
b) forbidden
c) allowed
d) a must
e) necessary

33 "It isn't necessary for us to leave soon." means: we .... soon.

a) didn't need to leave
b) needn't have left
c) don't need to leave
d) needn't leave
e) have to leave

34 The curtains are dirty. They ....

a) mustn't be dry-cleaned
b) have to be dry-cleaned
c) must be dry-cleaned
e) have just been dry-cleaned
d) must have been dry-cleaned

35 .... to see a doctor. You're perfectly healthy.

a) You mustn't
b) It isn't necessary
c) You don't need
d) You have
e) You needn't

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study

Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills

(I) Life Skills

Asking for help and advice	Responding to advice
- I feel very hot and tired, what should I do?	- You should go to hospital immediately.
- My little brother has cut his finger, could you help me do first aid?	- Of course, I will come to see him now.
- Do you mind calling the ambulance, please?	- No problem. I will call now.
- If I know somebody who is infected by coronavirus, what shall I do?	- You must stay away from him. Call 105. Tell all those who mixed with them to be very careful.

(II) Writing

Think of something that might help to be healthier. Make notes on three persuasive reasons why your friend should do this.

Tips for writing the email

Introduction	What do you think can help you to be healthier? State briefly how this can help you.
Main body (1)	What is the first reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Main body (2)	What is the second reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Conclusion	How can your friend benefit from your advice? Conclude and clear your point of view briefly.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

To : yasser100@mail.com

From: medhat100@mail.com

Dear Yasser,

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. While health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity to all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness as well as health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise, and hygiene. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, sportspeople have a fit body. They shape their body in such a way that it will be fit for their sport. But, coming to a healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. To maintain a healthy and fit body, this requires self-control and will power. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But, try to focus on it to achieve your health as all know "Health is wealth".

Look forward to hearing from you.

Yours,

Medhat

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Unit 1
Lessons 3 & 4

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My sister couldn't go out with us as she .... the flu and was staying in bed.
a) did b) had c) made d) felt

2 The surgeon performed an emergency operation because he/she knew how serious the .... was.
a) location b) occasion c) situation d) site

3 It is hoped that the wounded soldier will .... better soon.
a) carry b) go c) get d) fall

4 Working in this luxurious hotel really sounds .... for a fresh graduate.
a) worse b) terrible c) perfect d) vague

5 The liver الكبد is an extremely complex .... which needs special care.
a) member b) organ c) individual d) place

6 Karam Gaber is a former Olympic wrestling .... who won a gold medal in 2004.
a) hero b) partner c) champion d) trainee

7 I'm taking a .... in graphic design because I have a good job opportunity.
a) system b) syllabus c) course d) centre

8 The receptionist asked me to complete the form .... my personal data.
a) with b) over c) on d) in

9 You .... get off the bus before it stops. It's dangerous.
a) shouldn't b) oughtn't to c) can d) mustn't

10 They .... to come early. They can come whenever they're ready.
a) don't need b) needn't c) have d) didn't have

11 You .... come to see us at the weekend. We miss you very much.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must

12 Omar .... finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.
a) had to b) needn't c) has got to d) have to

13 Marwa .... email her homework to her teacher because she forgot to take it to class yesterday.
a) doesn't have to b) have to c) had to d) needn't

14 **A:** Does Ramy .... study very much tonight?
B: No, he doesn't. He reviewed a lot last night and he understood everything well.
a) has to b) have to c) must d) needs to

15 Judy .... go to the supermarket because she doesn't have enough food for dinner.
a) needn't b) have to c) has to d) mustn't

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 **Ahmed :** .... pay to see the doctor?

Amr : No, she .... because she has medical insurance.

a) Does your sister have to/doesn't

b) Do your sister have to/don't

c) Must your sister/mustn't

d) Is it necessary for your sister to/isn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Don't eat just before going to bed!" My mother used to tell me. "You might get a nightmare[1]." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So, I made myself a peanut-butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk. After consuming[2] them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted[3] off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her, but we all seemed afraid of her. Somehow[4] we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before. Sometimes I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful[5] horror movie.

After some searching, I entered a darkened room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up, and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to. I tried to scream but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment I gave a muffled yell and found myself panting[6] on my bed. My goodness[7], what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on I never eat just before going to sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's mother warned him not to ....

a) eat before going to sleep

b) go with a group of people anywhere

c) search for the old woman

d) scream on facing dangers

(1) كابوس (2) يستهلك/يلتهم (3) يبدأ النوم (4) بطريقة ما (5) مريع/فظيع (6) يلهث (7) تعبير للدهشة والتعجب

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2 The result of a peanut-butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was a/an ....

a) high bill
b) nightmare
c) attack from an old woman
d) mother's anger from her son

3 The synonym of the word "muffled" is a ....

a) loud speech
b) loud voice
c) very pure sound
d) quiet and less clear sound

4 The best title to the passage is "................".

a) Nightmares
b) Mothers' experiences
c) Much eating and good sleep
d) An adventure during the night

5 The boy was looking for the old woman although ....

a) she was cute
b) she was scared
c) he was afraid of her
d) he couldn't know her place

6 According to the passage, the nightmare ....

a) happens when people sleep
b) is a bad scary dream
c) refers to real life
d) happens to hungry people

7 The boy didn't want to close his eyes ....

a) because he was tired
b) so that he could see the rest of the nightmare
c) because they were sore
d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again

8 The writer decided that he ....

a) would never eat just before sleeping
b) wouldn't listen to his mum's words
c) would do sports before sleeping
d) wouldn't talk to old women anymore

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The best way to combat(1) viruses and bacteria is to boost your immune system. This can be done in simple ways such as a healthy diet and good exercise.

....

....

2. The main purpose of education is the integral(2) development of the student. It also aims at preparing generations of scientists able to face the challenges of the future.

....

....

3. School plays an important role(3) in teaching young people the values of discipline(4), hard work, and teamwork(5). These are best acquired at an early age.

....

....

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4. Writers are all affected by the experiences they have in their life and the problems they face. Their works are the mirror of their age.

....

....

5. Unemployment(6) and illiteracy(7) are two major causes that lead to crimes(8) and violence. That's why we all should try to fight them.

....

....

6. Smart people are not those who can work for 16 hours a day, but those who can balance between their work and their personal life.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يتضمــن إصــلاح(٩) التعليم طرقـًا جديدة لدمــج(١٠) الطلاب ذوى الاحتياجـات الخاصة مع زملائهم بنفـس المناهج(١١) التعليمية، مما يساعدهم على الاندماج فى المجتمع بشكل أفضل.

....

....

٢- يهدف(١٢) التعليم إلى تنمية مهارات الطلاب وإعدادهم لتلبية سـوق العمل فى ظل التطور التكنولوجى المتزايد، وهذا أدى إلى إنشاء مدارس وكليات(١٣) جديدة فى السنوات القليلة الأخيرة.

....

....

٣- يعد تلوث الهواء من أخطر القضايا التى يجب أن يتناولها المسئولون عن البيئة، وهو يعتبر نتيجة لظهور عدد كبير من المصانع.

....

....

٤- مـع أزمـة فيروس كورونا برزت أهمية التعليم عبر الإنترنت(١٤)؛ حيث أصبـح الحل الوحيد لإكمال الطلاب تعليمهم بعد غلق المدارس والجامعات فى كثير من دول العالم.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following:

"Your friend has gained much weight and you want to advise him about the best ways to lose weight."

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... — I used the right structure. .... — I used a topic sentence. .... — I wrote the conclusion. .... — I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) يكافح	(4) إنضباط	(7) الأمية	(10) combine	(13) faculties
(2) متكامل	(5) عمل جماعى	(8) جرائم	(11) curricula	(14) online education
(3) دور	(6) البطالة	(9) reform	(12) aim	

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

King Lear
Act I, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

act (n)	فصل (فى مسرحية)	honest (adj)	صادق
actions (n)	إجراءات/أفعال	kingdom (n)	مملكة
answer (n)	إجابة/رد	majesty (n)	جلالة/فخامة
beauty (n)	جمال	marry (v) (y-ied)	يتزوج
call (v) (ed)	ينادى على	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
countryside (n)	ريف	promise (v) (d)	يعد
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	queen (n)	ملكة
duke (n)	دوق (لقب نبيل)	riches (n)	ثروات
duty (n)	مهمة/واجب	scene (n)	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	sir (n)	سيد
feelings (n)	مشاعر	speech (n)	خطاب
fine (adj)	محترم	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
foolish (adj)	أحمق	sword (n)	سيف
forest (n)	غابة	third (n)	ثلث
hate (adj)	يكره	title (n)	لقب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

give ... advice	يعطي ... نصيحة	put ... into words	يعبر عن ... بالكلمات
make ... happy	يجعل ... سعيدًا	say goodbye to	يودع
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	give away	يهب/يتبرع/يتخلى عن
give to	يعطي لـ	shout about	يصيح بشأن/يصرح بـ

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice

King Lear Exercises

Act I, Scene i

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The United ...., England, is actually ruled by the Prime Minister, not the Queen.
a) Republic b) Kingdom c) Council d) Empire

2 The judge asked the lawyer a simple question and he gave a long and confusing ....
a) quiz b) puzzle c) riddle d) answer

3 After Al Qanater, the River Nile .... into two channels, Damietta and Rosetta.
a) divides b) shares c) spares d) unifies

4 The divers were impressed by the .... of the coral reefs.
a) ugliness b) wealth c) beauty d) position

5 The hopes of the future .... draws many young people into professional sports, especially football.
a) struggle b) affection c) poverty d) riches

6 The discount is a .... to a half of the full price during Black Friday.
a) once b) third c) twice d) share

7 A wife has a/an .... to her husband and to her children.
a) duty b) invention c) mission d) work

8 The duke inherited the .... from his father.
a) location b) address c) title d) state

9 The young man gave .... most of his old clothes to charity.
a) away b) off c) in d) for

10 A .... is a weapon with a short handle and a long sharp blade.
a) gun b) sword c) canon d) stick

11 My friends Amany and Adel are planning to .... next month and invite all their friends to the wedding.
a) separate b) engage c) meet d) marry

12 Hitler was known to be a .... dictator.
a) merciful b) simple c) cruel d) humble

13 It was a very .... thing to leave my old job in these hard times.
a) persuasive b) innovative c) smart d) foolish

14 My parents always advise me to be .... and avoid lies.
a) vague b) honest c) tricky d) blushing

15 My uncle .... to buy his son a new bicycle on passing his exams.
a) promised b) expected c) graduated d) puzzled

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should wash the dress in cold water so the colours don't ....
a) match b) bleed c) raise d) add

2 If you keep on lifting those heavy weights, you'll do yourself a/an ....
a) attention b) benefit c) injury d) loss

3 The Americans established a naval .... on the Japanese island in the 1950s.
a) space b) table c) column d) base

4 El Maraei is a leading manufacturer of .... dairy products.
a) label b) origin c) source d) publicity

5 Our old neighbour .... her husband by ten years.
a) attached b) deceased c) survived d) divorced

6 Nowadays, many young people .... against traditional values.
a) refer b) reject c) react d) reform

7 Our prep school headmistress was a .... woman who rarely smiled.
a) severe b) dangerous c) creative d) collaborative

8 It will take about an hour to get there, ... for traffic delays.
a) allow b) allowing c) allowed d) allowance

9 The students learned how to calculate the .... of a triangle.
a) region b) distance c) district d) area

10 She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the .... she is creative.
a) roof b) well c) surface d) wall

11 Meeting Sally changed the whole .... of Samy's life. They are a successful couple.
a) road b) course c) technique d) coarse

12 The magazine functions as the official .... of the fashion industry.
a) part b) member c) player d) organ

13 According to law, no one is .... from legal punishment.
a) immune b) protective c) supporting d) allowed

14 The young man spent a night in a prison .... because of driving without a licence.
a) house b) cell c) organ d) box

15 I decided to go on a .... before my holiday to look smarter on the beach.
a) trip b) business c) deal d) diet

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 We had a party last night .... spend all morning cleaning up the mess.

a) I must have b) I've been to c) I've had to d) I need

17 I have lost my keys. I ought .... them in a safe place.

a) that I put b) to have put c) to be putting d) to put

18 There was no one else in the post office. I .... in a queue.

a) didn't need to wait b) needn't wait

c) mustn't wait d) needn't have waited

19 Dina .... have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.

a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

20 I'm taking the umbrella. It .... rain.

a) should b) must c) may d) has to

21 You mustn't take photos near military places. This means that ....

a) you can't b) you are allowed c) it's unnecessary d) it isn't good

22 **A:** .... he finish the report before 10 pm.?

B: No, he needn't. The boss hasn't asked for it yet.

a) Mustn't b) Need c) Does d) Needs

23 You mustn't ride a bicycle in this park. It's ....

a) necessary b) inadvisable c) not allowed d) unnecessary

24 It's a .... for all of us to protect the country from any danger.

a) necessary b) has to c) importance d) must

25 That's a bridge nobody .... cross. It's about to collapse.

a) must b) have to c) must not d) were to

26 We .... to meet at the theatre entrance at eight yesterday.

a) are b) were c) have d) must

27 One of the following gives the synonym of the modal verb "must".

a) I might be wrong. b) You can say something.

c) He is to study hard. d) He needs a dictionary.

28 I wish we .... stop at the next traffic light. We have a little time to be at school.

a) don't have to b) had to c) can't d) didn't have to

29 I see that your shoes .... Have your son clean them.

a) need to polish b) need polishing

c) needn't be polished d) must polish

30 You look tired. .... for you to go shopping?

a) Is it a necessity b) It is necessary

c) Is it necessity d) Must

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 The young singer .... a throat infection which meant she couldn't sing at yesterday's concert.
a) got b) made c) did d) damaged e) had

2 The new trainer of the national tennis team has promised to make an Olympic .... of the young player .
a) coach b) athlete c) referee d) champion e) judge

3 The accident victim was taken to hospital as his injuries were quite severe. The antonyms of the word"severe" are ....
a) acute b) gentle c) harsh d) violent e) mild

4 The boy thankfully gave his mother her birthday present which he wrapped .... fine golden paper.
a) about b) for c) in d) with e) of

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 As she is very sick, Mona taught her children to call the .... services if something bad happened to her.
a) accuracy b) infection c) emergency d) inquiry

6 The new factory placed a/an .... in the local paper asking for a sales manager.
a) situation b) advertisement
c) experience d) behaviour

7 A/An .... computer can be used to send out spam emails or attack other computers without your knowledge.
a) infected b) broken c) damaged d) immune

8 Some college students choose to .... their course after the first year at a certain department.
a) make b) run c) change d) take

9 She .... home yesterday because her little son was sick.
a) needn't stay b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

10 You .... ride a bicycle in this park. It's forbidden.

a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

11 Is it .... for us to send the research as an email attachment, sir?

a) necessary b) must c) have to d) need to

12 Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.

a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to

13 Fahmy is not here. He .... leave early.

a) must b) had to c) has to d) needs to

14 I .... to look my best as I'm going to have a job interview.

a) should b) must c) need d) needn't

15 It's late and the baby is asleep. You .... make so much noise.

a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to

16 I .... finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.

a) had to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity (being very fat) is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centres for Disease Control has identified these three as the main causes of the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, the amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics plays a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is ....

a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries

b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity

c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity

d) obesity and our health

18 Obesity has increased .... since the 1980s in many European countries.

a) three times — b) twice

c) four times — d) once

19 Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?

a) Food choices and the amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.

b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.

c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.

d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

20 What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?

a) Decrease. — b) Control.

c) Health. — d) Outbreak.

21 According to the passage, behaviour is .... obesity.

a) not a cause for — b) a minor cause for

c) a major cause for — d) one of the steps to stop

22 The problem of obesity is that it ....

a) causes many health problems

b) makes the person very big

c) causes the prices to rise

d) needs special clothes

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇💙

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

23 Obesity is classified when a person's BMI is ....

a) below thirty **b)** thirty or more
c) double thirty **d)** not thirty

24 Scientifically, ... is/are responsible for obesity.

a) food **b)** environment
c) diseases **d)** genes

25 Translate into English:

- القراءة هواية مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا، ويمكن أن تخفض مستويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُثرى ثقافتك.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So we should all realise its importance and try to make the best use of it.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Unit 2

Eating around the world

Objectives

Reading : An excerpt from Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world

Writing : A questionnaire

Listening : Descriptions of international meals

Speaking : Comparative and superlative adjectives

Language : Communicating opinions and beliefs

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study — Lessons 1 & 2

Watch a video

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	occasion (n)	مناسبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
eat out (v)*	يأكل بالخارج	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

* Mum cooked nothing; we're going to eat out today.

Vocabulary on Reading

arrive (v) (d)	يصل	native (adj)	أصلى
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)	quantity (n)	كمية
event (n)	حدث	special (adj)	خاص
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	surprised (adj)	مندهش
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس/يستخلص	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
feed (v)	يُطعم/يغذى	turkey (n)	ديك رومى
fun (n)	مرح	wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع	whatever	مهما/أيًا كان

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

chips (n)	شيبسى (شرائح البطاطس)
cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة
curious (adj)	فضولى
Europe (n)	أوروبا
festival (n)	مهرجان
fry (v) (~~y~~ ied)	يقلى
noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة
oyster (n)	محار
popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور
prawn (n)	جمبرى

pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأن مشوى
roasted (adj)	مشوى
shellfish (n)	المحار
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا
takeaway (n)	طعام جاهز

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد
grapes (n)	عنب
herring (n)	سمك الرنجة
Indonesian (adj)	إندونيسى
jar (n)	إناء/برطمان
menu (n)	قائمة طعام

nut (n)	بندق
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
smell (n) (v) (ed)	رائحة/يشم
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
the countryside (n)	الريف
whale (n)	حوت/لحم الحوت

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around the country	فى كل أنحاء البلد	fall asleep	ينام فجأة
at least	على الأقل	for example	على سبيل المثال
catch up	يجارى/يعرف أحوال	get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
amount of	كمية من	take place	يحدث
keep out of	يبتعد عن	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
look after	يعتنى بـ	travel to	يسافر إلى
(be) made from	مصنوع من	wait for	ينتظر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	arriving	قادم
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
decide*	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

* - They decided to leave now.
- Their decision was made carefully.
- They took decisive actions to face the problems.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	honour	ignore يتجاهل
exist	يوجد	live/remain	depart/cease يغادر/يتوقف
fun	مرح	amusement/enjoyment	sorrow/sadness أسى
gather	يتجمع	collect	separate/scatter يفصل
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old	fashionable/modern ذو طراز حديث
popular	محبوب	attractive/famous	unpopular/unknown غير محبوب/غير معروف
probably	من المحتمل	possibly/likely	unlikely/improbably من غير المحتمل
rare	نادر	scarce/unique	common/ordinary شائع/عادى
surprised	مندهش	astonished/amazed	unsurprised/poised غير مندهش
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical	modern/new حديث
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet/entertain	exclude/deny يستبعد/يستنكر

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Computers are very useful as they can store a vast .... of information.
   a) account **b)** quality **c)** number **d)** amount
2. The two brothers have just finished their exams and have gone out to ....
   a) celebrate **b)** reward **c)** expect **d)** report
3. My grandfather's house was built in a/an .... style as he doesn't like modern ones.
   a) updated **b)** technological **c)** inventive **d)** traditional
4. The .... complained that he still hadn't received the book he had ordered several weeks ago.
   a) customer **b)** producer **c)** servant **d)** seller
5. My brother doesn't like wearing suits; he only wears them on formal ....
   a) accidents **b)** occasions **c)** actions **d)** experiences

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Reading Text (1)

Mention two Egyptian celebrations that include specially prepared foods.

An Old-Fashioned Thanksgiving



In September 1620, a ship called *the Mayflower* arrived in North America with 102 passengers.

Many died, but some were able to grow food and survive with help from Native Americans.



Thanksgiving is a day when families get together(1) to remember these events. It is celebrated(2) in the USA every year on the fourth Thursday in November.

In 1882, Louisa M. Alcott wrote a short story called *An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving*. Here is an extract:

When they woke, there was still a large amount(3) of snow outside. Tilly made a good breakfast for the seven children.

"Now, about dinner," she said as they all finished eating. "Ma said that we could have whatever we liked, but she didn't expect us to have a traditional(4) Thanksgiving dinner."

"Have you ever cooked a turkey?" asked Roxy.

"Ma said I should decide what to do," replied Tilly.

All you children have to do is keep out of the way and let Prue and me work."

The younger children walked out of the kitchen and into another room. As Tilly and Prue started to prepare(5) the big meal, they got out all the spoons, dishes, pots and pans that they could find.



"Now, sister, we'll have dinner at five," said Tilly. "Pa will be here by that time and he'll be surprised to find us ready to serve(6) the food. There's such a lot to do, and I'm a bit worried about the turkey. It's so big!"

"I know," said Prue. "I fed it all summer and now it will feed me," she laughed.

(1) يتجمع/يتقابل

(2) يحتفل بـ

(3) مقدار/كمية

(4) تقليدى

(5) يعد/يجهز

(6) يخدم/يقدم طعاما

When is Thanksgiving celebrated in the USA? Why?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (2)

What do Egyptians eat for special celebrations?

As one year changes to the next, many countries around the world choose to celebrate the start of the New Year with special food. However, different countries eat very different things to enjoy the occasion.

In Mexico, for example, many people eat out at the many restaurants around the country on New Year's Day. The most popular[1] dish is always tamales, which is made from meat, cheese and vegetables that are cooked inside banana leaves.

However, when the New Year arrives in Japan, people make special little cakes from sweet rice. Then they get together with their family and friends to eat them and celebrate.

In Spain, it is traditional to eat twelve grapes[2] to welcome[3] the New Year. The Spanish people eat this particular amount of grapes late at nigh when the clock reaches midnight, or twelve o'clock, and they have one grape for each hour of the clock.

In Poland, people start to prepare a fish called 'herring[4]' at least five days befor they eat it. They put the fish in a jar[5] with water, onions and sugar and then they wait for the big day.

Finally, in Greenland, it is traditional for the men to serve a special meal of whale for women to enjoy. It takes months for the meat to become ready to eat and peop say the smell[7] is very strong.

(1) محبوب/مشهور

(2) عنب

(3) يرحب بـ

(4) سمك الرنجة

(5) إناء/برطمان

(6) لحم الحوت

(7) رائحة

Which is the strangest food people eat to celebrate the New Year?

تطبيق الأضواء
اختبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية
من خلال حل اختبارات تفاعلية
على كل درس.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال App Store Google play
www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Listening Text (1)

Pre-listening question:

- Do you think that all Americans eat turkey only on Thanksgiving?

Amy : So, did you ask your parents about visiting our home for Thanksgiving, Hoda?

Hoda : Yes. They like me to try new things and they thought it would be a great idea. My mum was very curious[1] about the food you eat.

Amy : You'll love the food at Thanksgiving, Hoda. Have you had turkey before? It's a lot like chicken but it's very big.

Hoda : Well, I like chicken, so that should be okay. What else do you have?

Amy : We have a special kind of bread, called cornbread. It's delicious. And we have sweet potatoes[2]. They're like normal potatoes, but much nicer.

Hoda : That sounds great. What do you have for dessert[3]?

Amy : My mum makes the most wonderful pumpkin pie[4]. It's very sweet and heavy. Sometimes I fall asleep after I eat it, so I'll try not to eat too much.

Hoda : Now I'm feeling hungry.

Amy : Me, too. But the best thing about Thanksgiving is that we all have to help with the cooking. It's a great time to meet and catch up with friends and family. That's why we're all really looking forward to seeing you.

Hoda : Great. I can't wait!

(1) فضولى

(2) بطاطا

(3) تحلية

(4) فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)

Post-listening question:

- What does Amy think the best thing about Thanksgiving?

Would you like to try food from another country?

Listening Text (2)



Nasi goreng is a meal with rice from Indonesia. In fact, the words nasi goreng mean 'fried rice' in Indonesian. Many people believe that nasi goreng is one of the spiciest meals in Indonesia, but for most people it's simply the best meal you can eat. Nasi goreng is made by frying[1] rice and adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns[2] to the pan. It's a bit saltier than some other Indonesian meals and it often comes with a fried egg on top. Nasi goreng is usually cheaper than most other meals in Indonesia. You can get it either in restaurants or from people who cook food on the side of the road.

(1) يقلى

(2) جمبرى

(3) المحار

(4) نادر

(5) قائمة طعام

Oysters are a type of shellfish[3] that people dig out of the earth under the sea. They're rarer[4] than most other types of seafood and you can only eat them for seven months of the year. During these months, thousands of oysters are eaten in France because many people believe they're one of the most special foods you can eat. This means that oysters are usually one of the most expensive meals on the menu[5] in French restaurants.

Mochi are sweet, round rice cakes which are smaller than most of the cakes people eat. They look like little balls and they're made in many different colours. In Japan, where they come from, mochi are the most popular type of cake and the Japanese eat large amounts of them. Mochi were first made about one thousand years ago and people thought that they brought good luck. Today, different colours and types of mochi are more popular than others on different special occasions. For example, when the Japanese celebrate New Year's Day, flat, white mocha is the most popular type of mochi to eat.

Which of the dishes mentioned above would you like to try?

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What do you know about American food?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)



The UK did not use to be known for its good food, but it has got a lot better in recent[1] years. Probably the most popular dish is fish and chips[2]. The fish and potatoes are fried and they are usually very salty. Fish and chips are usually cheaper than most other takeaway[3] food, too. The British also like spicy food. Indian food is usually the spiciest and Indian restaurants are very popular. One of the most traditional dishes in the UK is roast lamb[4], which people often eat for Sunday lunch with potatoes and vegetables. The British also like a lot of sweet things such as ice cream. In 2018, the British ate more than 320,000 ice creams. They mostly eat ice cream in the summer when the weather is hotter.

(1) حديث

(2) شيبسى

(3) طعام جاهز

(4) لحم ضأن مشوى

How does the Indian food differ from the British one?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mother is too tired to cook today. Let's have a/an .... tonight.
   a) take-in b) overtake c) takedown d) takeaway
2. The movie won an award at the Cairo Film .... last year.
   a) Race b) Competition c) Festival d) Examination
3. We were .... to know who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.
   a) native b) curious c) exciting d) proud
4. The chef added hot pepper to give the dish a .... flavour.
   a) spicy b) solid c) cool d) cooked
5. .... are a long thin kind of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking.
   a) Prawns b) Chips c) Noodles d) Lambs

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

amount — مقدار/كمية
- a quantity of something

celebrate — يحتفل بـ
- do something fun to show that an event is special

eat out — يأكل بالخارج
- have a meal outside your home

get together — يتجمع/يتقابل
- meet people and spend time with them

occasion — مناسبة
- a time when something special happens

prepare — يعد/يجهز
- get something ready to eat or use

serve — يخدم/يقدم طعاما
- give people food or drink

traditional — تقليدى
- old ways of doing things that don't change

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

	Word	Meaning	Examples
1	**arrive (in/at)**	١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصــل إلى (يتبعه مفعــول بعد حروف الجر (in/at	▸ When does the Paris plane arrive? ▸ We arrived in Cairo late at night. مكان غير محدد ▸ The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off. مكان محدد
	reach	١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى	▸ We reached Cairo late at night. ▸ Ministers must reach a decision before next month.
2	**decide to + inf.**	يقرر أن (يتبعه المصدر)	▸ Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.
	decide that + a sentence	يقرر أن (يتبعه جملة كاملة)	▸ I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.
	decide on + n/v-ing	يستقر على (يتبعه اسم أو صيغة (verb + ing	▸ We decided on going to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.
3	**event**	١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	▸ One of the most important events in our history is October Victory. ▸ The charity raises money by organising social events.
	incident	١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)	▸ The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day. ▸ He thought the film was boring without many incidents.
	accident	حادث (شيء خاطئ أو مـؤذٍ حدث بغير ترتيب)	▸ Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.
4	**special**	خاص (من نوع خاص)	▸ I only wear this suit on special occasions like weddings.
	private	خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	▸ My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.
5	**menu**	١- قائمة طعام (فى مطعم) ٢- قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	▸ He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice. ▸ The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.
	list	قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	▸ I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... let Prue and me work.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة المصدر (work) بدون to بعد الفعل (let).

- I'm a bit worried about the turkey.

تستخدم (a bit) قبل الصفات أو الصفات المقارنة للتعبير عن معنى قليلًا.

- .... adding vegetables and either chicken or prawns to the pan.

لاحظ استخدام either ... or للتعبير عن الاختيار بين شيئين.

- The British also like spicy food.

تستخدم (the) قبل الجنسية لتعنى الشعب بشكل عام.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Hosting the FIFA World Cup will be an important .... for Qatar, the first Arab country to do so.
a) event **b)** accident **c)** incident **d)** process

2 I was put on a waiting .... to see a specialist at the hospital.
a) menu **b)** list **c)** title **d)** leaflet

3 I've decided .... blue for painting the bedroom.
a) for **b)** to **c)** at **d)** on

4 It was almost midnight when I .... home, so my father was angry.
a) sailed **b)** sent **c)** reached **d)** painted

5 Experts take .... care in handling very old books as they are soft and valuable.
a) private **b)** special **c)** general **d)** obvious

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice

Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The college allows students to .... their graduation party with family and friends.
a) share b) celebrate c) expect d) gather

2 Samy .... together with some friends to plan a party for their friend who won the gold medal for swimming.
a) got b) went c) made d) performed

3 The new student at class isn't rich, so he wears .... clothes.
a) luxurious b) old-fashioned c) splendid d) recent

4 Suzan speaks French fluently, but it isn't her .... language.
a) foreign b) native c) modern d) dead

5 When babies started to walk they were .... and tried to explore the environment around them.
a) rare b) modern c) curious d) traditional

6 The children had a lot of .... at the movie theatre watching their favourite film.
a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d) fun

7 Universities should do more to .... young people for the world of work.
a) make b) prepare c) serve d) advise

8 My brother dreams of joining the navy to .... his country and travels at sea.
a) serve b) surprise c) prepare d) welcome

9 We finished our meal with a .... of honey and nuts.
a) desert b) dessert c) recipe d) receipt

10 Hesham was rewarded because he is always the first to .... at work in the morning.
a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach

11 When they got off the train, the three .... shared a taxi home as they didn't have enough money.
a) voters b) passengers c) sellers d) drivers

12 Most Indian dishes usually taste very .... as they use the hottest pepper in them.
a) sweet b) tasteful c) warm d) spicy

13 Science gives us hope that many diseases will not .... in our future world.
a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure

14 The chef said that we need to use fresh herbs اعشاب to get the good Italian ....
a) scene b) sight c) test d) taste

15 The poet read several .... from his new poems in his television interview.
a) marks b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 The funeral of the young officer was a sad .... that was attended by thousands of people.
a) accident b) reflection c) occasion d) result

17 All the dancers and musicians at the music festival wore .... clothes that dated back to the 18th century.
a) updated b) ragged c) gradual d) traditional

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 You must have at .... five years' experience to get the job.
a) last b) lost c) list d) least

19 It is common for children to be afraid of the dark. The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective "..................".
a) useful b) ordinary c) available d) rare

20 The businessman was arrested on his .... at the airport as he had been suspected of a crime.
a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived

21 Mother always asks my little brother to .... out of the kitchen.
a) sleep b) take c) keep d) give

22 The manager says that the next meeting will take .... on Thursday.
a) place b) part c) up d) in

23 Unfortunately, the factory didn't achieve the .... profits and we had to close it.
a) expect b) expectance c) expected d) expecting

24 The Pyramids are one of the most .... touristic places with tourists in Egypt.
a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular

25 The fire could possibly have been caused by accident. The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb "..................".
a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 During the school picnic, we gathered the children around us and sang songs. The synonyms of the word "gather" are ....
a) divide b) assemble c) scatter d) separate e) collect

27 Egyptian farmers grow large .... of wheat, however we have to export some.
a) amounts b) qualities c) spaces d) quantities e) recipes

28 The hotel restaurant .... a wonderful meal to more than fifty members at the conference.
a) fed b) served c) did d) wasted e) prepared

29 The menu at this restaurant includes a wide selection of French ....
a) components b) tools c) recipes d) dishes e) designs

30 We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms. The antonyms of the word "welcome" are ....
a) agree b) deny c) accept d) exclude e) reply

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

1) Adjectives

الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الموصوف جمعًا.

- She is a beautiful girl.
- They are beautiful girls.

١) الصفة تأتى قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be أو بعد بعض الأفعال مثل:

(look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.)

- He is a tall boy.
- The boy is tall.
- She looks pretty.
- The food tastes good.

٢) الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

(afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.)

- They are still alive.

٣) بعض الصفات لا تأتى إلا قبل الأسماء مثل:

(chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.)

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing and hiking.

٤) بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

(old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.)

- The rich (rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

2) Order of Adjectives

ترتيب الصفات

	Opinion	Fact adjectives							Noun
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

فى الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

a beautiful, white wedding dress.

Degrees of Adjectives درجـات الصفـات

- **Positive** الصفة العادية
- **Comparative** المقارنة بين طرفين
- **Superlative** صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد ومجموعة)

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3 One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد	adj. + er + than	the + adj. + est
tall	taller than	the tallest
old	older than	the oldest
long	longer than	the longest
quick	quicker than	the quickest
short	shorter than	the shortest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف e نضع r/st.		
large	larger than	the largest
wide	wider than	the widest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن.		
big	bigger than	the biggest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف w وقبله o أو e نضع er/est دون مضاعفة.		
low	lower than	the lowest
few	fewer than	the fewest
إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest.		
ugly	uglier than	the ugliest
easy	easier than	the easiest
heavy	heavier than	the heaviest
happy	happier than	the happiest
lucky	luckier than	the luckiest

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4 More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع

More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع	more/ less + adj. + than	the most / the least + adj.
modern	more/less modern than	the most/least modern
careful	more/less careful than	the most/least careful
expensive	more/less expensive than	the most/least expensive
wonderful	more/less wonderful than	the most/least wonderful
exciting	more/less exciting than	the most/least exciting
difficult	more/less difficult than	the most/least difficult
interesting	more/less interesting than	the most/least interesting
beautiful	more/less beautiful than	the most/least beautiful

Examples

- Samir is a fast runner.
- This film is interesting.
- Samir is faster than Ali.
- This film is more interesting than the one we watched last night.
- Samir is the fastest student.
- This film is the most interesting ever.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The teacher said that I was .... than Einstien. I think it's a joke.

a) smart b) smartest

c) less smarter d) smarter

الإجابة هي (d) لأن هناك مقارنة بين طرفين وكلمة smart تقبل إضافة er.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد/حسن	better than	the best
old/bad	سيئ/ردىء	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
much/many/a lot of	كثير	more than	the most
far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest

Examples

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Addiction is a bad habit.	Addiction is worse than smoking.	Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.

هناك صفات مشتركة فى النوعين فتأخذ er/est or more/the most وهى:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc.

- Football is the commonest/ most common sport in the world.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة comparative مع الحالات الآتية:

١) لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفى المقارنة.

- We need a bigger house.
- He wants a more expensive car.

٢) لوصف كيف يتغير الشىء وبيان الفرق بين شىء قديم وآخر حديث.

- Hala is getting taller.
- Ali is getting older and more intelligent.

٣) تستخدم هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative لبيان الزيادة المطردة فى التغيير.

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.

٤) نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ... كلما) مع التركيبة الآتية:

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم ......, the + صفة مقارنة + اسم

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

٥) هناك مقارنة نستخدم فيها the بين شيئين من نوع واحد:

The + صفة مقارنة (... er/more + adjective)

- Of the two cars this is the faster.
- Noha is the younger of two girls.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The blue whale is .... than the shark.
   a) large b) largest
   c) larger d) more larger
2. This is .... mountain I have ever seen.
   a) the biggest b) the bigger
   c) the most big d) the big
3. In my opinion, physics is .... subject this year.
   a) difficult b) more difficult
   c) as difficult d) the most difficult
4. The .... you train, the fitter you become.
   a) more harder b) hard
   c) harder d) the hardest
5. As it was raining heavily, the driver saw nothing and the car went .... down the hill.
   a) fast and faster b) fast and fast
   c) faster and faster d) faster and fast

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I think, the computer is .... invention in the world.
a) the more important b) the most important
c) important d) more important

2 Who is .... person in your country?
a) powerful b) more powerful
c) the most powerful d) much powerful

3 How far is .... railway station from here?
a) the nearest b) the nearer c) the near d) nearer

4 My friend thinks that math is .... than Arabic, but I don't agree.
a) more difficult b) the most difficult c) as difficult d) difficult

5 Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was ....
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty

6 China is .... than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated
c) populated d) as populated

7 Although we aren't rich, our children go to .... schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

8 The blue whale is .... animal in the world.
a) more heavy b) heavy c) heavier d) the heaviest

9 A falcon has got a .... eyesight than a human.
a) good b) better c) best d) bad

10 Unfortunately, her illness was .... we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

11 Vegetables are .... than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) healthier b) much healthy c) healthy d) more healthy

12 The slower you drive, the .... you are.
a) safe b) safest c) safer d) most safer

13 Lamia is the .... of the two sisters.
a) young b) as young as c) more young d) younger

14 What's .... important decision you've ever had to make?
a) the more b) the most c) most d) the many

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

15 Health and happiness are .... than money.
a) important
b) more important
c) the least important
d) as important

16 We live in a .... house, but my uncle lives in a .... one.
a) big/big
b) big/biggest
c) big/bigger
d) bigger/biggest

17 I cannot walk any ....
a) farther
b) further
c) farthest
d) both a and b

18 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ....?
a) more quiet
b) much quiet
c) quieter
d) most quiet

19 The .... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.
a) longer
b) long
c) longest
d) most long

20 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something .... interesting.
a) much
b) most
c) less
d) more

21 The more you study, ... mistakes you make. إدارة اسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) the fewer
b) the more
c) the most
d) the least

22 Which is .... in summer: Cairo or Alexandria? إدارة شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢
a) hotter than
b) hottest
c) as hot
d) hotter

23 Mrs. Azza is tall, but Mrs. Fareeda is .... إدارة شرق المحلة الكبرى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) more tall
b) more taller
c) taller
d) less taller

24 Yara is .... of the twins. إدارة الاقصر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢
a) cleverer
b) the cleverest
c) the cleverer
d) more clever

25 This book is .... than the last one she wrote. I don't like it. الزقازيق - الشرقية ٢٠٢٢
a) good
b) best
c) worst
d) worse

26 One of the given words is an adjective:
"The sun is the star at the center of our solar system."
a) system
b) solar
c) star
d) sun

27 One sentence gives the same meaning as:
"To me, physics is a difficult subject, but English is easy."
a) I find physics more difficult than English.
b) I find physics much easier than English.
c) I find physics as difficult as English.
d) I find English more difficult than physics.

28 One sentence is grammatically correct:
a) What is the world's popular sport?
b) What is the world's most popular sport?
c) What is the world's better sport?
d) What is the world's more popular sport?

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

29 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:
The red dress costs 250 pounds, the blue dress costs 200 pounds.
a) The blue dress costs less than the red dress.
b) The red dress is more expensive than the blue dress.
c) The blue dress is cheaper than the red dress.
d) The blue dress costs more than the red dress.

30 One sentence is grammatically correct:
a) I bought a nice, Italian red dress.
b) The young people should help the old ones.
c) All society should take care of the disabled.
d) I like this food as it tastes nicely.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 .... are responsible for the country's progress and welfare.
a) Young people
b) The young people
c) The young
d) The younger
e) The youngest

32 Nada is 17 years old, and so is Sara. This means that ....
a) Nada is the same age as Sara.
b) Nada is younger than Sara.
c) Nada and Sara are the same old.
d) Sara is older than Nada.
e) Nada isn't older than Sara.

33 Wood is .... than gold.
a) much cheaper
b) less expensive
c) a little expensive
d) more cheaper
e) a lot expensive

34 When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became ....
a) much easier
b) much more easier
c) more and more easier
d) the easiest
e) easier and easier

35 My grandmother is kinder than anyone in the family. This means that ....
a) Anyone in the family is kinder than my grandmother.
b) My grandmother is as kind as anyone in the family.
c) No one in my family is kinder than my grandmother.
d) My grandmother is the kindest one in the family.
e) My grandmother shows no kindness towards anyone.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Test Yourself in 20

Unit 2
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some .... teachers still think of computers as useless toys.
   a) modern b) dated c) updated d) traditional
2. My parents always support me, ... decision I make they trust me.
   a) however b) whatever c) although d) whoever
3. When the children get home the mother often wants to .... with them on the school news.
   a) take away b) wait for c) catch up d) look after
4. It's natural to be nervous before an important .... such as a wedding.
   a) accident b) plan c) event d) feast
5. I can't eat fish or shrimps because I'm allergic to ....
   a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d) legumes
6. It is preferable that we reduce the .... of energy we use at home to help the environment.
   a) account b) quality c) weight d) amount
7. Make sure that you add the correct .... of water to the food recipe.
   a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity
8. It's Dad's birthday and we're going out for a meal to ....
   a) separate b) commemorate c) celebrate d) relate
9. I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed .... than usual.
   a) earlier b) much early c) later d) more early
10. You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look .... today.
    a) more happy b) happier c) much happy d) happiest
11. This dress is .... of all you've tried on yet.
    a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice
12. I regret selling my car. It was .... decision I'd ever made.
    a) the best b) the worst c) as bad d) worse
13. I talked to the new boss, and he seems to be a .... person.
    a) nicer b) nicest c) nice d) nicely
14. He got the best marks in the class. This means that he got .... marks than anyone else.
    a) good b) better c) best d) most

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

15 My car is more modern than Ali's car, but Yasser's is ....

a) the most modern b) more modern
c) most modern d) much modern

16 Hany had three big sandwiches. He was .... of all his friends.

a) hungrier b) hungry c) the hungriest d) much hungrier

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

People love to chew gum. In fact, people around the world have been chewing gum for thousands of years. But, have you ever wondered how gum is made? You may not believe this, but gum comes from trees. Ancient Greeks got it from the bark of mastic trees. People in South America chewed chiclet, which is very rubbery. It is made from the sap of the sapodilla tree. The people of North America chewed the sap from spruce trees.

In 1871, the chemist Thomas Adams created chewing gum made out of chiclet. He manufactured[1] it. Chiclet was used to make gum for many years. Then he sold it to many people. Then in 1928, Walter Diemer invented modern bubble gum. Today, pink is still the most popular colour for bubble gum. Chemists figured out ways to create artificial gum. Everything could be made in a lab. Chemists discovered other things too. For example, they figured out[2] how to make the gum's taste last longer. That made people happy! But people who chew gum need to remember something. Gum is not meant to be swallowed[3].

However, our bodies cannot digest[4] gum. Some people believe the gum sticks together in our stomachs and blocks everything. Others even believe that gum stays there for seven years. This is not true. If you swallow gum, it will just come out when you go to the bathroom. There are many ingredients in today's bubble gum. There is sugar, corn syrup[5], softeners, flavoring, and latex. The latex makes the gum stretch. That way, you can blow bubbles.

Chad Fell from the United States blew the biggest bubble in the world. In 2004, he blew a bubble 20 inches wide and he didn't even use his hands! That's pretty impressive. You can also practice blowing big bubbles. But be prepared to get some gum sticking to your face once the bubble pops!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the information you read in the article, which statement is true about bubble gum?

a) Gum was first invented by Thomas Adams in 1871.
b) Walter Diemer called his modern day bubble gum, "Hubba Bubba."
c) People in ancient times, such as the Greeks chewed different types of tree sap as a form of gum.
d) Modern day bubble gum only has one or two ingredients in it.

(1) يصنع (2) يحسب (3) ابتلع (4) يهضم (5) شراب

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2 Based on the information in the article, what did Chad Fell do?
a) He made bubble gum out of resin.
b) He manufactured chewing gum made out of chiclet.
c) He invented modern bubble gum in a lab.
d) He blew a 20-inch bubble in 2004.

3 What ingredient in modern day bubble gum makes it stretch?
a) Corn syrup. b) Latex. c) Flavoring. d) Sugar.

4 The word "swallow" means ....
a) cause food or drink to pass down the throat
b) the body's way of breaking down food
c) make a large quantity of something using machinery
d) putting bad food in dust bins

5 Gum was chewed all over the world ....
a) ten years ago
b) in the modern ages
c) thousands of years ago
d) millions of years ago

6 The .... were the first to get the gum from trees.
a) people of North America
b) people of South America
c) ancient Greeks
d) Indian Americans

7 The chiclet was easy to chew because it sounded like ....
a) rubber b) gold c) sugar d) sap

8 The best title for the passage is ....
a) Healthy Food
b) Chewing
c) Trees around the world
d) The History of Gum

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Food festivals are quickly becoming part of a vast food tourism industry. Food tourism itself has become an important part of the tourism industry worldwide.

....

....

2. In the past, people only ate food made of local and available ingredients[1]. Now, they can eat food made in many parts of the world due to the growth of international trade[2].

....

....

3. Doctors advise office clerks to do more exercises. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration[3] of the workplace.

....

....

4. Most countries face problems because of the lack[4] of job opportunities for young people. So, governments try hard to solve the unemployment problem.

....

....

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

5. We live in the age of tremendous[5] speed where there is no room for laziness. This speed also increases stress and leads to serious diseases.

....

....

6. Many people believe that art[6] can play a role in enhancing social values. Films and plays can also fight value deterioration[7] among young men.

....

....

Translate into English:

١- يحذر الخبراء الشباب من أن الطعام السريع يمثل خطرًا على صحتهم، فبالرغم من مذاقه اللذيذ فهو يحتوى على كمية كبيرة من الدهون والمكونات الأخرى التى تسبب زيادة الوزن.

....

....

٢- نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية فى مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصرى، فى تخفيف معاناة[٨] الناس والقضاء على الفقر[٩] فى كل مكان.

....

....

٣- إن استصلاح الصحراء أهم طرق حل مشكلة نقص[١٠] الغذاء فى كثير من الدول النامية؛ لذا تخطط الحكومة المصرية لاستصلاح مليون ونصف المليون فدان من صحراء مصر.

....

....

٤- علينا أن نرعى كبار السن حتى يشعروا بالراحة بعد عملهم الشاق من أجلنا، فالكثير منهم بذلوا صحتهم ووقتهم من أجل الأجيال القادمة.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The role of charitable organisations in helping society."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) مكونات	(3) إحباط	(5) هائل	(7) تدهور	(9) poverty
(2) تجارة	(4) نقص	(6) الفن	(8) suffering	(10) shortage

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

article (n)	مقال	phrase (n)	عبارة
beef (n)	لحم بقرى	plate (n)	طبق
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان	relatives (n)	أقارب
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	rest (n) (v) (ed)	باقٍ/راحة/يرتاح
foreigner (n)	أجنبى	rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
general (adj)	عام	rule (n)	قاعدة
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	share (v) (d)	يشارك
light (adj)	خفيف	tradition (n)	تقليد
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد	vertically (adv)	عموديًا
personally (adv)	شخصيًا		

Vocabulary on Listening

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
attractive (adj)	جذاب	name (n) (v) (d)	اسم/يسمى/يذكر
complicated (adj)	معقد	options (n)	اختيارات
confused (adj)	مرتبك	products (n)	منتجات
design (v) (ed) (n)	يصمم/تصميم	questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
details (n)	تفاصيل	simple (adj)	بسيط
distant (adj)	بعيد	type (n)	نوع

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	prefer (v) (red)	يفضل
climate (n)	مناخ	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
comfortable (adj)	مريح	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
confuse (v) (d)	يربك	suitable (adj)	مناسب
fried (adj)	محمر/مقلى	windy (adj)	عاصف
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يشتمل		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من	go abroad	يسافر للخارج
around the world	حول العالم	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
at all	أبدًا/مطلقًا	show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ
(be) careful	يكون حريصًا	sound nice	يبدو لطيفًا
ask about	يسأل عن	start with	يبدأ بـ
happy with	سعيد بـ	write about	يكتب عن
spend on	ينفق على		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
believe	يعتقد	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يمكن تصديقه
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	confused confusing	مرتبك مربك
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerable considered	كبير/فائق معتبر/جدير بالاعتبار
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

produce*	ينتج	product production	منتج صناعي إنتاج	productive	منتج
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectable respectful	محترم بسبب إنجازاته محترم من الآخرين محترم لغيره

* - The factory produces high quality shoes.
- The products are exported to the Gulf countries.
- The workers are very productive.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief	شك
confuse	يربك	distract	comfort/clarify	يريح/يوضح
design	يصمم	plan/devise	ruin	يدمر
distant	بعيد	isolated/remote	close/near	قريب
light	خفيف	lightweight/moderate	heavy/large	ثقيل/كبير
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonor	عدم احترام
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine	يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper	غير مناسب

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The famous writer has written a weekly .... for the local newspaper up till now.
a) phrase b) belief c) article d) search

2 Collecting money for the new cancer hospital was a noble effort that deserves ....
a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect

3 All our close .... were invited to my sister's wedding.
a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents

4 You should follow safety .... which apply to your workplace.
a) rules b) roles c) beliefs d) phrases

5 In China, it is impolite to put your chopsticks .... into your food bowl.
a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Reading Text

How do you show respect for elder people?

(A) Personally, I think it's important to respect[1] our older relatives. When South Korean families eat together, the oldest person at the table always starts to eat first. The rest[2] of the family waits until this person has finished eating before they finish their meals. It is believed that this shows your respect for the most important people in your family.

(B) As you probably know, people in China usually use chopsticks[3] to eat their food. However, you need to be careful about what you do with them when you're eating there. It is considered very rude to put your chopsticks vertically[4] into your bowl of food, for example. I understand that this is a Chinese tradition[5], but for me, foreigners who do this don't mean to be rude at all.

(C) In my opinion, lunchtime isn't the best time of day for eating a large meal. However, in Russia it is thought that people should eat their largest meal of the day between 1 o'clock and 3 o'clock in the afternoon. In the evening, people usually eat some light[6] food, such as bread and cold meat followed by tea. This is a traditional way of eating in Russia.

(1) يحترم
(2) باقٍ
(3) عصا الطعام الصينية
(4) عموديًا
(5) تقليد
(6) خفيف

Do you agree with the Russian to eat your meal at 1? Why/Why not?

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇♥
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇♥
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

تطبيق الأضواء
العب و تعلّم..
تواصل مع أصدقائك واستمتعوا معًا بتجربة التعلّم الترفيهي مع مجتمع الأضواء.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال App Store Google play
www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Why do you think people design a questionnaire?

Listening Text

When you're writing a questionnaire[1], you need to ask the right questions. Some questions are a lot more useful than others. And, very often, small changes to a questionnaire can make a lot of difference.

Firstly, it's important that the questions are easy to understand, so it's always helpful to use simple[2] language. If you use complicated[3] language, people will need to read or hear the questions two or three times.

Secondly, it's important to use words with clear meanings. Words like 'most' and 'many' mean different things to different people. So, use words that are easier to understand, such as 'almost all' and 'almost none' instead.

Thirdly, don't have too many options[4]. People get confused[5] when there are more than six options to choose from.

Don't ask personal questions, like questions about money. People don't like talking about these things.

Remember to ask one question at a time. Don't put two questions into one, for example: 'How often do you eat out with your family?' Some people will eat out quite often, but not with their family. And others might eat with their family all the time, but only at home.

Finally, make sure the answers to your questions are easy to remember. Don't ask about events in the distant[6] past, especially if they are about something that was boring[7].

Then, when you know the questions you want to ask, think about the best time to ask people. If you're going to ask people about a recent event, for example, do it before they start to forget.

(1) استطلاع رأى
(2) بسيط
(3) معقد
(4) اختيارات
(5) مرتبك
(6) بعيد
(7) ممل

If you are asked to write a questionnaire, what topic will you choose to write it about?

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sons have both .... great results for the final exams.
   a) respected b) designed c) produced d) achieved
2. Some of the maths questions were too .... for my 10-year-old son. He found them difficult.
   a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) obvious
3. The question with too many .... will confuse the young student.
   a) articles b) papers c) options d) letters
4. Shopping on the internet can be safe if you follow a few .... rules.
   a) simple b) confused c) astonishing d) interested
5. In the .... past, dinosaurs had controlled the earth before they became extinct.
   a) near b) distant c) strange d) odd

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

mind map خريطة ذهنية
- diagram that presents information with a central idea in the middle and connected ideas arranged around it

questionnaire استبيان/استطلاع رأى
- a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information

option اختيار
- a choice you can make in a particular situation

phrase عبارة
- a group of words that have a particular meaning when used together

belief اعتقاد/ايمان
- the feeling that something is definitely true or definitely exists

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

1	**share** ١- يشترك (فى شىء) بدون تقسيم ٢- يشارك (شىء/رأى/شعور)	▸ My brother shares a room with one of his university colleagues. ▸ We shared the pizza between the four of us.
	divide ١- يقسم/ينقسم ٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)	▸ The children are divided into three teams. ▸ Thirty divided by six is five.
2	**include** يشمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)	▸ The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.
	contain يحتوى على (بداخله)	▸ There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.
	consist of يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)	▸ A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.
3	**introduce** يقدم (شخصًا) يقدم (شيئًا جديدًا)	▸ I introduced my family to all my friends at the school party. ▸ Russia is the first country to introduce a new vaccine for the Novel Coronavirus.
	present يقدم (شيئًا)	▸ It was the school headmaster who presented the prizes at the party.
4	**abroad** خارج البلاد	▸ My father travelled abroad last year.
	aboard = on board على متن السفينة/الطائرة	▸ The check-in desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to London.
	broad عريض/واسع	▸ My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.
5	**climate** (المناخ) فترة طويلة	▸ Egypt is popular with tourists because of its mild climate all the year.
	weather (الطقس) فترة قصيرة	▸ The weather today is hot and humid.
	atmosphere الغلاف الجوى جو من	▸ Pollution is really damaging the atmosphere of the Earth. ▸ He lives in an atmosphere of respect and love.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

habit سلوك /عادة (شخصية يقوم بها الفرد بدون تفكير)	▸ He has a habit of going to work late.
custom تقليد/عادة(يقوم بها مجموعة من الأشخاص في مجتمع معين)	▸ In Japan, it is the custom to take off your shoes when you enter a house.
tradition تقليد/عرف (موجود منذ فترة طويلة)	▸ In Egypt, it's a tradition for the bride to wear white.

6

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Doctors say that we should avoid foods which .... a lot of fat.
a) consist b) include
c) enclose d) contain

2 My friend said that I had to .... myself at the beginning of a job interview.
a) introduce b) attract
c) invite d) start

3 We don't have enough books, so you'll have to .... with me.
a) share b) divide
c) mean d) produce

4 The .... was fantastic for a picnic, but I have lots of work to do.
a) climate b) feel
c) weather d) ozone

5 Most young men dream of travelling .... to find good jobs.
a) board b) abroad
c) aboard d) broad

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

Practise more

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The Best Actor award in Cannes Film Festival is .... a great honour.
a) believed b) included c) considered d) denied

2 As a .... rule, shorter sentences are easier to understand.
a) general b) national c) private d) strange

3 The aluminum bars are quite .... and easy to lift than other metals.
a) heavy b) modern c) light d) old-fashioned

4 Your brother's tough behaviour doesn't .... that he dislikes you.
a) mean b) share c) report d) present

5 Some of Sameer's .... will be waiting for him at the station when he arrives.
a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters

6 My friend has worked hard to .... her goal and become a doctor.
a) introduce b) achieve c) design d) show

7 The old man often has to ask people to .... what they say because he has hearing difficulties.
a) start b) announce c) repeat d) attract

8 The city's old streets .... most visitors as they are similar to each other.
a) refuse b) confuse c) diffuse d) abuse

9 Can you give me more .... about these English courses, please?
a) questions b) plots c) chances d) details

10 The movie is not .... for children as it has violent scenes.
a) suitable b) reusable c) achievable d) respectful

11 I do my work in an office that I .... with some other teachers.
a) divide b) build c) design d) share

12 A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
a) belief b) degree c) rule d) questionnaire

13 The factory in our city is able to .... most of the cooking oil we need.
a) produce b) mean c) buy d) present

14 The .... of Sham El Nessim dates back to the time of the pharaohs.
a) direction b) tradition c) fault d) search

15 Most villagers in Egypt are keen to preserve local .... as part of our culture.
a) instructions b) customs c) costumes d) divisions

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 Some kind of flowers such as sunflower can grow in hot or humid ....
a) climate b) atmosphere c) soil d) depth

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 You must read the .... of the novel to understand it better.
a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

18 Father always says that he is happy .... what he achieved in life so far.
a) at b) in c) over d) with

19 If you travel to isolated areas, make sure you have a good guide. The adjective "isolated" is similar in meaning to the adjective ....
a) distant b) connected c) joined d) shared

20 You must always have the .... that you can do better and succeed in life.
a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believed

21 This camera has many .... features at a very good price, so it is a bestseller.
a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted

22 Schools must teach children to .... respect towards elderly people.
a) achieve b) sound c) show d) make

23 Every now and then, the factory workers .... noises about raising their wages.
a) make b) do c) reply d) apply

24 There is no doubt that smoking is bad for your health. The noun "doubt" can be the opposite to the noun "................".
a) denial b) belief c) tiredness d) acceptance

25 My friend Amir spends a lot of his money .... fast food.
a) in b) at c) on d) with

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 As a manager of a multi-national company, Mr. Ibrahim often .... abroad on business.
a) arrives b) comes c) goes d) plans e) travels

27 Mohamed Salah is .... to be one of the best players in the world.
a) considered b) regulated c) arranged d) believed e) moved

28 The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun. The antonyms of the adjective "distant" are ....
a) remote b) close c) far d) near e) light

29 About sixty-five close friends and .... attended Mariam and Jack's wedding.
a) relations b) hosts c) clerks d) opponents e) relatives

30 I have the greatest respect for my parents. The synonyms of the noun "respect" are ....
a) belief b) doubt c) appreciation d) denial e) esteem

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Important Notes

لتساوى الصفات نستخدم:

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.

- وتستخدم أيضا الصيغة the same + noun + as للتعبير عن التساوى:

- Sami is as tall as Omar. = Sami is the same height as Omar.
- His father is as old as my father. = His father is the same age as my father.

- نستخدم no/never دائما فى صيغة المقارنة:

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never seen a faster car than Mercedes.

- نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever seen.

- نستخدم less+ adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع استخدام الصفة القصيرة.

- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

- نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال.

- We attended a most interesting lecture.
- This is the question that is asked most often.

- نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

- نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

- لاحظ استخدام (from) مع (farthest) واستخدام (to) مع (nearest):

- Pluto is the farthest planet from the sun.
- Benha is the nearest city to Cairo.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

- يمكن استخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/rather/even/slightly قبل صفات المقارنة سواء er .... أو more لبيان درجة ومقدار المقارنة.

far/much/a lot ⟵ لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين طرفى المقارنة

- Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

slightly/a bit/a little/ rather/even ⟵ لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين طرفى المقارنة

- Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

الفرق بين later/latter/last

later (بعد ذلك/لاحقًا)	latter (الثانى/الأخير)	last (الأخير)
تشير كلمة «later» إلى وقت في المستقبل. Right now, I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later. (in the future from this moment) ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السلامة لشخص مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق نقول «See you later!».	نستخدم latter عندما نشير إلى الثانى من شخصين أو شيئين يتم ذكرهما. ▸ I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter. الأخير يعنى الثانى من الشيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب.	آخر شىء أو شخص، ولا شىء ولا شخص بعده/أقرب شىء للوقت الحاضر. ▸ The next meeting will be held in the last week in June. ▸ The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.

الفرق بين elder/older

elder	older
عندما يتعين علينا مقارنة أقدمية شخصين فيما يتعلق بالعمر وخاصة بين أفراد العائلة نستخدم elder ولا يأتى بعدها than. ▸ My elder sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus. ▸ Oh, so you are 3 years elder to me! لاحظ أن كلمة elderly صفة بمعنى كبار السن من منتصف الخمسينيات وأكثر. ▸ Nowadays, elderly people are healthier and more active than youngsters.	تستخدم older لتشير إلى الأكبر سنا أو الأقدم زمنا ويمكن أن يتبعها than أو تفهم المقارنة ضمنيا بدون than. ▸ We start understanding many things as we grow/get older. ▸ My parents are older than your parents. ▸ The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- My brother is .... than my sister. I'm the youngest.

a) elder b) big c) older d) more

▸ الإجابة هى (c) لأن هناك مقارنة بين طرفين.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's .... to learn a language in a country where it is spoken.
   a) much easy   b) the easiest
   c) more easier   d) a lot easier
2. Travelling by plane is .... expensive than travelling by train.
   a) much more   b) many more
   c) much   d) a lot
3. Riding a horse is not .... riding a bike.
   a) easier   b) easy as
   c) the easiest   d) so easy as
4. Aya is exactly the same .... as her sister.
   a) heavy   b) light
   c) weight   d) weigh
5. Ahmed and Ashraf are the same age. This means that ....
   a) Ahmed is as old as Ashraf   b) Ahmed is older than Ashraf
   c) Ashraf isn't as old as Ahmed   d) Ashraf is older than Ahmed

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- I have two siblings, Akram and Ayman, ...
  a) Akram is the shortest although he is the oldest
  b) Akram is shorter although he is the oldest
  c) Akram is the shorter although he is the older
  d) Akram is the shortest although he is older

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇♥

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇♥

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

The Amazon isn't .... the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long

That's the least interesting book I've .... read.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly

It is .... more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
a) very b) few c) little d) far

The second exercise is .... more difficult than the first.
a) rather b) so c) as d) many

I like to travel light. The .... luggage, the better.
a) little b) fewer c) more d) less

The film we saw last night was .... interesting of all I have seen this month.
a) more b) the least c) less d) much

She is not .... as her mother.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) as beautiful d) beautifully

I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is .... cook I've ever known.
a) cleverer b) clever c) the cleverest d) less clever

Sara is the same .... as Mona.
a) age b) old c) young d) older

If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is ....
a) funny b) funniest c) funnier d) the funny

After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English ....
a) good b) the farthest c) the better d) much better

Who is the .... person you have ever spoken to?
a) most intelligent b) more intelligent
c) intelligent d) as intelligent

The .... you study for these exams, the .... you will do.
a) hard/better b) harder/better c) more/good d) much/better

Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling .... tired lately.
a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many

The lecture halls at my university are the same .... those at State University.
a) as b) from c) with d) at

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

16 Badr was laughing hard, but his wife was laughing even ....!

a) hard **b)** hardness **c)** harder **d)** the hardest

17 He is .... of the two brothers.

a) cleverer **b)** the cleverer **c)** clever **d)** the clever

18 I like living in the country. It's .... peaceful than living in a town.

a) fewer **b)** most **c)** much **d)** more

19 The .... chapter is very interesting.

a) late **b)** last **c)** latest **d)** latter

20 Of the two sisters, Magda is the ....

a) old **b)** most old **c)** older **d)** eldest

21 He is already .... his father. ادارة ديروط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) so tall than **b)** as tall than **c)** so tall as **d)** as tall as

22 My brother is two years .... than me. He is 50, but I'm 48. يوليو/ منوفية ٢٠٢٢

a) elder **b)** older **c)** better **d)** worse

23 Manal has .... money than her friend. ادارة غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) fewer **b)** much **c)** much more **d)** little

24 Mohamed Salah is one of the world's .... players in the world. يوليو - اسوان

a) good **b)** best **c)** the better **d)** the best

25 Ali speaks French .... than Arabic. Few people understand him when he speaks it. مدرسة النجاح الثانوية بنين إدارة شرق الزقازيق

a) better **b)** good **c)** worse **d)** best

26 Pick out one adjective in the following sentence:

"I always see my friendly neighbours running fast in the club near our village."

a) neighbours **b)** friendly **c)** village **d)** fast

27 One of the following sentences gives the same meaning as:

"I live 2 km from my mother. My sister lives 1 km from her."

a) I live nearer my mother than my sister.

b) I live further from my mother than my sister.

c) My sister lives farther my mother than me.

d) My sister and I are the same distance from my mother.

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) My brother is as tall as my father.

b) My father is tallest than my brother.

c) My father and my brother are the same high.

d) My brother is more shorter than my father.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

9 One sentence is grammatically incorrect:

a) The poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.

b) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as the rich.

c) Poor people always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

d) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

0 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:
"No person is more intelligent than Bassem in my class."

a) Bassam is the most intelligent person in my class.

b) Bassam is more intelligent than any person in my class.

c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.

d) No person is as intelligent as Bassem in my class.

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@

hoose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Yesterday's match was .... than last week's match.

a) much more boring
b) less boring
c) little boring
d) much boring
e) the most boring

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

2 The children were too tired to walk any ....

a) far
b) farther
c) further
d) farthest
e) furthest

3 Watching football attracts me more than any other programmes.
This means ....

a) For me, no other programme is more interesting than watching football.

b) For me, watching football is less interesting than any other programmes.

c) For me, watching football is as interesting as any other programmes.

d) For me, watching football is the least interesting thing.

e) For me, watching football is more interesting than any other programmes.

34 .... Mohamed Salah is? All people respect him.

a) How intelligent a footballer
b) What an intelligent footballer
c) What intelligent a footballer
d) What an intelligent a footballer
e) How intelligent footballer

35 Ali can carry heavy weights, and so can Osama. This means that ....

a) Ali is stronger than Osama.
b) Osama is stronger than Ali.
c) Ali and Osama are the same strength.
d) Ali is as strong as Osama.
e) Ali is strong, but Osama is weak.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study Lessons 3 & 4

C Communication Skills

لمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

(I) Language Skills

Expressing personal beliefs/opinions and general beliefs/opinions

Expressing personal beliefs	Expressing general beliefs
• In my opinion, ………………	• It is believed ………………
• Personally, ………………	• As you probably know, ………………
• For me, ………………	• It is thought that, ………………
• I understand that, ………………	• It's obvious that, ………………
• As far as I'm concerned ………………,	

(II) Writing

Questionnaire Writing

- **You're going to write a questionnaire to find out what young people like to eat and where they prefer to eat in your country:**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Discuss things to ask about and make the mind map.
- Design your own questionnaire.
- Think about how long it will take to ask all your questions.
- Make your questionnaire look attractive.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Model Questionnaire

Read the questions and Tick (✓) your answer:

1. Where do you like to eat your food?

◯ At home. ◯ At restaurants.

2. What kind of food do you like?

◯ Fast food. ◯ Well cooked food.

3. What do you care more about your food?

◯ Taste. ◯ Ingredients.

4. What kind of snacks do you like?

◯ Fruit and vegetables. ◯ Biscuits and soft drink.

◯ Sandwiches and juice.

5. Do you care about the natural ingredients of the food you eat?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

6. Do you like canned food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

7. How much fresh juice do you have?

◯ Much. ◯ A little.

◯ None.

8. Do you care about healthy or unhealthy food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test Yourself in 20

Unit 2
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should .... what our ancestors أسلافنا have written and said.
a) reflect b) benefit c) affect d) respect

2 This section of the hypermarket sells meat .... like hot dogs and burgers.
a) productions b) goods c) articles d) products

3 You can avoid home accidents by following some simple .... of safety which are easy for children.
a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules

4 The price of the room at this hotel doesn't .... lunch.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose

5 The rich man made great efforts to be a .... member of society.
a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected

6 Scientists .... new ideas and inventions to make our life better.
a) introduce b) reject c) achieve d) allow

7 It can be difficult to .... a room with a noisy or naught companion.
a) share b) divide c) prefer d) unite

8 Experts warn us of a great change in the world's .... due to global warming.
a) climate b) population c) economy d) ozone

9 Aswan is sunny. Do you know .... place in Egypt?
a) the sunnier b) the sunniest c) the sunny d) more sunnier

10 Have you visited the old castle? It was the .... one we visited during our holidays.
a) oldest b) eldest c) elder d) older

11 Maher isn't .... friendly as Hussein.
a) more b) so c) far d) much

12 Water is the .... expensive, but the most needful, of all liquids.
a) most b) least c) less d) more

13 The shorter the queue is, the .... the service is.
a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast

14 Most other metals aren't .... as gold.
a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious

15 In a basketball match, there are .... players than in a football match.
a) fewer b) fewest c) less d) few

16 My sister and my brother are not as happy as me. This means that I'm ....
a) the happier of all b) happier than them
c) happiest d) happy

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El-Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory. She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots[1] in the carpets. The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack[2]. But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation[3]. The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines[4], and factories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of the following isn't true.
 a) Nahla is about 23 years now.
 b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
 c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
 d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2 This story shows that you .... to help others.
 a) don't have to be old b) must be old
 c) need to be courageous d) have to be a student

3 The best title to the passage is "................".
 a) How to help others.
 b) Children are more useful than adults.
 c) Children in plantations.
 d) Child employment and manipulation.

4 The underlined word "plantations" means ....
 a) shops b) schools
 c) farms d) markets

(1) عقدة (2) حقيبة الظهر (3) تسخير/استغلال (4) مناجم

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5 Nahla knew about Karima El-Said's story when she ....

a) went to school
b) read the newspaper
c) met her teacher
d) met her personally

6 What was shocking about Karima's story?

a) She worked for long hours and had no education.
b) She worked in carpets.
c) She was from Siwa.
d) She had the ability to work for long hours.

7 Nahla cut the article out of the page to ....

a) stick it on the wall
b) take part in a competition
c) read it several times
d) put it in the library

8 Karima couldn't bear her conditions and ....

a) decided to open her factory
b) escaped from the factory
c) committed a suicide
d) went to school

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Eating habits differ from one country to another. Some people are characterised by their healthy food whereas others prefer the tasty food whether it is healthy or not.

....

....

2. Food shortage is one of the most serious problems which the world faces nowadays. Experts say that it is due to misdistribution[1] of food and not lack of it.

....

....

3. Most governments impose strict[2] laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we should all be responsible for obeying these laws precisely everywhere.

....

....

4. Learning problems happens because of the way the brain takes in and processes[3] information. That's why, it's important to understand how it works.

....

....

5. Achieving good economic developments requires good planning and caring about scientific progress. Hence[4], governments should invest in scientific institutions.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6. Our deserts are one of our chief[5] sources of wealth which we should give due[6] care to. In this way, they will add much to the economy.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يحتفل المصريون مثل باقى شعوب العالم بالأعياد المختلفة التى يتميز كل منها بنوع معين من الطعام، فاللحوم تؤكل فى عيد الأضحى، والحلويات المختلفة تؤكل فى عيد الفطر وعيد الميلاد المجيد.

....

....

٢- مع انتشار فيروس كورونا فى العالم ينصحنا الأطباء بالحرص على الطعام الصحى الذى يحتوى على الفيتامينات التى تساعد أجسادنا على الوقاية من هذا الفيروس الخطير.

....

....

٣- لم تمنع صعوبات[7] التعلم بعض المشاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واستثمار قدراتهم[8] ومواهبهم، بل استطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة[9] والعمل الجاد.

....

....

٤- رغم معارضة البعض لاستخدام الحيوانات فى التجارب يعتقد الكثيرون أنه لو لم نستخدمها لما كان لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التى تنقذ حياة الناس.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) سوء التوزيع (2) صارم (3) يعالج (4) لذلك (5) رئيسي (6) المطلوب/اللازم (7) difficulties (8) abilities (9) persistence

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Watch a video

King Lear
Act I, Scenes i-ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

adult (n)	شخص بالغ	handwriting (n)	خط اليد
anger (n)	غضب	hide (v)	يخفى
beat (v)	يتغلب	income (n)	إيراد/دخل
believe (v) (d)	يصدق	inheritance	ميراث
bring (v)	يحضر	loyalty (n)	انتماء/إخلاص
conversation (n)	محادثة	pocket (n)	جيب
dead (adj)	ميت	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
deceive (v) (d)	يخدع	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم
decision (n)	قرار	respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
deserve (v) (d)	يستحق	succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
exit (v) (ed)	يخرج	test (n)	يختبر
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	throw (v)	يرمى
fool (n)	أحمق	trust (n)	ثقة
forgive (v)	يغفر	truth (n)	حقيقة/صدق

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ill health	صحة معتلة
have a plan	لديه خطة	My heart is broken	قلبى محطم (تعبير عن شدة الحزن)
angry with	غاضب من	loyalty to	إخلاص لـ
cruel to	قاسٍ مع	send ... away	يرسل ... بعيدًا
lie about	يكذب بشأن	stay with	يقيم مع

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice

King Lear Exercises

Act I Scenes i-ii

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a fact that some people such as criminals express their .... through violence.
a) triumph b) anger c) heritage d) inspection

2 My elder brother gets very angry when I .... him at chess.
a) beat b) win c) practise d) rehearse

3 My father punished my younger brother for trying to .... him about his exam results.
a) inform b) tell c) award d) deceive

4 A good business person can quickly make an important ....
a) consumption b) sale c) decision d) affection

5 After standing five hours on his feet, the poor worker .... a break.
a) reserves b) deserves c) observes d) empowers

6 Essam is a nice boy, so his teacher usually .... his occasional bad behaviour.
a) forgives b) awards c) shows d) breaks

7 Tourism is a major source of .... for people in Hurghada and South Sinai.
a) pension b) income c) pride d) loyalty

8 Samy began his own business with the .... he got from his grandfather.
a) degree b) certificate c) inheritance d) letter

9 In the past, all important people had to swear their .... to the Queen of England.
a) revenge b) disobedience c) treason d) loyalty

10 In Japan , after the emperor dies, the .... passes to his eldest son.
a) business b) power c) army d) parliament

11 The King decided to send his former minister .... as he was very angry with him.
a) at b) in c) to d) away

12 I believe that the young man won't .... in his business as he doesn't have any previous experience.
a) succeed b) pass c) agree d) argue

13 I believe that my wife will do the right thing because I .... her.
a) betray b) accept c) trust d) trick

14 We finally learned the shocking .... about our company's great losses.
a) truce b) truth c) fight d) dispute

15 I would never .... to my parents about the exam results.
a) lay b) imagine c) lie d) apply

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Unit 2

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I watched a good movie .... the life and work of Nelson Mandela.
a) writing b) devastating c) celebrating d) disrespecting

2 The police can really help you in the .... of an emergency.
a) event b) accident c) incident d) story

3 Police officers were able to .... useful information from the company's financial records.
a) exert b) tie c) extract d) deny

4 In fact, I .... it a rule never to make any friend who could not be useful to me.
a) did b) devised c) damaged d) made

5 It is believed that the tiger is .... to India.
a) kept b) native c) availed d) distracted

6 Unfortunately, internet websites are full of improper .... stories about famous people's life.
a) spicy b) sweet c) successful d) valid

7 We need to create a/an .... in which business can prosper.
a) air b) breath c) climate d) location

8 I have to say, with all due ...., that I don't think your solution will work.
a) case b) cause c) design d) respect

9 Hussein's fluency of English and German .... him well in getting the job.
a) played b) presented c) served d) rewarded

10 A parent can, on ...., help his/her son with his homework, but not all the time.
a) event b) occasion c) accident d) incident

11 The waiter said our bill would .... to 1000 pounds.
a) amount b) qualify c) clarify d) intensify

12 There is a shop which sells toilet .... such as soap and shampoo near our house.
a) brochures b) articles c) essays d) accessories

13 The first lecture of Professor Michael .... his students to the main topics of the course.
a) summarises b) explains c) introduces d) forces

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

14 Although my parents left my hometown, some of my .... relatives still live there.
a) far b) foreign c) strange d) distant

15 A sunroof was one of the extra .... that you could get with the car.
a) choices b) machines c) options d) items

16 Mr. Sobhi works in a .... school.
a) medical famous German b) German famous medical
c) famous German medical d) German medical famous

17 Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are .... each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than

18 For .... information about the flights , you can call the travel agency.
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest

19 .... information we have is not enough to proceed.
a) Late b) Little c) A little d) The little

20 He considered his friends either geniuses or idiots, and I fell into the .... category.
a) latter b) later c) latest d) late

21 One of the following sentences isn't correctly structured:
a) What a big car he has! b) How big a car he has!
c) What a big car has he! d) How big his car is!

22 We cannot act until .... orders from our boss.
a) far b) further c) the farthest d) farther

23 They are waiting for the .... updates in this matter.
a) latter b) late c) last d) latest

24 Toyota or Mercedes: which do you like ....?
a) good b) well c) better d) best

25 The red car is .... more expensive than the black one.
a) many b) very c) pretty d) slightly

26 The .... part of the book is more exciting and fascinating.
a) late b) later c) latter d) latest

27 The thief was brought to the .... police station.
a) nearest b) next c) following d) afterwards

28 You must take .... precaution in handling this machine.
a) little b) a little c) few d) fewer

29 The man was .... promoted to the higher post.
a) late b) next c) latter d) later

30 It's impossible to initiate this project as only .... people in the town are computer literate.
a) few b) a few c) fewer d) fewest

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 This programme is not suitable for children over 6 years old. The antonyms of the word" suitable" are ....
a) violent b) inconvenient c) improper d) similar e) respectful

2 You have the .... of working full-time or part-time in our restaurants.
a) admittance b) licence c) necessity d) option e) choice

3 The opening ceremony of the championship started .... a huge fireworks display.
a) with b) in c) at d) by e) for

4 Some countries of south Asia, for .... Indonesia and Japan, have a lot of earthquakes.
a) example b) free c) cost d) division e) instance

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 An estimated 200 people had attended the food .... in the local park.
a) gallery b) conference c) festival d) seminar

6 My elder brother often gets .... with his friends after work on Thursday.
a) together b) on c) over d) through

7 The decision to close the plastic factory should .... as a warning to factories that pollute the environment.
a) cook b) serve c) mend d) show

8 The hotel manager ordered the staff to .... the big hall ready for the conference in two days' time.
a) be b) do c) get d) design

9 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ....
a) more expensive b) much expensive
c) cheaper d) cheap

10 The younger you are, the .... freedom you have.
a) most b) best c) more d) much

11 Box A is bigger than box B, box C is bigger than box A.
a) Box B is the smallest box. b) Box A is the biggest box.
c) Box C is the smallest box d) Box B is the biggest box.

12 Robert is never on time. He always arrives .... than the rest of us.
a) the latest b) later c) last d) latter

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

13 I thought this test would be difficult, but it's .... test I've ever taken.
a) much easier **b)** easier **c)** the easiest **d)** easy

14 Out of all the films I've seen, this one is ....
a) sadly **b)** a sad **c)** sadder **d)** the saddest

15 Your answer is not complete, but it's .... than the other students' answers.
a) more correctly **b)** more correct **c)** the most correct **d)** much correct

16 Carrots are good for you, cakes are bad for you. This means ....
a) Carrots are worse for you than cakes.
b) Cakes are good for you.
c) Cakes are better for you than carrots.
d) Carrots are better for you than cakes.

ead the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence[1] of sport—the pursuit[2] of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation[3].

A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational[4] about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skillful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

(1) جوهر/خلاصة (2) مواصلة/تعقب (3) شهرة/سمعة (4) غير منطقي

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 According to the passage, the United States ....

a) has begun to give much attention to football

b) is fond of playing football

c) has won the football World Cup

d) is getting sick of football

18 In the second paragraph, the word "summit" means the ....

a) highest point
b) mountain top
c) award
d) summary

19 According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will ....

a) fail to succeed
b) be successful
c) lose enjoyment
d) be irrational

20 What is the author's attitude towards international games?

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.

b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.

c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.

d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world-famous in many ways.

21 Winning an international game can make the country ....

a) strong
b) weak
c) famous
d) occupied

22 In order to attend the final matches, the Scots ....

a) bought tickets online
b) sold their properties
c) rent their watches
d) bought TVs

23 According to the passage, people think that their country is important when ....

a) it comes first in a scientific competition

b) they support it in the stadium

c) they take the World Cup

d) they win a game

24 The best title for the passage is ....

a) The Importance of Football
b) The History of Football
c) How People Think of Sport
d) Sports and Argentina

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

25 Translate into English:

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد على انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media. If used in the correct way, social media can be a boon for mankind.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Sports and their good impact on man's health."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

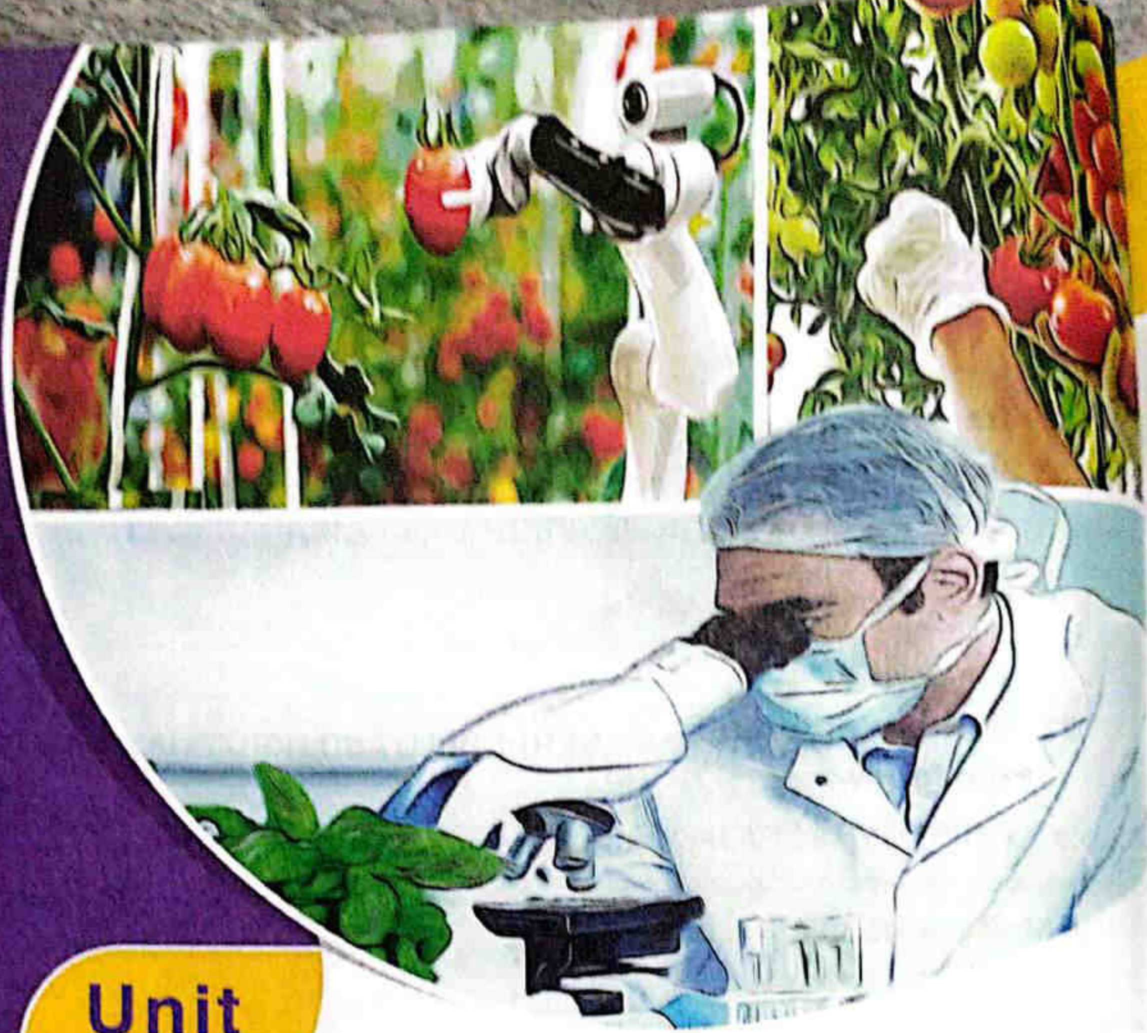
....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Unit 3

The future of food

Reading : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming
Writing : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary
Listening : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming
Speaking : Speculating about the future
Language : Will/Be going to; Future continuous
Life Skills : Problem solving

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study (Watch a video) Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة	production (n)	إنتاج
crop (n)	محصول	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام
Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية	source (n)	مصدر
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة	variety (n)*	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
livestock (n)	ماشية		

* The coach has a variety of choices for the squad.

Vocabulary on Reading

burger (n)	شريحة هامبورجر	instead (adv)	بدلًا من ذلك
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	laboratory (n)	معمل
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	land (n)	أرض
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج	level (n)	مستوى
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف/يتلف	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
dry (adj) (v) (y-ied)	جاف/يجف/يجفف	negative (adj)	سلبى
effect (n)	تأثير	percent (adv)	بالمائة
electric (adj)	كهربى	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
electricity (n)	كهرباء	researcher (n)	باحث
energy (n)	طاقة	save (v) (d)	ينقذ/يوفر
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة	seriously (adv)	بجدية/بخطورة

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

solution (n)	حل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
southern (adj)	جنوبى	the United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء	vehicle (n)	مركبة/وسيلة

Vocabulary on Listening

decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	island (n)	جزيرة
education (n)	التعليم	organisation (n)	منظمة
environment (n)	البيئة	project (n)	مشروع
gas (n)	غاز	rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
grow (v)	ينمو/يزداد	stuff (n)	أشياء/مواد
guest (n)	ضيف	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى (لا يأكل اللحوم)

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	local (adj)	محلى
capital (n)	عاصمة/رأس مال	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط	petrol (n)	بنزين
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	population (n)	السكان
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	rainfall (n)	هطول المطر
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع	success (n)	نجاح
furniture (n)	أثاث		

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	make more money	يدر مالًا/يكسب المزيد من المال
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	run a programme	يدير برنامجًا
get worse	يسوء/يزداد سوءًا	tell the difference	يميز الفرق (الاختلاف)
cut down	يقطع/يزيل	years to come	لسنوات قادمة
tell the difference between	يميز الاختلاف بين	look for	يبحث عن
expert on/in	خبير فى	solution to/for	حل لـ
hope for	أمل لـ	taste of	مذاق لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	variety of	تنوع من
instead of	بدلًا من	work with	يعمل مع
learn about	يعرف عن	heat up	يسخن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى/ابتكارى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
sustain	يدعم/يتحمل/يمدد	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	خلق/إنتاج	creative	مبدع
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
destroy*	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed destructive	مدمَّر (تم تدميره) مدمِّر
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظَّم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

* The army destroyed the settlements of the civilians.
The destruction disappointed the soldiers.
The attacks were destructive.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
destroy	يدمر	smash/ruin	construct/create	يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common	عادى
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce	يخفض
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	contradictory	positive	إيجابى
source	مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement/ accomplishment	failure/defeat	فشل
sustainable	مستدام	continuous	temporary	مؤقت
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity/uniformity	تشابه

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Unfortunately, a big area of forests was cleared to be used for .... and producing crops.
   a) economy b) agriculture c) education d) culture
2. We all believe that cycling is a totally .... form of transport.
   a) believable b) noticeable c) solvable d) sustainable
3. The company where I work sells a .... of gardening products.
   a) mixture b) variety c) combination d) collocation
4. The government should punish any factory that throws .... waste in the river.
   a) chemical b) useful c) effective d) valuable
5. The farmer bought a good horse at a market where .... is bought and sold.
   a) livestock b) dairy c) agriculture d) poultry

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Reading Text (1)

What do you think the impact of overpopulation on Earth is?

1) New solutions for our growing world



According to the United Nations, there will be almost 10 billion people in the world by 2050. As a result, we will have to increase our food production[1] by about 70 percent. However, farmers do not have space to keep more livestock[2] and grow more crops[3]. Instead, they'll need to look for more sustainable[4] solutions and this will involve producing a wider variety[5] of food.

How would you feel about eating a burger that was grown in a laboratory? Scientists think that it could be more sustainable than keeping livestock. Some of the people who have eaten these burgers say that they can't tell the difference between the new burgers and real meat.

(1) إنتاج
(2) ماشية
(3) محاصيل
(4) مستدام
(5) تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
(6) الزراعة
(7) أفكار مبتكرة

2) Changes in agriculture that can save the land



Researchers from the United Nations have found that some kinds of agriculture[6] are seriously damaging the land. This is not sustainable. If farming continues to cause so much damage, there won't be enough land left for food production. In Europe, most of the damage is due to farmers using too many chemicals, so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow without having to use so many chemicals. In southern Africa, the problem is that there is too much rain in the summer. In the future, we can expect that farmers in southern Africa will be using innovations[7] in technology to remove water from the land and use it elsewhere.

Why does farming cause damage to the land?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

How do we benefit from trees?

Reading Text (2) (Workbook)

The future of forests



The world has been losing millions of trees from the rainforests[1] every year for a long time. Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture, and many more get cut down because people need the land to grow food. However, there may be hope for the future because countries around the world are changing the way we think about these important areas[2].

Changes started a long time ago in Costa Rica. Around 60% of the rainforest in this small central[3] American country was lost in the 1980s. But in the 1990s, the government started working with local[4] farmers and persuaded them to look after the rainforest instead of cutting down more trees. This encouraged[5] tourists to visit the country, and soon the local people started to make more money from tourism[6] than from cutting down trees.

It was a great success[7], but things got worse in other parts of the world, such as the Amazon rainforest, until 2004. Then many people and governments around the world started to change how they thought about rainforests, and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year. Many parts of the Amazon rainforest are now protected[8] and, like Costa Rica, it is hoped that more people will be visiting and enjoying this extraordinary[9] place in the future. Finally, we can all hope that our children will be learning about the rainforests for many years to come.

(1) غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
(2) مناطق
(3) الوسطى
(4) محلى
(5) يشجع
(6) السياحة
(7) نجاح
(8) يحمى
(9) مميز/رائع

How did Costa Ricans make money after they stopped cutting down trees?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

hat do you know about the
nportance of rainforests?

Listening Text (1)



Interviewer : Hello, everyone. In today's show, I'll be talking to my guest[1], Dr Sarita Parker, who's an expert on the rainforests in Borneo. Welcome to the show, Dr Parker.

Dr Parker : It's great to be with you, John.

Interviewer : Now, we all think that we know what a rainforest is, but how would you describe it?

Dr Parker : A rainforest has a lot of trees and many different types of animals and plants live in it. And it's a place that's usually very hot and it rains a lot, too.

Interviewer : And what can you tell us about the rainforests in Borneo?

Dr Parker : Well, Borneo is a large island[2] in South-East Asia, and it has one of the oldest rainforests in the world. However, recently the island has become hotter and there has been less rain than usual. And scientists think that there will be even less rainfall[3] on the island in the next few years.

Interviewer : Why is that?

Dr Parker : Unfortunately, some farmers are cutting down trees and starting fires so they can grow crops and keep livestock there. Now the rainforest is about thirty percent smaller today than it was forty years ago. And if there's less rainforest, there's less rain and the island will get even hotter, you see. So, we're very worried that farmers are going to continue to damage the rainforest over the next few decades. That would be terrible for the animals and plant life in the rainforest, and Borneo would heat up even more.

Interviewer : Do you think those farmers will keep cutting down so many trees in the future, or will they use more sustainable ways to grow crops and keep livestock?

Dr Parker : Well, it won't be easy. Of course, many farmers are just trying to feed their families, however, we hope that in a few years' time, more farmers will be using sustainable farming techniques and things will improve. They need more information about how they can plant new trees and move crops around from one field to another each year. But farmers won't change until they understand why they need to change and they have everything they need to do that. My organisation[4] will be running an education[5] programme next month to help them.

Interviewer : Thank you very much for your time, Dr Parker.

ضيف (1)

جزيرة (2)

هطول المطر (3)

منظمة (4)

تعليم (5)

Why are the rainforests in danger?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Listening Text (2)

The population[1] of Egypt is growing[2] by nearly two percent a year. That means that there are one million more people living in its cities every six months. This is a problem in a country where 95 percent[3] of its population live on about four percent of its land. It is thought that the population of Egypt will be around 128 million by 2030. So what are the solutions[4] to these problems? One plan is to invest[5] billions of pounds in a new capital city outside Cairo. This is one of the big projects[6] that will help the 700,000 young people who start looking for work each year.

(1) السكان
(2) ينمو/يزداد
(3) بالمائة
(4) حلول
(5) يستثمر
(6) مشروعات

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I couldn't recognise him when he went into the army. His hair had been .... short and he looked different.

a) decreased **b)** cropped
c) continued **d)** kept

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most big cities are .... rapidly which results in serious problems.
   a) removing **b)** making **c)** growing **d)** continuing
2. A .... is a person who does not eat meat or fish.
   a) vegetarian **b)** farmer **c)** creator **d)** researcher
3. The government will .... millions of dollars in new schools and new hospitals.
   a) increase **b)** invest **c)** move **d)** cause
4. Australia has a low .... density. That's why they welcome immigrants المهاجرين there.
   a) devastation **b)** invention **c)** pollution **d)** population
5. Before joining the university, I received my .... at private schools.
   a) exercise **b)** education **c)** training **d)** degree

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Vocabulary in Use



FOCUS on Vocabulary

agriculture — الزراعة
- the practice or science of farming

crop — محصول
- a plant such as wheat, rice, or fruit that is grown by farmers and used as food

earth — الكرة الأرضية
- the planet that we live on

innovation — إبداع
- the introduction of new ideas or methods

livestock — ماشية
- animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm

production — إنتاج
- the process of making or growing things to be sold, especially in large quantities

sustainable — مستدام
- able to continue without causing damage to the environment

source — مصدر
- a thing, place, activity, etc. that you get something from

variety — تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
- the differences within a group, set of actions, etc. that make it interesting

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

	Word	Meaning	Examples
1	**cause**	١- سَبَب (يتبعها حرف الجر of) ٢- يسبب	▸ The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of vehicles. ▸ The fire caused serious damage to the factory.
	reason	١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for) ٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	▸ People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs. ▸ We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.
	reason with	يقنع/يتجادل مع	▸ I tried to reason with my friend to attend the party.
	reason why + جملة	سبب لـ	▸ I don't know the reason why he was absent.
2	**earth**	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	▸ The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.
	ground	أرض فضاء/أرضية	▸ On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.
	land	اليابسة	▸ The earth consists of water and land.
	soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	▸ This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil, not sandy soil.
	floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	▸ The floor of the flat needs cleaning. ▸ My flat is on the fourth floor.
3	**local**	١- محلى(خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة) ٢- أحد السكان المحليين	▸ Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city. ▸ We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
	national	قومى (خاص ببلد)	▸ Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.
	international	دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	▸ The United Nations is the most important international organisation.
4	**south** **southern**	جنوب جنوبى الجهات الأصلية هى: (north – south – east – west) ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern).	▸ My cousins live in the south of Egypt. ▸ In summer, temperatures are so hot in southern Egypt.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... so they will need to find new ways to help their crops grow.

تستخدم (will need to) بمعنى سيتوجب عليه بنفس استخدام (will have to).

- Many trees get cut down so that we have wood to make furniture.

تستخدم (get) بدلًا من (verb to be) في صيغة المبنى للمجهول مع بعض الأفعال.

- But in the 1990s, the government started working with local farmers.

تستخدم صيغة (المصدر .to + inf) أو (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (start).

- .... and the number of trees cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

الجملة أصلها.

.... and the number of trees which are cut down there has been getting smaller every year.

وتم حذف (which are) لأنها في صيغة المبنى للمجهول.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 On 6th October, our army began the attacks on the enemy by .... and sea.

a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

2 The .... anthems الأناشيد of different countries are played at the beginning of big football matches.

a) national b) local c) global d) international

3 My grandmother is very ill. Her joints مفاصل .... her a great pain.

a) reason b) apply c) cause d) share

4 The .... part of Egypt such as Aswan has very hot weather.

a) southern b) southerly c) small d) shortest

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

Practise more

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Cotton has always been an important .... in Egypt for a long time.
   a) solution b) innovation c) crop d) exploration
2. The government hopes to achieve .... economic growth which can eventually lead to prosperity.
   a) sustainable b) productive c) unreliable d) solvable
3. Students are offered a wide .... of courses in languages and computer software in this training centre.
   a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety
4. A network of wind turbines were built in the area to supply it with .... power.
   a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) serious
5. The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.
   a) excitement b) loss c) source d) innovation
6. Scientists fear that there won't be much land available for food .... in the future.
   a) education b) organisation c) production d) inspection
7. The President has announced a plan of great national projects which can .... thousands of jobs.
   a) take b) end c) involve d) create
8. The war in Ukraine proved the importance of .... to provide food for people if exports were stopped or delayed.
   a) fishing b) agriculture c) invention d) researching
9. The test will .... answering questions about a photograph.
   a) consist b) examine c) involve d) start
10. The new drug has some .... side effects such as drowsiness النعاس and headache.
    a) positive b) negative c) organised d) successful
11. A/An .... is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.
    a) graduate b) explorer c) researcher d) conductor
12. The company decided that 2% of its profit goes to the .... for cancer patients.
    a) newspaper b) increase c) cause d) charity
13. We should make more and more efforts to .... money for our new project.
    a) spend b) attribute c) save d) waste
14. Scientists are working hard to find new .... for our environmental problems.
    a) solutions b) causes c) designs d) sources
15. When we cut down rainforests, some of the animal habitats مواطن are totally ....
    a) saved b) created c) designed d) destroyed

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 Most governments invest more in renewable .... sources such as wind and wave power.
a) food b) reactor c) energy d) aviation

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 Some of the problems were mentioned in his report. The word "mention" is similar to the word ....
a) name b) neglect c) ignore d) invent

18 Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the .... and progress of any society.
a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

19 The population of Egypt increased .... about 2% last year.
a) out b) in c) by d) of

20 Eating fast food will eventually have a bad .... on your health.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affection

21 I decided to try tennis instead .... volleyball in the sports club.
a) in b) at c) of d) for

22 Unfortunately, as time passed, things .... worse in the shop until it was closed.
a) made b) got c) done d) devised

23 Success was achieved as a result of the good .... of the new manager.
a) organise b) organisation c) organised d) disorganise

24 The desired outcome of most services is a satisfied customer. The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun ....
a) source b) result c) explanation d) purpose

25 The young scientist became rich after he .... a lot of money out of his new invention.
a) did b) printed c) made d) declared

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 The bomb destroyed the building. The synonyms of the word "destroy" are ....
a) repair b) construct c) smash d) devastate e) touch

27 The market is full of farm fresh .... and the vegetables are not very expensive today.
a) affection b) produce c) innovation d) protection e) production

28 There are no simple solutions .... the problem of overpopulation.
a) to b) in c) at d) for e) by

29 The number of students at the college has .... from 2000 to over 5000.
a) grown b) increased c) reduced d) decreased e) planted

30 The new movie is supposed to be much better than the old one, but I can't .... the difference.
a) report b) say c) tell d) repeat e) ask

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B Language

Future Forms

1) Future simple المستقبل البسيط

A) will + inf.

Form
will + inf. • I will draw a picture in the test.

Negative
won't + inf. • I won't draw a picture in the test.

Question
Will + subj. + inf. ...? • Will you draw a picture in the test?

Passive
will be + P.P. • A picture will be drawn in the test.

(will + inf.) is used with the following

On-the-spot decisions (Quick decisions) القرارات الفورية	▸ I like these shoes. I'll buy them. ▸ **Father:** I'm thirsty. **Son:** I'll get you some water.
Future facts حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)	▸ Mazen will be 9 years old next month. ▸ Today is the 10th of Sept. Tomorrow will be the 11th.
Predictions based on what we think (without evidence) التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)	▸ Egypt will win the next World Cup. ▸ It will rain heavily tomorrow.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Offer العرض	▸ I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you. ▸ Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.
Request الطلب	▸ Will you help me with my homework, Hazem? ▸ Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?
Threats التهديد	▸ If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you. ▸ Behave well or I'll tell your father.
Warning التحذير	▸ Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe. ▸ If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.
Some verbs, expressions and adverbs: مع بعض الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال	- Verbs: **think/ believe/ expect/ promise/ hope/ predict** ▸ I promise I will get higher marks on the next exam. ▸ I hope my brother will pass his driving test. ▸ My parents think that I'll become an artist one day. - Expressions: **be sure/ be afraid** ▸ I'm sure Osama will win the race. - Adverbs: **perhaps/ certainly/ probably/ possibly** ▸ **Perhaps**, my boss will punish me for being late. ▸ The police will **probably** find the criminal.

لاحظ

hoped, thought + would	- I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
promise + to + inf.	- I have promised them to come early tonight.
just decided قرار سريع	- He has just decided that he won't join this club.
فعل أمر **+ or + will (won't)**	- Get up early or you won't catch the train.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you are too tired to cut the grass, I .... it for you.

a) will cut b) am going to cut c) cut d) am cutting

الإجابة هي (a) لأن الجملة بها عرض للمساعدة.

B) be (am/ is/ are) going to + inf.

Form

(be) going to + inf. • I am going to fix my bike today.

Negative

(be) + not + going to + inf. • I am not going to fix my bike today.

Question

(be) + subj. + going to + inf. ...? • Are you going to fix your bike today?

Passive

(be) going to + be + p.p. • My bike is going to be fixed today.

(be going to) is used with the following

For plans and decisions we have already made للخطط والنوايا والقرارات التى اتخذناها بالفعل	▸ He's going to employ more staff. (plan خطة / intention نية) ▸ I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. (decision قرار)
To make predictions with present reality or evidence: التنبؤ بدليل (شيء نراه أو نعرفه)	▸ Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners). ▸ The wall is moving. It is going to fall.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

C) Present simple المضارع البسيط

Form
- He/ She/ It/ singular + (v. + s, es, ies).
- I/ They/ We/ You/ plural + 1st form of the verb without "s".

(Present simple) is used with the following:

- When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/ busses, etc.).

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والحافلات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتليفزيون والامتحانات ... إلخ.

- The film starts at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)
- The plane arrives at Cairo Airport at 7:30. (timetable)
- The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning. (timetable)

D) Present continuous (am/ is/ are + v-ing) المضارع المستمر

Form
- (am/ is/ are + v-ing)

(Present continuous) is used with the following:

- For fixed arrangements in the near future.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.

- I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)
- I can't watch the final match with you as we're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)
- I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

The time conjunctions used with future simple and perfect الروابط الزمنية

The future simple is used with the following time conjunctions:

Future simple (will/ be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/until, when, as soon as	Present simple Present perfect

- After Ahmed finishes/ has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.
- The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.
- Call me as soon as you get back.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

لاحظ

الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل.

- I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.
- He won't say anything until the boss tells him.

Extra points

١) الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to

- Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.
- Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.

٢) تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! - Look out! - Take care!) غالبًـا على قرب حدوث الفعل، فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال be going to.

- Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

وأما إذا كان التحذير عامًا نستخدم will .

- Be careful or you will fall in the newly dug hole on your way to the market.

٣) بعد الأفعال think/ expect/ predict/ be sure نستخدم will.

أما بعد الأفعال thought/ expected/ predicted/ (was/ were) sure فنستخدم would.

- I thought they would phone me that evening.

عند التحدث عن الآمال والطموحات الشخصية يمكن أن نستخدم be going to.

- I think I'm going to be a good football player.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The band .... Denmark next May. They have already made arrangements.
   a) will visit b) are going to visit c) visit d) are visiting
2. They will move to another city after their father ....
   a) will retire b) retired c) retires d) retire
3. We .... to Alex in July. All things are okay.
   a) will be moved b) are moving c) move d) will move
4. My English lesson .... at ten tomorrow morning.
   a) starts b) is starting
   c) will start d) will be starting
5. It's arranged. We .... Sharm El-Sheikh this summer.
   a) are going to b) are going to go c) go to d) will go to

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice (Practise more)

Language Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Someone is at the door. I .... who it is.
a) am going to see b) will see c) am seeing d) would see

2 I'm sure my friend .... win the next school championship in swimming.
a) should b) would c) is going to d) will

3 They've got the tickets; they .... to London.
a) will have flown b) fly c) are flying d) will fly

4 The basketball team .... two games next week.
a) play b) are playing c) have played d) plays

5 The programme .... at seven o'clock this evening.
a) starts b) is starting
c) will start d) will be starting

6 I think it .... hot tomorrow.
a) is going to be b) will be c) is being d) would be

7 I .... the summer holiday in Marsa Matrouh as planned.
a) am going to spend b) will spend
c) am spending d) would spend

8 The train to Cairo is on platform No. 4 and it .... at 9.30.
a) will be leaving b) will leave c) leaves d) is leaving

9 When he .... next week, he will give me some money.
a) come b) will come c) is coming d) comes

10 Our manager .... dinner with the Minister next Thursday as appointed.
a) has b) had
c) is having d) is going to have

11 She is flying to Italy next week, her flight .... off at 7 a.m.
a) took b) taking c) take d) takes

12 She .... to Spain next spring.
a) is travelling b) travels c) has travelled d) would travel

13 **A:** Have you got any plans for tomorrow? **B:** Yes, I .... my grandparents.
a) would visit b) visit
c) am going to visit d) will visit

14 I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I .... be sick.
a) should b) am going to c) am to d) will

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

15 My brother has decided to immigrate يهاجر. He .... next month.

a) will travel
b) travels
c) is going to travel
d) travelling

16 I'm looking for my e-book reader. I .... an e-book on it.

a) will be read b) am going to read c) will read d) read

17 There are a lot of people in the room. It .... difficult to find a chair.

a) will be
b) is going to be
c) is being
d) will have been

18 I predict that in the future mobile phones .... much smaller.

a) are going to be b) are c) will have been d) will be

19 The fridge is empty. .... and get some food, please?

a) Will you go b) You will go c) Do you go d) Are you going

20 It is getting hot. I .... the windows.

a) am opening b) will be opening c) open d) will open

21 Ali will go to the park when he .... his homework. إدارة شبراخيت ٢٠٢٢

a) will finish b) finish c) had finished d) finishes

22 They have intended to buy a big house. They .... buy it soon. إدارة أسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) are buying b) are going to c) may d) will

23 I'm very late. .... me to the club, please? إدارة القناطر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) Do you drive
b) Are you driving
c) Will you drive
d) Are you going to drive

24 What a wonderful shirt, I .... it. إدارة نجع حمادى ٢٠٢٢

a) buy
b) will buy
c) am going to buy
d) am buying

25 Most of our shopping .... on the internet. إدارة بني عبيد التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) will be doing b) will do c) will be done d) is going to do

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) It's cold here. I will close the window.
b) It's cold here. I will have closed the window.
c) It's cold here. I will be closing the window.
d) It's cold here. Shall you close the window?

27 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I will be helping you with your homework if you want.
b) I will help you with your homework if you want.
c) I will have helped you with your homework if you want.
d) I'm helping you with your homework if you want.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

28 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) Liverpool is winning the next match.
b) Liverpool will have won the next match.
c) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil already.
d) Liverpool will be winning the next match.

29 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:

As it's cold and rainy, I ....

a) won't go out today
b) am going out today
c) will have gone out today
d) will be going out today

30 One of the following questions is grammatically incorrect:

a) What are you going to do next weekend?
b) What do you do next weekend?
c) What are your plans for next weekend?
d) What do you intend to do next weekend?

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 "Why have you got so much food?"

"Because I .... a meal for ten people."

a) was cooking
b) am going to cook
c) cook
d) will cook
e) have decided to cook

32 I promise .... hard and get high marks this year.

a) to study
b) I to study
c) I will study
d) to have studied
e) will study

33 It's very hot here ....

a) I'll turn on the air conditioner.
b) Will you turn on the air conditioner?
c) Are you going to turn on the air conditioner?
d) You will turn on the air conditioner.
e) You are going to turn on the air conditioner.

34 .... visit the Egyptian museum next weekend?

a) Do you
b) Do you offer to
c) Are you suggesting to
d) Are you going to
e) Do you intend to

35 "Since you don't know the way, I'll give you a lift." This is a kind of a/an ....

a) suggestion
b) On-the-spot decision
c) offer
d) request
e) excuse

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test Yourself in 20

Unit 3
Lessons 1 & 2

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists always think of new ways to help farmers to promote .... agriculture.
   a) sustainable b) real c) toxic d) unavailable
2. Toyota's latest car has just gone into .... for the Japanese market.
   a) produce b) production c) productive d) produced
3. The battery of the new mobile I bought can store .... for one or two days.
   a) gas b) atom c) chemical d) energy
4. The study about COVID-19 vaccine was carried out by .... at Oxford University.
   a) researchers b) farmers c) helpers d) officers
5. There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a/an ...., floods happened in the country.
   a) reason b) result c) effect d) impact
6. Scientists warn us that .... down rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
   a) sitting b) breaking c) destroying d) cutting
7. The space project took a whole .... from 2010 to 2020 and it was successful.
   a) reign b) area c) decade d) century
8. The train accident got much .... in the national newspapers because of its drama.
   a) space b) area c) gap d) hole
9. We .... the meeting as soon as he arrives.
   a) start b) have started c) started d) will start
10. There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it .... very hot.
    a) will be b) will have been c) is going to be d) is
11. Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I .... again!
    a) will sneeze b) am going to sneeze
    c) sneeze d) sneezed
12. Sayed thinks that his team .... next week's competition.
    a) may be winning b) will be winning c) will be won d) will win
13. A: Oh! I haven't got enough money to pay! B: Don't worry. I .... you some.
    a) am lending b) am going to lend c) will lend d) lend
14. A: Why do you want so many oranges? B: I .... make an orange juice.
    a) am going to b) will c) would d) won't
15. The programme predicts what life .... in 20, 30 or 40 years' time.
    a) will be like b) will be liking c) will have liked d) may be liking
16. 'Aya is in hospital.' 'Oh really? I don't know. I .... and visit her.
    a) will go b) am going c) am going to go d) will be going

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You are a citizen of the country you were born in. Usually, citizens live in their country as loyal[1] members of society. Many countries also have options so people who are not natural-born citizens can become citizens of those countries. When they complete the requirements, they are called naturalised citizens. As a citizen of your country, you have some rights, duties[2], and responsibilities. The law of any country should guarantee[3] the rights of all citizens and the rights should be the same for all citizens. The rights of citizens are protected in the constitution[4]. A citizen has the right to speak freely and the right to religious freedom. A citizen who is accused of a crime has a right to a fair trial.

In exchange for their rights, citizens have duties and responsibilities. They have a duty to serve in the army when asked. They should obey all laws. In wartime[5], they must serve in the armed forces when required to. They must pay taxes to support the services and programs of the government. Good citizens vote in elections to express their opinion on how the government should be run.

In addition to national citizenship, people are citizens of a state and a city. They have similar rights and responsibilities in each level of citizenship.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What protects the rights of the citizen in any country?
   a) The citizenship.
   b) The responsibilities.
   c) The constitution.
   d) The trial.

2 The best title to the passage is ".................".
   a) Asking for the rights
   b) Paying taxes
   c) The responsibilities of the citizenship
   d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities

3 "Doing what you are told" means ....
   a) obeying
   b) agreement
   c) voting
   d) exchanging

4 People who vote in elections to express their opinion are ....
   a) volunteers
   b) respectable and noble
   c) greedy
   d) selfish

(1) مخلص (2) واجبات (3) يضمن (4) الدستور (5) وقت الحرب

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

5 Naturalised citizens are those who ....

a) were born in the same country
b) participate in the elections
c) have duties not rights
d) are asked for a set of requirements

6 When we pay taxes, we perform one of our ....

a) duties
b) rights
c) abilities
d) advantages

7 What is not mentioned about the citizens' rights?

a) To speak freely.
b) To adopt any religion.
c) To practise sports.
d) To be judged fairly.

8 The underlined word "taxes" means ....

a) money given to the bank
b) money given to the prisoners
c) money given to the government
d) services done to the state men

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. In the last fifty years, technology has really changed the way farmers produce food. Agriculture is now developed with the help of machines that save time and effort.

....

....

2. Modern food industries(1) play important roles in reducing food waste and improving food preservation, thus reducing the total environmental impact(2) of agriculture and improving food security.

....

....

3. Organising your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable(3) goals. Well-organised people are the most successful and effective members in life.

....

....

4. The migration(4) from the countryside to the city has its negative effects on the Egyptian society. That's because it leads to many serious economic problems.

....

....

5. Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political, and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus, we should try to help restore this role.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6. Mass media[5] play an important role in forming public opinion and effective awareness[6] in our country. Therefore, they should be used properly for useful purposes.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- مـن المهم أن يـدرك المزارعون أهمية الحفاظ على الزراعة المسـتدامة للمحافظة على إمـدادات الطعام لنا وللأجيال القادمة، وهكذا نستطيع حل مشكلة نقص الطعام.

....

....

٢- تؤثر الأعمال الدرامية كثيرًا في الناس، لذا يجب استغلالها لتصحيح المفاهيم[٧] الاجتماعية ودعم القيم والأخلاق في المجتمع.

....

....

٣- أحد أخطر عيوب الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول توسيع الفجوة[٨] بين الشباب ووالديهم، حيث يقضون ساعات طويلة في استخدامهما دون التواصل مع الوالدين والعائلة، لذا لابد من التصدى لتلك الظاهرة الخطيرة.

....

....

٤- عُرفت مصر على مر التاريخ بأنها أرض التسامح[٩] الدينى والتعايش[١٠] بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذين عاشوا بسلام لقرون عديدة مما يشكل عاملًا هامًا للوحدة بين شعبها.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Our duty towards the people with special needs (the disabled)"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... — I used the right structure. .... — I used a topic sentence. .... — I wrote the conclusion. .... — I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) صناعات
(2) تأثير
(3) قيم/ذو قيمة
(4) هجرة
(5) وسائل الاعلام
(6) الوعى
(7) concepts
(8) gap
(9) tolerance
(10) coexistence

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
algae (n)	طحالب
available (adj)	متوفر/متاح
boring (adj)	ممل
chance (n)	فرصة
conclude (v) (d)	يستنتج/يختتم/ينهى
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام
continent (n)	قارة
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة
evidence (n)	دليل
fact (n)	حقيقة
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى
farm (v) ed	يزرع / يفلح
fashion (n)	موضة
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
heat up (v)	يزداد حرارة
introduction (n)	مقدمة
link (n)	رابط
lose (v)	يفقد/يخسر
notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
ocean (n)	المحيط
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
several (adj)	عديد
suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
topic (n)	موضوع
unusual (adj)	غير معتاد/غريب

Vocabulary on Listening

Word	Meaning
argument (n)	جدال/حجة
complete (adj)	مكتمل /تام
description (n)	وصف
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ
include (v) (d)	يشمل
original (adj)	أصلى
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
summary (n)	ملخص
underline (v) (d)	ضع خطًا تحت
word (n)	كلمة

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

Antarctica (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية
argue (v) (d)	يجادل /يقدم حجة
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على
control (v) (led)	يسيطر على
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب
flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب
focus (v) (ed)	يركز
fresh (adj)	طازج
fruit (n)	ثمرة/فاكهة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية
insect (n)	حشرة
leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
main (adj)	أساسى
outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
produce (n) (v) (d)	إنتاج زراعى/ينتج
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
roof (n)	سقف/سطح المنزل
specific (adj)	محدد
surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
urban (adj)	مدنى/حضرى

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

to conclude	وفى الختام
in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع
in my view	فى رأيى
available for	متوفر لـ
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على
focus on	يركز على
good for	جيد لـ
make sense	ذو معنى
over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة القادمة
grow to	ينمو إلى
link to	رابط لـ
opinion on/about	رأى عن
source of	مصدر لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلى
bore	يضجر/يمل	boredom	الملل	boring bored	ممل متضجر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
predict*	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحى

* - Scientists predict that the sun will explode one day.
- The prediction caused a lot of arguments.
- This case is not easily predictable.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
boring	ممل	uninteresting/dull	interesting/exciting شيق
control	يسيطر على/يتحكم	dominate/command	neglect/obey يتجاهل/يطيع
factual	حقيقي/واقعي	real/actual	fictional/false خيالي/غير حقيقي
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard	ignore/overlook يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ بـ	forecast/anticipate	disbelieve/misunderstand لا يصدق/يسيء فهم
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/ambiguous شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise	oppose/deny يعارض/ينكر
urban	مدني/حضري	civil	rural ريفي

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new electric car make ماركة will become .... for sale in April of next year.
   a) main b) suitable c) available d) reliable
2. Europe and Asia are two .... which lie next to each other.
   a) continents b) countries c) islands d) oceans
3. Workers should work .... in order to increase production.
   a) surprisingly b) efficiently c) negatively d) passively
4. Police officers are trying hard to find .... which proves the criminal's guilt.
   a) prediction b) description c) chance d) evidence
5. The problem of air pollution is especially serious in .... areas rather than villages.
   a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What is the strangest type of food you have heard about? Would you like to try it?

Reading Text (1)

Is algae the future of food?

We will need to find sustainable sources of food in the future because there will be more people to feed and many places will be too hot and dry for agriculture. So, why don't we think about farms in the sea?

Algae[1] are plants that grow very quickly in water and wet places. They are eaten by everything from the smallest fish to giant whales. Some kinds of algae are called seaweed[2], and this is a very popular food in China and Japan.

(1) طحالب
(2) أعشاب بحرية
(3) المحيط
(4) يلاحظ
(5) يستبدل

Algae is very healthy and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future. They hope that farmers won't need to damage the environment, because they will be growing our food in the ocean[3]. In fact, scientists think that growing algae will help to clean the sea and improve the air that we breathe because algae makes a lot of oxygen.

But will you want to eat it? Well, you might not even notice[4]. Scientists are already using seaweed to replace[5] salt in bread and some other foods to make it much healthier.

Reading Text (2)

This essay will focus on the future of agriculture.

First, I will explain the reason why agriculture needs to change. After that, we will look at several ways that agriculture could change. Finally, I will give my opinion on what farmers should do to prepare for the future.

The Earth's surface is heating up and soon there will be less land that farmers can use.

In the case of Africa, the continent[1] could lose up to 18 percent of its farmland in the next fifty years. As a result, farmers will need to farm their land even more efficiently[2].

(1) قارة
(2) بكفاءة
(3) متوفر/متاح
(4) دليل
(5) يستنتج

Due to the fact that there will be less land available[3] for agriculture in the future, farmers will need to grow a greater variety of crops. Evidence[4] suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and we may start the production of new sources of food, like algae, instead.

In my view, farmers should see this is as a chance to try new things and to start using new technology, such as robots, on their farms. They should start doing this immediately so they're prepared for the future.

To conclude[5], agriculture is clearly going to change a lot over the next few decades and farmers will need to change the way they farm, too.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Suggest 2 solutions for the problem of overpopulation and mention 2 effects on the environment.

Reading Text (3)

Hydroponics

With the population of the world predicted to grow to around 10 billion by 2050, one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production. A possible solution to this problem is using something called hydroponics[1].

Hydroponics is a way to grow plants without using any soil. Instead, farmers grow the plants in special water which contains[2] all the food that plants need to grow. This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil[3]. Hydroponics uses a lot less space than traditional farming and, surprisingly, it also uses less water because any water that the plants do not use is reused. There are also fewer problems with insects[4]. Almost, any plant can grow using hydroponics and many plants produce more fruit[5] and leaves[6] this way.

Some people argue that hydroponics is not very good for large farms because they need expensive computers to control the flow[7] of water, light, etc. to the plants, but others argue that it could offer the best solution to future problems. Many scientists think that in the future; we will be using hydroponics to grow food even in places where nothing grows now, such as deserts, Antarctica[8] or even space.

الزراعة المائية (1)
يحتوى على (2)
تربة (3)
حشرات (4)
ثمرة (5)
أوراق شجر (6)
انسياب (7)
القارة القطبية الجنوبية (8)

What are the benefits of hydroponics and can we use it on a large scale?

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What do you know about urban farming?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Urban farming

This essay will focus[1] on something my uncle is planning to do to help food production: something called urban[2] farming.

My uncle lives in London and first, I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends. Urban farming is growing food in our cities. Of course, cities are not usually good for farming due to the fact that there is so little green space, but he says they will be using flat roofs[3], gardens and open spaces to grow what they can.

In the case of London, people already grow a lot of flowers in their gardens, but next year, the group of friends will be planting more fruit and vegetables in any open spaces they can use. At the end of the year, they will be eating fresh[4] fruit and vegetables from these spaces.

In my view, urban farming is a great idea. It will help my uncle and his friends to save money in the shops, and it might also help them to earn[5] money. They hope they will be selling some of the produce[6] to local restaurants and markets.

To conclude, urban farming is an interesting idea. All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food in the future, even in cities without much outdoor[7] space.

(1) يركز
(2) مدنى
(3) أسطح
(4) طازج
(5) يكسب
(6) إنتاج زراعى
(7) خارج المنزل

What are the benefits of urban farming?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

...u usually need help from ...end when you do your homework?

Listening Text

...mir : Is that your homework, Hany?

...any : Yes. What's wrong with it? It took me ages.

...mir : I can see that. It's very long.

...any : So what?

...mir : Well, we were asked to write a summary(1), and yours looks longer than the text we're summarising(2)! You know it should be shorter, right?

Hany : Yes, I know that. But I didn't want to miss anything important.

Amir : So, what was the text about?

Hany : I can't remember, but it's all in my summary.

Amir : My friend, you need to think more and write less. Start by reading the whole text and try to understand as much as you can.
Ask yourself: What's the main idea? How would I explain it to a friend quickly? Don't start writing anything until you've done that.

Hany : But you know me. I always forget something important.

Amir : Then you should read the text again. But the second time, underline(3) the most important words or phrases in it. These are usually nouns for the things or people that the text is about, verbs for important actions, or phrases for times and places.

Hany : Okay.

Amir : After that, try to only look at the important words that you underlined when you're writing your summary. And just write complete sentences that fill in the gaps(4) between those words.

Hany : I see.

Amir : It's also helpful to use words or phrases that show the order in which things happen. Phrases like 'first', 'after that' or 'finally'.

Hany : And then?

Amir : When you've finished writing your summary, read it again. Check that it's clear, and then look back at the original(5) text to see if you've included(6) all the important information.

(1) ملخص
(2) يلخص
(3) يضع خطًا تحت
(4) فجوات
(5) أصلي
(6) يشمل

What are the most important points to follow on summarising a long text?

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need to provide a convincing .... as to why the system should be changed.
   - a) debate
   - b) argument
   - c) summary
   - d) disagreement
2. The murderer was sent to prison because a witness gave a detailed .... of him.
   - a) description
   - b) introduction
   - c) conclusion
   - d) infection
3. Their .... idea was to fix their old car, but they decided to buy a new one instead.
   - a) factual
   - b) original
   - c) dispensing
   - d) giant
4. I .... the essay's main points in the final paragraph.
   - a) assimilated
   - b) expected
   - c) summarised
   - d) divided
5. Unfortunately, there is a .... between the lifestyles of the old and the young in most societies.
   - a) notice
   - b) flow
   - c) gab
   - d) gap

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@

Check the answers at the end of the book.

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@




تطبيق الأضواء
جمّع نقاطك واستبدلها الآن بمجموعة
من العروض الرائعة من خلال شركاء الأضواء.
حمل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال
App Store Google play
www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

conclusion — خاتمة/استنتاج
- the end or final part of something

algae — طحالب
- a very simple plant without stems or leaves that grows in or near water

link — رابط
- a way in which two things or ideas are related to each other

summary — ملخص
- a short description that gives the most important information in a text.

argument — حجة
- a set of reasons that show that something is true or untrue, right or wrong

Notes on Vocabulary

Let's read these notes to check the difference in meaning.

1

tasty
ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)
- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.

tasteful
ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)
- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

earn
يكسب (مالاً عن طريق العمل غالبًا)

- She was earning good money during her work at the bank.

gain
يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)

- In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.

لاحظ: gain (speed - weight)

- I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.

win يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)

- It's supposed to be easier to win your home games.
- How does it feel to have won the gold medal?

beat يهزم/يتغلب على

- I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.

2

lose
يفقد/يخسر

- I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded.
- Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.

miss
يفتقد/يفوته شيء

- I really missed my family when I was abroad last month.
- I missed the train because I got up very late.

3

fresh
- طازج
-جديد وشيق
-حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
-نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

- I like to have fresh juice with my breakfast. طازج
- Our teacher always encourages having fresh ideas about science. جديد وشيق
- The marks on the shirt are fresh. You should wash it immediately. حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
- The players of the team still look fresh after the first half. They are very fit. نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

4

outdoor
بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم.

- Father has liked outdoor activities like camping and hiking since he was a child.

outdoors
بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) حال/ظرف، يصف فعلًا.

- I asked my wife to have breakfast outdoors. It was sunny and nice.

5

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ .... and some scientists believe that a lot more people will be eating it in the future.

. تستخدم (a lot - much) قبل صفات المقارنة للتعبير عن الاختلاف الكبير بين طرفى المقارنة.

▸ Evidence suggests that keeping livestock will not be sustainable and ....

All the evidence suggests that it could help us grow our own food.

. تستخدم جملة كاملة بعد (suggest) ويمكن استخدام (verb + ing) أيضاً.

I suggested going to the cinema tonight.

▸ .... one problem we will have is finding enough land for food production.

- صيغة الفعل (finding) بعد (is) ليست مضارعًا مستمرًا، فصيغة (verb + ing) بمفردها تعنى الاسم (إيجاد).

▸ This is a big help for farmers living in areas with poor soil.

- هذه الجملة أصلها:

This is a big help for farmers who live in areas with poor soil.

- حذف ضمير الوصل (who) واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing).

▸ I will explain what urban farming is and why he wants to do it with a group of his friends.

- استخدمت صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد أدوات الاستفهام (what - why) لأن الجملة فى صيغة غير المباشر.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. At least 600 employees will .... their jobs if the factory closes.
   a) miss b) gain c) increase d) lose
2. With the new players, our local team will be a tough team to ....
   a) win b) beat c) earn d) gain
3. Fast food can be ...., but it contains a lot of fat.
   a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste
4. Fouad wants a job that will let him work .... He doesn't like staying in offices.
   a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors
5. The manager encourages all fresh and creative ideas for products."Fresh" here means ....
   a) new b) tasteful c) drinkable d) energetic

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 Seaweed and other .... are eaten in China and Japan especially by people who live near the ocean.
a) algae b) insects c) fruits d) meat

2 Tickets for the new movie are .... at the box office of most cinemas.
a) factual b) acceptable c) available d) probable

3 I think you have a good .... of getting the job because you have good qualifications.
a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject

4 The police came to the .... that the criminal was not telling the truth.
a) introduction b) experience c) argument d) conclusion

5 The shop assistant told me that long skirts are still in .... this winter.
a) flow b) fashion c) flood d) fact

6 The Panama Canal provides a .... between the Atlantic and Pacific Oceans.
a) gap b) travel c) space d) link

7 The .... of our research this month will be the new space stations.
a) topic b) reason c) object d) fact

8 At the end of the news programme, they often give you a/an .... of the main stories.
a) evidence b) research c) summary d) introduction

9 Although he practised hard, he couldn't .... the race, but came fourth.
a) beat b) win c) earn d) gain

10 Scientists are trying to .... what the Amazon will look like in 20 years' time.
a) protect b) conclude c) predict d) remove

11 I've always wanted to live in the countryside to enjoy the .... air and the beautiful views.
a) original b) dull c) renewed d) fresh

12 .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany

13 Children's television programmes are made mainly for a/an .... age group.
a) public b) available c) specific d) accepted

14 The doctor tried to stop the .... of blood from the wound that was bleeding.
a) produce b) downpour c) flow d) storm

15 In my ...., new ways of farming are very important for us.
a) view b) sight c) scene d) scenery

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 Many experts say that there is real .... that the economy is improving in Egypt.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

17 While the oven is .... up, you can prepare the sauce for the chocolate cake.
a) heating b) speeding c) hurrying d) descending

18 The tie my friend wore at the interview was simple, but very ....
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

19 Most young people don't like to watch news programmes saying that they are ....
a) bore b) boredom c) bored d) boring

20 The film is based .... a true story of an American soldier during the Second World War.
a) at b) for c) on d) about

21 The bank guard was punished for neglecting his duty. The word "neglect" is an antonym of the word "..................".
a) expect b) control c) employ d) dismiss

22 You must rewrite this sentence as it doesn't .... any sense to me.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

23 I asked my friends to give me their opinions .... my new watch.
a) for b) at c) about d) over

24 Dreams can sometimes seem very real. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
a) fictional b) factual c) available d) advised

25 The woman gave an accurate .... of the man who stole her bag.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Newspapers predicted that the President would be re-elected. The synonyms of the noun "predict" are ....
a) develop b) forecast c) control d) anticipate e) neglect

27 The sports group will discuss a number of important .... about new sports in their meeting.
a) topics b) reasons c) subjects d) items e) searches

28 The police think they may have found some .... evidence that links him to the murder.
a) gradual b) fainting c) fresh d) faraway e) new

29 I noticed that he was fairly quiet during dinner. The antonyms of the verb "notice" are ....
a) note b) attend c) ignore d) interest e) overlook

30 At the .... of the meeting of the two groups, little progress has been made.
a) conclusion b) venue c) end d) place e) procedure

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study (Watch a video)

Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form

will be + v-ing

- I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.

Negative

won't be + v-ing

- I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.

Interrogative

Will + subj. + be + v-ing?

- Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

Usage الاستخدام

1 For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.

يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

- Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2 For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).

يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب. (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

- I'll be playing golf on Friday.
  (I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine.)
- I'll be seeing Fathy tomorrow.
  (We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3 When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.

يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شيء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.

- Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4 We use may be + v-ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:

نستخدم may be + v-ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

- Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5 The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- All night/ day tomorrow/ next week, etc.
- This time tomorrow/ next week - At + مدة tomorrow/next week - From .... to .... tomorrow.
- In an hour's time ....

- This time tomorrow, I will be watching a film with my family.

Extra Points

١) أفعال state لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

- This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

- لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يستخدم مستمرًا.

- This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

- الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول؛ لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

٢) لو كان الحدثان سيستمران فى المستقبل ووجد رابط زمنى فالحدث الذى بعد الرابط الزمنى يكون مضارعًا مستمرًا أو بسيطًا وليس مستقبلًا مستمرًا.

مستقبل مستمر	+	رابط زمنى	+	مضارع مستمر أو بسيط

- I'll be studying for my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In an hour's time, Ola .... home on the train.
   a) will travel b) travels
   c) has travelled d) will be travelling
2. Between now and next Thursday, I .... for an English exam.
   a) 'll revise b) may revise
   c) 'll be revising d) was revising
3. I wonder what he .... this time next year.
   a) 'll be doing b) shall do
   c) do d) 'll do
4. At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She ....
   a) is going to work b) will work
   c) works d) will be working
5. In 20 years, Khaled .... his own business.
   a) will be running b) will run
   c) runs d) ran

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice | Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
a) will leave b) am leaving c) going to leave d) shall leave

2 My elder son says he .... a doctor. This is his ambition.
a) is being b) is c) will be d) is going to be

3 Tomorrow .... a cold sunny day, according to the weather forecast.
a) will be b) was going to be c) is being d) is

4 I want to buy a new villa, so I .... save a lot of money.
a) going to b) will c) am going to d) will be

5 I can't visit you because I .... for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
a) might have b) going to prepare
c) will prepare d) will be preparing

6 I can't meet you tonight as I .... for the exam.
a) going to revise b) will have been revised
c) will revise d) am revising

7 Will you .... the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
a) be using b) use c) be used d) have used

8 I'll tell Hesham about the party. I .... him at work anyway.
a) will see b) will be seeing c) may see d) was seeing

9 From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I .... the final match on TV.
a) will watch b) going to watch
c) watch d) will be watching

10 This time next week, I .... on the beach.
a) will have sunbathed b) will be sunbathing
c) will have been sunbathing d) will be sunbathed

11 Will you .... into town this afternoon? Can you give me a lift?
a) be driving b) drive c) be driven d) have driven

12 Magdy .... in the school concert all next week.
a) will perform b) will be performing
c) performed d) has performed

13 I can't visit you because I .... my homework this evening.
a) will do b) will have done c) will be doing d) do

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

14 This flat is very hot, so we .... a flat that is far from the beach next time.

a) will rent
b) aren't going to rent
c) are renting
d) don't rent

15 Our last lesson .... at two o'clock this afternoon.

a) will be finishing b) is finishing c) will finish d) finishes

16 We .... a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

a) are having b) have c) will have had d) have had

17 The boys will watch the new film after they .... their pocket money.

a) are going to get b) get c) will get d) are sure to get

18 **A:** .... to the dentist this afternoon? **B:** Yes, why?

A: Can you make an appointment for me to see him?

a) Are you going
b) Will you have gone
c) Do you go
d) Shall you go

19 I think one day every new book .... as an e-book.

a) publish
b) will publish
c) will be published
d) will have published

20 Don't worry. I'm sure you .... them again soon.

a) see b) are seeing c) would see d) will see

21 I can't visit my cousins in June because I .... for a charity. ادارة شرق المحلة الكبرى ٢٠٢٢

a) will work
b) will be working
c) am being worked
d) will have worked

22 In the next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist. البدارى الثانوية

a) will be talking b) talking c) talk d) have talked

23 People................ in houses under water in twenty years' time. الشبراوين الثانوية

a) may have lived
b) will be lived
c) may be living
d) are going to live

24 This time tomorrow, I .... for my father at the airport. منية النصر محافظة الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a) will be waited
b) will be waiting
c) going to wait
d) will have been waited

25 Don't phone me at 7 o'clock. I .... إدارة الواسطى ٢٠٢٢

a) will sleep b) will be sleeping c) am going to sleep d) sleep

26 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I will be met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
b) I will have met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
c) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
d) I shall meet my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

27 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:
"Just a minute, please. I will be with you as soon as I .... this."
a) will do b) have done c) will be doing d) will have done

28 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:
A: Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow.
B: Sorry, I .... my boss at this time.
a) will have met b) will be meeting c) will meet d) meet

29 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:
A: Have you made plans for tonight?
B: Yes. I .... my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.
a) am going to visit b) will have visited c) will visit d) will be visited

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:
a) This time tomorrow, I will watch the new film.
b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
c) This time tomorrow, I watch the new film.
d) This time tomorrow, I will have been watched the new film.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 I'll help you as soon as I ....
a) finish
b) had finished
c) am going to finish
d) will finish
e) have finished

32 I can't come tomorrow as I .... the match at the stadium with my friends.
a) will watch
b) will be watching
c) watch
d) am watching
e) may watch

33 We don't think that the price of petrol ....
a) won't rise
b) aren't going to rise
c) will be raised
d) is raising
e) will rise

34 He promised .... me with my homework.
a) he would help
b) to help
c) he will me
d) that he will help
e) to have helped

35 The rich man's plane .... Cairo next week.
a) reaches
b) is going to reach
c) will be reaching
d) will reach
e) has reached

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

C Communication Skills

(I) Life Skills

The Problem Solving Process

Step	Characteristics
(1) **Define the problem**	• Differentiate fact from opinion. • Specify underlying causes. • Consult each faction involved for information. • State the problem specifically. • Identify what standard or expectation is violated. • Determine in which process the problem lies. • Avoid trying to solve the problem without data.
(2) **Generate alternative solutions**	• Postpone evaluating alternatives initially. • Include all involved individuals in the generating of alternatives. • Specify alternatives consistent with organisational goals. • Specify short-term and long-term alternatives. • Brainstorm others' ideas. • Seek alternatives that may solve the problem.
(3) **Evaluate and select an alternative**	• Evaluate alternatives relative to a target standard. • Evaluate all alternatives without bias. • Evaluate alternatives relative to established goals. • Evaluate both proven and possible outcomes. • State the selected alternative explicitly.
(4) **Implement and follow up on the solution**	• Plan and implement a pilot test of the chosen alternative. • Gather feedback from all affected parties. • Seek acceptance or consensus by all those affected. • Establish ongoing measures and monitoring. • Evaluate long-term results based on the final solution.
Reference	https://asq.org/quality-resources/problem-solving

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

(II) Writing

- **Write an essay about how to feed people sustainably in the future.**

Tips for writing the essay

Introduction	Reasons for keeping sustainable food: - Increase in the population. - Decrease of food production.
Main body (1)	- A modern way to grow food. - Aeroponics, definition, and basic rules.
Main body (2)	- Benefits of aeroponics to keep sustainable food.
Conclusion	- How aeroponics can secure food sustainable food. - How it is better than traditional methods of agriculture.

There is a big shortfall between the amount of food we produce today and the amount needed to feed everyone in 2050. There will be nearly 10 billion people on Earth by 2050. Moreover, as incomes rise, people will consume more and more. At the same time, we urgently need to decrease greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural production and stop the destruction of the remaining forests on earth. Hence, we need innovative and new ways to keep sustainable food in the future.

One of the most innovative ways to grow food is aeroponics. It is the process of growing plants in an air or mist environment without the use of soil. The seeds are planted in pieces of foam stuffed into tiny pots, which are exposed to light on one end and nutrient mist on the other. The foam also holds the stem and root mass in place as the plants grow. The plant's roots are sprayed with nutrient-rich water solution.

Aeroponics is suitable for growing many kinds of food. Tomatoes and herbs are the best examples. It enables us to grow food in all available spaces. Besides, the environment is kept free from pests and diseases so that the plants may grow healthier and more quickly. Last, it helps us save water resources.

Aeroponics is a better method of agriculture than the traditional soil-based ones. It provides faster growths, higher yields and also minimises or eliminates the need for herbicides and pesticides. It doesn't need special skills, so everyone can grow food wherever they find available space. In short, aeroponics is one of the most modern ways that can help us keep sustainable food in the future.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You would have another .... to succeed in the test if you tried again and again.
   a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject
2. On hearing about losing his job, Sameh was so angry that his speech didn't .... sense.
   a) do b) notice c) accept d) make
3. The report's main .... was that global warming is a serious threat.
   a) study b) conclusion c) attention d) experience
4. At present, we have no .... of life on other planets.
   a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science
5. Calvin Klein, Diesel and Christian Dior's .... shows attract a lot of attention as they are world-famous clothes designers.
   a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend
6. The roof of the farmer's yard was in such bad condition that it needed to be completely ....
   a) replaced b) placed c) disappeared d) destroyed
7. The research shows a .... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
   a) method b) link c) space d) travel
8. I thanked my friend for the .... meal she cooked for us.
   a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste
9. You have no chance of getting the job. You .... your time if you apply for it.
   a) be wasting b) will be wasting c) waste d) won't waste
10. This time next week, Hamid .... in a school football match.
    a) will play b) may play c) will be playing d) will have played
11. I have made a decision. I .... the weekend in my village.
    a) will spend b) will be spending c) am spending d) am going to spend
12. In five years' time, Ali will probably .... with his parents.
    a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living
13. A baby .... its mother's voice soon after its birth.
    a) is going to recognise b) recognise
    c) is recognising d) recognises
14. If you don't take a taxi, you .... on time.
    a) won't arrive b) aren't going to arrive
    c) aren't arriving d) don't arrive
15. Ahmed is a terrible driver. He .... an accident one day.
    a) is having b) will have c) is going to have d) will be having
16. This time next year, Salma .... for her final exam.
    a) will revise b) will be revising c) may revise d) revises

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs, and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs[1], a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling. They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking.

The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides.

Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to prey through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wildebeest, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favourite prey. However, these fast animals often escape. So lions also hunt smaller animals such as hares, birds, and reptiles[2]. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills[3] to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?

a) Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
b) Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
c) Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
d) Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2 What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?

a) The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
b) The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
c) The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
d) The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.

(1) صغار الأسد/ الأشبال (2) الزواحف (3) قتلى

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

3 Lions hunt ....
a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both small and large animals

4 The synonym of the word "prey" is ....
a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) mate

5 Living in groups is good for African mother lions because ....
a) the members of the group help them raise the cubs
b) the males are kind to them
c) they don't hunt, so they don't run
d) males take care of them

6 Cheetahs and leopards may hide their prey ....
a) to keep them fresh
b) to eat them with their families
c) to preserve them
d) because lions can eat the prey by force

7 The pride members can communicate through many ways except ....
a) odour
b) drawing
c) facial expressions
d) licking

8 The best title for the passage is "................".
a) The Life of the Lioness
b) The Species of Cats
c) The Prey
d) Prides and Individuals

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Scientists are always researching new methods of food production. They believe that without new and creative[1] ways, the world will face severe hunger.

....

....

2. Many people believe that producing food in laboratories is only science fiction. They can't stand eating meat or fruit made in an artificial[2] way.

....

....

3. The United Nations regards using humans in laboratory experiments as a crime. It is also one of the most important medical ethics[3].

....

....

4. Nobody is born perfect or ideal. Parents and teachers need to double efforts to bring out the hidden potential[4] in a child.

....

....

5. Disabled people may amaze ordinary[5] ones by the marvelous things they themselves can't achieve. They can even score amazing records.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6. Society must look after homeless[6] children to help them have a better future. That's why most charities try to raise more money to help them.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- تحاول الأمم المتحدة من خلال منظماتها توفير الدواء والغذاء الكافى لكل سكان الدول الفقيرة التى تعانى نقصًا حادًا، خاصة بعد تناقص الأرض الزراعية بسبب التصحر فى بعض هذه الدول.

....

....

٢- يزخر التاريخ بالكثير من الكتاب العرب البارزين[٧] الذين أثروا الأدب العالمى مثل طه حسين ونجيب محفوظ الكاتب العربى الوحيد الحائز على جائزة نوبل فى الأدب.

....

....

٣- تمثل الزيادة السكانية أحد أكبر عوائق[٨] التنمية فى المجتمع؛ لذا تعمل الحكومة على البحث عن حلول مناسبة لهذه المشكلة، من أهمها برامج تنظيم الأسرة.

....

....

٤- لابد من وجود قوانين صارمة[٩] لمعاقبة كل المصانع التى تتلاعب[١٠] بتاريخ الصلاحية[١١] على عبوات منتجات الأغذية المختلفة؛ لما تمثله من خطر على صحة الموطنين وسلامة[١٢] الغذاء.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary.	I used the right structure.	I used a topic sentence.	I wrote the conclusion.	I used the right punctuation.
....	....	....	....	....

(1) مبدع	(4) إمكانات	(7) outstanding	(10) manipulate
(2) مناصر	(5) طبيعى	(8) obstacles	(11) expiry date
(3) أخلاق	(6) مشرد	(9) strict	(12) safety

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

King Lear
Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attack (v) (ed)	يهاجم	immediately (adv)	فورا/ فى الحال
attendant (n)	مضيف/خادم	lady (n)	سيدة
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	mad (adj)	غاضب/مجنون
cart (n)	عربة الخيل	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
disguise (v) (d)	يتنكر	palace (n)	قصر
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	pull (v) (ed)	يسحب/يشد
follow (v) (d)	يتبع	rude (adj)	وقح
fool (n)	مهرج	servant	خادم
guilty (adj)	مذنب	soldier (n)	جندى
hit (v)	يضرب	taste (n)	مذاق
hold (v)	يعلق/ يمسك	wise (adj)	حكيم/عاقل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى نتيجة عملها	have the power	يمتلك القوة و السلطة
make problems	يسبب المشكلات	the cart is pulling the horse	العربة تجر الحصان (تعبير عن انقلاب الأوضاع)

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Practice

King Lear Exercises

Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We'll have a/an .... with our sick son 24 hours a day to keep an eye on him.
a) adviser b) attendant
c) consultant d) guide

2 I hope the children will .... well during my brother's wedding.
a) behave b) relieve c) fight d) shout

3 The criminals who robbed the bank were .... in post office uniforms.
a) disliked b) discouraged
c) disguised d) dissented

4 I still feel .... about bad things I said to my little brother when I was a teenager.
a) guilty b) happy
c) pleased d) proud

5 Mum always .... us to discuss our problems with her.
a) discourages b) recognises
c) realises d) encourages

6 The man was .... a large package in his arms when he fell down the stairs.
a) kicking b) pulling
c) holding d) tying

7 When we entered the restaurant, I .... that my friend was sitting at the next table.
a) booked b) dissolved c) abused d) noticed

8 It's .... to keep people waiting outside your house for a long time.
a) rude b) polite c) bored d) honourable

9 The rich businessman treats his home .... kindly and also pays them well.
a) servants b) members
c) masters d) partners

10 There were several .... guarding the main gate of the army camp.
a) revolvers b) sailors c) soldiers d) instructors

11 The medicine had a slightly bitter ...., so the child refused to take it.
a) shape b) effect c) paste d) taste

12 Grandmother was a/an .... old woman, and we all valued her advice.
a) lazy b) wise
c) unreasonable d) wisely

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Unit 3

Advanced & Open
General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Saline .... is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

2 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the .... for such a vast country.
a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain

3 If you click on this ...., it will make you able to get to your bank account.
a) connection b) contact c) link d) way

4 No doctor at the hospital was .... for comment about the accident as they were all busy.
a) replaceable b) available c) helpful d) acceptable

5 These days, poor people find it very difficult to .... their keep.
a) win b) award c) apply d) earn

6 When I read the job ...., I found it suitable for me and applied for it immediately.
a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division

7 Competition between the two companies is .... up.
a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating

8 The firefighters .... the fire in the building after three hours.
a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included

9 The nursery teacher gets ready for a new .... of students every year.
a) flock b) team c) crop d) line

10 The news of the promotion had a/an .... effect on the employees who were waiting for us.
a) electronic b) electric c) shocked d) exclusive

11 The company is unable to buy modern machines due to cash .... problems.
a) flow b) fault c) current d) blow

12 We all admire Safia Zaghloul for her efforts which served the .... of women's rights in the Arab World.
a) reason b) cause c) opinion d) neglect

13 Water and insects can be .... of infectious diseases such as malaria.
a) results b) effects c) vehicles d) planes

14 My uncle doesn't have the .... to start a new business, so he is going to get a loan from the bank.
a) suggestion b) intention c) place d) capital

15 A data show is a machine which can .... motion pictures, presentations and videos onto a screen.
a) invent b) design c) project d) reject

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 I like to have the radio on while ....

a) I study
b) I'm studying
c) studying
d) all are possible

17 Always turn your television off ....

a) before you leave home
b) when you went to bed
c) as soon as you got bored
d) after you have fallen asleep

18 He'll drink coffee while he .... for the bus.

a) is waiting
b) wait
c) was waiting
d) has waited

19 Now that the rain's stopped, ... to walk?

a) can you want
b) Are you wanting
c) do you want
d) have you wanted

20 I promised my father .... the full marks in the next exam.

a) will get
b) would get
c) to get
d) am going to get

21 My friend is very intelligent. He .... the test easily.

a) is going to pass
b) will pass
c) is passing
d) would pass

22 Look out! A car .... towards you.

a) is coming
b) is going to come
c) will be coming
d) will come

23 "Shall I carry your bag for you?" The right situation to the sentence is ....

a) request
b) promise
c) offer
d) on-the-spot decision

24 I don't think you .... any problems when you land in France.

a) will have
b) won't have
c) will have had
d) will be having

25 Once you take a nap, you .... a lot better.

a) feel
b) will feel
c) will have left
d) will be feeling

26 I will let you know the second the builders .... decorating the room.

a) have finished
b) finished
c) will finish
d) finishing

27 **A:** We haven't got any sugar. **B:** I know. I .... some this afternoon.

a) will buy
b) am going to buy
c) will be buying
d) will have bought

28 "I'll send you an email tomorrow." The right situation to the sentence is a/ an ....

a) request
b) offer
c) promise
d) threat

29 I'm sorry but I cannot come to the meal tonight. I .... work at 8 pm, so I .... arrive at the restaurant on time!

a) finish / am going to
b) will finish / will not be able to
c) am going to finish / am not being able to
d) finish/ will not be able to

30 **A:** Where are you going for your summer holidays?
B: We haven't decided yet. We .... Italy.

a) are probably going to
b) will probably go to
c) probably go to
d) will be probably going to

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Most chemical factories are polluting and destroying the environment. The synonyms of the word"destroy" are ....
a) damage b) ruin c) create d) establish e) inspect

2 The coach didn't include the best player in the match list fearing that his injury might .... worse.
a) do b) get c) fall d) become e) detect

3 The profits of the company are expected to .... by two percent next year.
a) farm b) heat c) grow d) turn e) increase

4 Farouk El Baz is one of the greatest experts .... geology especially the field of remote sensing.
a) about b) for c) in d) with e) on

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 The economic crisis which the world faced during coronavirus showed the importance of .... to assure food supply.
a) industry b) agriculture c) exploration d) deportation

6 Our teacher mixed two different chemicals with water to prepare the wanted ....
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

7 The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.
a) destruction b) deterioration c) innovation d) frustration

8 When my brother failed the test, mother couldn't .... her anger and started yelling at him.
a) consist b) promote c) include d) contain

9 **A:** Why are you switching on the TV? **B:** I .... a football match.
a) will watch b) watch
c) am watching d) am going to watch

10 When I see you tomorrow, I .... you my new book.
a) will show b) will be showing c) am showing d) show

11 I can't go shopping on Monday morning because I ....
a) will work b) may work
c) will be working d) will be worked

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

12 The population of the world .... to around ten billion by the year 2100.
   a) will increase   b) will be increasing   c) may be increasing   d) increases

13 Ali .... a good job when he finishes his education.
   a) may be getting   b) will probably be getting
   c) gets   d) will probably get

14 Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he .... in the sea.
   a) should swim   b) will be swimming
   c) will swim   d) may swim

15 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you .... your work.
   a) have finished   b) will finish   c) are finishing   d) had finished

16 When you .... off the train, I .... for you by the ticket machine.
   a) get/will wait   b) get/will be waiting
   c) have got/will wait   d) get/am going to wait

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be in the near future. There is a wide variety of types of weather. The weather can be sunny or stormy. It can be warm or cool. It also can be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes, the weather is severe.

A blizzard(1), a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist(2) is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many tools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature probably means plenty of sunshine for everyone.

In the rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge(3). A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air.

The wind brings us the weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane(4) provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about the weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.

(1) عاصفة ثلجية   (2) عالم أرصاد الجوية   (3) مقياس   (4) دليل اتجاه الريح

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 When we are prepared for the forthcoming blizzard, we will be ....

a) happy
b) safe
c) in danger
d) strong

18 The person whose job is to forecast the weather is called a ....

a) psychologist
b) philologist
c) monologist
d) meteorologist

19 When the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air, we can see a ....

a) rainbow
b) blizzard
c) thunderstorm
d) hurricane

20 The other meaning of "comes out" is ....

a) hides
b) disappears
c) appears
d) eclipses

21 The weather forecast is ....

a) seeing the rainbow in the sky
b) having a lot of rain in a day
c) predicting the conditions of the weather
d) measuring the speed of the wind

22 If meteorologists don't have the gauge, ...

a) they won't predict the condition of the weather
b) they won't be able to measure the quantity of rain
c) they will work more effectively
d) the direction of the wind will be unknown

23 What is the relation between the wind and the weather?

a) The wind moves the sea waves.
b) The wind blows the clouds.
c) The wind raises the temperature.
d) The wind carries sand grains.

24 The writer's opinion about the weather forecast is that it ....

a) is not always right although it uses magic
b) is always right and accurate
c) is not always right and we need better knowledge about it
d) is not accurate at all and it is a waste of time

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Translate into English:

- لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

Translate into Arabic:

Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"There have been several scientific inventions from time to time and these have made life more comfortable for human beings. Choose one or two of these inventions to talk about."

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@
جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@
جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Revision (1)

Units 1, 2 & 3

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

activity (n)	نشاط	immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى
amount (n)	كمية	injured (adj)	مصاب
athlete (n)	رياضى	interview (n)	مقابلة شخصية
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	local (adj)	محلى
boost (v) (ed)	يدعم/يعزز	meals (n)	وجبات
boxer (n)	ملاكم	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
boxing (n)	ملاكمة	register (v) (ed)	يسجل
certificate (n)	شهادة	regularly (adv)	بشكل منتظم
college (n)	كلية	runner (n)	عدّاء
competition (n)	منافسة	sports centre (n)	مركز رياضى
course (n)	مقرر دراسى	teenager (n)	مراهق
distance (n)	مسافة	training (n)	تدريب
fantastic (adj)	رائع	understand (v)	يفهم
fatty (adj)	دهنى	variety (n)	تشكيلة
fight (v) (n)	يقاتل/قتال	wide (adj)	واسع
foods (n)	أطعمة		

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

Kareem

I'm a runner who regularly runs very long distances. I need to eat large amounts of pasta, fruit, potatoes and other vegetables so I have enough energy to run for 30 or 40 kilometres each day. I also need to eat a lot of different foods that will make me stronger, such as meat, fish, and eggs. I drink a lot of orange juice to boost my immune system, which means that I'm less likely to get ill and have to stop training. I usually prepare my own food at home but when I want to eat out with my friends or family, I usually go to an Italian restaurant!

Amr

I'm a boxer, so I need to eat larger amounts of food than other athletes. When I started boxing, I started eating in a different way. Instead of three large meals a day, I usually eat six smaller meals, but I don't eat a wide variety of food. I usually eat eggs or white meat, like chicken, for almost every meal. Eating like this helps me to be stronger than the people I fight, which means I'm less likely to be injured. Before a big fight, I have to do a lot of training and I eat as much as possible, without eating unhealthy, fatty food, such as cakes and chocolate.

Reading Text (2)

To : aya@gmail.com

From : hadeer@gmail.com

Hi Aya,

How are you today? I think it's great that you're going to start cooking healthier food. I'm sure it will give you more energy and make you feel a lot better. I'd also like to learn how to cook meals that are healthier than the fast food that I usually eat. Do you want to do a cooking course with me so we can learn together? There's a new course that's going to start in two weeks' time at the local college. It's every Tuesday evening from 6 p.m. to 8 p.m. And it's only for teenagers!

You don't need to go to the college to register, you can do it on their website. Just search for the cooking courses and it's the first course you'll see. I can do the course on my own if you can't make it, but it would be a lot more fun to learn with a friend.

Talk to you soon!

Hadeer

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Listening Text

Interviewer : Hello and welcome back to the show. Next, we're going to talk to Mariam Mohamed from Gizeh who has just started to do an interesting hobby. Could you tell us what you do, Mariam?

Mariam : Yes, sure. In my free time, I'm learning to help people who are ill or who have had an accident.

Interviewer : That sounds great. So you can learn new skills and help other people at the same time.

Mariam : Exactly. I'm doing a first aid course with about twenty other young people at our sports centre.

Interviewer : And will you receive a certificate at the end of the course?

Mariam : Yes. I have to go to at least fifty hours of lessons. Then I'll get my first certificate which shows that I can perform basic first aid.

Interviewer : Great! So you're learning simple techniques to start with and then you'll learn more techniques, is that right?

Mariam : Yes. At the start, you need to learn simple things like how to put a bandage on someone. You don't have to know how to perform CPR, for example. I'm sure I'll be taking courses for the next few years so I can learn as much as possible.

Interviewer : And why do you enjoy learning first aid so much? What's so interesting about it?

Mariam : Well, it's great to learn something you can use to help people in the future, and the course is really fun, too. You don't need to sit at a desk and read books to learn first aid, you need to do it. Our teacher understands that and he makes sure that the lessons are fun.

Interviewer : So you can learn something useful and have fun at the same time. Fantastic!

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 My grandfather was in hospital for six months with a serious .... before he died.

a) treatment b) disease c) illness d) luxury e) care

2 The programme showed marvelous photos of the distant oasis. The synonyms of the word "distant" are ....

a) isolated b) spacious c) near d) strange e) remote

3 At least one member of the security staff should be trained how to .... first aid.

a) request b) do c) give d) confirm e) reform

4 In my ...., social media have done great harms to social relations

a) site b) scene c) sight d) view e) opinion

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 Archaeologists now use modern .... such as ultrasonic rays.

a) tricks b) magic c) techniques d) designs

6 Most Egyptian families gather to .... important feasts such as Eid El Fitr and Christmas.

a) share b) celebrate c) sadden d) collaborate

7 Schools should not .... only on exam results to assess the students' progress.

a) manage b) encourage c) focus d) distract

8 Over the ....of the next few years, the steel industry was reorganized.

a) departure b) session c) training d) course

9 She is a really nice person – one of .... people I know.

a) the nicer b) the nice c) the most nice d) the nicest

10 I have to talk to Osama. I .... forget to call him.

a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) don't have to

11 **A:** Osama phoned while you were out. **B:** Yes, I know. I .... him back.

a) am calling b) will call c) am going to call d) will be calling

12 It's a very valuable painting. It's .... painting in the gallery.

a) the most valuable b) more valuable
c) the more valuable d) a valuable

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

13 Tomorrow afternoon, we're going to play tennis from 3 o'clock until 4:30. So at 4 o'clock, we .... tennis.

a) are going to play
b) will play
c) will be playing
d) play

14 The station was nearer than I thought. The station wasn't .... I thought.

a) near
b) far as
c) farthest
d) as far as

15 This is a valuable book. You .... take good care of it and you .... lose it.

a) must/don't need to
b) needn't/mustn't
c) must/mustn't
d) needn't/don't have to

16 Right now, I'm working in a café. In 10 years' time, I hope I .... one of my own.

a) run
b) will be running
c) am going to run
d) ran

ead the following passage, then answer the questions:

Failure is probably one of the most discouraging moments in our lives. Failure should not, however, break our spirit. Instead, we should use the lesson learnt from our defeat to spur us on to greater achievements.

It is understandably humiliating to admit you have failed. Yet, this is an essential criterion to success. To overcome the main barrier to your success, you have to admit that you are not the great person you envision yourself to be. Overconfidence can easily be mistaken for confidence. There is but a thin boundary between the two. Yet, the results can be shockingly different. While one can help you achieve your goal, the other can dash your dreams to pieces.

Confidence is a good trait to have where a person is sure about his course of action or activity and it comes from past success and right decisions. Overconfidence is excessive belief in their own abilities ignoring the fact that their decision can be wrong.

There is, therefore, a need to be modest and unassuming. The fruits of success will be sweeter. Using confidence and knowledge, strike firmly towards your goal, and never be diverted from it by a mild success. A premature celebration can easily obscure the task to be performed.

After you have succeeded, use that confidence to improve yourself. Then personal progress can be guaranteed.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Choose the correct answer from a, b or c:

17 Learning from our defeat is something good to ....

a) frustrate us

b) blame others

c) commit suicide

d) motivate us to do well

18 In order to achieve success, you should ....

a) admit your failure

b) insist on your failure

c) change your career

d) depend on all people

19 What do we need to succeed?

a) Overconfidence.

b) Confidence.

c) Failure.

d) Forgetting goals

20 The main idea in the passage is "................".

a) Failure and its benefits

b) Overconfidence is the key to success

c) How to achieve success

d) Failure leads to success

21 When we celebrate our success early, we ....

a) hide our work

b) do the tasks better

c) spread the words

d) perform the task hastily

22 According to the passage, overconfidence is ....

a) when you think that you don't mistake

b) when you believe in your abilities

c) the same as confidence

d) something good about achieving goals

23 It's recommended by the writer to use our confidence ....

a) before getting the task

b) during the interview

c) after we succeed

d) when we lack efficiency

24 The only good use of failure is to ....

a) torture yourself

b) learn from it

c) change your career

d) be overconfident

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

25 Translate into English:

- لكل بلد أسلوبه فى الطهى والمكونات التى يستخدمها الطهاة فى أطباقهم، فما يبدو غريبًا فى بلد ما يصبح مألوفًا ومحبوبًا فى بلد آخر.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Food shortage is one of the most important problems that the world is expected to face in the next few years. That's why scientists are working on innovative ways to overcome it.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can man's diet affect his health in general?"

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

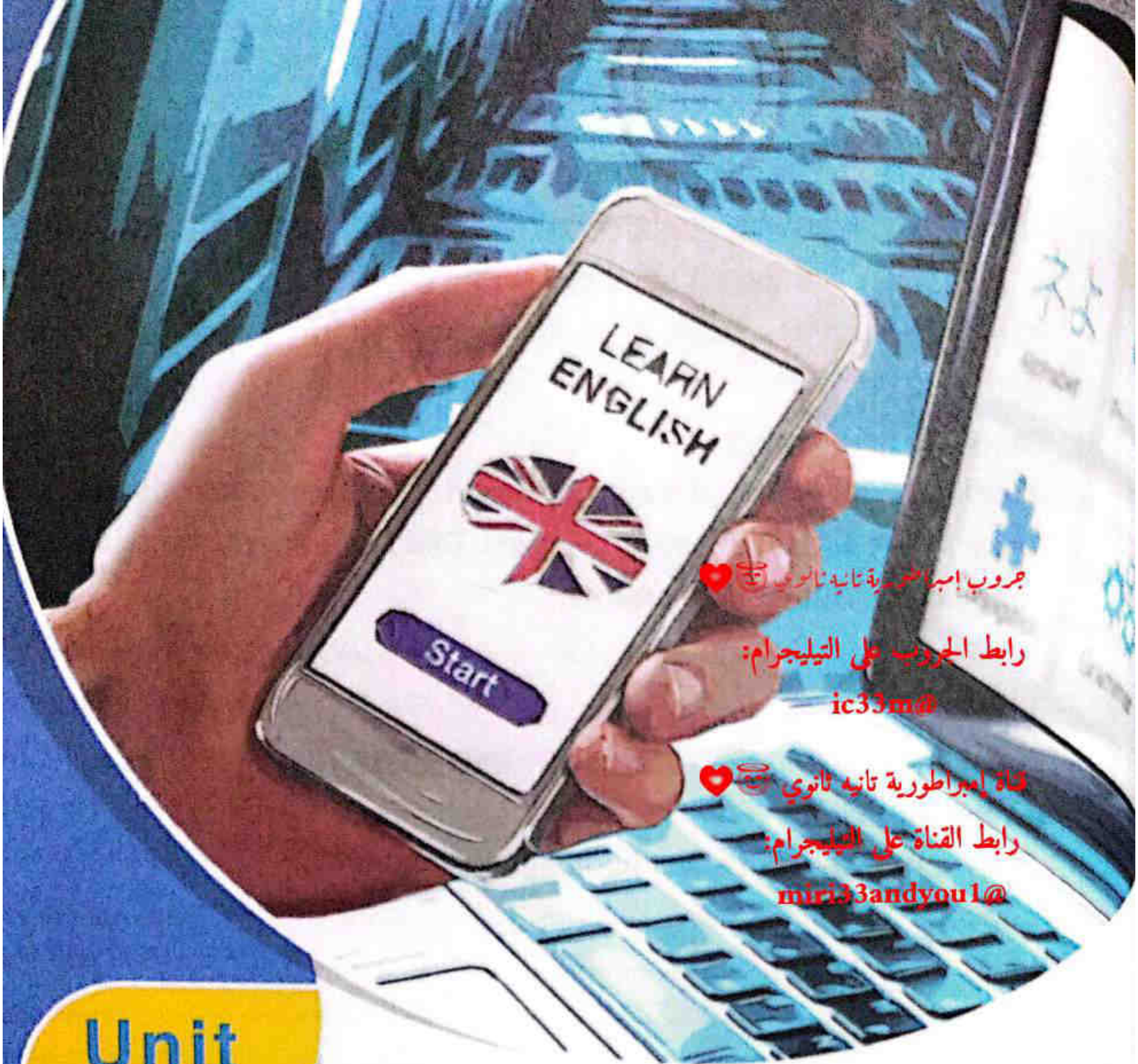
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

Unit 4

Changing English

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post
- **Writing** : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects
- **Listening** : A speaker talking about messaging tips on how to write a successful blog post
- **Speaking** : A debate
- **Language** : Reported speech: could/should have + past participle; reporting orders, requests and advice; abbreviations
- **Life skills** : Communication

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
abbreviation (n)	اختصار
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى
formal (adj)	رسمى
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس
innovator (n)	مبدع
linguist (n)	عالم لغويات
misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم
necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
tone (n)*	نبرة صوت

* Always speak in a friendly tone to your children.

Vocabulary on Reading

Word	Meaning
app (n)	تطبيق
actually (adv)	بالفعل
adults (n)	كبار/بالغون
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
basic (adj)	اساسى
communication (n)	اتصالات
correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
everyday (adj)	يومى
messaging (n)	المراسلة
punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
spelling (n)	الهجاء
suitable (adj)	مناسب
teenager (n)	مراهق
text message (n)	رسالة نصية
warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Vocabulary on Listening & Video Script

Word	Meaning
acronym (n)	أوائل حروف الكلمات
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف
advantage (n)	ميزة
apply (v) (y ied)	يتقدم بطلب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
author (n)	مؤلف
basically (adv)	أساسًا
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

conversation (n)	محادثة	increase (v) (d)	يزيد
deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل	lovely (adj)	جميل
disadvantage (n)	عيب	message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
expression (n)	تعبير	personal (adj)	شخصى
face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه	positive (adj)	إيجابى
facial (adj)	وجهى (بالوجه)	response (n)	رد/استجابة
immediate (adj)	فورى		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة	online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
blog (n)	مدونة	parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
care (v) (d)	يهتم	post (v) (ed) (n)	ينشر/منشورًا (على صفحات التواصل)
copy (n) (v) (y ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	reply (v) (y ied)	يرد
fantastic (adj)	رائع	request (n)	طلب
gift (n)	هدية	selfie (n)	صورة شخصية أمامية
mark (n)	درجة/علامة	voice (n)	صوت بشرى
meeting (n)	اجتماع		

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get upset	ينزعج	post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
have much fun	يستمتع كثيرًا	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جديدة	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية (أمامية)
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع	go back	يرجع
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	talk to	يتحدث إلى
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة	thank ... for	يشكر على
chat with	يدردش مع	increase to	يزداد إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع	increase by	يزداد بنسبة
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار	increase in	زيادة فى

Messages Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Form	Meaning
1. LOL	Laugh out loud	اضحك عاليًا
2. cul8r	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
3. gr8	Great!	رائع
4. plz	Please	من فضلك
5. idk	I don't know	لا أعرف
6. 2moro	Tomorrow	غدًا
7. thx	Thank you	شكرًا
8. ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالى
express*	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	أسف/ندم	regretful regrettable	نادم يؤسف عليه
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	required	مطلوب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

* - I'd like to express my gratitude to you.
- Your expression is meaningful and clear.
- Teachers' language should be expressive.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra	فرعى/إضافى
care	يهتم	pay attention/consider	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse/deny	يرفض/ينكر
frown	يكشر/لا يستحسن	disapprove	approve/smile	يقبل/يبتسم
misunderstand	يسيء الفهم	misjudge	understand/perceive	يفهم
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent	praise/delight	يمدح/يفرح
request	طلب	demand/seek	reply/answer	يرد
require	يتطلب	need/desire	offer/dislike	يعرض/يكره
response	رد/استجابة	reaction	request/question	طلب/تساؤل
warn	يحذر	alert	mislead/ignore	يخدع/يتجاهل

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In English 'Dr' is written as a/an .... of 'Doctor'.

a) form b) emoji
c) abbreviation d) replacement

2 The minister will be the host at a/an .... dinner to welcome the new ambassadors tonight.

a) normal b) formal
c) informal d) expressive

3 A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.

a) linguist b) botanist
c) astrologist d) author

4 The money the poor family earned did not even cover their most .... needs such as food and clothes.

a) suitable b) extra
c) additional d) basic

5 My grandfather is very sick and .... continuous health care.

a) requires b) acquires
c) inquires d) protects

Check the answers at the end of the book.

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- It was a big crash but fortunately, not everyone needed to be .... to hospital.

a) required b) admitted
c) applied d) requested

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text

Have you used anything other than the alphabet to write?

Plz read this article ASAP. It's gr8. Hope u 👍 it! 🙂

For any readers who can't understand the language of text messaging, the translation is: *Please read this article as soon as possible. It's great. I hope you like it.*

In text messages, abbreviations[1], emojis[2] and numbers are all used to make communication quicker. The language of text messages doesn't require[3] correct spelling, or difficult grammar and punctuation.

Messaging language is appearing in everyday English more often. When people write emails, many of them use a lot of abbreviations and emojis 😄. Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!!!!!!

(1) اختصارات
(2) رموز تعبيرية
(3) يتطلب
(4) مراهقون
(5) لغويون
(6) مبدعون
(7) رئيسي/أساسي

So, is messaging language damaging English? Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable in formal emails. And now teachers are worried that some teenagers[4] are no longer able to speak or write using English correctly.

However, some linguists[5] suggest that people who use messaging language are actually language innovators[6], introducing new ideas into English.

They argue that messaging language is quick, short and communicates a lot in a small space.

Whether or not you like messaging language, English is continuing to change. Perhaps it would be a good idea to learn some of the basic[7] abbreviations so you can enjoy talking to your friends with fun, short messages!

Is messaging language damaging the English language?

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Do you prefer talking to and meeting your friend or just messaging them?

Listening Text



Presenter : Hello everyone, thanks for joining me today on Afternoon Talktime. And today we are talking about messaging. My guest today is Dr Magda Morsy. She is the author[1] of the book *A Guide to Messaging* which encourages us to use messaging positively. Welcome to the programme, Magda.

Dr Magda : Thank you. It's lovely[2] to be here.

Presenter : So, many parents are worried about their children and messaging. I myself have a 15-year-old daughter and we had an example of a messaging problem just yesterday when she came down to dinner very upset. She couldn't stop crying. Eventually, she admitted[3] that she was upset because of her friend. They were messaging and having fun, but then my daughter, Talia, had written LOL - laugh out loud - in response[4] to a photo her friend, Mona, had posted of herself. Talia thought it was a funny photo. She waited for an hour, but Mona didn't reply. Talia couldn't understand what the problem was and was worried that Mona was upset with her.

Dr Magda : This is a good example of why we need to be aware of the advantages[5] and disadvantages of messaging, and how it can very easily make us worried and upset if we get it wrong.

Presenter : Because messaging is different to speaking face-to-face[6], isn't it?

Dr Magda : Exactly! Sometimes face-to-face communication can be confusing, it's easy to feel the other person isn't listening for example, or isn't interested in what you are saying, but messaging can be much more confusing. And this is basically[7] because you can't see the other person's face – is he or she smiling or frowning[8]? And you can't hear their voice – are they angry? Are they making a joke? Are they feeling sad? And you can't see their body movements. When we speak to someone face-to-face, we notice all these things; facial expressions, body movements, and the tone[9] of what they are saying. When we message, we have to guess a lot of these things. This means we can often misunderstand what the other person is trying to communicate.

Presenter : So, that's the negative side of messaging. Is there a positive side?

(1) مؤلف
(2) جميل
(3) اعترف
(4) رد فعل
(5) مميزات
(6) وجهًا لوجه
(7) أساسًا
(8) يكشر
(9) نبرة صوت

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Dr Magda : Yes, of course. Messaging is great for staying in touch with friends but remember that messaging is designed to be short and quick so don't expect to have long conversations, and don't get upset when you get one word or even an abbreviation or acronym(10) as a response to your message.

أوائل حروف الكلمات (10)

Presenter : So, what should my daughter, Talia, have done yesterday evening?

Dr Magda : Well, first of all, she shouldn't have got upset so quickly. Just because you don't get an immediate reply does not necessarily mean that the person is not interested in chatting with you. People are busy and they have got other things to do. So, she shouldn't have sat in her room for an hour looking at her phone and waiting for Mona to reply. She should have put her phone down and done something else and checked her phone later. And of course, if she was really worried, she could have called and spoken to Mona. She could have messaged and said, 'Can I call you?'

Presenter : So, I think Dr Magda is telling us to remember that sometimes more traditional communication is important.

Dr Magda : I am! Absolutely. Messaging is one form of communication, not the only form of communication.

Presenter : Great – thank you, Dr Magda Morsy. Next on the programme

What are the disadvantages of messaging?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The lazy student finally .... that he made a lot of mistakes.
a) expressed b) warned c) disbelieved d) admitted

2 When Samy behaved badly, his mother .... and shook her head.
a) frowned b) laughed c) regretted d) chatted

3 One .... of this new city is the lack of public transport.
a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) form

4 You are so lucky to live here with all this .... countryside around you.
a) hateful b) lovely c) confusing d) pleased

5 We must take .... steps to deal with the problem of water pollution.
a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

abbreviation اختصار
- a short form of a word or expression

innovator مبدع
- someone who introduces changes and new ideas

formal رسمى
- made or done officially or publicly

emoji رمز تعبيرى
- an icon, similar to an emotion, used in electronic messages and on websites, originally in Japan

linguist عالم لغويات
- someone who studies or teaches linguistics

tone نبرة صوت
- the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking

not necessarily ليس بالضرورة
- a response to something that has been said that may not be true or correct

frown يكشر
- to have an expression on your face that shows you are not happy

misunderstand يسىء الفهم
- to not understand properly

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

everyday (adj) يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	▸ Doing exercises should be part of your everyday activities.
every day (adv) كل يوم (ظرف)	▸ My father drives us to school every day.

communicate يتواصل/يتفاهم	▸ People use more than words when they communicate with each other.
contact يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	▸ As my friend is abroad, we contact by email. ▸ There is very little contact between the two cities.
connect يصل/يربط بين شيئين	▸ The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

meeting اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)	▸ The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.
conference مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)	▸ The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.
interview مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)	▸ Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris. ▸ A famous reporter is having an interview with the president tonight.
appointment موعد (مع صديق/طبيب)	▸ I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.

make يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة:	1. make + مفعول + (to) المصدر بدون ▸ We make our children read simple stories. 2. make + مفعول + adjective ▸ The actor's new film made him famous. 3. make + مفعول + adjective + (to) + المصدر ▸ The internet makes it easy to communicate with our friend.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- Some people use less punctuation, but others use more than they need!

- تستخدم (others) بمعنى الآخرين وتشير إلى الاسم المذكور قبلها (people).

- .... people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, introducing new ideas into English.

- الجملة أصلها

people who use messaging language are actually language innovators, who introduce new ideas into English.

- حذف الضمير واستخدمت صيغة (verb + ing) لأن الجملة مبنية للمعلوم.

- Talia couldn't understand what the problem was ....

- لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد أداة الاستفهام (الربط) (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية وليست الاستفهامية.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt will host the UN Climate Change .... in November 2022.
   a) Meeting b) Conference c) Interview d) Appointment
2. Most villages in Upper Egypt are now .... by roads.
   a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered
3. The internet has become part of all young people's .... life.
   a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days
4. My parents always .... me do my homework before I go to bed.
   a) make b) advise c) blame d) ask
5. I have to look my best as I'm having a/an .... for a new job.
   a) review b) conference c) interview d) meeting

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 A/An .... is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) app

2 Our boss is very ...., he doesn't call anyone by their first name.
a) personal b) cheerful c) patient d) formal

3 Mrs Ashraf .... at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

4 Sayed Darwish was one of the greatest .... of the 20th century music.
a) players b) editors c) explorers d) innovators

5 Our neighbour is an excellent .... who teaches French at Cairo University.
a) linguist b) astronomer c) astronaut d) biologist

6 Education must .... be about learning and developing skills.
a) correctly b) improbably c) necessarily d) excitedly

7 The headmaster kept his .... friendly with the students who came to talk to him about the school trip.
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note

8 Most people nowadays are aware of some of the .... rules of healthy living.
a) improper b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

9 Television, radio and other forms of mass .... have made the world a global village.
a) punctuation b) connection c) affection d) communication

10 People whose job .... staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) appears b) inquires c) requires d) applies

11 Some recent studies .... against drinking too much caffeine.
a) recommend b) fail c) deal d) warn

12 Being tall gave the young player a/an .... over the other players.
a) disadvantage b) care c) advantage d) experience

13 I drank coffee with my friend and .... about our experiences at work.
a) copied b) chatted c) admitted d) read

14 Choosing a new car is a matter of .... preference which differs from one to another.
a) personal b) common c) public d) general

15 The cost of the trip to Sharm El Sheikh is 1000 pounds for .... and 5000 pounds for children.
a) sons b) friends c) adults d) doctors

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 A .... is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.

a) kid b) teenager c) grown up d) toddler

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 She warned us not to go too close to the fire. The verb "warn" is a synonym for the verb ".................." .

a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) alert

18 There was an .... of fear on the child's face when she saw the lion.

a) express b) expression c) expressive d) expressing

19 I usually use Facebook and Twitter to .... in touch with all my friends.

a) lose b) miss c) pass d) stay

20 I really .... upset when father cancelled our trip to Alexandria because he had to go to work.

a) went b) made c) got d) did

21 The police fired a number of .... shots to make the people move away.

a) warn b) warning c) warring d) warned

22 A customer service clerk must be good at dealing .... people of different ages.

a) in b) at c) with d) of

23 My daughter is in the habit of .... a selfie in each place she visits for the first time.

a) taking b) doing c) drawing d) making

24 Working hard all the year-round will help you .... all exams.

a) succeed b) pass c) fail d) degrade

25 He seemed to approve of my choice. The verb "approve" is an antonym for the verb ....

a) agree b) accept c) frown d) expire

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 She lacks the most basic skills necessary for the job. The synonyms for the word "basic" are ....

a) minor b) primary c) extra d) unnecessary e) main

27 It was obvious from her .... that she didn't like my idea.

a) tone b) sound c) breathing d) voice e) shout

28 When I was in Paris, I .... a selfie in front of the Eiffel Tower.

a) did b) took c) made d) leave e) had

29 Most people now agree that computers are a part of our .... life.

a) yearly b) everyday c) daily d) helpful e) strange

30 Mona spent a long time talking .... her grandmother as she likes her much.

a) on b) to c) for d) with e) in

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

B Language

Direct Speech الكلام المباشر

هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان الشخص مباشرة كما ينطقه هو، ويوضع الكلام المباشر بين علامات اقتباس " ".

My brother said to me," Call me when you go home".

Indirect/Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- الكلام غير المباشر هو نقل كلام شخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان

My brother asked me to call him when I went home.

Reporting orders, requests and advice تحويل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر

لتحويل الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة لغير المباشر

١) يتحول فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية إلى أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
ask	يسأل	order	يأمر
encourage	يشجع	teach	يعلم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يخبر
help	يساعد	want	يريد
instruct	يوجه/يعلم	warn	يحذر

٢) تُلغى علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ويأتى بعدهم المصدر.

- The teacher said to us, "Stop talking."
  The teacher told/asked/ordered us to stop talking.
- My mother said to me, "If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."
  My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.
- My father said to me, "Don't waste time."
  My father advised me not to waste time.
- Ali said to his friend, "Study science at university."
  Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

لاحظ

- لكى تختار بين to أو not to يجب أن ترجع بالجملة إلى أصلها قبل التحويل فهناك أفعال ممكن أن تتحير فى الربط بعدها لأن المعنى باللغة العربية يمكن أن يتماشى مع الجملة مثل:

He warned his daughter (to/not to) walk in the dark alone.

- فلربما تترجم وتقول: «هو حذر ابنته أن تمشــى فى الظلام» وتختار to وهذا خطأ لأن أصل الجملة إما مثبت فنختار to أو منفى فنختار not to وأصل الجملة هنا هو «... Don't walk» فيكون الاختيار بالطبع not to.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The flight attendant instructed us .... our safety belts before taking off.
a) not to fasten b) fastening
c) to fasten d) don't fasten

2 My friend advised me .... nervous before the sports match.
a) not to be b) to be
c) be d) that I be

3 Ola said to Reham," .... the hotel your CV to apply for the job".
a) not to send b) to send
c) sending d) Send

4 Fatma .... Huda to revise for the test.
a) said b) advised
c) encouraged d) b&c

5 The teacher warned the students .... to write their names at the top of the page.
a) to forget b) forgetting
c) not to forget d) that they forget

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

could/couldn't have + P.P.

A) could have + P.P. - تستخدم could have + P.P. كالآتي:

1 Something was possible in the past.

شيء كان ممكنًا حدوثه في الماضي (احتمال ضعيف) تساوي might

- My friend was absent yesterday. He could/might have been ill.
- I didn't see Omar at the party last night. He could have left early.

2 Someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do.

كان في مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئًا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.

- We travelled to Aswan by train. We could have travelled by plane.
- You didn't pass the exam. You could have studied harder.

B) couldn't have + P.P. - تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. كالآتي:

1 Something wasn't possible in the past.

شيء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه في الماضي أو مستحيلًا.

- My father's keys are on the table. He couldn't have gone to work by car.

لاحظ أن معنى couldn't have + P.P. هو نفس معنى الاستنتاج المنفي في الماضي can't have + P.P.

- He couldn't/can't have known about the party from me. I haven't told anyone yet!

لاحظ

أيضا يمكن استخدام could/couldn't have + P.P. :

After wish/If only to refer to the past.

بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن أمنية لم تتحقق أو ندم في الماضي.

- I wish I could have helped but I was so busy that I didn't have the time.
- I wish I couldn't have bought that expensive mobile.

If ⟶ past perfect ⟶ could/couldn't have + P.P.

في جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة بعد if.

- If he had known that I was ill, he could have visited me.
- Unless he had woken up early, he couldn't have caught the train.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

could/couldn't + inf.

A) could + inf.

- Refers to the general ability to do something in the past.

استطاعة فعل شىء فى الماضى (مقدرة بدون مجهود).

- Our team could beat the star team last week.

للمقدرة فى موقف معين نستخدم : was/were able to – managed to

- Sameh and Kareem played a match yesterday. Kareem played well, but Sameh managed to beat him.

B) couldn't + inf.

1 Unable to do something in the past.

عدم استطاعة فعل شىء فى الماضى.

- I couldn't get the full mark in Maths yesterday as the exam was for giants.

2 It was forbidden/against the law.

لم أستطع لأنه كان غير قانونى.

- I couldn't park in Adly Street as it wasn't allowed.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't play football now, but I .... when I was younger.

a) couldn't b) could have
c) should have d) could

2 The copier isn't working. You .... the ink in a wrong way.

a) should have changed b) could change
c) couldn't have changed d) could have changed

3 If Sami had trained harder, he .... well.

a) should have played b) could have played
c) played d) couldn't have played

4 He .... at work yesterday. I looked for him in all buildings.

a) shouldn't have been b) could have been
c) couldn't have been d) could be

5 I was so sick yesterday that I .... get out of my bed.

a) can't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

should/shouldn't have + P.P.

A) should have + P.P./ought to have + P.P.

- We use should have/ought to have + past participle to talk about things we regret.

تستخدم should have/ought to have + past participle للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغي فعل شيء لم نفعله).

- He was thirsty during the trip. He should have bought more water.
- I ought to have left earlier to catch the train. I will take the next one.

B) shouldn't have + P.P./oughtn't to have + P.P.

- We use shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. to express feeling sorry about something that happened in the past.

تستخدم shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. للندم على شيء تم/حدث في الماضي (لم يكن واجبا فعله).

- I shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.
- She oughtn't to have revealed her friend's secret. She was dishonest.

Check Point 6 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The report is late. It .... on his desk by 2 o'clock.
   a) shouldn't have been b) should have been
   c) had to d) could be
2. Ahmed rode his bike in the middle of the road. He .... that.
   a) didn't have to do b) should have done
   c) could have done d) shouldn't have done
3. I missed the meeting in Assuit. I .... an earlier train.
   a) should have caught b) shouldn't have caught
   c) needn't have caught d) must have caught
4. You .... those books back to the library two days ago. You'll be fined.
   a) shouldn't have taken b) should have taken
   c) could take d) couldn't have taken
5. Ramy .... the pencil case at his sister. He might have harmed her.
   a) should have thrown b) should throw
   c) shouldn't have thrown d) didn't have to throw

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice | **Language Exercises**

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You .... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
a) could have caught b) could catch
c) might catch d) shouldn't have caught

2 They .... to China 2 years ago because of COVID-19.
a) couldn't have gone b) could go
c) should have gone d) should go

3 Fatma .... phoned me before going out. It was desirable.
a) shouldn't have b) needn't have c) should have d) must have

4 I was sitting at the back of the theatre and .... very well.
a) shouldn't hear b) can't hear
c) shouldn't have heard d) couldn't hear

5 She warned her daughter .... near the campfire because it was dangerous.
a) not to go b) to go c) that she go d) going

6 Ahmed's father advised him .... the front door at night.
a) locking b) that he locking c) to lock d) for locking

7 Samir was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He .... anybody.
a) couldn't have beaten b) could beat
c) can beat d) shouldn't beat

8 He .... much harder during the term. He wasted much time.
a) should work b) shouldn't have worked
c) could work d) should have worked

9 My brother .... to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
a) shouldn't have gone b) could have gone
c) could go d) couldn't have gone

10 I .... more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.
a) could walk b) could have walked
c) walked d) shouldn't have walked

11 Sara's mother warned her .... the oven because it was hot.
a) not to touch b) to touch
c) touching d) don't touch

12 You .... yourself yesterday. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.
a) could behave b) ought to have behaved
c) shouldn't behave d) shouldn't have behaved

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

13 The situation was bad, and it .... worse.

a) could have been
b) should have been
c) shouldn't have been
d) could be

14 The tour guide warned the tourists .... into the desert on their own.

a) going
b) to go
c) that they go
d) not to go

15 If I had known about the traffic problems, I .... a different route.

a) could take
b) might have taken
c) might take
d) couldn't have taken

16 I wasted the time doing nothing at the airport. I .... a book to read.

a) shouldn't have brought
b) should have brought
c) could bring
d) should bring

17 Galal was lucky. He .... hurt himself when he fell, but he was OK.

a) could
b) should have
c) couldn't have
d) could have

18 What made the police suspicious مرتاب was that I .... the number of my own car.

a) shouldn't have remembered
b) should remember
c) couldn't remember
d) could have remembered

19 You .... his phone ringing. He hasn't got a phone.

a) couldn't have heard
b) could have heard
c) should have heard
d) shouldn't have heard

20 You .... bought a new camera; it wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine.

a) should have
b) could have
c) shouldn't have
d) must have

21 I .... my car in a "No parking area". I had to pay a fine. إدارة أسيوط التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) shouldn't have parked
b) couldn't have parked
c) couldn't park
d) shouldn't park

22 He has got 80% only. He .... 90% if he had studied more. إدارة شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) could get
b) should have got
c) must have got
d) could have got

23 Mr Youseif .... at school yesterday. He is on sick leave for a week. إدارة المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) might have been
b) shouldn't have been
c) could have been
d) couldn't have been

24 I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night. القناطر - بنها

a) should have stayed
b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed
d) needn't stay

25 Julie .... the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead. إدارة السادات التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) could buy
b) shouldn't have bought
c) could have bought
d) was able to

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

26 It wasn't good of you to leave me in that critical situation. You .... me at least.

a) could phone
b) could have phoned
c) should phone
d) shouldn't have phoned

27 Choose the best correct answer:

a) I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
b) I warned my daughter to walk in dark streets alone.
c) I warned my daughter not to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
d) I warned my daughter not to walking in dark streets alone.

8 One of the answers to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
Yasser was ill and stayed in bed, so he .... to Aswan with his friends.

a) shouldn't have gone
b) can't have gone
c) could have gone
d) couldn't go

9 Choose the best correct answer:
The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody .... escape.

a) managed to
b) should
c) must
d) could

0 One of the answers to the following sentence is grammatically correct:
The building was empty when the firemen entered. The workers ....
through the exit doors.

a) couldn't have escaped
b) were able to escape
c) shouldn't have escaped
d) can't have escaped

hoose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 He .... his son not to make friends with bad people.

a) spoke
b) advised
c) suggested
d) recommended
e) warned

2 My son applied for a job as an accountant, but he .... his own business.

a) could have set up
b) could set up
c) must have set up
d) should have set up
e) had to set up

3 "Could" is used at present to function as a .... and a ....

a) request
b) blame
c) suggestion
d) necessity
e) prohibition

4 The opposing team were struggling all the time to win, but we .... beat them at the end.

a) might
b) managed to
c) can
d) were able to
e) should have

5 You .... punished her. She didn't deserve it.

a) needn't have
b) shouldn't have
c) couldn't have
d) mustn't have
e) oughtn't to have

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test Yourself in 20

Unit 4
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young couple gave each other some .... at Christmas.
a) prizes b) gifts c) emojis d) marks

2 Many people don't buy newspapers anymore as they read them ....
a) everyday b) inline c) offline d) online

3 The postman brought a/an .... and some letters for you.
a) icon b) sale c) parcel d) invention

4 I .... selling my car. It was the worst decision I've ever made.
a) regret b) admit c) recommend d) wish

5 It is said that dolphins use sound to .... with each other.
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

6 All staff members are expected to attend the next important .... about the company's future.
a) conference b) interview c) meeting d) appointment

7 You should .... for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
a) deal b) apply c) comply d) imply

8 The customer complained that he .... the store six weeks ago and didn't receive his order yet.
a) messaged b) warned c) chatted d) regretted

9 Our neighbours .... down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.
a) shouldn't have cut b) mustn't have cut
c) could have cut d) could cut

10 **A:** I had to walk home yesterday. I had no money for my fare.
B: Why didn't you tell me! I .... you the money!
a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent
c) could have lent d) could lend

11 .... you speak French when you went to the university in Paris or did you learn later?
a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't d) Should

12 You look tired! You .... to bed earlier last night.
a) must have gone b) shouldn't have gone
c) should have gone d) might go

13 I .... remembered to take an umbrella. I am totally washed by the rain.
a) must have b) shouldn't have
c) should have d) might

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

14 His health condition got worse and worse. He .... a doctor earlier.
a) shouldn't have seen **b)** ought to have seen
c) could see **d)** shouldn't see

15 Ola .... left school before the end of the day. She was punished.
a) could have been **b)** must be
c) should have **d)** shouldn't have

16 This team .... have trained well otherwise, they would have won the game.
a) could **b)** should **c)** couldn't **d)** shouldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A desert is a special region where only certain kinds of plants and animals can survive. All deserts have very little water. This means that only animals and plants that can do without water for long periods of time can exist[1] in the desert. Plants in the deserts are particularly adapted to the dry and hot environment. One well-known desert plant is the cactus[2]. Like many desert plants, this plant has very tiny leaves. As plants lose most of their water through their leaves, the small leaves of the cactus help to cut down water evaporation. There are other desert plants that do not have leaves at all. Some desert plants survive by avoiding the dry season altogether. During the dry season, this plant remains as a seed[3] and does not emerge[4] from the soil at all. When the rains come, this seed would grow very quickly into a plant. It would bloom rapidly and then scatter its seeds before the dry season returns.

Desert animals have also learnt to adapt well to life in this region. The camel, for example, survives well in the desert because water can be stored in its body. Other desert animals include rodents[5]. These animals need very little water as they can get all the water they require from their food.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The climate in the desert is ....
a) mild and windy **b)** hot and dry
c) rainy and windy **d)** hot and wet

2 The plants found in the desert must have ....
a) long leaves to store water in them **b)** deep roots to get water easily
c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all **d)** few leaves

3 To avoid the dry season, some plants ....
a) remain as seeds and do not emerge from the soil
b) hide under other plants to get protection
c) drink much water throughout the year
d) remain in far and wet regions under the sand

(1) يوجد/يحيا (2) الصبار (3) بذرة (4) ينشأ (5) قوارض

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

4 The antonym for the word "include" is "..................".
a) enclose b) consist c) contain d) exclude

5 The camel can survive in the desert because it ....
a) stores water b) hides under trees
c) digs the ground for water d) drink rain drops

6 The cactus is one of the plant that .... in the desert.
a) doesn't grow b) can't store water
c) survives d) grows underground

7 What are the qualities of the animals and plants which exist in the desert?
a) They are yellow. b) They are long and thick.
c) They can't be eaten by human. d) They stay without water for long.

8 The best title for the passage is "..................".
a) Life in the Oceans b) Rodents and Camels
c) Life on Earth d) The Desert Hard Life

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Although using abbreviations and emojis is not acceptable in any formal learning or writing, most young people use them in their everyday chats with their friends.

....

....

2. Learning foreign languages especially English widens[1] the horizon and scope[2] of learning. That's because most of the researches and information on the internet are written in English.

....

....

3. Competition[3] in our modern life affects everybody in society and sometimes leads to evil deeds[4]. Greed[5] for money and power is the root of many crimes.

....

....

4. We use messaging daily to communicate with friends and family, and its convenience[6] has made us want to use it to communicate with businesses too.

....

....

5. World Youth Forum , held annually[7] in Sharm El Sheikh, is a platform built by promising youth. It sends a message of peace, prosperity, harmony, and progress to the entire world.

....

....

6. Most young people today are substandard[8] in culture and knowledge. That's because they neglected[9] reading and even watching cultural programmes.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B) Translate into English:

١- أصبح تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية جزءًا هامًا من التعليم فى كثير من الدول، وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تساعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

....

....

٢- يجب أن يختار كل شخص الوظيفة التى تناسب[10] قدراته وتميزه عن الآخرين؛ ولا يبحث فقط عن الوظيفة ذات المرتب الكبير حتى يحقق النجاح فى الحياة.

....

....

٣- أثبتت أزمة كوفيد-١٩ والحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أهمية أن تحاول مصر تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى[11] من إنتاج الغذاء وأن تقلل استيراده.

....

....

٤- يحصل الأبطال المصريون فى الألعاب الفردية[12] على الميداليات والكئوس، ومع ذلك لا يلقون الاهتمام والدعم مثل الألعاب الجماعية التى لم تحقق الكثير من الإنجازات الكبيرة.

....

....

4 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend wants to improve her English and asks your advice the best ways to do so. Give her your advice."

Your friend's name is Manal and her email address is: manal10@gmail.com.

Your name is Leila and your email address is: leila10@yahoo.com

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️ جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤 جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام: رابط الجروب على التيليجرام: رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@ ic33m@ ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️ قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤 قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙

رابط القناة على التيليجرام: رابط القناة على التيليجرام: رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@ miri33andyou1@ miri33andyou1@

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) يوسع (2) مدى (3) المنافسة (4) الملمح (5) معايير (6) ملاءمة (7) سنويًا (8) ذو مستوى متقدم (9) أهمل (10) suit (11) self-sufficiency (12) individual

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study Lessons 3 & 4

Watch a Video

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

anymore (adv)	لم يعد	prefix (n)	بادئة (مقطع يُضاف لأول الكلمة)
debate (n)	مناظرة	procedure (n)	إجراء
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض/يخالف	proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
findings (n)	اكتشافات	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم/يتلقى
grandparents (n)	أجداد	society (n)*	مجتمع
headline (n)	عنوان	suffix (n)	لاحقة (مقطع يُضاف لآخر الكلمة)
modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح

* We should follow the customs of our society or at least respect them.

Vocabulary on Listening

blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة	key (adj)	رئيسى
check (v) (ed)	يراجع/يفحص	partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
cite (v) (d)	ينوه/يذكر	section (n)	قسم
conclusion (n)	خاتمة/خلاصة	sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر	thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات
image (n)	صورة	tips (n)	نصائح

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

age (n)	عمر/عصر	hobby (n)	هواية
aim (n)	هدف	interest (n) (v) (ed)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمامًا
Angles (n)	قبائل الأنجلو الإنجليزية	Latin (n) (adj)	اللغة اللاتينية/لاتينى
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق	member (n)	عضو/فرد
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	powerful (adj)	قوى ذو نفوذ
Greek (adj)	يونانى	recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر	record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل	site (n)	موقع
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/يبلغ عن تقرير	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
result (n)	نتيجة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
Romans (n)	الرومان	title (n)	عنوان
Russian (n) (adj)	روسى	Vikings (n)	غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)
Saxons (n)	قبائل الساكسون الإنجليزية		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at that time	فى ذلك الوقت	in general	بشكل عام
do the same	يفعل نفس الشىء	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	make different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
give advice	يعطى نصيحة	take ... away	يأخذ بعيدًا عن
give an opinion	يعطى رأيًا	that's why	لهذا السبب
add to/into	يضيف إلى	suitable for	مناسب لـ
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	talk about	يتحدث عن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
disagree	يخالف/يعترض	disagreement	عدم اتفاق	disagreeable	غير مستحب
find	يجد	finding	اكتشاف	found	مكتشف
interest	يثير الاهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	شيق مهتم
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز يمكن تمييزه
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
compare	يقارن	contrast/analyze	discard/neglect يستبعد/يهمل
debate	مناظرة	argument/controversy	agreement/harmony اتفاق/انسجام
interest	اهتمام	concern/passion	indifference/boredom لا مبالاة/ملل
modern	حديث/عصري	contemporary/ modernised	old/ancient قديم
procedure	إجراء	method/proceeding	inaction/inactivity عدم إجراء/عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/suitable	improper/inappropriate غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/obvious	ambiguous/indefinite غامض/غير محدد
report	يبلغ	inform/record	hide/conceal يخفي
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/inquiry	negligence إهمال

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... a bill containing 10% service for the new bed I bought.
   a) received b) disagreed c) sent d) designed
2. Parents should teach their children to have .... behaviour with strangers.
   a) probable b) recognisable c) proper d) careless
3. I recommend this book to anyone with an .... in chemistry.
   a) agreement b) interest c) invention d) argument
4. Facebook and Twitter are the most famous social .... websites.
   a) competition b) service c) course d) media
5. It's important that you always follow the correct .... of doing research.
   a) concept b) means c) procedure d) record

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

What do you know about Shakespeare?

Shakespeare and the English language

Language is always changing, and new words are created all the time. We need new words to describe new technology, ideas, and situations. For example, before people took photos of themselves on their phones, we didn't need a word for that. But when everyone started doing it, the word 'selfie' became very useful, and it was added to dictionaries[1] in 2013. Many famous dictionaries add new words every year, and sometimes they remove words and phrases that we don't use anymore[2].

(1) قواميس
(2) لم يعد
(3) بادئة
(4) لاحقة
(5) غير مريح/غير مرتاح

Shakespeare was a great innovator with language, and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else. He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, changing nouns into verbs, and connecting words to make new words. He also added prefixes[3] and suffixes[4], for example, he created 'uncomfortable[5]' from 'comfortable'.

Today the language that Shakespeare used can sound difficult, but he was writing in a way that made his stories easy for people to understand at that time.

Like messaging language, Shakespeare made new words from other words that everyone already knew. Then he used his words to describe the things that people most wanted to talk about.

Why was Shakespeare considered innovative?

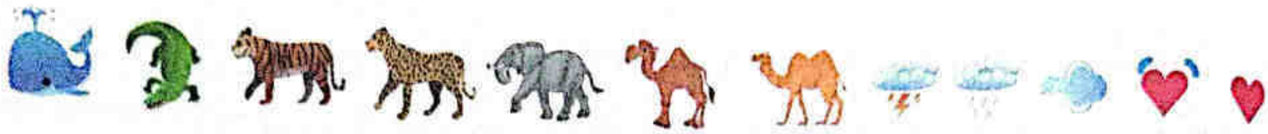
جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (2)

How old were you when you sent your first message?

Emoji fun!



Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone. The problem is, there are no words[1], just a long line of emojis. This is confusing[2] because our grandparents[3] think the messages were from me! Should I have taken the phone away from my sister?

When a child begins to learn how to speak, they first make different sounds. It seems that children do the same with messaging. They use emojis rather than proper[4] words to communicate what they want to say.

But is this a good thing? Yes! Young children are learning to communicate. With text messages, children can receive[5] and read replies which are written just for them. I'm sure this will make them feel special and they will want to communicate more.

So, instead of taking phones away from children, perhaps we should give them our phones more often and say, "Send your grandparents a message".

(1) كلمات
(2) مربك
(3) أجداد
(4) مناسب/صحيح
(5) يتسلم/يتلقى

Why should we give the phones to our children much often?

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What is the oldest language on Earth?

Reading Text (3)

Endless change

The Romans spoke a language called Latin[1] and they first took it to the country they called *Britannia* almost two thousand years ago. However, the English language came from Germany when people called *Angles* and *Saxons* arrived about 500 years later. Soon the *Land of the Angles* became known as England and the English have been using and misusing[2] foreign words ever since.

For example, words like cake, eggs, and happy all come from *Old Norse*, which was the language spoken by the *Vikings*[3] who came to England a few years after the Angles. However, many more English words came from the French, who arrived in 1066.

اللغة اللاتينية (1)

إساءة استخدام (2)

غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج) (3)

مميز/يمكن تمييزه (4)

قصر (5)

يعيد استخدام (6)

طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر (7)

Unlike the poor people, who continued speaking English, all the rich and powerful people spoke French. That's why there are so many words in English with similar meanings. French words are recognisable[4] because they usually describe something which is better. For example, the word house is an English word, but a big house is called a mansion[5], which is a French word.

In the modern age, we often reuse[6] old words from the past to make new international words for technology. For example, the first part of the word helicopter[7] is Greek and the second part is Latin, but the word was first used by a Russian speaker living in America.

What are the words imported from other languages?

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

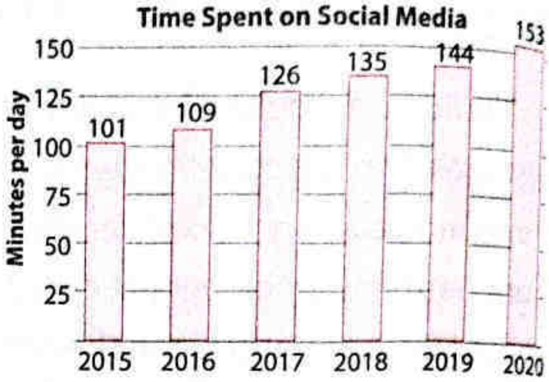
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

How to write a brilliant blog

1. (✓) Choose an interesting title.
2. ( ) Don't worry about spelling grammar or punctuation mistakes.
3. ( ) You shouldn't use images or photos.
4. ( ) Include a few links to other sites.
5. ( ) Don't organise your ideas dearly.
6. ( ) Give your personal opinion.



The aim of this report is to summarise(1) the findings of the survey(2) into the time students spend using social media(3).

Between 2015 and 2020, we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media. We also asked them how they used social media, and what they liked and disliked about using it. We recorded(4) our results and compared(5) them.

Most of the students that we spoke to were surprised by how much time they spent on social media when they thought about it carefully.

Many students thought that they were spending too much time on social media and some students said that they would try to spend less time on social media. Some students reported(6) that at least one member of their family had made a negative comment(7) about it.

(1) يلخص
(2) دراسة/تقييم
(3) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
(4) سجل
(5) قارن
(6) أخبر
(7) تعليق
(8) يبقى على اتصال مع
(9) اهتمامات
(10) بشكل عام

However, almost all of the students reported that they enjoyed using social media and most of the students did not want to stop using it.

Most students used social media on their phones. The students used social media to keep in touch with(8) their friends, and to follow their interests(9) or hobbies.

In general(10), students enjoy social media and they are using it more often. However, it is making a small number of students worried because they feel that they are spending too much time on it.

Why were the students surprised?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

o you usually write blog osts?

Listening Text



Speaker 1: Tips[1] on how to write a successful blog post:

1. Start with your topic. Think about what will interest and inform your reader.
2. Start with a headline[2] for your blog. A headline should tell the reader what the blog is about. It should be short, give information, be interesting and make the reader want to read the rest of the blog.
3. Find a suitable photo or picture that will show the reader what the blog post is about.
4. Plan the sections[3] of your blog. Add a sub-heading[4] for each section/new point.
5. Write your introduction paragraph. Be clear what the purpose of this blog post is. Speak to the reader – use first and third person. Include a question.
6. Write the main body of the blog. Keep sentences and paragraphs short. Include images[5] where useful. Do research to find facts to include.
7. Write a conclusion. Refer back to your headline and your introduction. Do not include new information in your conclusion. Speak to your reader again and include yourself; use 'we'.
8. Read and correct your blog post. Check spelling, grammar and punctuation. Check that you have not repeated key ideas too frequently[6]. Use an online thesaurus[7] to avoid repeating the same word too many times.
9. Ask a friend to read your blog post. Does it make sense to them?
10. Cite[8] all your sources of information.

(1) نصائح
(2) عنوان رئيسى
(3) أقسام
(4) عنوان فرعى
(5) صور
(6) بشكل متكرر
(7) موسوعة مفردات
(8) يذكر

What sources of information would you resort to for your blog post?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There is no reason to doubt the information in the articles .... above.
   a) searched b) removed
   c) recorded d) cited
2. Passengers complained that trains were .... cancelled.
   a) properly b) rarely
   c) frequently d) politely
3. I just had time to scan the newspaper .... before leaving for work.
   a) captions b) headlines
   c) articles d) analysis
4. Advertising is a/an .... element in the success of a product.
   a) key b) minor
   c) unimportant d) aimless
5. The air hostess told me that the first class seats are in the front .... of the plane.
   a) carriage b) section
   c) aisle d) route

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇❤️

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

تطبيق الأضواء

هل لديك سؤال في أي مادة؟

الآن يمكنك طرح أسئلتك في أي مادة من خلال خدمة اسأل الأضواء وسيتم الرد عليك من خلال فريق متخصص

حمل التطبيق الآن مجانا من خلال App Store Google play

www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary in Use

Focus on Vocabulary

debate — مناظرة
- discussion of a particular subject that often continues for a long time and in which people express different opinions

procedure — إجراء
- a way of doing something, especially the correct or usual way

headline — عنوان رئيسى
- the title of a newspaper report, which is printed in large letters above the report

blog — مدونة
- a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is added regularly

thesaurus — موسوعة مفردات
- a book in which words are put into groups with other words that have similar meanings

Notes on Vocabulary

1 **prefix**

البادئة هى جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا ومنها (mis – re – un)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand يسىء الفهم	misuse يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread يعيد قراءة	rewrite يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo يلغى العمل	unrecognisable لا يمكن تمييزه

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

suffix

اللاحقة هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة، ومنها (able - er - less)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable يمكن فهمه	recognisable يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer مهتم/مراع	writer كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless غير حريص	useless بلا فائدة

2

debate

مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

- The two politicians السياسيان will have a debate about their different economic ideas.

discussion

مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شيء مهم)

- Our English teacher sometimes starts his lesson with a short discussion about the new topic.

3

society

المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)

- The Egyptian society has been shocked by the violent murder.

community

المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)

- The president met representatives of the Egyptian community in New York.

4

title

١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
٢- لقب
٣- مسمى وظيفى

- The title of the play we study this year is "King Lear".
- The title "Mrs" is used with a married woman.
- My father's official title is the editor of the newspaper.

address

١- عنوان (مكان)
٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى
٣- خطاب/يخاطب

- I wrote my address in detail in the application form.
- You shouldn't post your website address on unknown pages.
- The manager addressed the clerks in his first speech.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- .... and he added more words and phrases into the English language than anyone else.

- تستخدم (else) بعد تعبيرات تحتوى على (some - any - no).

- He made new words by changing verbs into adjectives, ...
  So, instead of taking phones away from children, ...

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد حروف الجر.

- Yesterday, my four-year-old sister sent her grandparents some text messages from my phone.

- تستخدم صيغة المفرد وليس الجمع (four-year-old) فى التعبير السابق لأنها تعتبر صفة لكلمة (sister).

- .... we asked 1,200 students about the amount of time they spent using social media.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (spend).

- .... and most of the students did not want to stop using it.
  Most students used social media on their phones.

- تستخدم (most of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن فئة محددة.
- تستخدم (most) بدون (of the) بمعنى (معظم) عند التحدث عن مجموعة عامة.

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of the newspaper's main articles are usually at the front page.
   a) addresses b) titles c) ranks d) awards
2. There was a series of .... between the two main candidates of the elections.
   a) discussions b) debates c) fights d) battles
3. I asked the customer service clerk about the .... of the bank's new branch.
   a) address b) title c) headline d) award
4. After a long .... with his father, Ahmed agreed to wash the car himself.
   a) debate b) fight c) discussion d) dispute
5. The government built a new hospital to serve the rural .... near the Siwa Oasis.
   a) society b) government c) community d) business

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice (Practise more) Vocabulary Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice makes perfect!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 All over the world, there is a great .... whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
a) agreement b) debate c) search d) finding

2 The house where my .... lived is being demolished because it was old.
a) grandchildren b) sons c) grandparents d) visitors

3 The newspaper .... about the match was so exciting that I read it twice.
a) conclusion b) report c) conference d) procedure

4 The manager hopes he will become a .... in our company.
a) part b) surgeon c) servant d) partner

5 This .... of the hypermarket sells meat products like hot dogs and burgers.
a) site b) centre c) section d) aim

6 The .... of the research is to find new ways of cleaning polluted water.
a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim

7 The website warned all participants that any rude or racist .... will be deleted.
a) comment b) interest c) content d) record

8 Scientists .... the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a) divided b) compared c) cited d) remained

9 Stamp collecting has been a .... of mine since I was a child.
a) result b) challenge c) hobby d) tip

10 The young painter paints real .... of working-class communities.
a) photos b) images c) procedures d) descriptions

11 The doctor advised her to .... in bed for a week after the surgery.
a) remain b) remind c) last d) check

12 The referees .... the times of all competitors to decide the winner.
a) resulted b) explored c) received d) recorded

13 Jürgen Klopp, the Liverpool manager, is an excellent coach who knows how to get great ....
a) reasons b) purposes c) conclusions d) results

14 To be successful, the .... of a sports team must cooperate with each other.
a) organs b) callers c) members d) helpers

15 I recommend that you buy a more .... computer to get the project ready soon.
a) helpless b) powerful c) updated d) ancient

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 The author's name is usually printed below the .... of his or her novel.

a) title b) address c) speech d) text

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We contrasted the two characters of the story. The word "contrast" is similar in meaning to the word ....

a) compare b) sum up c) record d) find

18 My hometown is hardly .... to me as I last visited it in 2001.

a) recognise b) recognition c) recognisable d) forgettable

19 I don't have any clothes which are suitable .... the party.

a) for b) about c) on d) over

20 The two boys had a major .... over who should clean their father's car.

a) disagree b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

21 Girls like to .... special, so they often buy new clothes and accessories.

a) feel b) make c) work d) help

22 Do you want to add your name .... the waiting list for the tickets?

a) with b) for c) in d) to

23 The journalists who attended the conference .... notes of the most important points.

a) filled b) drew c) gave d) took

24 The blood samples have been sent away for comparison. The noun "comparison" is the opposite of the noun "..................".

a) debate b) application c) survey d) negligence

25 My younger sister always asks me to .... her my opinion of her clothes.

a) take b) give c) receive d) deliver

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 In modern times, advances in technology have made the world smaller. The antonyms of the adjective "modern" are ....

a) updated b) old c) fashionable d) ancient e) helpful

27 Angela Merkel, the German leader, had been one of the most .... politicians in Europe.

a) extra b) available c) important d) additional e) powerful

28 The .... of the educational survey will be published online.

a) reasons b) failures c) findings d) explorations e) results

29 Recycling is an excellent .... for getting rid of toxic waste.

a) procedure b) operation c) forum d) process e) seminar

30 It is important to .... in touch with the latest technology.

a) play b) keep c) make d) leave e) stay

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study (Watch a video) **Lessons 3 & 4**

B Language

Important Notes

1 could/could have for other usages

Rule	Usage
could be (inf.) might be (inf.) may be (inf.)	When we are uncertain about something at present. عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شيء في المضارع.

Example

- **A:** Where is dad? **B:** I don't know. He could be at the swimming pool or in the park.

Rule	Usage
can't have + P.P. couldn't have + P.P.	I'm certain that something didn't happen. (past deduction). شيء لا يمكن أن يكون حدث في الماضي (استنتاج قوي في الماضي).

Example

- She can't have left the house yet because her car is still outside.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P. may have + P.P. might have + P.P.	The speaker is not sure whether something happened or not. المتحدث غير متأكد مما إذا كان شيء ما قد حدث أم لا.

Examples

- The copier isn't working. It might have run out of paper.
- She could have gone to the shops. I'm not sure.

Rule	Usage
could + inf.	After wish/If only to refer to the present and the future If ⟶ past simple ⟶ could + inf. بعد wish/if only للتعبير عن أمنية في المستقبل أو المضارع، وجواب شرط الحالة الثانية بعد If.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Examples

- I wish/If only I could play the piano.
- I wish I could help, but I am so busy that I don't have the time.
- He could go with us if he weren't ill.

Could (present)

Polite request طلب مؤدب

Could + subj. + inf.?

- Could you buy me two kilos of sugar?

Suggestion اقتراح

Subj. + could + inf.

- You could study science at college.
- You could buy a new car.

More than a suggestion أكثر من اقتراح

could .. or ..

- You could come with us or you could stay here.

Recommendations التوصيات

could + inf.

- You could visit the citadel. It's interesting.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They .... at school. I'm not sure.
   a) could still be b) are still c) have still been d) must still be
2. Ali .... to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
   a) can travel b) can't have travelled
   c) must travel d) should have travelled
3. Why didn't Salah come to our party? He .... have forgotten or travelled.
   a) should b) might c) must d) mustn't
4. Last week, we .... enter the train without a face mask. It was against the law.
   a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) shouldn't
5. If Yasser got up late, he .... the train on time.
   a) can't have taken b) couldn't take
   c) couldn't have taken d) may take

Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 should for advice/should have for regret/blame

Advice	Regret/Blame
should/ought to/had better + inf. •They should (ought to) help the poor. •We shouldn't waste our time. •They ought to study hard. •He had better not use the phone a lot.	**should/ought to/have + P.P.** •You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night (blame). •I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time (regret).

Should + inf. for prediction

should + inf. ought to + inf.	to make a prediction للتنبؤ توقع حدوث شيء بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل (من المفترض/لازم).

- Osama should arrive soon. He left office at 6.

Passive

-عند استخدام modal verbs في المبني للمجهول إذا كان بعدها المصدر نستخدم be + P.P. وإذا كان بعدها have نستخدم been + P.P. بعد have.

Examples

- The Pyramids could be visited tomorrow. We aren't sure.
- The bills should have been paid two weeks ago.

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They are our best friends. They .... be invited to the party.
   a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) might
2. Ahmed .... to live without a job even if he has got a lot of money.
   a) shouldn't b) had c) oughtn't d) mustn't
3. You .... your friend yesterday as he was in a big problem.
   a) should have helped b) should help
   c) could help d) oughtn't have helped
4. You .... waste your time or money.
   a) should b) may c) can't d) shouldn't
5. He .... have worn such heavy clothes. It wasn't cold outside.
   a) could b) shouldn't c) must d) might

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice (Practise more) Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... have booked the tickets last week. I feel sorry for not booking the ticket.
a) can't b) should c) couldn't d) shouldn't

2 When you go to Paris next month, you .... with my cousin.
a) should have stayed b) shouldn't have stayed
c) could have stayed d) could stay

3 Hossam wasn't at the scene of the crime , so he .... have been guilty.
a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should

4 You .... have seen Hady in the park this morning. We were in Cairo together.
a) should b) might c) must d) couldn't

5 He .... have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
a) oughtn't b) should c) needn't d) must

6 He .... have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
a) can't b) must c) could d) might

7 Ali .... have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
a) can't b) must c) might d) should

8 **A:** I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.
B: You .... meat or chicken with some soup.
a) couldn't make b) could make
c) could have made d) should have made

9 You .... have been rude to him. He did nothing wrong.
a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) can't d) should

10 We .... have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do, but we didn't do it.
a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) might

11 He .... a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
a) might have consulted b) must have consulted
c) consulted d) could have consulted

12 She's late. She .... have taken the wrong road.
a) might not b) may c) can't d) should

13 I .... have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick!
a) couldn't b) could c) should d) shouldn't

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

14 They .... smoke there. They aren't allowed.

a) can't b) must c) couldn't d) might

15 He .... have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.

a) must b) ought to c) shouldn't d) might

16 We were totally free. We .... what we wanted.

a) couldn't have done b) should do
c) couldn't do d) could do

17 **A:** How did the robbers get in?

B: We don't know yet. The old woman .... have forgotten to lock the door.

a) must b) might c) can't d) should

18 You .... have taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.

a) couldn't b) should c) shouldn't d) could

19 .... you possibly give me a lift to the next village?

a) Didn't b) Shouldn't c) Should d) Could

20 He .... been working in the garage when we arrived. That might be why he didn't hear the bell.

a) could have b) has
c) can't have d) shouldn't have

21 I wish I .... go to the stadium tomorrow. الشراوين الثانوية

a) can b) could c) will d) may

22 You .... me that the meeting has been cancelled. إدارة نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢

a) should inform b) should have informed
c) shouldn't inform d) shouldn't have informed

23 Mum warned me .... play with matches. إدارة إبقو ٢٠٢٢

a) not to b) don't c) to not d) did

24 Hamid was working with me all day, so you .... seen him at the park.

إدارة جنوب - السويس ٢٠٢٢

a) should have b) couldn't have
c) could have d) shouldn't have

25 I .... downloaded that program. Now I have a virus on my laptop. إدارة غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٢

a) can't have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) will have

26 Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's baby .... sleeping.

a) can't be b) may not be c) may be d) should be

27 Salah should have saved much money to buy a new car. This means that he .... it.

a) didn't buy b) regrets buying
c) saved but didn't buy d) was wrong to buy

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

28 I called her, but there was no answer. She .... for Alexandria.

a) has probably left
b) should have left
c) can't have left
d) might have left

29 Fady .... his exam as he seems happy.

a) could have passed
b) shouldn't have passed
c) could pass
d) can't have passed

30 He .... his exams. I'm not sure.

a) must have finished
b) can't have finished
c) shouldn't have finished
d) might have finished

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 These flowers should be watered twice a week, but I always forget to water them. This means it's ....

a) important
b) advisable
c) unnecessary
d) necessity
e) must

32 I .... speak English fluently until I was 20 when I travelled to England and met native speakers.

a) couldn't
b) was able to
c) didn't succeed in
d) wasn't capable of
e) wasn't able to

33 I shouldn't have wasted my time playing and having fun. This can be a/an ....

a) suggestion
b) regret
c) request
d) blame
e) offer

34 **A:** You bought the tickets, didn't you?
B: No. I ...., but I didn't have enough money.

a) couldn't
b) ought to have been
c) was supposed to
d) should have
e) must have

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤

35 "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means ....

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@

a) They can't help sick people.
b) They should help sick people.
c) They must be helping sick people.
d) They might have helped sick people.
e) They ought to help sick people.

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇🖤
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

C Communication Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات

(I) Language Skills

Communication

Communication is simply the act of transferring information from one place, person or group to another.

Every communication involves (at least) one sender, a message, and a recipient. This may sound simple, but communication is actually a very complex subject.

The transmission of the message from senders to recipients can be affected by a huge range of things. These include our emotions, the cultural situation, the medium used to communicate, and even our location. The complexity is why good communication skills are considered so desirable by employers around the world: accurate, effective and unambiguous communication is actually extremely hard.

Categories of communication

1. **Spoken or verbal communication**, which includes face-to-face, telephone, radio or television and other media.
2. **Non-verbal communication**, covering body language, gestures, how we dress or act, where we stand, and even our scent. There are many subtle ways that we communicate (perhaps even unintentionally) with others. For example, the tone of voice can give clues to mood or emotional state, whilst hand signals or gestures can add to a spoken message.
3. **Written communication:** which includes letters, emails, social media, books, magazines, the internet and other media. Until recent times, a relatively small number of writers and publishers were very powerful when it came to communicating the written word. Today, we can all write and publish our ideas online, which has led to an explosion of information and communication possibilities.
4. **Visualisations:** graphs and charts, maps, logos and other visualisations can all communicate messages.

Reference: https://www.skillsyouneed.com/ips/what-is-communication.html

When we want the bus to stop, we use which category of communication?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

(II) Writing

Blog post writing

Write a blog post on the topic of mobile phone use and its effects today.

Tips for writing the essay:

Consider the following points:

- What is a healthy amount of time to spend using your phone?
- What are the effects of spending too much time on your phone?
- What solutions or advice can you offer your reader on how to use their mobile phone in the most positive way?

Mobile phone! Take care!

Yesterday I phoned my friend Nahla to ask her about the title of our English assignment this week. Her phone was busy. I continued to try to get her on the phone, but it was busy for 6 hours. Imagine! She had been talking with a friend all that time. Although there is no exact amount of time set for using your phone, experts warn us not to use a mobile that long.

Spending too much time on your phone has dangerous effects on your health as well as your social life. People who use their phones for long suffer health problems such as sleep trouble and obesity. In addition, it can take you away from your family and friends.

There are some things you can do to use your mobile phone positively. You can use it to communicate with your friends, but don't forget to get together with them. You can use it to play games, but don't neglect physical exercises. In short, you should make your mobile phone a means to be controlled, not a device to be controlled by.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Unit 4
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I asked my friend about the .... of this week's writing as I was absent.
a) address b) title c) site d) location

2 To ensure high quality, all products of the food factory go through strict testing ....
a) procedures b) findings c) results d) records

3 Experts advise all people to eat .... meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
a) probable b) interested c) comfortable d) proper

4 Some sociologists carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's ....
a) organisation b) society c) association d) interview

5 The .... of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers finally understand your view.
a) introduction b) tip c) conclusion d) start

6 Social .... have really changed the way people communicate, work, and shop.
a) service b) media c) status d) work

7 The interview with the new minister was .... on the front page of the newspaper.
a) summarised b) commented c) reduced d) increased

8 The hospital conducted a/an .... asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation

9 I'm really cold! I .... have brought my coat.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) might

10 If I had gone with my friends to the Red Sea, I .... scuba diving lessons.
a) must have taken b) can't have taken
c) could take d) could have taken

11 Really, I can't remember you, but I .... you before.
a) should have met b) shouldn't have met
c) might have met d) must met

12 Ahmed waited for you outside for a long time and was angry. You .... to have met him.
a) oughtn't b) should c) ought d) must

13 A: I threw your old books into the recycling bin.
B: Oh, no! You .... have done that. I need some of them for school.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) can't d) couldn't

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

14 I wonder why Ali hasn't come to my party. I suppose he .... have received the invitation.

a) must b) might not c) might d) shouldn't

15 You .... believe everything you read in the newspapers.

a) need b) must c) aren't d) shouldn't

16 Tamer walked into a wall. He .... have been looking where he was going.

a) couldn't b) must c) might d) could

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher **would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently** while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more ideas he found to think about. The more he thought, the more questions he asked.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just a part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase **"would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently"** means ....

a) she was very happy b) she was very angry

c) she was very ill d) she was bored with teaching

2 When he was young, Albert Einstein ....

a) didn't care about learning

b) was very stupid

c) always made his teacher cry

d) was clever enough to think about everything

3 If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...

a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions

b) Albert would have left the class happily

c) Albert would have been angry

d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

4 The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) Albert Einstein's stupidity
b) Albert Einstein and his teacher
c) Albert Einstein and his deep thinking
d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

5 Albert Einstein concluded that ....

a) there is something called the Earth
b) the Earth is oval
c) we live in a massive universe
d) asking questions is useful

6 Albert took time to answer questions at school because ....

a) he was busy
b) he was stupid
c) the questions were difficult
d) he thought a lot

7 Albert's teacher's face got red when he asked her because ....

a) she didn't know the answer
b) the questions were embarrassing
c) the questions were off point
d) he was making fun of her

8 People always asked Albert about a lot of things as ....

a) he claimed prophecy
b) he was a physician
c) he knew many things
d) he was a clever student

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Experts warn all people not to post a lot of personal information on Facebook and Twitter. This can be misused by criminals and enemies as well.

....

....

2. Most famous people have their own Facebook pages in which they post their news and pictures. These blogs are followed by millions of people around the world.

....

....

3. Corruption[1] and indiscipline[2] are the main factors that lead to the deterioration[3] of our economy. That's why the government is trying hard to fight them.

....

....

4. The Egyptian students need real chances to prove themselves as leaders and inventors; there is much evidence that they can do wonders[5].

....

....

5. Disputes[5] and wars in the whole world have resulted in many problems. One of them is the problem of refugees[6] which increases every day.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6. Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the success and progress of any society. They must be taught at an early age.

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يحذر الخبراء من استخدام الأطفال المفرط للإنترنت؛ لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى آثار سيئة على صحتهم؛ لذا يجب تعليمهم ترشيد[٧] هذا الاستخدام.

....

....

٢- إن تطوير التعليم من أهم القضايا التى تهتم بها الحكومة، وهذا يساعد على خلق أجيالٍ قادرة على مواجهة التحديات[٨] المعاصرة وبناء مجتمع منتج يتسم بمهارات القرن الحادى والعشرين.

....

....

٣- للأصدقاء تأثير كبير فى حياة المراهقين؛ لذلك يجب على الآباء تشجيعهم على الصحبة[٩] الجيدة، فالصديق الجيد يساعد الشخص على النجاح فى الحياة.

....

....

٤- تحاول الحكومة إيجاد حلول غير تقليدية لمشكلة الطاقة؛ لذلك تتوسع فى إنشاء محطات الطاقة الشمسية، وبدأت فى إنشاء محطة الضبعة للطاقة النووية[١٠].

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The reasons for happiness differ from person to person."

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام: رابط الجروب على التيليجرام: رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@ ic33m@ ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام: رابط القناة على التيليجرام: رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@ miri33andyou1@ miri33andyou1@

....

- I used more than 4 new vocabulary.
- I used the right structure.
- I used a topic sentence.
- I wrote the conclusion.
- I used the right punctuation.

(1) الفساد	(3) تدهور	(5) نزاعات	(7) rationalise	(9) company
(2) عدم الانضباط	(4) عجائب	(6) لاجئين	(8) challenges	(10) nuclear

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

King Lear
Act II, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
back (n)	ظهر	injured (adj)	مصاب/ مجروح
beggar (n)	متسول/ شحاذ	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
blood (n)	دم	plot (v) (ted)	يتآمر
call out (v) (ed)	يصرخ	port (n)	ميناء
disbelief (n)	جحود/عدم ثقة	pretend (v) (ed)	يتظاهر
duty (n)	واجب	profit (v) (ed)	يربح/يستفيد
faithful (adj)	مخلص	reward (v) (ed)	يكافئ
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	stab (n)	طعنة
get (to) (v)	يصل	stocks (n)	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
guard (n) (v) (ed)	حارس/يحرس	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الخلف (الظهر)	change one's mind	يغير رأيه
(be) in a fight	يكون فى قتال	feel angry	يشعر بالغضب
faithful to	مخلص لـ	Pick up	يلتقط
go back	يرجع/ يعد	plot against	يتآمر ضد

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice | King Lear Exercises

Act II, Scene i

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young man has been .... on suspicion of using a stolen credit card.
a) arrested b) rewarded c) offered d) demanded

2 A .... is someone who is very poor and lives by asking people for money or food.
a) teller b) beggar c) blogger d) follower

3 The first reports about the plane crash were met with .... and people refused them.
a) rejoice b) belief c) disbelief d) cheer

4 My mother has always remained .... to the good values she learned as a child.
a) hateful b) lawful c) legal d) faithful

5 The stadium was protected by armed police .... during the match for security measures.
a) gangs b) enemies c) guards d) workers

6 My eldest son has .... his mother's patience.
a) merited b) inherited c) harmed d) tricked

7 Nobody could .... her to change her mind to leave the job.
a) persuade b) make c) defy d) deny

8 The spies were accused of.................... against the country.
a) potting b) putting c) plotting d) parting

9 The little girl closed her eyes and .... to be asleep.
a) prohibited b) inhibited c) attended d) pretended

10 There was a rise in the company's .... this year. They made good money.
a) profits b) losses c) publicities d) publishers

11 Parents often give their children .... for passing exams.
a) awards b) rewards c) punishments d) medals

12 The old man was killed with a .... to the heart by a fierce criminal.
a) pull b) stick c) slab d) stab

13 The ferry was about to leave the .... when the machine broke down.
a) platform b) port c) pavement d) road

14 If new employees are unable to carry out their ...., they may be fired.
a) meals b) rights c) duties d) offices

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Unit 4

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great .... of time and effort.
a) part b) quality c) section d) deal

2 Our team has won six basketball .... in the local championships.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) addresses

3 My wife wasn't well enough to .... visitors, so we cancelled the party.
a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist

4 Opening remarks are important since they set the .... for the rest of the job.
a) music b) tone c) sign d) report

5 My cousin, Sameh has a/an .... for making friends easily.
a) comment b) present c) gift d) image

6 The story of the murder was important enough to make the ....
a) differences b) interests c) addresses d) headlines

7 The architect drew the new shopping centre in ....
a) section b) general c) progress d) record

8 The runner won a gold medal and broke the Olympic .... by 44 records.
a) prize b) headline c) record d) medal

9 He joined the Egyptian Cancer .... to be able to help other people.
a) Community b) Society c) District d) Area

10 The advertisements are intended to improve the company's ....
a) photo b) location c) site d) image

11 The narrow windows in the walls .... little light into the room.
a) expects b) regrets c) admit d) makes

12 Keeping the accounts is part and .... of my job.
a) whole b) parcel c) pixel d) lance

13 My application got lost in the ...., so I wasn't on the list of applicants.
a) post b) past c) drawer d) message

14 The news is shocking, but we may find out that the stories we've heard so far are just the .... of the iceberg.
a) top b) middle c) bottom d) tip

15 The lion, the tiger, and the cheetah are .... of the cat family.
a) ancestors b) organs c) members d) grandchildren

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 That was a question nobody .... answer.
a) could   b) cannot   c) can   d) should

17 You .... the job. Why didn't you use a chance?
a) may take   b) can take
c) had to take   d) could have taken

18 It rained heavily every day during their holiday, so they .... have had a very nice time.
a) can't   b) must   c) should   d) could

19 Two hundred years ago, not many people .... read or write.
a) couldn't   b) could   c) can't   d) could have

20 She could have taken the underground to save time and money, but she ....
a) couldn't   b) doesn't   c) hasn't   d) didn't

21 Nader .... have carried the desk by himself. Someone must have helped him.
a) shouldn't   b) should   c) could   d) couldn't

22 Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You .... nothing about it.
a) should have said   b) could have said
c) shouldn't have said   d) couldn't say

23 My younger brother .... swim 4 years ago, but he .... swim very well now.
a) could/can   b) can/could   c) could/can't   d) couldn't/can

24 In a hundred years' time, we .... out of water to drink.
a) must have run   b) could have run
c) should have run   d) may have run

25 This application .... last week.
a) should be sent   b) must have sent
c) ought to have been sent   d) should have sent

26 The flower is dead. Maybe I .... it more water.
a) might have given   b) needed to give
c) should have given   d) had to give

27 "You weren't supposed to do that." means: ....
a) You should do that, but you don't.
b) You should have done it, but you didn't.
c) You shouldn't have done it.
d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.

28 They should have shown me more consideration. I ought ....
a) been shown more consideration
b) be shown more consideration
c) to have been shown more consideration
d) to have shown more consideration

29 You should have your visa .... before it expires.
a) extended   b) been extended   c) be extended   d) to be extended

30 Hilal suggested that he .... a party next week.
a) will have   b) should have   c) can have   d) has

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 On giving a presentation or a speech, you should start by giving the .... facts or ideas.

a) unusual b) basic c) improper
d) main e) minor

2 In his report, the young inventor could .... many new ideas about the new approach to robotics.

a) introduce b) receive c) present
d) depict e) refuse

3 We didn't have the proper tools to do the job right. The synonyms of the adjective "proper" are ....

a) updated b) suitable c) fashionable
d) convenient e) helpless

4 As a linguistic innovator, Shakespeare could add many words and phrases .... the English language.

a) at b) for c) with
d) to e) into

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 The movie has a comic .... throughout although it has some adventure scenes.

a) scenery b) sound c) voice b) tone

6 Children must be taught the .... rules of hygiene and sanitation at school.

a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic

7 The teacher .... angrily at the lazy student who said that he didn't bring his book to school.

a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

8 Some new scientific theories take a very long time to .... in our real life.

a) apply b) reply c) imply b) intensify

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

9 As soon as I walked into the room, I .... gas.

a) could have smelt
b) must have smelt
c) can't have smelt
d) could smell

10 Many people are demanding that something .... about the problem.

a) should have done
b) should do
c) should be done
d) shouldn't be done

11 Reham .... have got my message. Otherwise, she would have replied.

a) mustn't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could

12 I have an idea: we .... all go in one car. That would save us money.

a) could b) need c) would d) have to

13 We went the wrong way and got lost. We .... have turned right, not left.

a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) should d) can't

14 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You .... have stayed with Tamer.

a) shouldn't b) might c) must d) could

15 We didn't know where Mohamed was, but we .... find him in the end.

a) can b) were able to c) should d) might

16 You could have left your phone at work. This means ....

a) it's impossible that you left it there
b) it's necessary that you left it there
c) it's advisable that you left it there
d) it's possible that you left it there

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Glass is a pure compound of sand melted at a very high temperature with the help of catalysts. Silicate, the main component of sand, is heated till it is red-hot. When it has been sufficiently heated, it is wound around a blowing pipe. Specially trained men, who have learnt to control their intake and output of air, will then blow cups, bowls, vases, and bottles from the heated silicate. These men never make a mistake while blowing glass, for any deviation from their methods could burst their lungs or seriously harm their internal organs. Glass makers work for years before achieving the status of master craftsmen. They join the glass works from a young age, working for minimal pay as apprentices.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

They soon learn the trade and become ordinary craftsmen. With the benefit of practice and experience, they will one day become master craftsmen. If a particular cup or vase requires a special rim or design, the master craftsman will handle it himself. Otherwise, mass-produced glasses may be moulded in die casts.

Great patience is needed to make a glass, for after it is shaped and left aside to cool, it has to be given along interval to 'contract'. If it is not 'aged' sufficiently, it will crack and disjoint.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main component of sand is ....

a) glass **b)** bottles
c) silicate **d)** cups

18 Glass makers become craftsmen ....

a) at a very early age
b) after three-year experience
c) when they join glass works
d) after a lot of practice and experience

19 Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn a particular skill or job is called a/an ....

a) apprentice **b)** craftsman
c) patient **d)** professional

20 One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage ....

a) making glass needs a lot of patience
b) making glass needs a lot of money
c) making glass needs a lot of experience
d) making glass needs a lot of heat

21 The silicate is heated to produce ....

a) sand **b)** glass
c) moulds **d)** apprentices

22 Mistakes in this industry is unacceptable as craftsmen may ....

a) lose money **b)** harm their lungs
c) lose their voice **d)** be disabled

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

23 The master craftsman are asked to ....

a) handle special rim
b) take courses
c) sell their products
d) teach older craftsmen

24 The best title for the passage is "........................".

a) The History of Glass
b) The importance of Sand
c) Glass Industry
d) Trade

25 Translate into English:

- أن تكون غير أنانى ومتواضعًا وذكيًا وصبورًا فى ساعة المعاناة وقويًا فى وقت المشاكل وشخصًا مخلصًا ومحبًا، فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًا، وتتحلى بكثير من الصفات الحميدة.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

It is really hard to understand why some people enjoy dangerous hobbies such as mountaineering and motor racing. They can lose their lives in them.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things."

....

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇❤️

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

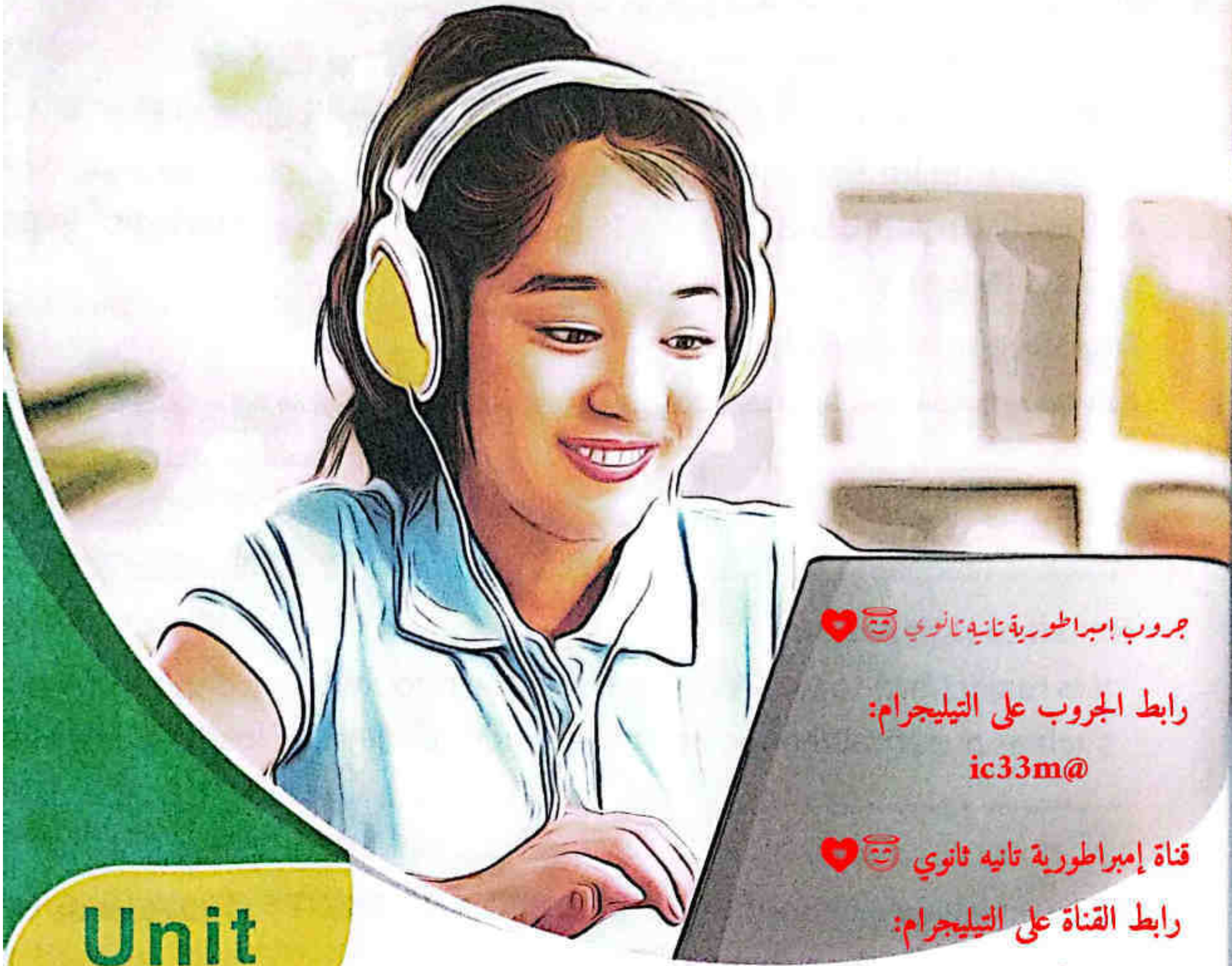
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇❤
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

Unit 5

Being smart online

Objectives

- **Reading** : An article about an online video channel; An Article about how to use the internet for research
- **Writing** : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly
- **Listening** : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people
- **Speaking** : A presentation
- **Language** : Seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to
- **Life skills** : Critical Thinking; Resilience

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	targeted advertising (n)	الدعاية الموجهة
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	update (v) (d)	يحدث
follower (n)	متابع	upgrade (v) (d) (n)	يرقى/ترقية
reliable (adj)*	موثوق فيه	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة	views (n)	مشاهدات

* I always get my information from reliable sources.

Vocabulary on Reading

advertiser (n)	معلن	junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	keywords (n)	كلمات رئيسية
confused (adj)	مرتبك	knowledge (n)	معرفة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	mega meal (n)	وجبة كبيرة (بمطعم)
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة	research (n)	بحث
extra (adj)	إضافى	resource (n)	منبع/مورد
honest (adj)	مخلص/أمين	save (v) (d)	يحفظ
information (n)	معلومات	scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شىء محدد

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكى
source (n)	مصدر
task (n)	مهمة
URL (uniform resource locator)	عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

access (n)	مدخل/إمكانية الوصول
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
app (n)	تطبيق
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
common (adj)	شائع
excuse (n)	عذر
fake (adj)	مزيف
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
Irish (adj)	إيرلندى
journalist (n)	صحفى
moral (n) (adj)	مغزى/أخلاقى/درس أخلاقى
musician (n)	موسيقار
obvious (adj)	واضح
perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
print (v) (ed)	يطبع
professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتبًا/مجلات)
series (n)	سلسلة
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
spread (v)	ينشر
stamp (n) (v) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
steal (v)	يسرق
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق فى
version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
do research	يقوم ببحث علمي	have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
do things	يقوم بأشياء	keep ... safe	يحافظ على ... آمنًا
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	knowledge of	معرفة بـ
careful about	حريص بشأن	information about	معلومات عن
find out	يكتشف	read on	يستمر بالقراءة
full of	ممتلىء بـ	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adaptable	متأقلم
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	معلن إعلان	----------------	
apply	يطبق/يتقدم لوظيفة	application (app) applicant	تطبيق/طلب وظيفة متقدم لوظيفة	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعي
consult *	يستشير	consultation	استشارة	consultative	استشاري
influence	يؤثر	influence influencer	تأثير شخص موثر في تفكير الآخرين	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض

* - I prefer to consult old people to young people.
- Farmers always hold consultations about the agricultural techniques.
- There is a consultative group to ask about your inquiries.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/abandon يرفض/ينبذ/يهجر
fake	مزيف	forged/false	genuine/real/original أصلى/حقيقى
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest مخادع/غير حقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow مؤجل/بطىء
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous غامض/مشكوك فيه
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent هاو/غير كفء
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable غير أمين/غير موثوق
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay بطء/تأخير
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility اللامسئولية
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease يقلل/يخفض

Check Point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can .... a copy of some programmes from many websites for free.
   a) collect b) detach c) duplicate d) download
2. My parents always advise me to buy food from a .... shop or market.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
3. My elder brother always .... my father about his important decisions.
   a) consults b) supports c) encourages d) checks
4. Most famous actors use social media such as Facebook to attract more ....
   a) beginners b) followers c) bullies d) enemies
5. Advertising experts depend on .... to target their customers' needs.
   a) viruses b) hackers c) cookies d) shares

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

How do you decide which website to choose when doing research?

Doing research online

Your teacher has given you a homework task[1]. Where do you start your research? The internet is very useful with lots of information, but how do you avoid spending hours reading unhelpful websites? Read on to find out how to use the internet effectively.

1 Look for websites by people, companies or universities, who have experience[2] in or knowledge of the topic you are researching. If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.

2 Think about who has written the website. Is it a company who may be trying to sell you something?

3 Check if the website is up-to-date[3]. Is the information still reliable[4] and useful? When was it updated[5]?

4 Always consult[6] more than one website. The advantage of looking at few different sites is that you can check the information and you may find extra facts.

5 What does the website look like? If it is badly designed and is full of grammar and spelling mistakes, then it is probably not very reliable.

6 Websites that have named their sources[7] are usually more reliable and useful than sites that do not name their sources.

7 Save the URL (uniform resource locator)[8] of any useful pages or images so you can find them easily.

(1) مهمة
(2) خبرة/تجربة
(3) حديث
(4) موثوق فيه
(5) محدث
(6) يستشير
(7) مصادر
(8) عنوان الموقع (على الإنترنت)

How do you make sure the information you get from websites is reliable?

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Reading Text (2)

Do you think advertising products is important? Why?

Targeted advertising

Our computers and smartphones keep small pieces of information called cookies[1], which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. Cookies are meant to make it easier for us to find things that interest us, but they also help advertisers[2] to sell things to us. So, when we see an advert for something that seems to be exactly what we want, it is because advertisers know what we like. This kind of advertising is called targeted advertising[3].

(1) ملفات تعريف الارتباط
(2) معلنون
(3) الإعلانات المستهدفة
(4) إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)
(5) الإعلانات الممولة
(6) نتائج البحث

Sometimes advertisers know where you like to go and when you like to do things, so they can advertise to you when you are most interested. For example, they advertise places to eat when you're hungry. They can also send adverts to your friends at the same time if they think you'll go together.

Sometimes it's easy to see that something is an advert, like those large banner adverts[4] that always seem to appear on websites when you're trying to read. And there are adverts that seem to appear in the strangest places, like the small sponsored adverts[5] that you find in search results[6].

Adverts are supposed to be honest, but we must be careful. When you see an advert online, think about why you might be seeing it and whether you can believe what it says.

How do advertisers know what we need?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Have you forgotten your password before?

Reading Text (3) (Workbook)

Are you internet smart?

Do you really know how to protect yourself online? There are several things you can do to stay safe.

- Choose a strong password. Did you know the most common password in the world is '123456'? The best passwords should have numbers, letters and even a special character e.g. TI342mS!* It will be easier to remember if you make it personal in some way.
- When you go online, make sure you have upgraded your browser[1] with the latest software update before you open a webpage.
- Be careful what you upload. Check what others can learn about you from what they can see behind you, and take down any photos you do not want others to download.

All of these tips[2] seem obvious[3], but you'll be surprised how many people are careless online. Stealing[4] someone's identity[5] is more common than you think. Do not make the mistake of thinking that it can't happen to you.

(1) متصفح
(2) نصائح
(3) واضح
(4) سرقة
(5) هوية

How will you choose your password now?

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي 😇❤️

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:

ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️

رابط القناة على التيليجرام:

miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What is the first fake news you've ever heard?

Reading Text (4) (Workbook)

Don't believe everything you read!

The title of this article is a piece of advice which we may have heard from our parents or grandparents. Although it was true in the past, the speed(1) at which we have access(2) to new information means that this warning is even more important now.

In the past, professional(3) journalists(4) always checked the facts that they wanted to publish against at least two reliable sources to make sure the story was correct. Checking sources, and the time needed to print(5) something in a newspaper, meant that the news, which was meant to be new, was actually a day or two old.

Today the internet provides(6) instant(7) news and is a place where anyone can share information with the rest of the world at the touch of a button(8). This means that journalists often need to publish their stories quickly, so fact-checking isn't as good as it is meant to be. This is why not everything you read is what it seems to be.

Even serious newspapers, which are supposed(9) to be reliable, can make mistakes. Shane Fitzgerald, an Irish sociology(10) student, wanted to test the influence of the internet. He posted a fake(11) phrase online. It was supposed to be something that a French musician who had recently died had said. Almost immediately several newspapers published the phrase and it was read all over the world.

The moral(12) of the story is to listen to those with more life experience than you and remember not to trust everything you read online without checking it first.

(1) سرعة
(2) مدخل/سبيل
(3) محترف
(4) صحفي
(5) يطبع
(6) يوفر
(7) فوري/عاجل
(8) زر
(9) من المفترض
(10) علم الاجتماع
(11) مزيف
(12) مغزى

What are the reasons behind fake news on the internet?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Being successful is not an easy .... You should work hard.
   a) right b) play
   c) section d) task
2. The young player couldn't .... to living in another country.
   a) adapt b) adopt
   c) exchange d) update
3. An electrician is coming tomorrow to .... the new washing machine.
   a) break b) smash
   c) attach d) install
4. The main .... of the story is a rich man of about fifty years old.
   a) role b) character
   c) part d) servant
5. It is believed that yoga can help relieve stress ....
   a) affectingly b) effectively
   c) impressively d) excitedly

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

تطبيق الأضواء
ذاكر دروسك الآن بطريقة تفاعلية من خلال
فيديوهات شرح الدروس.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال App Store Google play
www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

consult يستشير

- to ask for information or advice from someone

download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت

- to move files from the internet to a phone, tablet or computer

reliable موثوق فيه

- someone or something that is reliable can be trusted or depended on

take down يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت

- to take something that you have posted online off the internet

update يحدث

- to make something more modern and relevant by adding new information

upgrade يرقى/ترقية

- to improve or make more efficient

upload يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت

- to move files from a computer, phone or camera to the internet

up-to-date حديث

- including all the latest information

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇💙
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

load يحمل (بضائع/برامج)/حمولة/عبئًا	▸ The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars. ▸ Newcomers couldn't afford the load of the work.
unload يفرغ حمولة	▸ The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.
overload يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)	▸ Be careful not to overload the washing machine.
download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	▸ There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.
upload يرفع إلى الإنترنت	▸ It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

effective مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)	▸ The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.
impressive مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)/رائع	▸ Mohammad Salah has an impressive career which makes him a legend.
affecting مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)	▸ The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.

experience ١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)	▸ He had no previous experience for the job he applied for. ▸ The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.
experiment تجربة (علمية/معملية)	▸ Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.

publish ينشر (عملًا فنيًا/جريدة/تقريرًا)	▸ The novel was published last year.
spread ١- ينتشر/يمتد/يفرد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)	▸ Fire quickly spread through the building. ▸ The disease spread rapidly amongst the village. ▸ Mum spreads sandwiches with cheese like a chef. ▸ How dare you spread such evil lies!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- If you know who wrote the website, try to find out more about their experience.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الأمر فى جواب الشرط للحالة الأولى لـ (if).

- Is the information still reliable and useful?

تعامل (information) معاملة المفرد باستخدام الفعل (Is) لأنها اسم غير معدود.

- Check what others can learn about you.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة الجملة (فاعل + فعل) بعد (what) لأن الجملة فى الصيغة الخبرية.

- Stealing someone's identity is more common than you think.

لاحظ استخدام صيغة (verb+ing) كفاعل للجملة بمعنى (سرقة) ولاحظ استخدام الفعل فى صيغة المفرد (is).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young woman was not accepted for the job because she lacks ....
   a) condition b) experiment c) experience d) licence
2. Some diseases can .... by different insects such as flies and mosquitoes.
   a) spread b) publish c) extract d) spray
3. Software updates can be .... from the company's website.
   a) loaded b) overloaded c) uploaded d) downloaded
4. The poet's first book of poems for children was .... last year.
   a) spread b) published c) sprayed d) defined
5. The most .... solution to traffic jam is to build more roads.
   a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice — Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1. Nahdet Misr is a famous organisation which .... different kinds of books.
   a) spreads **b)** hides **c)** publishes **d)** believes
2. Many YouTubers resort to legal and illegal ways to make people .... to their channels.
   a) subscribe **b)** adopt **c)** activate **d)** take part
3. The company's name is .... across the top of the letters they send.
   a) carved **b)** published **c)** printed **d)** spread
4. All animals have their own ways to .... to their environments , whether cold or hot.
   a) adapt **b)** adopt **c)** exchange **d)** update
5. It might take some minutes to .... these high definition photos to the website.
   a) load **b)** download **c)** upload **d)** overload
6. Most websites use .... that enable them to show adverts which makes them a lot of money.
   a) comments **b)** posts **c)** cookies **d)** shares
7. The website doesn't seem to be ....; there are lots of grammar mistakes.
   a) available **b)** expectable **c)** avoidable **d)** reliable
8. .... advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
   a) Banner **b)** Commercial **c)** Amateur **d)** Targeted
9. Users have to pay to be able to .... the trial antivirus to the full version.
   a) diffuse **b)** upload **c)** upgrade **d)** secure
10. Celebrities' posts on Twitter usually receive millions of .... of their fans.
    a) sights **b)** views **c)** refuses **d)** excuses
11. .... will pay higher rates to be able to use the prime-time entertainment shows عروض الترفيه الاعلى مشاهدة.
    a) Customers **b)** Consumers **c)** Advertisers **d)** Rivals
12. You can find the site by typing the .... "forest bird" on the search page.
    a) keys **b)** keywords **c)** images **d)** results
13. Unfortunately, most young people get all their .... about politics only from social media.
    a) fancy **b)** concept **c)** election **d)** knowledge
14. China is a country which has few energy .... such as oil of its own.
    a) stations **b)** reactors **c)** resources **d)** wells

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

15 I .... the waiting list quickly for my name.
a) scanned b) researched c) applied d) replied

16 Email password should be at least 8 .... long and not more than 15 ones.
a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos

17 The actor was wearing .... moustache and beard for the role of an old warrior.
a) fake b) figured c) updated d) covered

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

18 The text message was ambiguous as it was written in a secret code. The adjective "ambiguous" can be the opposite of the adjective ".....................".
a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious

19 We must watch for our children who .... online a lot so as to be careful that they aren't misled.
a) come b) go c) travel d) view

20 My young brother can play video games and talk on the phone .... the same time.
a) at b) in c) for d) by

21 As a young actor, you have to be careful .... the roles you accept.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

22 You can run this .... on a computer and a mobile phone if you like.
a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable

23 Nowadays, almost every young man or woman .... access to the internet through their mobiles phones.
a) do b) make c) have d) win

24 This essay can be considered a .... document for everyone who uses the social media.
a) consult b) consultation c) consultative d) consultant

25 Please, accept our sincere thanks. The adjective "sincere" is a synonym of the adjective ....
a) obvious b) fake c) honest d) clear

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 We should find instant solutions to water pollution. The synonyms of the word instant are ....
a) urgent b) slow c) easy d) immediate e) original

27 As part of their test, a student must .... a 180-word essay before Friday.
a) design b) do c) make d) write e) research

28 Sami .... through the television programmes in the local newspaper.
a) rejected b) skimmed c) tested d) leave e) scanned

29 We removed the bath and .... a shower instead to make space.
a) expected b) perplexed c) put on d) installed e) fixed

30 The secretary has the .... of preparing the agenda for the manager's meetings.
a) task b) passion c) profession d) job e) mission

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B Language

be meant to + inf.

be meant to + inf.

- to talk about what the purpose or truth of something should be. للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما.
  - The finished project is meant to be more than just a power station.
  - This building was meant to be a huge museum.
- to talk about something that is expected. للحديث عن شيء متوقع.
  - They were meant to arrive by now.
  - He was meant to get home now.
- to talk about something that is intended. للحديث عن شيء مقصود.
  - It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.
  - Her child's present was meant to please her, but she was sad.

be supposed to + inf.

be supposed to + inf.

- to talk about obligation. للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية.
  - I'm supposed to get up early tomorrow to catch the train.
- to talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be. للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعل أو يكون.
  - It is supposed to rain this afternoon.
- to talk about arrangements. للحديث عن الترتيبات.
  - I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.
- to talk about our beliefs about something. للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما.
  - Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Seem/seem to/seem that

To talk about how something or someone appears to be when we cannot be completely sure.

للحديث عن كيف يبدو شيء ما أو شخص ما وخاصة عندما لا نكون متأكدين تمامًا

- He seems to be keen on football.
- Ali seems to enjoy his new game.
- She hasn't said anything, but she seems to be having fun.

Seem+ adj./Seem to + inf.

- Mona seems happy (to be happy) today. ✓
- He seemed angry (to be angry) at the party. ✓

لاحظ ان الفعل seem لا يستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة ولا يبنى للمجهول

- Mona is seeming happy today. ✗
- He was seemed to be angry at the party. ✗

Seem to + inf. = it seems that + subj. + verb

- He seems to know a lot about politics = It seems that he knows a lot about politics.

Seem/seems to be + v.ing

إذا كان لديك شك أن حدثًا ما مستمر

- He seems to be coming towards us. = It seems to be raining.

seem/seems to have + P.P. معلوم

seem/seems to have been+ P.P. مجهول

عند الحديث عن الماضي

- He seems to have visited many countries.
- It seems to have rained a lot.
- The tree seems to have been cut with a sharp saw.
- The car seems to have been repaired by a clever mechanic.

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What are you doing here? You .... be inside the classroom.
   a) are supposing to b) seem to c) mean to d) are supposed to
2. He .... to have been studying for the test all night.
   a) is supposing b) supposed c) seems d) meant
3. The hospital .... to help the local people, but everyone came to it.
   a) supposed b) was meant c) is seemed d) was meaning
4. The flight was .... at 8 a.m. Why was it late?
   a) supposed to arrive b) suppose to arrive
   c) supposing to arrive d) suppose to arrived
5. I am supposed .... for the job advertised in the local newspaper before next week.
   a) applying b) will apply c) apply d) to apply

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice Language Exercises

Practise more

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Eiffel Tower .... to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed

2 There were some problems at first, but they .... to have been solved.
a) meant b) seem
c) supposed d) will be supposed

3 I shouldn't eat too much. I .... to be on a diet.
a) 'm supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant

4 It .... to be an apology, but it only made her angry.
a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant

5 The wedding .... to be a secret, so how did you find out about it? Did Leila tell you?
a) meant b) is seemed c) was supposed d) was supposing

6 Ali always reaches his office before the appointed time. He .... to be enjoying his job.
a) is meant b) seems c) supposed d) is seemed

7 The food .... to feed the poor, but everyone had a share of it.
a) was meant b) was seemed c) was supposing d) is supposed

8 Collecting money .... to make us happy, but to some people it has become an aim.
a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed

9 Yasser's phone never stops ringing. He .... to know a lot of people.
a) seems b) was meant c) was supposed d) is seeming

10 The garbage .... today. Please take it out.
a) didn't suppose to collect b) is supposed to collect
c) is supposed to be collected d) was meant to collect

11 What are you doing at work? You .... to be on holiday.
a) seem b) mean c) are meaning d) 're supposed

12 They stay at home all the time. They never .... to go anywhere.
a) supposed b) seem c) are supposed d) are meant

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

13 The boss is asking for a technician. The photocopier doesn't .... to be working.

a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) need

14 That piece of cloth .... to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers.

a) seemed b) was meant c) supposed d) was supposing

15 My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English .... to be getting better.

a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means

16 The open space .... to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market.

a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant

17 I'd better hurry. I .... to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.

a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed

18 The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock .... to be forced.

a) seems b) is meant c) is supposed d) needs

19 Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's still .... to do any heavy work.

a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed

20 All my friends .... to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.

a) were supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

21 The match .... to start at 8.30, but it was cancelled. إدارة شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٢

a) seemed b) is meant c) was supposed d) wanted

22 Schools .... to follow rules of safety. إدارة القناطر التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) supposed b) are meant c) are seemed d) must

23 The car engine is meant .... إدارة شرق المحلة الكبرى التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) to check b) to be checked

c) be checking d) to have checked

24 Cookies are .... to make it easier for us to use the internet. إدارة المنيا ٢٠٢٢

a) seems b) meant c) suppose d) meaning

25 Students .... to do their best to succeed. إدارة نجع حمادي ٢٠٢٢

a) suppose b) are supposed c) supposed d) are supposing

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) Our guests were supposing to come at 7:30, but they were late.

b) Our guests were seemed to come at 7:30, but they were late.

c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.

d) Our guests were seeming to come at 7:30, but they were late.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

27 One of the following answers gives the same meaning to this sentence:
"We are supposed to wear a uniform at work." This means ....

a) it's necessary to do so
b) we aren't allowed to do so
c) it's impossible to do so
d) it's kind of us to do so

28 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
"You are supposed to obey your parents." This means that ....

a) it's necessary to do so
b) it's your duty to do so
c) it's forbidden to do so
d) it's advisable to do so

29 Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:
"My friends .... to wait for 2 hours, but they left after an hour."

a) were supposed
b) were meaning
c) seem
d) mean

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
b) He was meaning to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
c) He seemed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
d) He was supposing to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 Let's go to the party. It .... interesting.

a) is meant
b) is supposed to be
c) supposes
d) means
e) seems to be

32 You .... problems with your washing machine.

a) seem to have
b) are supposed to have
c) are seemed to have
d) seem to be having
e) are meant to have

33 The new method .... improve agriculture, but it was incorrectly used.

a) was supposed to
b) seems to
c) was meant to
d) seemed
e) is supposing

34 Maher .... to be good at interpreting, ... he?

a) didn't seem/doesn't
b) seemed/did
c) doesn't seem/does
d) seems/does
e) seems/doesn't

35 My little brother .... English fast.

a) seems to learn
b) seems to have learnt
c) seems learning
d) is meaning to learn
e) seems learn

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

General Exercises
(Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It wasn't easy for me to .... to the new regulations in our company's system.
   a) adapt b) adopt c) admire d) admit
2. The famous singer has millions of .... on Instagram and Twitter.
   a) chasers b) followers c) enemies d) opponents
3. To hear the full interview, ... to the free National Geographic News podcast.
   a) subscribe b) describe c) inscribe d) prescribe
4. Customers gain .... to up-to-date information through a computer database.
   a) recess b) exit c) access d) entry
5. I always use Google chrome as my default internet ....
   a) image b) hardware c) media d) browser
6. The .... of the film was that crime does not pay.
   a) aspect b) moral c) role d) start
7. The police are trying to discover the .... of the killer.
   a) respect b) description c) identity d) prosperity
8. The program automatically .... your antivirus settings.
   a) deteriorates b) outdates c) reverses d) updates
9. What .... to do to improve your memory?
   a) you are supposed b) are you supposed
   c) you are meant d) did you suppose
10. Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never .... to get tired.
   a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants
11. The Great Wall of China was .... to be a barrier between two cities, but it has turned into a tourist attraction.
   a) supposing b) seemed c) meant d) meaning
12. We .... to go to the party but we got an important meeting.
   a) seemed b) are supposed c) are meant d) were supposed
13. There .... to be so many choices and we've only got a limited amount of money.
   a) is supposed b) meant c) seem d) is meant
14. Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is ....
   a) not necessary b) obligatory c) predictable d) prohibited
15. I .... to buy groceries this Friday as my wife is ill.
   a) suppose b) 'm supposing c) have supposed d) 'm supposed
16. What is the problem with her? I don't know, but she .... to have a high temperature.
   a) seems b) is meant c) meant d) supposed

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Animals that sleep during the day and come out at night are called nocturnal. For desert-dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of the day and conserve[1] water. Many snakes and rodents are examples of desert animals that prefer the night.

The darkness of night makes it easier for some animals to escape predators[2], especially if the animal is dark enough to blend into its surroundings. Then there's the hedgehog, a small nocturnal mammal[3] that rolls up into a ball of spiny hairs when danger comes near. Because it is active only at night, it can usually wander around unseen. The skunk, another nocturnal animal, has the most smelly way to defend itself. Its fur is mostly black, which blends in with the darkness.

Of course, there are predators that are especially adapted for night hunting, so no prey animal is safe simply because it's nocturnal. Owls and certain species of cats are very effective nocturnal hunters because they have great night vision and excellent hearing. Another predator that's well-known for its nocturnal behaviour is the insect-eating bat. Instead of using their eyes to hunt for an insect dinner they use echolocation. What is echolocation? It works like this: The bat emits a very high-pitched sound. The sound is so high that people can't even hear it. When the sound hits an object it bounces, or echoes, back. From the sound of the echo the bat immediately knows the object's size and location. Its echolocation can also determine if an object is a yummy insect or something that can't be eaten like a plant or a tree.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 What is echolocation?
   a) A way of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to communicate.
   b) A method of making high-pitched sounds that bats use to avoid being eaten.
   c) A high-pitched sound that helps bats fly after dark.
   d) The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.

2 Which is the best definition for the following?
   For desert dwelling animals, being active at night allows them to escape the heat of day and to conserve water.
   a) living or residing b) nighttime hunter
   c) heat-loving d) healthy

(1) تحتفظ/تحفظ (2) حيوانات مفترسة (3) حيوان ثديي ليلي

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

3 Owls and certain species of cats can catch the prey easily because ....

a) they can fly easily at night
b) they both have feathers to leap silently down upon prey
c) they have great night vision and excellent hearing
d) they use echolocation

4 The synonym of the word "vision" is ....

a) the ability to hear
b) the ability to see
c) the ability to catch
d) the ability to think

5 Desert snakes and rodents are nocturnal animals as they ....

a) sleep at night
b) are active at night
c) eat and drink at night
d) like heat and sunny weather

6 The skunk can survive and keep its enemy away by ....

a) running fast
b) hiding in holes
c) releasing bad odour
d) humping on trees

7 What are the things that the bat doesn't eat?

a) Plants.
b) Insects.
c) Yummy prey.
d) Far prey.

8 The main idea of the passage is ....

a) how animals communicate
b) how bats fly
c) the desert snakes' life
d) animals life at night

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. We should all be careful when we use the internet. Criminals hack people's personal information to use it in their crimes, especially about credit cards.

....

....

2. Due to technology, advertising has become a real 'science'. Some colleges have already created new departments which are specialised in this science.

....

....

3. Mohamed Salah's great achievements encourage young people to work harder to reach their most difficult dreams. He also gives them hope for a better future.

....

....

4. Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice(1) their lives so that Egypt could get a better future. So, we should all remember them.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

5. Studying the lives of great scientists and writers shows that we all should exert[2] great efforts to succeed in life. It is said that "No gain without pain".

....

....

6. Cairo Book Fair is one of the most important cultural events in the Arab World. It has many cultural activities such as conferences and seminars[3].

....

....

B) Translate into English:

١- يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى؛ فهى مليئة بالشائعات[٤] التى قد تدمر سمعة[٥] الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

....

....

٢- تحلم جميع شعوب العالم بالسلام؛ لذا يجب أن نعمل جميعًا على إنهاء الحروب التى تنتشر فى أجزاء كبيرة من العالم وخاصة عالمنا العربى.

....

....

٣- للتليفزيون ووسائل الإعلام الأخرى أثر كبير فى تشكيل اتجاهات الأجيال[٦] الجديدة؛ لذا يجب حسن استغلالها لتوجيههم نحو التوجهات التى تفيدهم وتفيد بلدهم.

....

....

٤- غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be appreciated due to their efforts towards us."

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) يضحي
(2) يبذل
(3) ندوات
(4) rumours
(5) reputation
(6) generations

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Listening

addicted (adj)	مدمن	join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ
anyway (adv)	على كل حال	platform (n)	منصة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	pleased (adj)	مسرور
birth (n)	ميلاد	privacy (n)	خصوصية
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهنى	profile (n)	الملف الشخصى/التعريفى
connect (v) (ed)	يتصل/يوصل/يربط	programmer (n)	مبرمج
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد	programming (n)	برمجة
cute (adj)	لطيف	safely (adv)	بأمان
develop (v) (ed)	يطور	sensible (adj)	عاقل
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف	similar (adj)	مشابه
exciting (adj)	مثير/رائع	solve (v) (d)	يحل
fire (v) (d)	يفصل من العمل	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/مساندة/يدعم
forever (adv)	للأبد	symbol (n)	رمز
forum (n)	منتدى	take care (v)	يهتم
game (v) (d)	يمارس ألعاب الفيديو	teen (n)	مراهق
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	victim (n)	ضحية

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary on Speaking

cons (n)	عيوب	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
each (pron)	كل	pros (n)	مميزات
employee (n)	موظف	rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
guide (n) (v) (d)	مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)/يرشد	unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر	useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
order (n)	ترتيب		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن	explain (v) (ed)	يفسر
feelings (n)	مشاعر	highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
register (v) (ed)	يسجل	example (n)	مثال
purpose (n)	غرض	linking word (n)	أداة ربط
viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

after all	على أية حال	in person	شخصيًا
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	in short	باختصار
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة	keep in contact with	يبقى على اتصال مع
for ages	لعصور (لفترة طويلة)	keep ... entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	make rules	يعد القواعد
have an effect on	له تأثير على	on your own	بمفردك
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة	pay attention to	يهتم بـ
divided into	مقسم إلى	set of	مجموعة من
loads of	كثير من	share with	يشارك مع

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addictive addicted	مسبب للإدمان مدمن
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	criticised	منتقد
employ	يوظف	employment employee	توظيف موظف	employed	موظف
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلٍ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	------------------	
represent*	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل

* - I dream of representing my country in a competition.
- His speech was a good representation for his country.
- He has a representative design to show in the interview.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise	يستحسن/يمتدح
cute	لطيف	attractive/charming	hateful/ugly	كريه/قبيح
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss/sack	employ/hire	يوظف/يستأجر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy	publicity	دعاية
register	يسجل	enroll/record	erase	يمحو/يزيل
represent	يمثل	serve/speak for	differ/oppose	يختلف/يعارض
similar	مشابه	alike	different/opposite	مختلف/مقابل
support	دعم	assistance/backing	discouragement/hindrance	عدم تشجيع/إعاقة

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flag is a/an .... of our country so, we should all respect it.
   a) status b) image c) symbol d) story
2. Ali has improved his .... since he joined the summer camp.
   a) behaviour b) lecture c) culture d) rapture
3. The Ministry of Education have set up a special .... for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.
   a) pavement b) building c) platform d) facility
4. The World Economic .... is held in Davos at the end of January every year.
   a) Club b) Championship c) Race d) Forum
5. Famous people don't want their .... to be invaded by reporters.
   a) fame b) wealth c) privacy d) health

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Do you agree on sharing your personal data online or not? Why?

Listening Text (1)



Hamdi : Hey Khaled, can you help me? I'm doing a blog post on how to use social media well. Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?

Khaled : Yes, sure. What have you got so far?

Hamdi : OK, I think I'm going to begin by talking about your profile[1]. That's important on social media.

Khaled : Definitely!

Hamdi : Great! What shall I write?

Khaled : Well, I like seeing who I'm chatting with on social media, so I believe you should always put up a nice picture of yourself on your profile. I hate it when people have symbols[2] or something instead of their photo – you don't know who you are talking to.

Hamdi : I disagree; symbols tell you more about what someone thinks.

Khaled : Really, Hamdi? Well, I think it's important that people don't know too much. For example, in my opinion, it's a bad idea to include your date of birth[3] to show your age.

Hamdi : I see your point. Did you know that about 50% of teenagers have experienced bad behaviour[4] on social media? So, I think you're right not to give people too much information about yourself.

Khaled : After all, you have to be sensible[5] on social media if you want to enjoy it safely.

(1) الملف الشخصى
(2) رموز
(3) ميلاد
(4) سلوك
(5) عاقل

Mention two ways of keeping your information safe online.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

How do you use the internet?
How long do you stay online?

Listening Text (2)



Narrator 1

Dalida : Hi, I'm Dalida. I think the biggest effect that the internet has on young people is it keeps them entertained – there's always something to watch or listen to, and I'm never bored.

Narrator 2

Injy : Hi, I'm Injy. Like most of my friends, I think I'm addicted[1] to the internet. If I'm not checking my social media apps, I feel worried that I'm missing something important. It means I have a lot of arguments with my parents at mealtimes and when we go out together.

(1) مدمن
(2) يتخيل
(3) يمارس ألعاب الفيديو
(4) برمجة
(5) منتديات
(6) مبرمجين

Narrator 3

Ayman : Hello. I'm Ayman. I am so pleased I have the internet to help me with my homework. Imagine[2] if you had to go to the library and read loads of books for every homework or project!

Narrator 4

Osama : Hi, my name's Osama. I game[3] online which is really fun, so I think the internet has a good effect on my life, but I do worry about my sister. She gets sad because she thinks her friends all have better lives than her and do more exciting things. She can't understand that they only post the good things and not the bad things.

Narrator 5

Girl 2 : Hi, Radwa here. I love the internet. I love computer programming[4] so I go on forums[5] to chat to other programmers[6] – students and people who do it for a job. I have learned so much. And if I have a problem that I can't solve to do with programming, someone on the forum can usually help me.

How can social media affect us negatively?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

When did you have a Facebook account?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)

على أية حال (1)	
يتصل (2)	
منصة (3)	
فصل من العمل (4)	
نقد (5)	
للأبد (6)	
ضحية (7)	

Hanan : Leila, did you see the post that Hany put up the other day about social media behaviour in Egypt?

Leila : No, I was too busy updating my profile. Do you know how difficult it is to take a good photo of yourself?

Hanan : I know what you mean. I just used a photo of my cat. Anyway[1], as I was saying, did you know that Hany's post said that 22 million people in Egypt connect[2] to one popular social media app every day?

Leila : Wow! That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform[3]! But getting back to your profile photo, why don't you use a photo of yourself?

Hanan : Don't you worry about what all those people might see on your profile? For example, imagine you post a photo of yourself doing something stupid now, and in a few years' time you apply for a job and the company look at your social media profile to see what kind of person you are. What opinion will they have of you?

Leila : I see your point, but in my opinion, social media should be personal and has nothing to do with your job.

Hanan : I disagree. I read about a man who was fired[4] from his job for criticising[5] his company on his personal profile. You can never be too careful. You don't know who might see your posts.

Leila : I didn't think posting a photo was so important!

Hanan : The thing is that as soon as you post something, it is there forever[6]. So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that he was once the victim[7] of bad behaviour after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans. He reported it and everything is fine now, but it really affected him at the time.

Leila : Wow! Well, I might think twice about updating my profile picture and just keep the photo of my dog. I think she's so cute and my selfies all look terrible anyway!

Hanan : I agree, I think your dog is lovely and it's a safer photo too.

Leila : Hey, look! Have you seen what Mona's wearing in the photo she's just posted?

Did Leila change her mind about posting photos?

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My office colleague is .... to coffee and cannot do anything in the morning until he's had some.
   - a) addicted
   - b) depicted
   - c) repulsive
   - d) available
2. The police officer asked to interview all .... in the factory about the theft.
   - a) crews
   - b) employers
   - c) employees
   - d) robbers
3. Five Egyptian female players are now .... in the top ten squash players in the world.
   - a) graded
   - b) retired
   - c) ranked
   - d) divided
4. You will need proof of identity to .... at any course in this language centre.
   - a) treat
   - b) practise
   - c) enter
   - d) register
5. At the family party, my uncle, a former sailor, ... us with exciting stories of his adventures at sea.
   - a) implanted
   - b) entertained
   - c) annoyed
   - d) departed

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@

قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

تطبيق الأضواء
اختبر نفسك الآن مع أكبر بنك للأسئلة التفاعلية
من خلال حل اختبارات تفاعلية
على كل درس.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال App Store Google play
www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

behaviour سلوك
- the things that a person or an animal does

profile الملف الشخصي
- a short description that gives important details about a person

sensible عاقل
- reasonable, practical, and showing good judgment

symbol رمز
- a picture or shape that has a particular meaning or represents a particular organisation or idea

data of birth تاريخ الميلاد
- the date in which someone was born

Notes on Vocabulary

each

نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، واحد فى كلٍ مرة.

- He was holding a pen in each hand.
- The teacher will ask each student to hand his essay in person.

1 every

نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معـًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).

- Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed every one of them.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

platform رصيف القطار منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث) منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)	▸ The Aswan train leaves from platform six. ▸ He stepped up onto the platform and looked out into the audience. ▸ Due to COVID-19, many educational platforms emerged to help students study online.
pavement رصيف الشارع	▸ He stopped the car just off the pavement.

2

represent يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)	▸ He represented his company at the meeting.
act ١- يتصرف ٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى عمل فنى	▸ My parents are always telling me how I should act and what I should say. ▸ As a child, she began acting in television commercials.

3

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ Can you help me think of some interesting points to include please?

- لاحظ استخدام فعل فى صيغة المصدر بعد الفعل (help) كما يمكن استخدام (المصدر .to + inf).

▸ .... but I do worry about my sister.

- لاحظ استخدام (do) قبل الفعل فى الجملة الخبرية للتأكيد بمعنى بالفعل.

▸ I was too busy updating my profile.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد التعبير (be busy).

▸ That's something like 20% of Egypt all on just one social media platform.

- التعبير (something like) بمعنى ما يقرب من.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

▸ .... after posting a photo of himself in some old jeans.

- تستخدم صيغة (verb+ing) بعد أداة الربط (after) إذا لم يـأتِ بعدها فاعل.

▸ So be careful with those selfies you're taking! Plus, Hany told me that ....

- معنى كلمة (Plus) وهو علامة الجمع (+) وتستخدم فى المحادثة بمعنى (أضف إلى ذلك).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Experts believe that women now .... fifty percent of the workforce.
   a) represent b) act c) attach d) connect
2. The train to Cairo is on .... four and it leaves in thirty minutes.
   a) pavement b) side c) platform d) stop
3. There were cars parking along .... side of the street.
   a) both b) all c) every d) each
4. .... person should have a role in the progress of their country.
   a) Neither b) Every c) Either d) Both
5. My mother says she is always busy .... after the house.
   a) look b) looks c) looking d) to look

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice (Practise more) **Vocabulary Exercises**

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 You shouldn't add many personal data on your Facebook .... so as not to be misused by any hackers.
a) profile b) drawer c) desk d) book

2 The doctor should have .... the risks of the treatment to the patient before starting it.
a) waved b) told c) promised d) explained

3 Some people prefer to .... lines when they read so that they can memorise the information.
a) cut b) enlighten c) highlight d) cut out

4 The songs of some new folk singers are .... as they contain slang language.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised

5 Grandmother .... her grandchildren with her funny stories and exciting songs.
a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained

6 Some experts believe that children need to .... things for themselves in order to learn from them.
a) reward b) experience c) award d) cure

7 The club provides a .... for people who share an interest in history.
a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum

8 The old man said that he couldn't .... his life without his wife.
a) imagine b) stop c) retire d) demand

9 Facebook has become the most important social media .... all over the world.
a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal

10 The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely .... to it.
a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

11 The police officer behaved in a .... way and didn't lose his self-control.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory

12 There was an accident on the highway yesterday, but there were no ....
a) researchers b) victims c) streets d) inventors

13 The .... should be informed about the new instructions and rules in the company.
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

14 The company director will be making short .... in the meeting.
a) complaints b) products c) interviews d) presentations

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

15 The university is .... number one in the country for engineering.
a) degreed b) ranked c) divided d) shared

16 You can .... for the new course online or in person.
a) register b) study c) rehearse d) reverse

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 The theme of the novel is based on the .... of the writer and doesn't relate to real life.
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imaginary d) imagination

18 He can only walk with the assistance of a stick. The word "assistance" is a synonym of the word ....
a) report b) rapport c) support d) export

19 The students who were on the trip were divided .... three groups according to their age.
a) at b) into c) with d) about

20 Although the mobile helps young people to .... in contact with their friends, it can waste their time.
a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay

21 Strict rules should be .... to limit the increase of air pollution.
a) deposited b) done c) made d) finished

22 The teacher ordered the class to stop talking and .... attention to what she said.
a) spend b) buy c) cost d) pay

23 My little sister loves to share her toys .... other children.
a) with b) into c) at d) about

24 There is a .... between pollution and the death of trees.
a) connect b) connection c) connected d) connective

25 He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes. The verb "entertain" is an antonym of the verb ....
a) annoy b) amuse c) assist d) delay

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 She got fired from her first job for being late. The antonyms of the verb "fire" are ....
a) sack b) dismiss c) employ d) apply e) hire

27 Many politicians prefer Twitter to Facebook as a social networking ....
a) site b) view c) position d) platform e) post

28 I want to thank .... person who has contributed to this project.
a) all b) every c) each d) both e) whole

29 It takes a long time to .... a drug دواء/عقار for a new disease.
a) install b) reform c) develop d) do e) make

30 The two houses are similar in size, but different in style. The synonyms of the adjective "similar" are ....
a) far b) puzzled c) alike d) related e) representative

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Lessons 3 & 4

B Language

Important Notes

١) استخدامات أخرى لـ mean

1. mean + v.ing = involve — يشمل/يضم
   - Being a doctor means working long hours.
2. mean + to + inf. = intend to — ينوي/يهدف إلى
   - He means to find a job abroad.
3. mean — يقصد/يعني (غالبًا آخر السؤال) وليس بعدها to
   - What does this word mean?
4. a means – means

وسيلة (اسم مفرد) ومضاف إليها s والجمع بإضافة s أيضًا ولكن بدون أداة نكرة a

- The train is an important means of transport.

٢) تعبر 'be + not supposed to' عن المنع والحظر وعدم السماح وخاصة مع النفي.

You're not supposed to do something = it is not allowed

- You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.

٣) تستخدم supposed to بمعنى يقال/قيل.

be supposed to = be said to

- He is supposed to have twelve children. = He is said to have ...

٤) تستخدم seem بعدها صفة أو بعدها الفعل like ولا يستخدم بعدها حال (adv.)

- It seems like ages since we last met.
- She seems excited about the offer. = She seems to be excited about the offer.

٥) إذا وجدت it قبل seem تستخدم that وبعدها جملة، أما إذا وجدت كلمة there أو أي كلمة أخرى نستخدم to + inf.

- It seems that he likes classical music.
- He seems to like classical music.
- It seems that there is some water on the carpet.
- There seems to be some water on the carpet.

٦) لوصف العاطفة نستخدم He doesn't seem himself these days. لا يبدو في حالته هذه الأيام.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She means to open her own shop. The word "means" here means ……………… .
   a) intends b) must
   c) needs d) indicates
2. The internet is an important means of communication. The word "means"
   means a/an ……………… .
   a) intention b) way
   c) need d) indication
3. After being fired from the company, he ……………… nervous.
   a) seemed b) was supposed
   c) was meant to d) meant
4. She ……………… like a good teacher, all her students respect her.
   a) supposes b) seems
   c) means d) is supposed
5. Being a pilot means ……………… a lot and having fun as well.
   a) travelling b) to travel
   c) to be travelled d) being travelled

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of th

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I think I ……………… to her when I turned down her dinner invitation.
  a) mean b) was meant
  c) was mean d) don't mean

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

تطبيق الأضواء
تحدّ أصدقاءك و عش تجربة التحدى مع الأضواء.
حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانا من خلال App Store Google play
www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice Language Exercises

Remembering Understanding Applying Analysing Evaluating Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Amal .... to phone me last night, but she didn't.
a) was supposed b) is supposed c) supposed d) is supposing

2 There .... to be a mistake in these figures.
a) are supposed b) meant c) were supposed d) seems

3 I'm sorry. I didn't .... to break your vase.
a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) supposed

4 I .... to look after my younger brother while my parents are away.
a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) am supposing d) supposing

5 Do you know what the weather .... to be like tomorrow?
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) does seem

6 I seem .... the first student to arrive at school today.
a) to be b) being c) be d) to being

7 Being a teacher means .... a lot of homework.
a) to check b) to be checked c) checking d) checked

8 The high cost of housing .... that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) means c) supposed d) is supposing

9 My teacher .... to be happy.
a) supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

10 It's blue, but it was .... to be purple.
a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

11 Why are you outside the factory? You .... to be working.
a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) are seemed

12 This old computer doesn't .... to be working properly.
a) mean b) suppose c) need d) seem

13 I can't join you for lunch. I'm .... attend a meeting in ten minutes.
a) supposing to b) supposing c) supposed d) supposed to

14 I don't know how long Hany's been working on that project, but it .... like weeks.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) supposed

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

15 These shoes don't .... to fit. They're a little small.

a) mean b) seem c) suppose d) want

16 Factories are .... to employ a lot of people and satisfy our needs.

a) seemed b) supposing c) meaning d) meant

17 Egyptian students .... to study day and night to get the full mark.

a) are supposed b) mean c) are seemed d) supposed

18 He .... like an honest person, but then we found out he wasn't.

a) supposed b) is meant c) seemed d) is supposed

19 Don't wait for me. I .... to visit my uncle in hospital after school.

a) seemed b) 'm supposed c) am meaning d) supposed

20 Life in Siwa will probably .... a little strange to you at first, but you'll get used to it.

a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) want

21 The police are looking for him. He .... to have a criminal background. منفلوط - أسيوط

a) supposes b) seems c) means d) likes

22 They are happy; they .... be having a nice time. إدارة المنشاة - سوهاج ٢٠٢٢

a) are meaning to b) supposed to

c) seem to d) won't

23 You're .... to start work at 8:30 every morning. إدارة بني عبيد التعليمية ٢٠٢٢

a) seemed b) meaning c) wanted d) supposed

24 The internet .... to be more important than it really is. منية النصر محافظة الدقهلية ٢٠٢٢

a) supposes b) is supposed c) means d) seeming

25 I'm going to buy this car. It .... to be very good. كفر صقر ٢٠٢٢

a) is seemed b) was seemed c) is supposed d) suppose

26 One of the following answers gives the same meaning of this sentence:
"People aren't supposed to get on the train without a ticket."

a) It isn't a good idea for people to get on the train without a ticket.

b) It is against the law to get on the train without a ticket.

c) It is advisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket.

d) It is inadvisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket.

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

a) He seems that he is innocent.

b) He is seeming to be innocent.

c) He seems to be innocent.

d) He seems innocent.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

28 One answer is grammatically correct:

a) We seem to interrupt you while you were asleep.
b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.
c) We supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.
d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you are asleep.

29 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:
Amr seems .... a good day.

a) that he has
b) has
c) to have
d) to be having

30 One answer to the following sentence is incorrect:
"My uncle's new car ...."

a) seems like a luxurious one
b) seems to be a luxurious one
c) seems a luxurious one
d) is seeming to be a luxurious one

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 These tablets .... be good for the nerves and sleeplessness.

a) means to
b) are supposed to
c) are meant
d) seem to
e) seem

32 What .... to do to improve your English?

a) do you seem
b) are you meant
c) do you mean
d) you are supposed
e) are you supposed

33 What is Ahmed's problem? I don't know, but he .... angry.

a) seems
b) is supposed to be
c) supposes to be
d) seems to be
e) is meant to be

34 The children have been playing for an hour now. They .... a wonderful time

a) are meant having
b) are supposed having
c) seem to be having
d) were supposed to have
e) seem to have

35 "You weren't supposed to do that." means: ....

a) You should do that, but you don't.
b) You should have done it, but you didn't.
c) You shouldn't have done it.
d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.
e) It was wrong to do it.

جروب إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي 😇❤️
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

C Communication Skills

(I) Life Skills

Critical thinking

What is critical thinking?

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to engage in reflective and independent thinking. Someone with critical thinking skills is able to do the following:

- understand the logical connections between ideas
- identify, construct and evaluate arguments
- detect inconsistencies and common mistakes in reasoning
- solve problems systematically
- identify the relevance and importance of ideas
- reflect on the justification of one's own beliefs and values

The importance of critical thinking

- Critical thinking promotes creativity.
- Critical thinking is a domain-general thinking skill.
- Critical thinking is very important in the new knowledge economy.
- Critical thinking enhances language and presentation skills.
- Good critical thinking is the foundation of science and democracy.

Reference: https://philosophy.hku.hk/think/critical/ct.php

(II) Writing

How can you apply critical thinking in your life?

An email to a friend

- Write an email to your friend Hashem advising him how to use social media well.

Hi Hashem,

I hope you are fine. This is my advice to you in order to use social media well and effectively. Social media is now a critical part of our lives so we must use it carefully. So, you can depend on social media for several purposes such as communication, studies, paying money, gaining money and so on. But firstly you should decide on your goal and make a plan to achieve it. This will help to measure your results. Social media is not only for fun. Many businesses depend on it for publicity or to promote their products.

As students, we can get benefited from it by learning language courses online, attending educational lectures, and downloading dictionaries.

I regularly read English novels and stories on some specialised websites and this helped me to improve my English.

The most important thing is that; you shouldn't share your private details and information easily on social media because this is not completely safe nowadays. Also, don't log into weird sites or pages as this will waste your time without any benefit.

Thanks for your time

Bye

Send an email to your best friend now saying hello!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The report .... the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) deprived b) declined c) granted d) highlighted

2 I understand your .... about the new system, but do not share it.
a) importance b) quarrel c) viewpoint d) treaty

3 The politician tried to make his speech more .... for the audience.
a) entertain b) entertainment c) entertaining d) entertained

4 This maths problem is difficult; you can't do it .... your own.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

5 The tour .... took the tourists around the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) pioneer b) serial c) speech d) guide

6 Mohamed Salah has become a .... of the successful Egyptian young man who can serve his country.
a) signal b) claim c) symbol d) means

7 The film was .... for the violent and inappropriate scenes in it.
a) criticised b) punished c) rewarded d) praised

8 The World Health Organisation provides the best .... for the exchange of views and ideas about world pandemics.
a) firm b) corporation c) farm d) forum

9 She is determined to get a ticket for the concert even if it means .... a lot of money.
a) paying b) to pay c) to be paid d) to paying

10 What .... to do to improve your memory?
a) you are supposed b) are you supposed
c) you are meant d) did you suppose

11 It .... as if there will be rain soon.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) supposed

12 This is a painting of an elephant, but it was .... to be a horse.
a) seemed b) meant c) like d) supposing

13 Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never .... to get tired.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants

14 That bag .... too heavy for the old woman to carry.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) is seemed d) seems

15 She ....to finish her homework, so she can't come with us.
a) supposes b) is supposed c) is seemed d) is meaning

16 You .... to play loud music after midnight. It disturbs the local residents.
a) are supposed b) are not supposed c) are meant d) are seemed

CamScanner المسموحة ضوئيا بـ

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is taking control steadily[1] over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking the majority[2] of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining[3] interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive[4].

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting[5] them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced[6] of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Reading helps people to be ....
a) well-paid b) good actors
c) well-educated d) good writers

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
a) the youth b) video and television
c) children d) reading skills

3 According to the writer's view, TV is .... means of entertainment.
a) not an effective b) an encouraging
c) an effective d) not a cheap

4 The synonym of the word "independent" is "..................".
a) active b) intelligent
c) self-centred d) self-determining

5 What is the reason behind the decline in reading habit among youth?
a) Lack of free time. b) Not going to schools.
c) Doing sports. d) TV and video.

(1) بثبات (2) الأغلبية (3) منخفض (4) سلبي (5) يفسر (6) مقتنع

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

6 There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when ....

a) a video is watched
b) a short story is read
c) an article is published
d) a book is sold

7 Children, who read slowly, ...

a) like TV
b) speak fast
c) like reading
d) are disabled

8 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Importance of Reading
b) Technology Pros
c) The Benefits of Technology
d) Children's Preferences

) Translate into Arabic:

1. Mobile addiction[1] has become one of the psychological[2] problems which many young people suffer from. Doctors have special courses to treat it like any psychological disease.

....

....

2. You shouldn't trust your personal and financial[3] information with unknown websites. Hackers can use it to steal your money or even your identity.

....

....

3. Charities play an important role in helping poor people and providing assistance to them. That's why we should support them with our time and money.

....

....

4. The Egyptian civilisation began thousands of years ago. Therefore, Egypt is called the birthplace[4] of civilisation.

....

....

5. The New Administrative[5] Capital is a huge project which will take years to complete. However, it will provide a perfect solution to the problem of overcrowding in Cairo.

....

....

6. Parents can help children with learning disabilities achieve success by encouraging their strengths and knowing their weaknesses.

....

....

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

B) Translate into English:

١- كثيرًا ما تتهم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى بانتهاك [6] خصوصية [7] المستخدمين رغم تأكيدها على حرصها على البيانات الشخصية لكل من يمتلك حسابًا بها.

....

....

٢- التقدم الطبى أهم إنجازات الإنسان التى أدت إلى زيادة سعادته و رفاهيته كما أدى إلى زيادة متوسط [8] عمر الفرد فى السنوات القليلة الماضية.

....

....

٣- كلما تقدم العلم والتكنولوجيا زادت المشكلات النفسية التى قد يعانى منها الناس ويتناولها الكُتاب فى قصصهم والمخرجون فى أفلامهم.

....

....

٤- تحذر وسائل الإعلام الشباب من الهجرة [9] غير الشرعية إلى أوروبا لأنها قد تؤدى إلى فقدانهم حياتهم و ذلك لأنهم يسافرون عبر طرق خطيرة.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problems faced during scarcity of water."

جروب إمبراطورية تانية ثانوي
رابط الجروب على التيليجرام:
ic33m@
قناة إمبراطورية تانيه ثانوي
رابط القناة على التيليجرام:
miri33andyou1@

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

- I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ....
- I used the right structure. ....
- I used a topic sentence. ....
- I wrote the conclusion. ....
- I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) إدمان
(2) نفسي
(3) ماليًا
(4) مهد
(5) إدارية
(6) violating
(7) privacy
(8) average
(9) immigration

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Watch a video

King Lear
Act II, Scene iii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر
bear (n)	دب
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)
cave (n)	كهف
choice (n)	اختيار
disagreement (n)	خلاف
double (v) (d)	يضاعف/ ضعف
joke (n)	نكتة/فكاهة
patience (n)	صبر
ring (n)	خاتم
room (n)	مكان/حيز
shelter (n) (v) (ed)	مأوى/يحمى/يقى
spy (n)	جاسوس/يتجسس
wet (adj)	مبلل/مطير
wind (n)	رياح

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning
at the right time	فى الوقت المناسب
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من الدخول
for all time	للأبد
set eyes on	تقع عيناه على
go mad	يصاب بالجنون
turn someone's back on	يتجاهل/يتنكر لـ
keep you warm	يبقيك دافئا

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice

King Lear Exercises
Act II, Scene iii

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should .... to your customers for wasting their time.
a) rejoice b) please
c) affect d) apologise

2 A .... is a large hole that was formed by natural processes in the side of a cliff or hill or under the ground.
a) palace b) hut
c) cave d) cottage

3 Money is a source of .... between many couples these days. It causes them a lot of disputes.
a) pride b) disagreement
c) shame d) species

4 The material I was buying for these shirts suddenly .... in price, so the they are expensive.
a) doubled b) decreased
c) divided d) applied

5 The soldier's experiences in the war affected him so much that he .... mad.
a) came b) went
c) fell d) gave

6 This is a silly old .... I've heard it lots of times and didn't make me laugh.
a) research b) view
c) joke d) riddle

7 Wildlife photography requires a lot of .... You have to wait much for a good photo.
a) speed b) failure
c) patience d) atmosphere

8 When it started raining, they took .... under an old forest bridge.
a) clothing b) vanity
c) pride d) shelter

9 The soldier was arrested on suspicion of being an enemy ....
a) spy b) presenter
c) producer d) director

10 Mahmoud is a good man and would never .... his back on a friend.
a) got b) grew
c) turn d) face

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Unit 5 Advanced & Open

General Exercises

emembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

oose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young artist asked the expert to .... his drawings.
a) prepare b) redetect c) criticise d) deform

2 The actress is very clever at presenting her best .... to the camera.
a) director b) profile c) character d) view

3 The .... of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.
a) reformation b) updating c) reflection d) presentation

4 The patient's brain is regularly .... so that doctors can detect the progress of his disease.
a) scanned b) skimmed c) scaled d) stated

5 I usually .... my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.
a) connect b) hand c) collect d) deliver

6 Most of the people object to the new factory as they want to preserve the .... of their neighbourhoods.
a) feeling b) character c) direction d) assumption

7 I missed the .... flight to New York, so I spent the night at the airport.
a) connecting b) contacting c) communicating d) commuting

8 When the photographer .... the film, he was astonished by what he saw.
a) manufactured b) designed c) spread d) developed

9 Because of pollution, this lake is now too acid to .... fish.
a) hunt b) support c) catch d) poison

10 The earthquake .... 3 on the Richter scale.
a) weighed b) graded c) registered d) linked

11 "Cl" is the chemical .... for chlorine.
a) symbol b) signal c) ray d) flag

12 The passports, with the visa ...., were waiting at the embassy.
a) records b) stamps c) relays d) results

13 Omar's first music teacher was a major .... in his life.
a) effect b) defect c) influence d) reflex

14 The young lady .... out of the room so as not to wake the baby.
a) raked b) rushed c) robbed d) stole

15 The young man's life lacks .... as he is addicted to drugs.
a) search b) reason c) purpose d) message

16 The children in our street do not like that man. They say he is ....
a) seem b) suppose c) supposed d) mean

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

17 Hard exercises are meant .... before the match.
a) to do b) to have done c) to be done d) done

18 .... likely that they will lose the election.
a) It seem b) It seems c) He seems d) They seem

19 The plan is .... to be a secret, but everybody .... to know about it.
a) meant/ seems b) seemed/meant
c) seemed/seems d) supposes/means

20 Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is ....
a) not necessary b) predictable c) prohibited d) obligatory

21 He stayed in Europe more than his friends ....
a) supposed b) seemed c) needed d) meant

22 Galileo is supposed .... the telescope.
a) having invented b) to invent
c) to have invented d) have invented

23 Charles Dickens' writings seem .... by his life experiences.
a) to influence b) influential
c) to be influenced d) to be influencing

24 It was .... to be a chicken sandwich, but they'd been a bit .... with the chicken.
a) meant/supposed b) supposed/means
c) meant/seem d) supposed/ mean

25 He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable.
a) isn't supposing b) doesn't seem c) isn't seemed d) not supposed

26 I suppose that Hassan has eaten the apple. This means that ....
a) The apple might have been eaten by Hassan
b) I am supposed that Hassan has eaten the apple
c) The apple must have eaten by Hassan
d) I suppose that Hassan has been eaten the apple

27 "Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means: ....
a) They help sick people b) They must be helping sick people
c) They should help sick people d) They might have helped sick people

28 "I was supposed to call her at seven." means: ....
a) I called her at seven b) I was called by her at seven
c) I could call her at seven d) I should have called her at seven

29 .... you had a million pounds, what would you do?
a) Supposed b) Supposing c) Seemed d) Meant

30 I can't understand that word. What is that ....?
a) mean b) seem
c) supposed d) supposed to mean

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 The computer screen on this new laptop is nearly 66 .... wide.
a) characters b) codes c) emojis d) spaces e) clips

2 You can .... access to your data on this website by typing in a user name and password.
a) lose b) gain c) become d) deny e) have

3 Text messaging enables people to keep in close .... at all times.
a) link b) connection c) contact d) touch e) contraction

4 The project has been criticised as a waste of money. The antonyms of the verb "criticise" are ....
a) praise b) approve c) denounce d) reverse e) retreat

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 We need to run many .... adverts to spread our products widely.
a) sponsored b) active c) shared d) achieved

6 The story of the terrible murder was given a high .... in today's papers.
a) sight b) profile c) character d) view

7 The World Youth .... is held in Sharm El Sheikh and is attended by young people from all over the world.
a) Scenery b) View c) Seminar d) Forum

8 The weak students of the 6th grade were offered Saturday courses to .... their skills.
a) subscribe b) outdate c) upgrade d) install

9 There .... to be a problem with the trains this morning.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) means d) seems

10 Finding a job means .... many interviews.
a) attending b) to attend
c) to be attended d) being attended

11 It .... to snow last week.
a) seems b) didn't suppose
c) wasn't supposed d) meant

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

12 Libraries .... to be a place for reading.

a) seem b) are meant c) supposed d) were meant

13 I want to see that film. It .... to be good.

a) means b) meant c) seemed d) 's supposed

14 Planes are supposed to be the most comfortable .... of transport.

a) means b) mean c) suppose d) seem

15 There is no reason to .... she's lying.

a) suppose b) seem c) mean d) be supposed

16 They .... to be landing at Cairo airport. But if the fog gets any thicker, the plane may be diverted.

a) mean b) are seemed
c) are supposed d) are supposing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Uncle Azmy is my favourite family member. He is above sixty years old, but he has the power to lift a bag containing thirty kilos of potatoes: he always does so to help his wife, aunt Fateema, as a sign of admiration. He is very healthy and always eats fruits and vegetables from his own field. He loves jokes and funny stories. My dad calls this silliness, that's why they are not on the same page. Dad was born five years before Uncle Azmy's birth, so he is wiser and more thoughtful.

When we gather as a family, uncle Azmy must play a prank on someone. Last time, he secretly put hot sauce in his wife's dish. She got hot and her face was red. Instead of helping her, he tumbled around on the floor, laughing hysterically. Nobody was surprised because that wasn't the first time to see such a situation. I got used to these deeds because I really understand him. This guy had a very strict life throughout his career as an officer. He wasn't allowed to even smile. He always gave and took commands and instructions. When he retired, he was born again as he described his feeling. The only one who is against his actions is my father. He is a seventy-year-old retired man and prefers the strict lifestyle although he hasn't joined the army before.

Uncle Azmy gives me positive vibes about life. Age is never an obstacle to doing whatever you want. Once I tried to create a Facebook account for him I was shocked when I knew that he had it a year before and had already one thousand friends. I immediately searched for him; his account was named Azmy Pranks. What an old man!

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Although Mr Azmy is old, he is ....

a) wise
b) weak
c) strong
d) helpful

18 Mr Azmy loves his wife so he ....

a) helps her carry heavy bags
b) buys fruits for her
c) plays silly pranks on her
d) calls her darling

19 Mr Azmy is .... years old.

a) sixty
b) about fifty
c) sixty five
d) seventy five

20 Mrs Fateema's face got red ....

a) because she put much hot sauce
b) because she was embarrassed
c) because of her husband's prank
d) when she saw the red sauce

21 The writer's father doesn't like his brother's tricks because ....

a) he does better tricks
b) he is an army officer
c) he thinks they are silly
d) the tricks are dangerous

22 What happened to Mrs Fateema wasn't a surprise as ....

a) everybody likes tricks
b) everybody knows uncle Azmy's character
c) the writer told them about the trick previously
d) Uncle Azmy did that by mistake

23 The underlined word "vibes" means ....

a) feelings
b) ideas
c) components
d) actions

24 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Elderly Life
b) Mr Azmy's Rebirth
c) Cooperation and Love
d) Mr Azmy's Healthy Lifestyle

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

25 **Translate into English:**

- تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

It is said that many bad habits such as smoking, drug addiction and violent behaviour usually start at teenage. So, teenagers should be careful not to get into them.

....

....

27 **Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

"Your friend will take part on a reading competition on Arab writers. He asks your advice about the sources he can use to research about them. Give him your advice."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

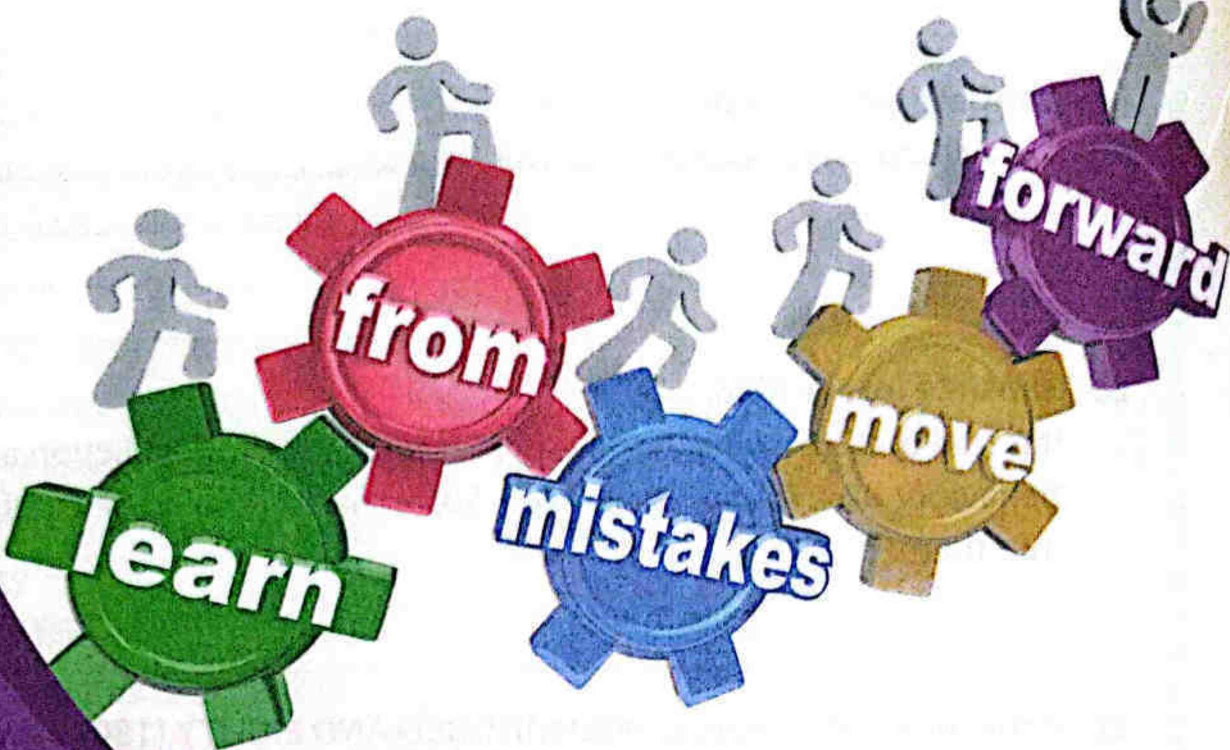
....

....

....

Assess your progress	< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
★★★★★	Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



Unit 6

Learning from our mistakes

Objectives

- **Reading** : Two extracts from an abridged version of *A Christmas Carol* by Charles Dickens
- **Writing** : Captions for a picture story
- **Listening** : A radio programme about regrets, listening for detail
- **Speaking** : Role-play about recognising mistakes
- **Language** : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)
- **Life Skills** : Learning from our mistakes

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Study Watch a video

Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل	mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)	pile (n)	كومة
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	sigh (v) (ed) (n)*	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/ يفصل من العمل		

* When I play football, I sigh heavily because I run a lot.

Vocabulary on Reading & Video Script

actually (adv)	بالفعل	life (n)	حياة
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده	mistake (n)	خطأ
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع	nephew (n)	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
boss (n)	رئيس العمل	novel (n)	رواية
breath (n)	نفس/تنفس	office (n)	حجرة مكتب
continue (v) (d)	يستمر	pay (v)	يدفع
disappointed (adj)	محبَط	poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
dream (n) (v) (ed)	حلم/يحلم	probably (adv)	من المحتمل
employer (n)	صاحب العمل	race (n)	سباق
enormous (adj)	ضخم	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
faraway (adj)	بعيد	surprised (adj)	مندهش
foggy (adj)	ضبابى/مغيم بالضباب	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
friendly (adj)	لطيف/ودود	treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
including (prep)	مشتملًا على/بما فيه	upset (v) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج
large (adj)	كبير		

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) (ed)	يتصل	logical (adj)	منطقى
donation (n)	تبرع	map (n)	خريطة
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	museum (n)	متحف
generous (adj)	كريم	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
health (n)	صحة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
international (adj)	دولى	water (v) (ed)	يروى
invite (v) (d)	يدعو		

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the beginning	فى البداية	get lost	يضل الطريق
change his mind	يغير رأيه	keep ... warm	يحافظ على الدفء
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	make friends	يصادق/يكوّن صداقات
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	plenty of	وفرة (كثيرا) من
ask for	يطلب	run off	يجرى بعيدًا
feel about	يشعر بشأن	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
pay for	يدفع مقابل	work for	يعمل لصالح
get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس		

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	----------------------	
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	----------------------	
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	داعٍ
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
surprise	يفاجئ/يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised	مندهش
treat*	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

* - I always treat my employees well.
- My treatment to my employees affects the work.
- Some people thinks that mental illness is not treatable.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
assistant	مساعد	helper/aide	opponent	خصم
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/urge	give/reply	يعطى
disappointed	محبَط	depressed/dissatisfied	cheerful/comforted	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/assistance	blockage/hindrance	غلق/منع
foggy	مغيم بالضباب	cloudy/misty	clear	صافٍ
generous	كريم	hospitable/charitable	mean/miserly	بخيل
mistake	خطأ	error/fault	correctness/soundness	صواب/سلامة
treat	يعامل	deal with/conduct	abandon/ignore	يترك
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust/misuse	maintain/save	يحافظ على

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The children .... their father to take them to the cinema, but he said no.
a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed

2 Mother asked me not to forget to turn the electric .... off before I go to bed.
a) shot b) job c) fire d) task

3 The old factory owner has always been .... with money, so his employees don't like him.
a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean

4 The businessman .... deeply at the thought of losing his money.
a) cheered b) sighed c) laughed d) yelled

5 The clerk was busy behind a .... of paper on his desk.
a) pile b) hay c) hole d) wreckage

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

What is the weather like in London at the end of December?

Reading Text (1)

A Christmas Carol[1]

It was the end of December. It was dark outside and the streets were foggy. Scrooge was a very rich businessman, but he was mean[2] and people didn't like him. Scrooge was working in his office with his assistant, Bob Cratchit. He was very cold because Scrooge wouldn't pay for a big fire[3] to keep them warm.

There was only a small fire and it was very far away.

"It's late. Can I go home, Mr. Scrooge?" Bob begged[4].

"Have you finished your work?" asked Scrooge.

Bob looked at the enormous pile[5] of work left to do and sighed[6].

"You can't go home if you don't finish your work," continued Scrooge.

"If I finish all this work tonight, will you let me come to work a bit later tomorrow morning?" asked Bob.

"No," said Scrooge.

Suddenly the door opened and Scrooge's nephew, Fred, came into the office. He gave his uncle a friendly smile.

"Bah!" said Scrooge, "Why are you here? And why are you so happy? You're poor. What have you got to be happy about?"

"If you are so rich, why are you so sad?" replied Fred. "Perhaps if you were poor like me, you'd be happy like me, too."

"Have you come to ask me for money?" asked Scrooge in an unfriendly tone.

"No," replied his nephew. "I've come to invite you to dinner."

"Bah!" said his uncle.

(1) ترنيمة عيد الميلاد
(2) بخيل/سيئ الطباع
(3) مدفأة
(4) يرجو/يتوسل
(5) كومة
(6) يتنهد/يتحسر

At the end of this part, what do you think of Mr Scrooge?

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Reading Text (2)

Do you think that Mr Scrooge can change?

A Christmas Carol: After a dream



The next morning, Scrooge woke up in his bed. He'd had a terrible dream(1), but now he could see his mistakes(2). If he hadn't felt so alone, he wouldn't have cared only about money. And if he hadn't cared about money so much, he would have treated(3) other people better. Then he would have had more friends, and he wouldn't have felt so alone. But now he would change. He ran to his window and saw a boy in the street. "You! Boy!" he shouted out of the window. "Do you know the butcher's shop?"

"Yes, Mr Scrooge," shouted the boy. He was surprised(4) to see Mr Scrooge smile.

(1) حلم
(2) أخطاء
(3) يعامل
(4) مندهش
(5) يدفع
(6) يغير رأيه

"I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift from me to his family. Will you do this for me if I pay(5) you?"

"Of course," said the boy and then he ran off before Mr Scrooge changed his mind(6).

Scrooge went out in the street and said, "Good morning," to all the people he met and he smiled at them. Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied, "Good morning, Mr Scrooge," and that made Scrooge very happy.

Then he went to his nephew's house and asked if he could have dinner with him. Of course, his nephew smiled and invited him to come inside.

What kind of dream do you think Mr Scrooge had?

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had no money to .... the driver, so I withdrew the amount from a nearby ATM.
   a) take b) borrow c) credit d) pay
2. It's always said that if you make ...., you will learn something new.
   a) mistakes b) cakes c) decisions d) fights
3. The parade of the Royal Mummies was such a/an .... event that millions of people watched it.
   a) local b) vague c) folk d) international
4. .... should raise salaries to keep up with the rise in prices.
   a) Employees b) Customers c) Employers d) Clients
5. My aunt has no children, that's why she considers her .... as her sons.
   a) nieces b) daughters c) nephews d) sons

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Vocabulary in Use

FOCUS on Vocabulary

beg يرجو
- to ask for something in a way that shows you need it very much

mean بخيل
- not happy to spend money or give anything to other people

pile كومة
- a group of things put on top of each other

sigh تنهيدة
- a deep breath out that shows you are tired, sad or disappointed

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

life	الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)	Poor people usually suffer much in life.
a life	طريقة العيش يسبقها أداة نكرة	Samy says that marriage has helped him live a happy life.
the life	حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس يسبقها أداة معرفة	I read an exciting book about the life of Nelson Mandella.

treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.
cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	It might be several months before she's fully cured. Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.
heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	The wound took a long time to heal. Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.

work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My brother works for a big company in the city. We all should work for the improvement of our society.
work in	يعمل فى	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in the Al-Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

let	يترك/يسمح (المصدر بدون to)	We let our children read simple stories.
make	يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	We make our children read simple stories.
cause	يسبب (المصدر + to)	He caused the little girls to cry.
allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

- He was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smile.

- نستخدم مصدر الفعل بدون (to) بعد الفعل (see) كما يمكن استخدام (verb + ing).

- "I want you to buy the best food and take it to Bob Cratchit's house as a gift ....

- نستخدم (as) بمعنى كـ وتعبر عن الحقيقة وليس التشبيه.

- Everyone was surprised to see Mr Scrooge smiling, but they replied.

- نستخدم الفعل فى صيغة المفرد بعد (everyone) ونستخدم ضمير جمع (they) للإشارة إليه.
- لاحظ أيضًا استخدام (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (see).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Scientists are working .... a treatment for coronavirus disease these days.
   a) with b) on c) for d) as
2. Some teachers let their students .... researches to assess their abilities to use the internet.
   a) do b) does c) doing d) to do
3. Wounds and cuts take a long time to .... if they aren't treated well.
   a) spread b) cure c) treat d) heal
4. Our new boss, Mr Essam, is a cheerful man who seems to love .... very much.
   a) the life b) a life c) life d) lives
5. The technician caused the heater .... efficiently.
   a) working b) worked c) work d) to work

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice (Practise more)

Vocabulary Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

After we memorised the new Vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1. What makes me .... is that I will repeat all the work again.
   a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) imparted
2. The relationship between workers and .... should be good in order to achieve good profits.
   a) customers b) buyers c) employers d) clients
3. My uncle works as a lawyer; his .... is around the corner.
   a) office b) club c) court d) plane
4. My son always says he wishes I would stop .... him like a child.
   a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting
5. It was .... of the rich man to donate a million pounds for charity.
   a) cowardly b) miserly c) hasty d) generous
6. The Davis Cup is an important .... tennis championship in which all the countries take part.
   a) local b) national c) limited d) international
7. I .... shouting at my elder brother and I want to apologise to him now.
   a) regret b) affect c) please d) rejoice
8. My father advised me not to .... my money on unhealthy foods as they can cause me some troubles.
   a) benefit b) waste c) keep d) save
9. Teachers have been using visual aids such as .... and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
   a) machines b) chalk c) maps d) laps
10. It's dangerous to leave your little children .... at home and go out.
    a) lonely b) private c) alone d) particular
11. The poor lady .... the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.
    a) begged b) ordered c) refused d) yelled
12. The church choir كورال is rehearsing some .... to be sung at Christmas Eve.
    a) films b) carols c) games d) stations
13. The policeman .... two shots at the criminals before they were arrested.
    a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed
14. Our old neighbour was a .... man who never gives presents to anyone.
    a) main b) generous c) kind d) mean
15. The old house had been knocked down, and there was nothing left but .... of stones.
    a) holes b) wells c) piles d) pools

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 The young boy .... with relief when he saw that he passed the test.

a) sighed b) cried c) fought d) pleaded

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 We made too many errors, and that cost us the game. The word "error" is a synonym of the word "..................".

a) prize b) correctness c) mistake d) clearing

18 I received my friend's .... to his wedding and I was very happy for him.

a) invite b) invitation c) invited d) uninvited

19 My daughter used to change her .... a lot especially about clothes.

a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter

20 Doctors advise all people to .... exercise to keep healthy and feel relaxed.

a) make b) note c) do d) neglect

21 The passenger arrived ten minutes late, so he .... the six o'clock train.

a) missed b) lost c) gained d) reserved

22 The client said that he didn't want to pay .... the cold meal that the waiter brought.

a) at b) about c) in d) for

23 The man I work .... isn't kind. He can easily dismiss any worker.

a) for b) on c) as d) at

24 I always advise my sister not to make unnecessary long calls as they are ....

a) waste b) wasted c) wasteful d) wasteless

25 He knocked out his opponent in the third round. The noun "opponent" is an antonym of the noun ....

a) enemy b) assistant c) competitor d) accuser

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 Sami's family are very disappointed about his bad exam results. The synonyms of the word "disappointed" are ....

a) pleased b) depressed c) impressed d) dissatisfied e) infected

27 Unluckily, my younger sister spends all her .... time watching television.

a) free b) busy c) study d) useful e) spare

28 My aunt has just retired after 35 years working .... children.

a) as b) with c) among d) for e) on

29 On going to work, I saw my brother .... the ice off the car windscreen.

a) scraped b) to scrape c) scrape d) scrapes e) scraping

30 Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity. The antonyms of the word "waste" are ....

a) maintain b) damage c) puzzle d) ignore e) save

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B Language

If Conditional Forms حالات If الشرطية

1 The Zero Conditional الحالة الصفرية

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص.

وتتكون من:

If / When	→	Present simple (مضارع بسيط)	,	Present simple (مضارع بسيط)

- If/When you heat water to 100°C, it boils.
- If/When the sun goes down, it gets dark.
- If/When I use the computer for a long time, I usually/always have a headache.
- If we go out with friends, we normally go to a restaurant.

Active	If you heat ice, it melts.
Passive	If ice is heated, it melts.
Yes/No question	Does ice melt if/when you heat it?
Wh- question	What happens if/when you heat ice?

2 The First Conditional الحالة الأولى

We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future:

- نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If	→	Present simple (مضارع بسيط)	,	will / may / can / should (للنصيحة) + Inf.

- If we study hard, we will do well in the exam.
- If I have a lot of time tonight, I can go to the party with you.
- If he runs very fast, he may catch the bus.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

لاحظ

- نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة والاستحباب و(have to/must) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.

- تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.

إذا كانت الجملة حالة صفرية ووضع لها زمن أو مدة فإنها تتحول إلى موقف خاص وليس حقيقة مثل:

- If you sit in the sun, you get burned.
- If you sit in the sun today, you will get burned.

نستخدم الفعل فى الأمر بدون will فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى.

- If you see Ali, tell him to call me.

Check Point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If my husband cooks, he usually .... the food.
   a) would burn b) burns c) will burn d) burnt
2. If I feel ill tonight, I .... at home.
   a) would stay b) stay c) will stay d) stayed
3. What .... if you feel unhappy?
   a) do you do b) would you do
   c) you did d) have you done
4. When I read in bed, I always .... asleep.
   a) fell b) would fall
   c) will fall d) fall
5. I .... early if you ....
   a) come/want b) come/will want
   c) will come/want d) will come/will want

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3 The Second Conditional الحالة الثانية

- **We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future. It is also used for advice**

- نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل. وتستخدم أيضا فى النصيحة.

If	→	Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط)	,	would / could / might	+ Inf.

- If I had a lot of money, I would buy a new car.(I don't have much money at present.)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)

*** For advice:**

للنصيحة تُستخدم If كالآتى:

If I were you, I	,	would / wouldn't	+ Inf.

- If I were you, I'd study harder.
- If I were you, I wouldn't buy this expensive mobile.

Got it

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: ?

- If I .... a lot of money, I'd buy a big house in the country.
  a) will win
  b) had won
  c) won
  d) win

- الإجابة هى (c) لأن الجملة الشرطية فى الحالة الثانية.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

4 The Third Conditional الحالة الثالثة

- **We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen:**

- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If → **Past Perfect** ماضِ تام , would have / could have / might have + P.P.

- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it.)
- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well.)

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If he .... the prize, his parents would be happy.
   a) will win b) had won
   c) won d) wins
2. If she ...., she would have attended the party.
   a) was invited b) had invited
   c) were invited d) had been invited
3. If she .... busy, she would go out with her friends.
   a) was b) weren't
   c) isn't d) a & b
4. If he .... work late, he could watch the match at the stadium.
   a) didn't have to b) had to
   c) will not d) would
5. If you had told me about your problem earlier, I .... you.
   a) would have helped b) would help
   c) had helped d) helped

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice — Language Exercises

Remembering · Understanding · Applying · Analysing · Evaluating · Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you need money, I .... you some.
   a) lend b) can lend c) would lend d) lent
2. What will you do if you .... the exam?
   a) would fail b) will fail c) fail d) had failed
3. If it snows, ... drive to the coast?
   a) you will b) will you c) would you d) would you have
4. I would have come home earlier if I .... you were worried.
   a) knew b) 'd know c) 'd known d) know
5. If you work harder for the next week, I'm sure you .... your exam.
   a) won't pass b) pass c) 'd pass d) will pass
6. If they .... me a good salary, I would have accepted the job.
   a) had offered b) offered c) offer d) hadn't offered
7. I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I .... at home.
   a) will stay b) would have stayed c) would stay d) stayed
8. If we had waited for another 10 minutes yesterday, we .... the minister.
   a) had seen b) will see c) would have seen d) 'd see
9. If I need advice about my life, I usually .... to my mother.
   a) talk b) would talk c) had talked d) will talk
10. If Magdi had enough money, he .... a new mobile phone.
    a) buys b) will buy c) would have bought d) would buy
11. If a balloon is filled with hot air, it ....
    a) may rise b) would rise c) rises d) will rise
12. If you go out, ... the porter to bring me the keys.
    a) tell b) would tell c) will tell d) won't tell
13. If I .... ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.
    a) had fallen b) hadn't fallen c) fell d) didn't fall
14. The teacher .... happy if we learnt this lesson by heart.
    a) would have been b) will be c) would be d) was

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

15 If he had tried harder, he .... in achieving his ambition. Unfortunately, he didn't achieve his ambition.

a) will succeed
b) wouldn't have succeed
c) would succeed
d) would have succeeded

16 If I .... a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.

a) had
b) had had
c) have
d) was having

17 If I hadn't overslept, I .... on time.

a) will have been
b) would have been
c) would go
d) will be

18 Ali would act in the school play if he .... good at acting.

a) had been
b) were
c) will be
d) would be

19 If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I .... you.

a) would contact
b) will contact
c) would have contacted
d) contacted

20 They .... on time if they hadn't missed the train.

a) will have arrived
b) would arrive
c) might have arrived
d) will arrive

21 If I hadn't worked hard yesterday, I .... tired and gone to bed early.

إدارة الفيوم التعليمية

a) wouldn't have been
b) would be
c) wouldn't be
d) will be

22 If he .... at hospital, I'd have to visit him, but he isn't. الباجور المنوفية

a) were
b) has been
c) had been
d) is

23 If I .... my car, I would have a lot of money. مدرسة الشهيد عبدالمنعم رياض محافظة المنوفية

a) sell
b) will sell
c) had sold
d) sold

24 If they .... well, they would have passed the exam. إدارة شرق شبرا التعليمية القليوبية

a) studied
b) have studied
c) had studied
d) study

25 If Ahmed had read that book, he .... what happened at the end.

إدارة أوسيم التعليمية - الجيزة

a) knew
b) will know
c) would know
d) would have known

26 If you .... to learn a musical instrument, you have to practise.

a) will want
b) wanted
c) want
d) had wanted

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

27 If the weather was nice today, we .... out for a walk.

a) would have gone
b) go
c) will go
d) would go

28 One answer of the following is grammatically correct:

a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al-Hussein Market.
b) If you want to buy a good carpet, goes to Al-Hussein Market.
c) If you want to buy a good carpet, you would go to Al-Hussein Market.
d) If you want to buy a good carpet, will go to Al-Hussein Market.

29 One answer of the following is grammatically incorrect:

a) If we boil water to 100°C, it evaporates.
b) If water is boiled to 100°C, it evaporates.
c) When water boils at 100°C, it evaporates.
d) If water boils at 100°C, it is evaporated.

30 One answer gives the same meaning to the following sentence:
If Ahmed lived in a big city, he could find a job easily.

a) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
c) Ahmed won't live in a big city, so he won't find a job.
d) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he found a job.

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 If they build an airport near us, we .... travel easily.

a) will be able to
b) should
c) must
d) have to
e) can

32 If Hossam .... for the job, they .... him.

a) applies/would choose
b) applied/might choose
c) had applied/might have chosen
d) applied/ might have chosen
e) applied/will choose

33 If you finish early, ...

a) you will help me.
b) help me.
c) helped me.
d) will you help me?
e) should you help me?

34 If he had enough money, he .... the car.

a) would have bought
b) might buy
c) will have bought
d) might have bought
e) could buy

35 If he .... this book, he .... a lot of knowledge.

a) read/can get
b) will read/can get
c) read/ would be able to get
d) reads/ will get
e) read/ will be able to get

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Unit 6
Lessons 1 & 2

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Cancer Hospital has collected 200,000 pounds through online ....
a) sales b) profits c) losses d) donations

2 Since mother helped us before, it's .... to assume that she'll help us again.
a) logical b) legal c) movable d) legislative

3 The students .... the P.E. teacher to play with them, but he knows nothing about football.
a) regretted b) begged c) managed d) regarded

4 Leila .... her friend Mariam like one of the family.
a) cured b) healed c) treated d) advised

5 The dentist has her .... sterilise the instruments يعقم الأدوات every day.
a) patient b) assistant c) system d) foe

6 The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds .... breakfast.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

7 Although he practised hard, he couldn't win the ...., but came fourth.
a) champion b) path c) race d) passage

8 My uncle feels really .... after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
a) alone b) alike c) happy d) relieved

9 If her dreams .... true, she would have been happy.
a) comes b) came c) had come d) hadn't come

10 If I have a headache, I .... a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.
a) drink b) will drink c) would drink d) drank

11 We .... you more often if you didn't live so far away.
a) saw b) will see c) would see d) had seen

12 Ehab .... fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.
a) will go b) had gone c) would go d) is going

13 If my brother had a lot of money, he .... it all on music and clothes.
a) would spend b) will spend c) would have spent d) spends

14 If he read the questions slowly, he .... them.
a) will understand b) would understand
c) understands d) can understand

15 If Nihal watches horror movies, she .... at night.
a) will sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

16 When you put too much water in rice while cooking, it .... sticky as usual!
a) would get b) will get c) gets d) got

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the wild, it often comes down to predator and prey. There is the hunter and there is the hunted. Organisms[1] want to stay alive. They hide or escape from animals who would like to eat them. So how do they do it? They adapt to their environment.

One very helpful adaptation is called camouflage[2]. You may have been surprised at some time by an animal that used camouflage. It blended into its surroundings so well that you nearly missed seeing it. Its colouring, markings[3] or other physical features allowed it to blend into the area around it.

Animals use camouflage to fool a predator. The hidden animal is not seen when a predator scans an area looking for food. Wild goats, for example, have coats that make them look invisible among rocks. A baby giraffe's coat helps it hide among the grass and trees. A chameleon is a lizard that will change colours depending on the surface it is on.

Camouflage often works the other way around, too. Predators can use camouflage to trap[4] their prey. A predator can attack unexpectedly an animal it wants to eat. The prey animal doesn't see danger because the predator blends into the habitat. A leopard's spotted coat helps it blend into the background and sneak up on its prey.

Another popular adaptation is mimicry. Mimicry is when an animal has the physical characteristics that make it look like another animal or a plant. Some moths[5] look like wasps[6]. Predators that don't like wasps will think the moth is a wasp and will not eat it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Camouflage often works to help ....
   - **a)** the prey **b)** the predator
   - **c)** the prey and the predator **d)** the wasp
2. What helps the animal to blend into the area around it is its ....
   - **a)** physical features **b)** size and strength
   - **c)** intelligence and wisdom **d)** fear of the predator
3. If a chameleon was on a green leaf, what colour would it be?
   - **a)** Brown. **b)** Blue. **c)** Yellow. **d)** Green.
4. When animals want to look like something a predator doesn't want to eat, they use ....
   - **a)** camouflage **b)** mimicry **c)** wasps **d)** moths

(1) كائنات حية (2) تمويه (3) علامات مميزة (4) يوقع ب (5) فراشة (6) دبور

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

5 When creatures want to stay alive, they ....

a) eat their predators
b) hide themselves
c) adapt to their environment
d) change their colours

6 It may be a surprise when an animal uses camouflage as it ....

a) can't be seen
b) flies away
c) looks bigger
d) shrinks

7 The chameleon can change its colour according to ....

a) the predator
b) the surroundings
c) the weather
d) the availability

8 Thanks to its coat, ... can hide and eat its prey easily.

a) the moth
b) the chameleon
c) the wasp
d) the leopard

\) Translate into Arabic:

1. Happiness is more than a good feeling or a yellow smiley face. It's the feeling of truly enjoying your life, and the desire to make the very best of it.

....

....

2. Some people believe that money can make you happy. When we have experiences and buy things, using money, this can make us happy.

....

....

3. Literature[1] can play a vital[2] role in solving many social problems. That's because it is one of the best means to portray[3] these problems and look for solutions for them.

....

....

4. Mass media affects our life greatly. It has become one of the main instruments of political change. So, it is widely used in all political campaigns[4].

....

....

5. Retirement[5] age can be considered a time of rest for a lot of people. However, many old people want to continue working for social and financial[6] reasons.

....

....

6. Teenagers usually don't agree with their elders and do not like trusting their secrets with them. Most of them resort to their friends for this.

....

....

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B) Translate into English:

١- صورت[٧] قصص نجيب محفوظ المجتمع المصرى بكل قيمه ومشاكله، فى الوقت الذى عاش فيه وقد حصل على جائزة نوبل بسبب تأثيره الكبير فى الأدب العربى.

....

....

٢- تساعد الحكومة الشباب من خريجى كلية الزراعة عن طريق منحهم مساحات أرض فى مناطق مختلفة بحيث يمكنهم استصلاحها[٨] وبدء مشروعهم الخاص.

....

....

٣- يعانى الكثير من الناس من غلاء المعيشة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية[٩] لمواجهة الأزمات[١٠] المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

....

....

٤- تمثل الجامعات المصدر الرئيسى لإمداد المجتمع بما يحتاجه من علماء وباحثين[١١] فى المجالات المختلفة، لذا يجب توفير الدعم المادى[١٢] اللازم لتطويرها بشكل مستمر.

....

....

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How can mass media spread awareness towards health problems and controlling them? Think of the coronavirus as an example."

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. ....

.... I used the right structure.

I used a topic sentence. ....

.... I wrote the conclusion.

I used the right punctuation. ....

(1) أدب
(2) رئيسى
(3) يصور
(4) حملات
(5) التقاعد
(6) مادى
(7) depicted/portrayed
(8) reclamation
(9) consuming habits
(10) crises
(11) scholars
(12) financial support

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Key Phrases

bring back	يعيد ذكريات	hang out with	يقضي وقتا مع
fall out *	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع	lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
get on with	ينسجم مع		

* I never fall out with my elder brother; we share our objects easily.

Vocabulary on Listening

apparently (adv)	بوضوح	improve (v) (d)	يحسن
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لصورة فى جريدة أو مجلة	magazine (n)	مجلة
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة	mall (n)	مركز تسوق
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب	memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
go back (v)	يرجع/يعود	prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن	wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية
ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل		

Language & Workbook Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية	necklace (n)	قلادة
conversation (n)	محادثة	opposite (adj)	عكس/مقابل/مواجه لـ
friendship (n)	صداقة	organise (v) (d)	ينظم
high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية	own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
leader (n)	قائد	pocket (n)	جيب

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

polite (adj)	مؤدب	rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادية	relationship (n)	علاقة
pretty (adj)	جميل	reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	get worse	يسوء
as usual	كالمعتاد	keep attention on	يستمر فى الاهتمام بـ
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن	share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع	take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى	go past	يمر بـ
argue with	يجادل مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
bad for	سيئ لـ	pick up	يلتقط

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appear*	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر

* - The moon appears in the sky.
- The appearance of the moon is impressive.
- The moon is very apparent among the clouds.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	vaguely/uncertain بشكل مبهم/غير مؤكد
close	قريب/مقرب	nearby/intimate	far/distant بعيد
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose/presume	question/wonder يتساءل
memory	ذكرى	remembrance/ memorisation	forgetfulness/ignorance نسيان/تجاهل
organise	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	scatter/confuse يبعثر/يربك
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint/motive	hindrance إعاقة
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection انفصال

Check Point 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Dalia has never really .... on with the new student in the class.
a) went b) got c) came d) received

2 My friend's .... isn't good with her brother, but she's very close to her sister.
a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) cure

3 I used to hang .... with my old friends when I was at college.
a) on b) in c) out d) at

4 I .... that you'll be looking for a new job after leaving the old one.
a) decline b) guess c) detest d) object

5 Egypt does its best to .... its industry to limit our imports and save hard currency.
a) prove b) approve c) disapprove d) improve

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

What role does friendship play in your life?

Reading Text (1) (Workbook)

How are your friendships?



Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them and, when you're in the middle of a conversation[1], when you're they start looking at their phone? When that happens, many people feel ignored and upset. And the problem may be getting worse because over 81% of Egyptian teenagers between the ages of 15 and 17 now own[2] a phone.

Studies have shown that just having a mobile phone out while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other. And many people think that when someone is using their phone, they are not being polite[3] and not really listening. So, using a phone like this can damage even good friendships[4].

However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends. Understanding the problem is important. So, the next time you are going to pick up[5] your phone while talking to a friend, think about what you are doing and stop. Is your phone really more important than your friend? Perhaps you should keep your attention on the person you are talking to. And if a friend ignores[6] you, tell them about it because they may not understand how it makes you feel.

So, if you want to be a kind and honest friend, keep your phone in your pocket[7] and your eyes on your friendship.

(1) محادثة
(2) يمتلك
(3) مؤدب
(4) صداقات
(5) يلتقط
(6) يتجاهل
(7) جيب

How can mobile phones affect our relationship with our friends?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Did you ever do something in the past that you regret now?

Listening Text (1)



Presenter:

In today's show, we're going back in time and looking at some of our regrets. Now I've got a message from Tarek. And Tarek has a story that, I think, will bring back[1] memories for many of us. This is what he says ...

I used to talk to my family and play with my brothers after school. I also used to phone my grandparents and my cousins. But then I got into[2] using social media more.

I started using social media to talk to my friends after school too. We all liked the same things. It was fun and we all got on with[3] each other. Sometimes I'd hang out with[4] them online for hours chatting.

I guess I lost touch with[5] my cousins and my grandparents a bit. I still saw them sometimes, of course, but I didn't call them. I didn't tell my grandparents about my day at school.

But when my friends started falling out[6] with each other online, I stopped chatting with them, too. Now, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have ignored my family. I wish I'd kept in touch[7] with my cousins more. I should have called my grandparents, and I wish I could change what happened.

Sadly, this kind of thing seems to happen so often these days. I guess, when we're getting into something new, we can forget to take an interest in the people who really care about us. Thank you for sharing your story with us, Tarek.

يعيد ذكريات (1)
بدأ الاستمتاع (2)
انسجم مع (3)
قضى وقتا مع (4)
فقد الاتصال (5)
يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف (6)
يبقى على اتصال (7)

Why did Tarek change his mind about using social media much and ignoring his family?

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Do you have many friends?

Listening Text (2)

Judy: Hoda was my best friend. We'd always hang out together at school. We made each other laugh a lot and we were very close.

Sometimes, we'd hang out together after school as well. We'd listen to music, look at magazines[1] and chat[2] for hours.

One weekend, we went shopping at the mall[3]. We had a great time as usual[4], but that was when she showed me her new smartphone.

Apparently[5], it was a really good phone and Hoda couldn't stop using it all the time. She got really into social media and made lots of new friends online.

(1) مجلات
(2) يدردش
(3) مركز تسوق
(4) كالمعتاد
(5) بوضوح

What did Hoda do with her smartphone?

Do you have photos of your childhood?

Listening Text (3) (Workbook)

Hoda : Hey, Lamia! Have you seen this from Ola? She's posted some old photos from when we were in prep school.

Lamia: Really? Let's see. But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

Hoda : Yes, you do. She used to sit opposite[1] you in class and you would always fall out when we played any game together because you both wanted to be the leaders.

Lamia: Ahhh, yes. I remember now. I shouldn't have argued with her so much because she was a kind person really.

Hoda : Look! Here she is in the photo.

Lamia: Ahh, wow!

Hoda : ... and look at us! Oh, no way! Just look at your hair!

Lamia: Oh, that's terrible! And what about your dress!

Hoda : Oh no! Not that dress! It brings back so many bad memories[2]. That was the dress I was wearing when I lost my favourite necklace[3]. I wish I hadn't taken it to school that day.

Lamia: But the necklace was very pretty[4] and if you hadn't taken it to school, Samira wouldn't have spoken to you about it and you two wouldn't have got on so well!

Hoda : That's true I guess, and we are still very good friends now.

(1) مواجه لـ
(2) ذكريات
(3) قلادة
(4) جميل

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Lamia: And look! There's the old group of friends we used to hang out with. I was sad when they moved away to go to high school[5] and really wish we hadn't lost touch with them.

Hoda : Yes, we had some great times together and if we had stayed in touch, we would have been able to organise[6] a school reunion[7]. I wish we hadn't left prep school! We had a lot less homework!

Hoda : That's true! Perhaps we can keep in touch with them on social media.

Lamia: Good idea! Let's post a message asking if anyone knows anything about them.

(5) مدرسة ثانوية

(6) ينظم

(7) إعادة جمع/إعادة اتحاد

What is the bad memory of Hoda's dress?

Check Point 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 On Mother's Day, I bought a gold .... for my lovely mum.

a) machine
b) necklace
c) chain
d) series

2 It's impolite to .... your friends' speech and look at your phone.

a) attend
b) listen
c) increase
d) ignore

3 European countries have a tense .... with Russia due to the last war.

a) relationship
b) dispute
c) race
d) game

4 Going to Giza .... back fond memories of the university.

a) brings
b) gets
c) dates
d) repeats

5 Many world .... are going to meet to discuss the environmental problems in Sharm El-Sheikh Climate Conference next November.

a) armies
b) enemies
c) fighters
d) leaders

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Vocabulary in Use



Focus on Vocabulary

bring back — يعيد ذكريات
- to make you remember

fall out — يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
- to stop being friendly

get into — يبدأ الاستمتاع
- to start enjoying

get on with — ينسجم مع
- to make progress with a particular activity

hang out with — يقضي وقتا مع
- to spend time with

keep in touch with — يبقى على اتصال
- to continue to communicate with

lose touch — يفقد الاتصال
- to stop communicating

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Notes on Vocabulary

memory ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)	▸ My grandfather suffers from memory loss. ▸ He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El-Sheikh.
souvenir تذكار (شيء مادى يتذكر برحلة/حدث)	▸ I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.
anniversary ذكرى سنوية	▸ October 2019 was the 25th anniversary of our parents' marriage.

1

title عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب.	▸ The titles of the main newspaper articles are usually printed in red capital letters.
subtitle ١- عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/ عنوان فرعى لكتاب. ٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة.	▸ The subtitle of Taha Hussein's *Al Ayam* is "A personal autobiography". ▸ I watched a French documentary in English subtitles about the First World War.
caption تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة.	▸ The photo of the accident was published with the caption "Catastrophe" under it.

2

Notes on sentences from Listening and Reading Texts

▸ Have you ever met a friend to spend time with them ....

- لاحظ استخدام ضمير الجمع (them) للإشارة إلى الاسم (friend) لتشمل he/she.

▸ .... while having a conversation makes friends feel uncomfortable with each other.

- نستخدم صيغة المصدر (verb + ing) بعد أداة الربط (while) إذا لم يتبعها فاعل.

▸ However, there are ways to have a phone without losing your friends.

- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد كل حروف الجر ومنها (without).

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

▸ I stopped chatting with them, too.

- نستخدم صيغة (verb + ing) بعد الفعل (stop) بمعنى «يتوقف عن». أما إذا كانت بمعنى «يتوقف لكى» فيتبعها (المصدر + to).

▸ But, I don't remember an Ola in our class.

- لاحظ استخدام أداة النكرة (an) قبل الاسم بمعنى (شخص ما يدعى).

Check Point 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor advised my father to stop .... because of some heart problems.
   - a) smoke
   - b) to smoke
   - c) smoking
   - d) smoked
2. Weakness or loss of .... is a natural stage of old age.
   - a) memory
   - b) souvenir
   - c) memorial
   - d) anniversary
3. The news of the accident was the front page .... of most newspapers.
   - a) address
   - b) title
   - c) speech
   - d) talk
4. My sister spends hours on a .... with her friends on WhatsApp application.
   - a) chat
   - b) murmur
   - c) rumour
   - d) conversation
5. The teacher showed us a group of pictures and asked us to think of a/an .... for each one of them.
   - a) title
   - b) address
   - c) caption
   - d) rank

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice

Vocabulary Exercises

After we memorised the new vocabulary and read the notes, we need to practise. I think number one will be (a), do you agree?

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary, Reading, Listening, Language & Workbook Vocabulary

1 The two neighbours .... out over the place to park their cars.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

2 We .... on well enough, but we're not really close friends.
a) give b) get c) take d) go

3 They were friends in college, but then they moved to different cities and .... touch.
a) replaced b) removed c) stayed d) lost

4 The young man spent a couple of days .... out with his old friends as part of their vacation.
a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving

5 We were surprised when their .... happy marriage ended after only two years.
a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) untruly d) apparently

6 The .... on the picture says, "This year's contest winners."
a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address

7 It is not advisable to .... with other people about your personal life on the internet.
a) fight b) chat c) quarrel d) reverse

8 Can you .... the number of guests who will come to the part?
a) think b) guess c) disagree d) agree

9 As a teacher, I never .... my students' questions even if they seem to be unimportant.
a) assist b) welcome c) ignore d) apply

10 One of the ways to .... your English is to practise it with your friends at school.
a) prove b) remove c) move d) improve

11 Grandfather suffers from a weak .... due to his age and illness.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

12 The conductor said that we still had a/an .... of time before the train left.
a) quality b) account c) amount d) adjective

13 President Sadat was a respected Egyptian .... who made great achievements.
a) officer b) leader c) diplomat d) secretary

14 Don't try to .... up your phone while talking to a friend.
a) hold b) raise c) move d) pick

15 The .... between Arab countries should always be strong because they have common enemies.
a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 Mr Sameh has always dreamed of a/an .... to work and stay with his son who lives in America.
a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation

Expressions, Phrases, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms & Antonyms

17 The bad weather ruined the party. The verb "ruin" can be the opposite of the verb "..................".
a) destroy b) organise c) damage d) distract

18 The photographs brought .... many pleasant memories.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

19 Social media websites help you .... your attention on your friends' affairs.
a) lose b) keep c) miss d) have

20 Despite her problems, she carried on working .... usual.
a) as b) in c) at d) on

21 She's always arguing .... her sister about sharing their clothes.
a) on b) for c) at d) with

22 The school bus goes .... many students' houses on the way to school.
a) past b) for c) inside d) into

23 The scientist had never been greatly concerned with her ....
a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent

24 A good teacher should never make his students feel ....
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignoring d) ignored

25 The book includes helpful hints for inexperienced cooks. The word "hint" is a synonym of the word "..................".
a) forecast b) reserve c) conservation d) prompt

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

26 He began to lose his memory as he grew older. The synonyms of the word "memory" are ....
a) remembrance b) souvenir c) memorial d) amnesia e) memorization

27 The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will .... worse as he is very old.
a) become b) turn c) get d) fall e) pick

28 I usually buy my clothes at the shopping .... near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
a) theatre b) pharmacy c) gym d) mall e) centre

29 The player .... a cold and he missed the final match yesterday.
a) lost b) had c) caught d) treated e) cured

30 Don't get too close to the fire. The antonyms of the adjective "close" are ....
a) near b) far c) happy d) distant e) nearly

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B Language

Important Notes

Wish/If only + past perfect	Regret in the past ندم فى الماضى	▸ I wish/If only I hadn't forgotten my book. The teacher was angry. ▸ I wish I had arrived early. I didn't see my uncle.
Wish/If only + past simple	Wish about present situation أمنية فى المضارع	▸ I wish/If only I were/was taller to be able to play basketball. (I'm not tall.) ▸ I wish I had enough money to buy this dress.
Wish/If only + would/could + inf.	To express a strong desire that we believe is unlikely or impossible. للتعبير عن رغبة قوية نعتقد أنها غير محتملة أو مستحيلة.	▸ I wish/If only they would stop talking. ▸ I wish I could speak Turkish.

- عند التعبير عن الرغبة والأمنية نرجع بالزمن درجة إلى الوراء، فلو أردنا التعبير عن المضارع نستخدم الماضى، ولو أردنا الماضى نستخدم الماضى التام، ولا نستخدم شكل المضارع بعد Wish/If only.

▸ He's ill. He wishes he weren't ill. (Present)

▸ I overslept yesterday. I wish I hadn't overslept yesterday. (Past)

Check Point 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I wish we .... enough money to buy a car.
   a) were having b) have c) had d) will have
2. She wishes she .... to her teacher's advice. She didn't succeed.
   a) listened b) had listened c) listens d) would listen
3. I wish the school holidays .... longer.
   a) will be b) are c) have been d) were
4. Ahmed is angry with me. I wish I .... to his wedding last week.
   a) had gone b) went c) would go d) will go
5. I regret going to the final match. I wish I .... there.
   a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) wouldn't go d) won't go

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Alternatives to using "If" بدائل (If)

هناك تعبيرات يمكن أن نستخدمها محل If وتؤدى نفس المعنى:

1) Providing/Provided that/On condition that/As (So) long as + جملة

- You can borrow my pen if/provided that/on condition that/as long as you give it back.

لا تحل هذه الكلمات محل If فى الحالة الثالثة لأنها تعبر عن المضارع والمستقبل فقط.

2) Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) + جملة

- Supposing/Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?
- Supposing it rains, will you go for a picnic with him?

3) Unless + جملة مثبتة/Without + noun or v. + ing = If ... not

Unless لو لم	+ فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة)	, جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)
Unless	he had phoned me,	I wouldn't have visited him.

We can't enter the building	if we don't wear a helmet.
	unless we wear a helmet.
	without wearing a helmet.

If they hadn't had a ticket,	they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.
Unless they had had a ticket,	
Without having a ticket,	

4) In case of/In the event of + noun = If + جملة

- Open the door in case of (if there is) an emergency.

5) In case = If

- نستخدم in case بدون of وتساوى If فى شكل الجملة وتختلف عنها فى المعنى، لأنها تعنى فعل شىء لتجنب مشكلة محتملة فى المستقبل.

- Take this money in case you need some. فى حالة/ربما
- He took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.
- Chain the bike to the gate in case it is stolen. (not if)

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

6) But for + noun = Without = If ... not

- But for his advice, we would have got lost.

7) Should/Were/Had + subject + verb

- تستخدم were/had/should بدلًا من if كأفعال مساعدة بعدها فاعل ثم فعل أساسى.
- تستخدم should بدلًا من if فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية ويأتى بعدها المصدر.

- Should the plane leave on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon.
- Should he fail to be elected, it would be a great disappointment for him.

8) Were + subject + noun/adjective
Were + subject + (to + Inf.)

- تستخدم Were بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثانية فقط، ويأتى بعدها إما اسم وإما صفة أو (to + inf).

- Were I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
- Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.

- تستخدم Had بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثالثة.

Had + subject + P.P.

- Had he advised me, I'd have passed my exams easily.

- فى النفى نضع not بعد الفاعل.

- Had he not advised me, I wouldn't have passed my exams easily.

9) If it weren't for/If it hadn't been for = Without

- If it weren't for the underground, I would reach my work late. (حالة 2)
- If it hadn't been for my father's help, I wouldn't have got a job easily. (حالة 3)

لاحظ

If/Unless + v. + ing + verb

- يجب مراعاة أن (v. + ing) يمكن أن يكون فاعلًا فيأتى بعد If أو Unless كالآتى:

- If studying online saves time, I'll download the lessons and study them at home.

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 .... I had been so tired, I might have realised what was happening.

a) If
b) Without
c) In case of
d) Unless

2 .... him today, he would know what happened.

a) If she meets
b) Were she to meet
c) Unless she met
d) Had she met

3 .... training well, our team wouldn't be able to win the match.

a) Provided that
b) On condition that
c) Without
d) Imagine that

4 He took some food with him .... there were no restaurants in the area.

a) in case
b) if
c) unless
d) but for

5 .... your help, I would have failed.

a) In case of
b) Provided that
c) Without
d) Unless

ANSWER Check the answers at the end of the book.

Golden Question

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- If you would like to go to the stadium, I .... with you.

a) will go
b) would go
c) would have gone
d) went

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Practice Language Exercises

Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Practice is the best way to apply what we have learnt.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Visitors are welcomed, ... they don't make troubles.
a) without b) unless c) as long as d) provides

2 .... an emergency landing, the pilot will inform the airport authorities.
a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Provided that

3 .... he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.
a) Should b) Hadn't c) If d) Had

4 I won't do anything .... you agree.
a) without b) in case of c) unless d) but for

5 .... she invited me to her birthday, I would have attended it.
a) If b) Unless c) Had d) Where

6 Were Covid-19 .... again, hospitals would now be ready for it.
a) to reappear b) reappeared c) be reappeared d) to reappearing

7 You can go out with your friends .... you come back before midnight.
a) without b) in case of c) but for d) as long as

8 Supposing there .... no rivers on earth, how would we get water for drinking?
a) were b) had been c) are d) have been

9 If it .... your ambitions, we wouldn't have reached that great position.
a) weren't for b) hadn't been for c) wasn't d) had been

10 We will be at work in time .... the bus comes soon.
a) unless b) provided that c) without d) in case of

11 .... his many crimes, he wouldn't have been sent to prison.
a) But for b) In case of c) Suppose d) Provided that

12 Should she .... more information about Hany's situation, she would help him.
a) had b) have c) to have d) had had

13 .... having a car, we would have found it difficult to get there in time.
a) If b) In case of c) Without d) Provided that

14 They wish they .... speak French.
a) could b) can c) will d) may

15 If it .... for medical staff's great efforts, many people might die.
a) haven't been b) hadn't been c) hadn't d) weren't

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

16 You must take your umbrella .... it rains.

a) in case b) unless c) in case of d) without

17 .... your generosity, I would have been in big trouble.

a) But for b) In case of c) Provided that d) Unless

18 I'll talk to the press .... they don't reveal my identity.

a) unless b) on condition that c) without d) in case of

19 I wish I .... more revision this year. I didn't get high marks.

a) did b) could do c) would do d) had done

20 If only I .... more time for my hobbies. I'm very busy.

a) have b) had c) had had d) would have

21 We wish we .... the matter seriously and phoned the doctor from the beginning. إدارة غرب الزقازيق

a) took b) taken c) had taken d) have taken

22 I wish you .... throw the litter on the floor. الشرقية - مدرسة الزقازيق الثانوية بنات

a) would b) wouldn't c) could d) won't

23 .... he been invited, he would have come to the party. المنوفية - إدارة قويسنا التعليمية

a) Should b) Had c) Were d) Would

24 .... they had much time, they would have studied better. القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر

a) If b) Were c) Had d) Have

25 Were you .... too much, you would be fat. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم

a) eat b) to eat c) ate d) had eaten

26 "If I had quit my job, I would not have enough money to live in Cairo".
This means ....

a) she quit her job and does not have enough money now
b) she did not quit her job and she has enough money
c) she intends to quit her job as she doesn't have enough money
d) she doesn't intend to quit her job although she doesn't have enough mone

27 One answer to the following sentence is correct:
"If I .... enough money, I .... around Europe. But, unfortunatel
I am broke."

a) had/would backpack
b) had had/would backpack
c) had/would have backpacked
d) have/will backpack

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

8 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.

b) Unless I were a doctor, I could help you.

c) Unless I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.

d) Unless I weren't a doctor, I could help you.

9 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

a) I will lend you my car if you promise to return it today.

b) I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

c) I won't lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

d) I will lend you my car as long as you promise to return it today.

30 Choose one correct answer to the following question:

What .... if you .... enough money?

a) did you do/had

b) had you done/had had

c) would you have done/had had

d) would you do/had had

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

31 The door .... unless you ....

a) won't open/push

b) doesn't open/will push

c) isn't open/push

d) wouldn't open/pushed

e) won't open/will push

32 You can't take my car .... carefully.

a) if you drive

b) unless you drive

c) without driving

d) in case you drive

e) provided you drive

33 Hossam can get high marks .... he does his best

a) In case of

b) without

c) provided

d) if

e) unless

34 .... his bravery , the house would have been burnt.

a) Without

b) In case of

c) Provided

d) if

e) But for

35 .... emergency, I will call the police.

a) Were there

b) If there is

c) In case of

d) Had there been

e) Unless there is

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

C Communication Skills

للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

(I) Language Skills

Learning from mistakes

The most important life lessons we will ever learn will be from the bad decisions we make. Time and experience can be excellent teachers when you actually learn a lesson from your poor decisions. Experience comes from our way of living, understanding and the adjustments we make. It also comes from suffering, agony عذاب and the ordeals مِحَن we are afflicted by مبتلى بها.

We need to learn from our mistakes so that we do not run the risk of repeating them. We must develop the wisdom and sense to make good decisions and choices. Good judgment حكم will only develop if you truly learn from your mistakes. Unfortunately, for many people, it takes a few repeats of the same mistake to learn the lesson.

Good or bad, experiences are what help us learn lessons and form a better sense of judgment. Bad judgment seems to stick with us longer as a lesson learned because we really do not want to keep repeating it. Wisdom is the knowledge you can gain from making mistakes.

5 ways to turn your mistake into a valuable life lesson:

1. Acknowledge اعترف بـ Your Errors
2. Ask Yourself Tough قاسية Questions
3. Make a Plan
4. Make It Harder to Mess up
5. Create a List of Reasons Why You Don't Want to Make the Mistake Again

References

https://exploringyourmind.com/recognizing-mistakes-means-can-learn/

https://www.elitedaily.com/life/why-you-need-to-learn-from-your-mistakes

https://www.forbes.com/sites/amymorin/2017/07/17/5-ways-to-turn-your-mistake-into-a-valuable-life-lesson/#7f7b723a1c01

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

(II) Writing

Write an essay of about 180 words about something that you regret. Draw pictures with captions for your regret.

Last summer, I was going to travel to Rome for a business trip. The plane was at six o'clock a.m. I woke up very early so that I wouldn't be late for the plane. I took a taxi and I arrived at the airport at 4 o'clock an hour before the plane. I checked in and got ready for the plane. As it was still early for the plane, I decided to go to a cafe at the airport to have my coffee. I bought a big packet of biscuits to eat with the coffee.

The cafe was busy and I had to share a room with an old man. I had my handbag which I put on the table and went to bring my coffee to the counter. I returned back to the table. As I sat at the table, I saw the old man smiling at me. A packet of biscuits was on the table and I started to eat the first piece. Surprisingly, the old man took a piece, too. Each time I took a piece of biscuits, the old man took one. Soon, we ate all the pieces except for one piece left. The old man took it, cut it into two halves, took one half and gave me the other. I was very angry and I shouted at the old man very hard. However, the old man didn't say a word. He looked sad, then he left.

When I got on board the plane, I was surprised to see the old man on the same plane. I looked at him angrily and sat on my seat. I opened my handbag to take out a book I wanted to read on the plane. To my surprise, I found the packet of biscuits I bought. I forgot that I had put it in the bag before going to bring my coffee. The packet on the table belonged to the old man who didn't mind sharing it with me. Immediately, I went to the old man's seat and apologised to him. The man just smiled at me and said, "It's all right."



I am arriving at the airport.



I am sitting with the old man at the café.



I am shouting at the old man angrily.



I am finding the packet of biscuits in my handbag.

What can we learn from this embarrassing situation?

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Test Yourself in 20 min

Take a Test

Unit 6
Lessons 3 & 4

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analysing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Staying at this hotel brought .... sweet memories of our honeymoon.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

2 The two sisters .... out over who will wear the new dress to the party.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

3 I felt embarrassed when my teacher .... my question and moved on to the next point.
a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied

4 I advised my son to .... his study well to get high marks in exams.
a) organise b) recognise c) realise d) specialise

5 The doctor said that the old man .... died of a heart attack and it wasn't a murder.
a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) luckily d) apparently

6 Mother always tells my little brother that it's not .... to talk with his mouth full.
a) hasty b) rude c) polite d) greedy

7 My sister is really interested .... reading about the news of actors and actresses.
a) at b) for c) in d) about

8 The two girls have had a long-standing .... since they were in primary school.
a) conspiracy b) teenage c) childhood d) friendship

9 .... he had enough money, he wouldn't buy his needs.
a) Without b) Unless c) If d) In case

10 .... knowing the truth, I wouldn't have called her.
a) Without b) If c) Provided that d) Unless

11 If Mona .... someone the way to the museum, she would have known where to go.
a) asked b) would ask c) asks d) had asked

12 If you need anything from the shop, I .... it for you.
a) will get b) get c) would get d) got

13 It's too bad; Hany isn't with us. If he .... here, he .... the letter for us.
a) had been/'d have translated b) is/will translate
c) were/wouldn't translate d) were/could translate

14 .... the sun's disappearance, there would be no life on Earth.
a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Without

15 Were you .... harder, you'd get higher marks.
a) worked b) to work c) had worked d) work

16 I will call her .... she wants to join us to the cinema.
a) without b) unless c) in case d) but for

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later. Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling downhill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms. When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work.

When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Energy is ....
   a) the ability to bounce a ball   b) the ability to cause change
   c) the ability to ride a bike   d) the ability to switch on the light

2 The other meaning of "change into" from the passage is ....
   a) bounce   b) kick
   c) store   d) convert

3 Energy that is based on an object's position is called ....
   a) potential energy   b) kinetic energy
   c) thermal energy   d) mechanical energy

4 The antonym of the word "raw" is "...............................".
   a) uncooked   b) fresh
   c) cooked   d) natural

5 Kinetic energy is another term for the energy of ....
   a) light   b) sound
   c) bouncing   d) motion

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

6 When a person starts to move, ...

a) his motion energy turns into a kinetic one
b) his motion energy turns into a chemical one
c) his kinetic energy turns into a chemical one
d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one

7 Which one is not mentioned in the passage?

a) The energy in a battery
b) The energy in a mobile phone
c) The energy in a basketball
d) The energy of heat

8 The best title for the passage is "..............................".

a) Types of Power
b) What is Energy?
c) Sports and Energy
d) Energy Consumption

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. Friendship is one of the best things in life as friends can give you all the help and support to do better in your life.

....

....

2. Experts warn us that using the phone for long hours can have serious effects on us. It can cause us physical and psychological problems.

....

....

3. We can solve many of our social problems if we teach our children to realise and change their bad mistakes. Parents and schools have a great role in this.

....

....

4. The Olympic Games are now a political question(1) as all athletes try hard to win so as to honour(2) their country. So, they may have lost their original meaning.

....

....

5. The scientific discoveries made in any country help in its development and progress. Science is also the power which can drive the wheel(3) of production in it.

....

....

6. The Ministry of Education must train(4) children on food safety through social studies lessons in the primary stage. This will help them in their later life.

....

....

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

B) Translate into English:

١- يوجد الكثير من العيوب(٥) للتكنولوجيا، فبسبب ارتباط الشباب بأدوات التواصل الاجتماعى التكنولوجية، مثل: الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول، يفقد بعضهم وسائل الحوار مع باقى أفراد المجتمع.

....

....

٢- يقال إن سر النجاح فى الحياة هو أن يكون الإنسان مستعدًا عندما تأتيه الفرصة(٦)، وإذا لم يستغلها(٧) فقد لا تعود إليه مرة أخرى، لذا لابد من استغلال الفرص المتاحة.

....

....

٣- لا تؤثر البطالة(٨) فقط على الأفراد ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاجتماعى والاقتصادى للبلاد، لذا لابد أن نضع حدًا لها.

....

....

٤- للرياضة الكثير من الفوائد، فهى تساعد على تحسين مزاجنا(٩) وتخفيف التوتر؛ لذلك يعتقد الكثير من الأطباء النفسيين أنها أفضل طريقة لمحاربة الاكتئاب(١٠).

....

....

4 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

(1) مسألة	(3) عجلة	(5) flaws	(7) exploit	(9) our mood
(2) يشرف	(4) يدرب	(6) chance	(8) unemployment	(10) depression

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Watch a video

King Lear
Act III, Scene ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blanket (n)	بطانية	hut (n)	كوخ
burn (v)	يحرق	lightning (n)	برق
force (v) (d)	يجبر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
forgive (v)	يغفر/يسامح	rise (n)	ينهض
go into (v)	يدخل	stomach (n)	معدة
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسى القلب	straw (n)	قش
homeless (adj)	بلا مأوى/مشرد	torch (n)	كشاف/شعلة
horrible (adj)	رهيب	try v) (d)	يحاول

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى موقف شخص ما	go around	يتجول
win the trust	يكسب الثقة	Keep away	يبتعد

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the storm, a flash of .... lit up the sky and the children were afraid.
a) lightning b) thunder
c) wind d) tornado

2 My elder sister would never .... me for losing her ring.
a) prohibit b) forgive
c) allow d) expect

3 A .... is a small simple building with only one or two rooms.
a) palace b) resort
c) hut d) hall

4 Closing the factory was a/an .... decision as it led to the loss of jobs.
a) hearted b) easy-hearted
c) soft-hearted d) hard-hearted

5 All the animals in this small farm sleep on ....
a) sheets b) leather
c) straw d) skin

6 Our host, Mrs. Adams, insisted on .... from her chair to greet us.
a) raising b) rising
c) keeping d) staying

7 Despite the pain, the old woman .... herself to get out of bed.
a) forced b) delighted
c) punished d) pleased

8 The floods have killed hundreds of people and made thousands ....
a) speechless b) sightless
c) homeless d) useless

9 One of the main symbols of the Olympics is the Olympic .... which is lit all through the Games.
a) sword b) torch
c) stadium d) circle

10 Ahmed's brother lost his life in a/an .... train accident.
a) effective b) impressive
c) delightful d) horrible

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Unit 6

Advanced & Open

General Exercises

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The businessman made a .... of cash on the sale of one of his companies.
a) hole b) mountain c) pile d) hill

2 The Health Minister has come under .... from all sides because of the accident in the hospital.
a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot

3 I'm going to the park outside the city for a .... of fresh air.
a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality

4 International schools in New York accept children from all .... and religions.
a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races

5 The carpenter .... the wood with a waterproof sealant مادة عازلة to protect it.
a) cured b) treated c) processed d) operated

6 Samy shouldn't let his elder brother .... him around like that.
a) depart b) accept c) boss d) head

7 Sales of the products at present low prices would be a .... of the company's investment.
a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit

8 I'll tell you what happened, but I don't want to get .... all the reasons for why it happened.
a) back b) into c) on d) out

9 I know he broke the window, but so far, he hasn't .... up.
a) possessed b) spent c) owned d) admitted

10 In some parts of the country, there are still .... of violence and unrest.
a) packets b) piles c) resources d) pockets

11 If I had heard my phone ringing, I .... it.
a) would have had to answer b) would have to answer
c) would answer d) would have answer

12 Would you know what to do .... a heart attack?
a) but for b) in case c) in case of d) providing

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

13 When you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it ....

a) will boil b) is boiled c) is boiling d) boils

14 If I had gone to university, I .... a lawyer now.

a) would have been b) would be

c) will be d) am

15 .... studying Turkish bothers you, you can stop it.

a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

16 If I .... taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.

a) wasn't b) had been c) were d) have been

17 If I .... a car, I .... you a lift.

a) had/would have given

b) had/would have to give

c) had had/would have to give

d) had had/would give

18 You're free to do whatever you want .... you respect the rules.

a) provide b) unless c) even if d) provided

19 .... he know the instructions, he wouldn't do that silly mistake.

a) Should b) did c) Had d) If

20 If my uncle visited us ...., we would be happy.

a) yesterday b) that day c) today d) then

21 If Osama were rich, he would buy the luxurious car, but he ....

a) wasn't b) isn't c) won't be d) is

22 If you hadn't been rude, he wouldn't have punished you, but you ....

a) were b) had been c) are d) would be

23 I won't go unless Ahmed goes. This means ....

a) I won't go if Ahmed goes.

b) I will go if Ahmed doesn't go.

c) I won't go when Ahmed goes.

d) I won't go if Ahmed doesn't go.

24 **A:** How is your father's cold?

B: .... it get worse, we will call the doctor.

a) Should b) Were c) If d) Unless

25 .... the car unless it is absolutely necessary.

a) Won't use b) Use c) Don't use d) Only Use

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Jim has been feeling gloomy and always says that he hasn't had much to smile .... lately.
a) in b) at c) about d) on e) of

2 My cousin has .... a keen interest in music since he was a child.
a) taken b) shown c) kept d) missed e) designed

3 Our neighbour, Mr Kareem, is too .... to buy a present for his wife on her birthday.
a) wealthy b) friendly c) generous d) mean e) miserly

4 The computer trouble was apparently caused by a programming error. The synonyms of the adverb " apparently" are ....
a) successfully b) vaguely c) obviously d) clearly e) temporarily

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 Mum always warns me not to be .... with my children so as not be hated.
a) brave b) mean c) generous d) kind

6 The new cancer hospital in 6th October City accepts .... from all people.
a) sales b) donations c) products d) crops

7 When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day .... out with my friends.
a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving

8 I realised that time was getting .... and we would have to hurry.
a) on b) back c) into d) about

9 Hanaa would have met the new teacher if she .... at school yesterday.
a) have been b) was c) were d) had been

10 Mobile phones usually .... working if they fall in water.
a) will stop b) stop c) would stop d) stopped

11 If the internet ...., our life would be gloomy.
a) didn't exist b) existed c) doesn't exist d) exists

12 My brother wouldn't have missed the bus if he .... so slowly.
a) walked b) had walked c) hadn't walked d) walks

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

13 If I go to sleep early, I usually .... early.

a) wakes
b) would wake up
c) will wake up
d) wake up

14 What .... if you'd been late for the exam?

a) will you do
b) would you do
c) would you have done
d) do you do

15 If your grades .... good in the first term, you will have to work harder in the second term.

a) weren't
b) aren't
c) hadn't been
d) had been

16 If I .... anywhere in the world, I would go to Egypt to see the Pyramids.

a) could go
b) had gone
c) go
d) was gone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Did you know that electric eels have quite a misleading name? They do! That's because even though it's true they are electric, they're actually not eels! Instead, they are a kind of fish called "knife fish". The most interesting thing about electric eels is that they can produce an electric charge.

The shock can go up to 600 volts. This can knock down a full-grown horse. Electric eels use their charge to hunt and protect themselves. They also use the charge in another way. Since these eels have poor eyesight, they don't rely on their eyes to see. Instead, they give out a weak electric signal that they use like radar. This radar helps them find their way around. It also helps them locate their prey.

Electric eels live in fresh water. They are nocturnal,[1] which means they sleep during the day and are active at night. They mostly live in rivers in South America. They like dark waters, mud and caves. Most of their time is spent underwater and will regularly come to the surface about every ten minutes to inhale[2] air through its mouth, then it will swim back to the bottom of the water.

Electric eels are carnivores[3], so they love to eat meat. They are very good at attacking their prey and their teeth are really sharp. If you saw an electric eel, you might think it looks like a snake. They have long, thin bodies. They can be white, black, blue, purple, or grey. They rarely harm humans. In fact, they are afraid of people. In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy[4]. Since the blood can be toxic, the eels need to be fully cooked. Would you eat one?

(1) ليلية (2) يستنشق (3) أكلات اللحوم (4) طعام شهي

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Where might you find an electric eel?
a) In the deep waters of the Pacific Ocean.
b) In the shallow coastal waters of the Mediterranean Sea.
c) In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.
d) Only in zoos because they are extinct in the wild.

18 What does delicacy mean in "In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy."?
a) A specialty food item.
b) A common snack food.
c) A symbol of good luck.
d) An unlucky omen.

19 How are electric eels different from most fish in the way they obtain oxygen to breathe?
a) Electric eels get oxygen through the food they eat.
b) Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.
c) Electric eels have an extra set of gills on their bodies.
d) Electric eels do not need to obtain oxygen to survive like other fish.

20 The antonym of the word "toxic" is "..............................".
a) innocent
b) poisonous
c) harmful
d) harmless

21 The electric eels use electricity to ....
a) hunt their children
b) feed their children
c) hunt and move
d) breathe

22 Electric eel's name is misleading as ....
a) it is not electric
b) it is not a fish
c) it's not a knife fish
d) it's not an eel

23 If you eat an electric eel, you must ....
a) have it with salad
b) cook it well
c) make it toxic
d) get it broiled

24 The best title for the passage is ....
a) The Wildlife
b) A Knife Fish
c) Electricity in the Sea
d) How to Cook an Eel

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

25 Translate into English:

من واجبنا تجاه أصدقائنا أن نقدم لهم النصائح المفيدة من خبراتنا التى اكتسبناها خلال تجاربنا وتعلمناها من أخطائنا.

....

....

26 Translate into Arabic:

Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

....

....

27 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY FIFTY (180) words on the following:

"The job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Study

Revision (2)

Units 4, 5 & 6

Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Reading

bandage (n)	ضمادة	misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم
bottom (n)	قاع	phrase (n)	عبارة
character (n)	شخصية	positive (adj)	إيجابي
choice (n)	اختيار	post (n) (v) (ed)	بريد/ينشر (على موقع)
comment (n)	تعليق	profile (n)	ملف شخصي
conversation (n)	محادثة	remain (v) (ed)	يبقى
digital (adj)	رقمي	remove (v) (d)	يزيل
e-book (n)	كتاب إلكتروني	response (n)	رد/استجابة
expert (n)	خبير	ruin (n) (v) (ed)	خراب/يدمر
expression (n)	تعبير	speed up (v)	يسرع
fall over (v)	يقع	storyteller (n)	راوي قصة
feelings (n)	مشاعر	swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة
footprints (n)	آثار أقدام	tap (v) (ped)	ينقر
innovator (n)	مبتكر	tone (n)	رنة/نبرة صوت/نغمة
messaging (n)	مراسلة/كتابة رسائل	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (1)

New technology often changes the way we do things. In the past, people could only tell stories by talking to each other, but this changed when stories could be written down and read. Modern technology means we can read e-books and listen to audio books, but there are always new ways to enjoy great stories. Chat stories are short stories that you can read on your smartphone. They look like messages between the characters in the story. And when you finish reading one part of the conversation, you tap the bottom of your screen to show the next message. Reading a chat story feels like you're reading someone's messages. Some chat stories also include photos, audio and videos, so you can see what a character looks like and the expressions on their face. And some chat stories let you make choices about what happens next. But some storytellers want us to go further. They invite us to imagine how our phones could show the world around us like we were in a film or a video game. Through our phones, we could also meet the characters from our stories. They think that we will learn to enjoy stories in a new way because we will be at the centre of the action. However, we must remember to make the stories fun and interesting because technology can become boring when we forget to include human feelings.

تطبيق الأضواء

العب و تعلّم..

تواصل مع أصدقائك واستمتعوا معًا بتجربة التعلّم الترفيهي مع مجتمع الأضواء.

حمّل التطبيق الآن مجانًا من خلال Google play App Store

www.aladwaa.com

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Reading Text (2)

Digital footprints

Scientists have discovered human footprints in Australia that are 20,000 years old. There are footprints of a family with a small child, and five men who ran as fast as Olympic athletes. Footprints can tell us a lot about what people did, and they can last for a long time. The phrase 'digital footprint' describes all the information that we leave behind when we use the internet. It includes things like our social media profiles, posts and the photos we upload, as well as the groups that we've joined and posts from other people that we've shared. Our search history is also part of our digital footprint. Emails can remain online for years, and the comments that we make on videos can be seen by anyone. Taha El-Sayed is an expert in internet security. He advises people to do an internet search for their own names to see what other people can find. Then we're supposed to remove anything that we don't like, and we're encouraged to close any social media accounts that we don't use anymore. He says that we have to be careful with our behaviour and try to be positive online. When asked about advice for young people, he said, "Think about how other people could react to your photos, videos or comments. Control who can see your posts and keep photos and information private in social media." He also warned young people not to share addresses, phone numbers or the name of their school with anyone online. He said, "Most young people don't mean to give away too much information, but they often forget about security when they meet new friends or join a group online."

Listening Text



Yasser: So, Hany posted a funny picture that he had taken last summer and we were all laughing at it. Gamal was in it. He had fallen into a swimming pool with his clothes on. He looked very surprised, so I was making a few jokes about it with Fady.

But when Gamal saw the jokes, he was angry. He said he'd only fallen into the pool to stop Hany's little cousin, Amir, falling in. He had asked Hany to take a picture but it was wet and he fell over. Gamal stopped him falling in, but then he fell instead.

Gamal wasn't hurt but he wasn't happy, so he asked Hany not to show anyone the picture. Hany had agreed, but then he posted a lot of pictures from last summer and I guess he'd forgotten about that one.

So, now I think Gamal isn't my friend any more.

CamScanner الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ

● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analysing ● Evaluating ● Creating

Choose the Two correct answers of the Five options:

1 Many customers wanted to make .... complaints about the new system of customer service at the company.
a) ordinary b) excited c) formal d) removable e) official

2 The health centre can .... advice to those who wish to quit smoking.
a) offer b) make c) do d) give e) let

3 My wife is keen on buying the most up-to-date kitchen equipment we can afford. The synonyms of the adjective " up-to-date" are ....
a) modern b) ancient c) updated d) traditional e) fashionable

4 Knowing that I hurt my friend with my angry words makes me feel really .... and apologized.
a) pleased b) bad c) sorry d) excited e) fine

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

5 Our teacher .... at us when we said we forgot to do our homework.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

6 Al Ahly is the team that won the most African .... of football.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) tours

7 We decided to .... a specialist about our father's heart problem.
a) predict b) consult c) detect d) hire

8 Visiting my friend in hospital brought .... sad memories about my grandfather's death.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

9 .... danger, all people have to follow the instructions told to them,
a) In case of b) In case c) Unless d) Without

10 Unless he had followed my advice, he .... all his money.
a) would have lost b) would have a loss
c) wouldn't lose d) wouldn't have lost

11 Adel was working with me all day, so you .... have seen him at the park.
a) could b) couldn't c) should d) shouldn't

CamScanner المسوحة ضوئيا بـ

12 I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night.

a) should have stayed
b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed
d) needn't stay

13 Due care .... given to homeless children in poor countries.

a) is seemed to be
b) is supposed to be
c) should have
d) must have

14 They didn't come to our party. They .... have received our invitation.

a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) could d) oughtn't

15 The doctor told me .... plenty of water.

a) to drink b) not to drink c) I will d) if I drank

16 It .... to be an apology but it only made her angry.

a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Imagine how life could be on earth without modern technology. Imagine how you could do your daily life routine without home appliances and the internet. Some people argue that it is a double-edged weapon.

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool. In order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology, some individuals couldn't function throughout their day. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial users, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming and even hacking.

Cybercrime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a predator without someone's knowledge acquires data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programmes that have viruses.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The main idea of the passage is ....

a) the internet is a very educational and productive tool.
b) the internet and cyber-crimes.
c) the internet "advantages and disadvantages".
d) the internet as a means of communication.

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

18 People use the internet for ....

a) business
b) communication
c) scamming and hacking
d) all of these

19 The word "predators" means ....

a) hackers
b) hatchers
c) customers
d) traders

20 The passage states that staying without internet is .... for some people.

a) doable
b) avoidable
c) achievable
d) unattainable

21 The underlined pronoun "its" refers to ....

a) predators
b) the internet
c) the computer
d) powers

22 A predator can commit fraud through ....

a) stealing people's personal information
b) breaking into a bank
c) stealing a computer shop
d) wearing a mask

23 Cyber criminals can't be caught easily because ....

a) they are smart
b) they are rich
c) they are all over the world
d) the police is not up-to-date

24 According to the passage, our devices can be hacked through ....

a) telephone cables
b) fake advertisements
c) antivirus programs
d) sending letters

25 **Translate into English:**

- لقد أصبح تحدث أكثر من لغة أجنبية، وتعلم مهارات الكمبيوتر من أهم المؤهلات التى يحتاج إليها سوق العمل، وزادت أهمية ذلك مع لجوء الشركات للعمل على الإنترنت بسبب جائحة كورونا.

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Technology has played an important part in changing people's lifestyle. They chat or email people instead of talking to them. They play video games instead of doing sports or exercises.

....

....

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

27 **Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

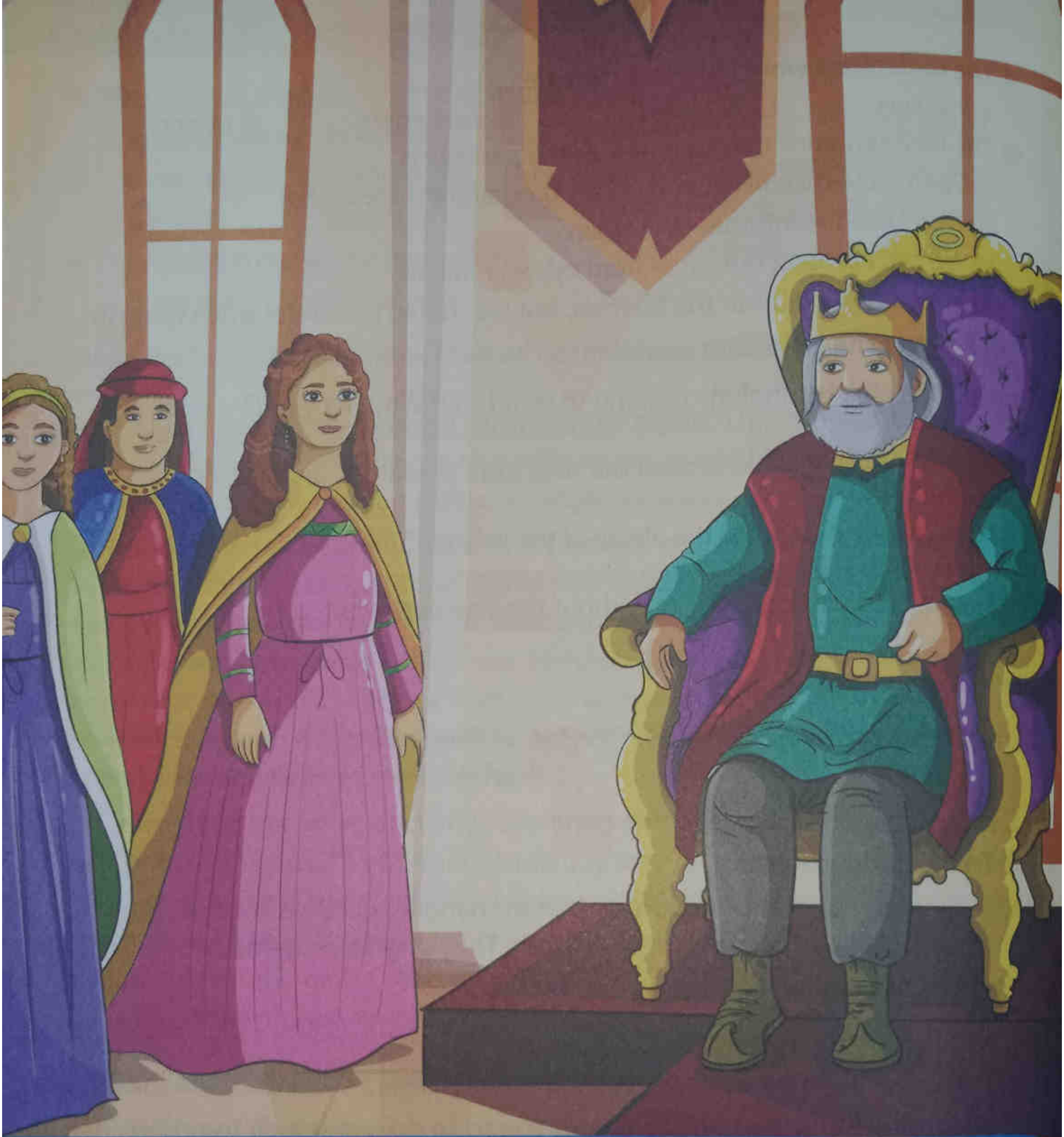
"Your teacher asked you and your friend to do research together. Ask your friend how to arrange to do it and what resources will you use."

Assess your progress ★ ★ ★ ★ ★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner



King Lear

By: William Shakespeare

Introduction

(A) The Writer (William Shakespeare)

William Shakespeare was an English poet, playwright كاتب مسرحى, and actor born in 1564 in Stratford-upon-Avon. His birthday is most commonly celebrated on 23 April, which is also believed to be the date he died in 1616.

Shakespeare's father worked as a glove-maker صانع قفازات, but he also became an important figure in the town of Stratford. His high position مكانة meant that he was even more likely to have sent his children, including William, to the local grammar school. When he was eighteen, Shakespeare married Anne Hathaway. They had three children. Their first daughter, Susanna, was followed by twins Hamnet and Judith. Hamnet died when he was just 11 years old.

Shakespeare's career started in London. During his time in London, Shakespeare's first printed works were published. They were two long poems قصيدتين, *'Venus and Adonis'* (1593) and *'The Rape of Lucrece'* (1594). He also became a founding مؤسس member of The Lord Chamberlain's Men, a company فرقة of actors. Shakespeare was the company's regular dramatist كاتب المسرحيات, producing on average two plays a year, for almost twenty years.

He remained with the company for the rest of his career, during which time it evolved into *"The King's Men"* under the patronage رعاية of King James. During his time in the company Shakespeare wrote many of his most famous tragedies تراجيديا, such as *King Lear* and *Macbeth*, as well as great romances قصص رومانسية, like *The Winter's Tale and The Tempest.*

Although Shakespeare's professional career was spent in London, he maintained close links with his native town. His success in the London theatres made him considerably wealthy, and by 1597 he was able to buy a large house in Stratford-upon-Avon. He eventually returned to his hometown and lived there until he died.

Shakespeare's legacy تراث is as rich and diverse متنوع as his work; his plays have received countless adaptations نسخ across multiple genres أنواع متعددة and cultures. His plays have had an enduring presence وجود مستمر on stage and film. William Shakespeare continues to be one of the most important literary figures of the English language.

(B) The Play

King Lear is a play written by William Shakespeare. It is a tragedy about the king of Britain, who is planning how to divide his kingdom مملكة between his three daughters. In order to decide, Lear asks his daughters to tell them how much they love him. The answer from his youngest daughter, Cordelia, makes him angry and he disowns her. His other daughters betray يخدع him and he eventually realises he has made a bad decision.

(C) Characters in the Play

KING LEAR	: The King of Britain
GONERIL	: King Lear's eldest daughter
REGAN	: King Lear's second daughter
CORDELIA	: King Lear's youngest daughter
KING OF FRANCE	: He wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF BURGUNDY	: He also wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF ALBANY	: Goneril's husband
DUKE OF CORNWALL	: Regan's husband
DUKE OF KENT	: A good friend of King Lear
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER	: A good friend of King Lear
EDGAR	: Gloucester's eldest son
EDMUND	: Gloucester's youngest son
FOOL	: Lear's clown
OSWALD	: A servant
OLD MAN	: A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN	: A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN	: One of Edmund's soldiers
DOCTOR	
HERALD	

Servants, soldiers and messengers of the King and his family

(D) Summary of the Plot

Act I

King Lear begins as the Earl (لقب إنجليزي) الأيرل of Gloucester introduces his illegitimate غير شرعي son, Edmund, to the Earl of Kent. Lear, King of Britain, enters with his court بلاط الملك. Now that he is an old man, Lear has decided to divide his kingdom between his three daughters. The division will depend on the quality of each princess' declarations تصريح of love for her father before the court. Goneril, Duchess دوقة of Albany, and Regan, Duchess of Cornwall, both speak enthusiastically بحماس and earn their father's praise مديح. But Cordelia, the youngest, says nothing because she cannot voice her deep love for Lear. Misunderstanding his daughter, Lear disowns يتبرأ من and banishes ينفي her from the kingdom. He also banishes the Earl of Kent, who had taken Cordelia's side against the King.

This action by the king divides the kingdom, both figuratively مجازيًا and literally حرفيًا. Cordelia's suitor الخاطب, the Duke of Burgundy, rejects her once she is dowerless بلا مهر, but the King of France values يقدر her honesty and takes her as his wife. Lear's kingdom is shared between Goneril and Regan and their suitors (the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall, respectively). Lear plans to alternate يتناوب living with each of them.

Act II

Meanwhile, Edmund is determined مصمم to be recognised as a rightful صحيح/شرعي son of Gloucester. By a trick, he persuades his father that his legitimate brother, Edgar, is plotting يتآمر against Gloucester's life. Warned by Edmund that his life is in danger, Edgar flees يهرب and takes the disguise تنكر of a Bedlam beggar متسول. Edmund becomes a courtier خادم to Goneril. Goneril meanwhile grows increasingly exasperated غاضب by the behaviour of Lear's hundred companions who are upsetting her life at Albany's castle, and she criticises her father.

Kent has returned from exile المنفى in disguise and wins a place as a servant to Lear. Kent accompanies يصطحب Lear when, in a rage نوبة غضب against her criticisms, he curses Goneril and leaves. Lear goes, unannounced, to live with Regan and Cornwall who, it turns out, has gone out to visit Gloucester. When Lear arrives at Gloucester's house to find Regan, she spurns يرفض/يزدري him and his followers, namely his devoted companion, the Fool الأحمق.

Act III

Despairing يائس for his daughters, and deeply regretting rejecting Cordelia, Lear goes mad at the height of a great storm. He and the Fool run wild يهيم بلا هدف on the heath أرض بور until Gloucester takes them into a hut كوخ for shelter ملجأ. He then seeks the aid of Kent to get them away to the coast ساحل, where Cordelia has landed with a French army to fight for her father against her sisters and their husbands. Gloucester then leaves and returns home.

Meanwhile, Edmund is employed as a messenger مبعوث/رسول between the sisters and is courted by each in turn. He persuades Cornwall that Gloucester (his father) is an enemy عدو because he has been in touch with France and helped Lear and when they are turned away by Regan. As punishment عقاب for Gloucester's seeming betrayal خيانة, Cornwall and Regan pluck out يقتلع his eyes and abandon يهجر him. During the act of blinding Gloucester, a servant stabs يطعن Cornwall, who dies. But Regan continues to rule with Edmund's help.

Act IV

Out in the storm, Lear finds shelter where Edgar has also taken refuge يلجأ, still disguised as the beggar. The Fool, the mad king, and the disguised "insane"غير عاقل beggar become unlikely companions رفاق before they are separated. Edgar finds Gloucester wandering يهيم the heath alone and in agony عذاب/كرب. Since his father is blind, Edgar leads the despairing man to the coast and helps him along the journey to come to an acceptance قبول of his life. Gloucester later meets the mad Lear on Dover beach, near Cordelia's camp. With Kent's aid, Lear is rescued and re-united يلم شمل with Cordelia. Gloucester, now reunited with Edgar, dies quietly alone.

Act V

The French forces قوات are overcome by Albany's army led by Edmund, and Lear and Cordelia are captured يتم القبض عليهم. Goneril has already poisoned Regan in their jealous مغامر rivalry منافسة over Edmund's attention. Edgar, disguised now as a loyal knight فارس, challenges Edmund to a duel مبارزة بالسيف and wounds him mortally. Seeing no way out, Goneril kills herself, and the dying Edmund confesses يعترف his misdeeds and releases Cordelia. However, it is too late to save Cordelia from the hangman الجلاد. Lear's heart breaks as he carries the body of his beloved youngest daughter in his arms, and he dies. Albany and Edgar are left to re-organise يعيد تنظيم the kingdom and resolve the civil wars.

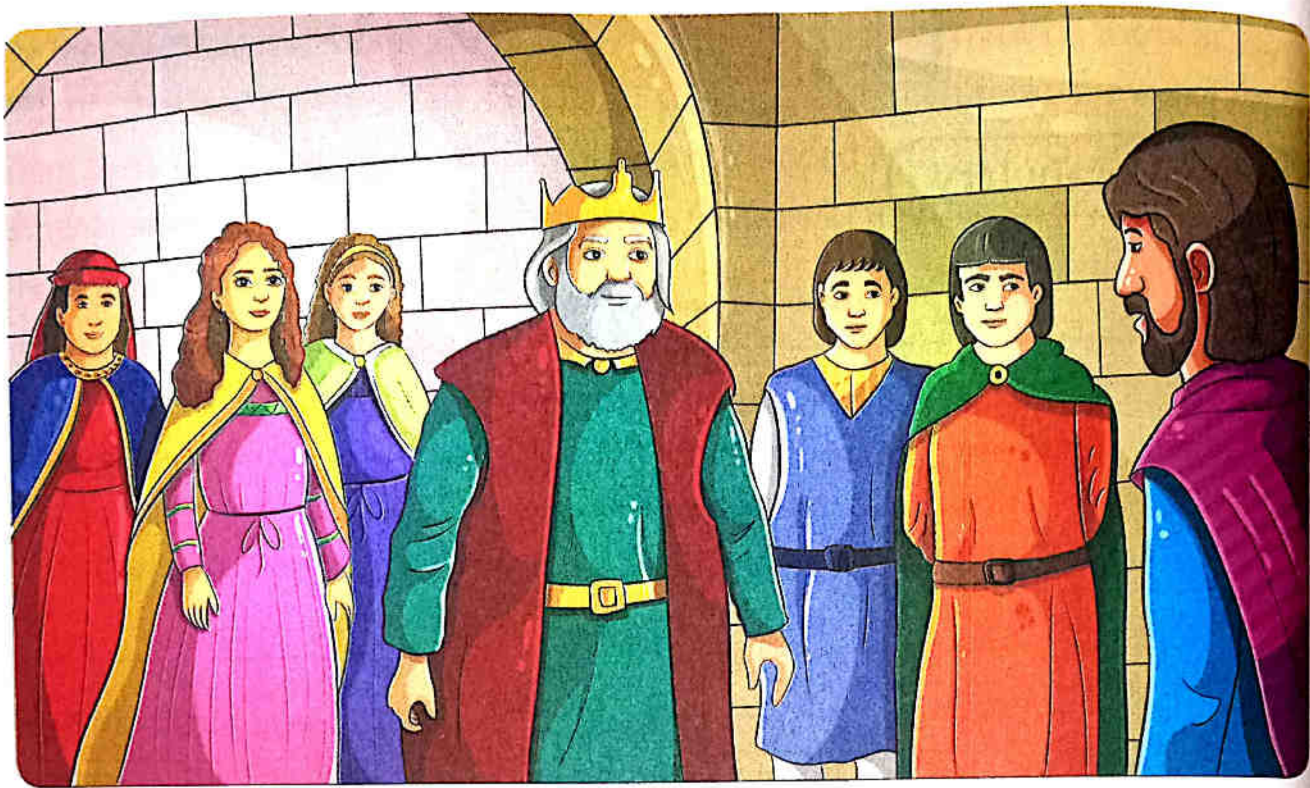
Act I, Scene i

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

act	فصل (فى مسرحية)	hate	يكره
actions	إجراءات/أفعال	honest	صادق
answer	إجابة/رد	kill	يقتل
beauty	جمال	kingdom	مملكة
call	ينادى على	majesty	جلالة
change	يتغير	marry	يتزوج
countryside	ريف	promise	يعد
cruel	قاسٍ	riches	ثروات
divide	يقسم	scene	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
duke	دوق (لقب)	shout about	يصرخ
duty	مهمة/واجب	speech	خطاب
feelings	مشاعر	stranger	شخص غريب
fine	محترم	sword	سيف
foolish	أحمق	third	ثلث
give away	يتبرع	title	لقب

Scene Text



[In King Lear's Palace]

(DUKE OF) GLOUCESTER: Ah, the Duke of Kent!

Hello, my friend. Have you met my son, Edmund?

(DUKE OF) KENT: I haven't, Kent. He's a fine young man. You must be proud of him.

GLOUCESTER: I'm very proud of him.

EDMUND: I'm pleased to meet you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund is my second child. I also have another son, Edgar, who is about a year older than Edmund.

EDMUND: Listen! The King is coming.

[King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave.]

KING LEAR: Listen, everyone. I want to tell you all about my plan. I've decided to give everything in my kingdom to my three daughters, Goneril, Regan and Cordelia. I will also give an answer to the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy. They have both asked to marry my youngest daughter, Cordelia.

First, look at this map of my kingdom. I have divided it into three. I want to give the largest part to the daughter who loves me the most. So tell me, my daughters, which of you loves me the most? Goneril, you are the eldest, so you can speak first.

GONERIL: Father, I love you more than anything. No child can love a father more than I love you. I love you more than health, beauty and riches.

CORDELIA: *[To herself]* I love my father, but I don't know what to say!

KING LEAR: *[Pointing to the map]* Goneril, you can have all this land, with its green forests and beautiful countryside. Now, Regan, wife of Cornwall. What does my second daughter want to say?

REGAN: Father, Goneril has described her love for you very well. But I have more to say. Your love is the only thing that makes me happy. I love nobody as much as you.

CORDELIA: *[To herself]* What can I say? I don't have the words to say how much I love my father.

KING LEAR: Thank you Regan. I will give a third of our beautiful kingdom to you and your children.

[To Cordelia] Now, Cordelia, my youngest daughter. What can you say to make me give you more than I gave to your sisters?

CORDELIA: I can say nothing, father.

KING LEAR: Nothing? Cordelia, if you say nothing, I will give you nothing. Speak again.

CORDELIA: I cannot put my feelings into words. I love you as a daughter should love a father; but not more, and not less.

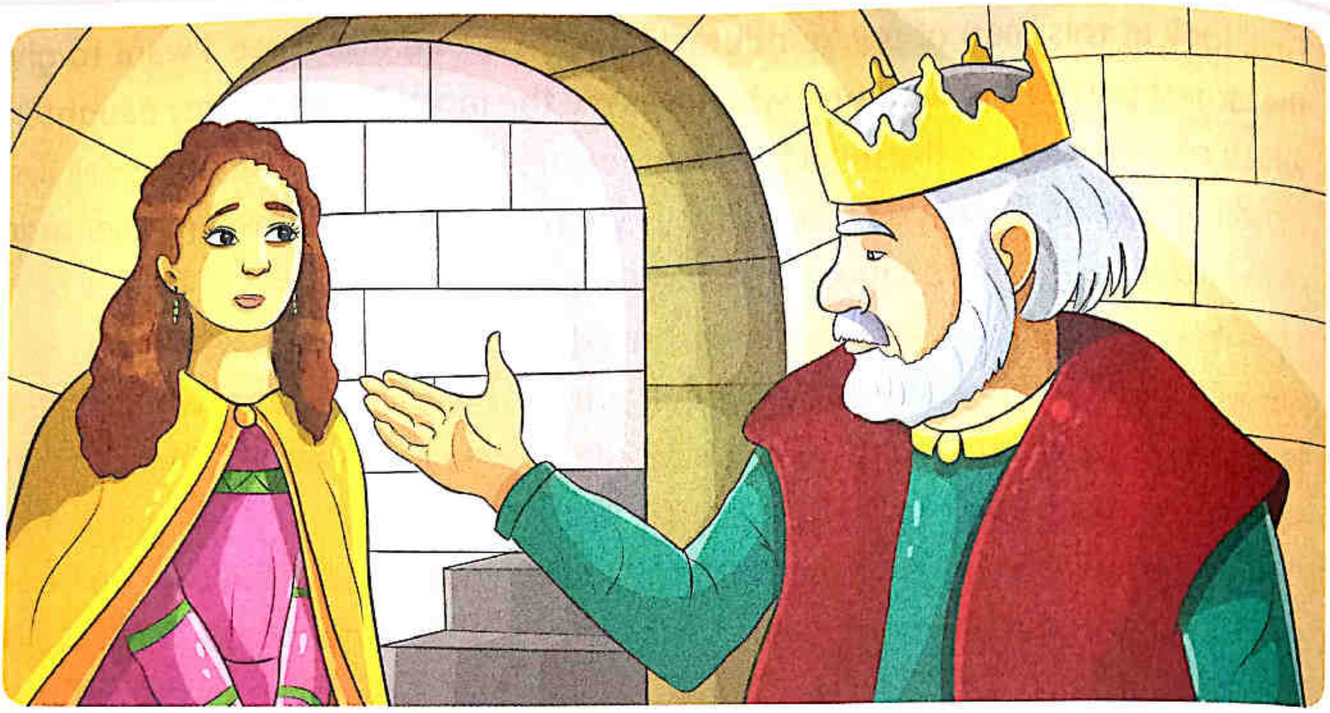
KING LEAR: But this is not kind, Cordelia. Change your speech a little, or your future will change, too.

CORDELIA: You have always been a good father and it is my duty to love you too. But my sisters say they only love you. How can this be true? Do they not love their husbands, too? If I marry, I will love my husband as much as my father.

KING LEAR: Cordelia. Do you really mean this? Can you be so young but also so cruel?

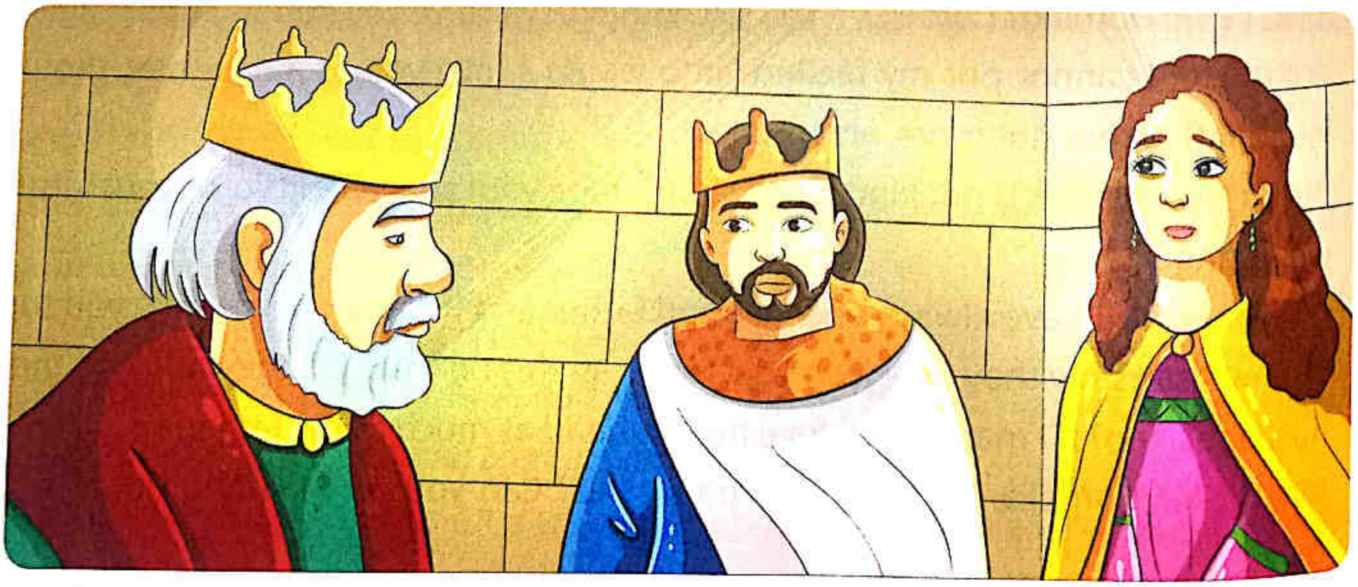
CORDELIA: Father, I am young but I am honest.

KING LEAR: Then you are not my daughter any more. You are now a stranger to me. I don't know you.



KENT: But your majesty ...

KING LEAR: Be quiet, Kent! I loved Cordelia, and I wanted her to look after me when I was old. Now she must go! But first, call the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy! While we wait for them, listen to what I say: Goneril and her husband Albany, and Regan with her husband Cornwall, will have half of my kingdom each. They will have all the power and riches that come with being a king. All I want is to keep the title of King, but they will have everything else.



KENT: Your majesty, what do you mean? I must speak honestly when my King is being foolish. Your youngest daughter does not shout about her love for you, but that doesn't mean she loves you the least. You mustn't give your country away like this.

KING LEAR: Say nothing more to me, Kent!

KENT: I am not afraid to make you angry if it will help to protect you.

KING LEAR: Then you must go away too! Leave!

KENT: Let me stay and give you good advice, King Lear. You must learn to see better.

KING LEAR: Oh, you are a cruel man!

[He puts his hand on his sword.]

(DUKE OF) CORNWALL: Your majesty, please stop!

KENT: I'll say it again, King Lear. You've done a terrible thing.

KING LEAR: Kent! You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed. Go!

KENT: Then I'll say goodbye to you, my dear King.

[To Cordelia] I hope you stay safe, young lady, because you were honest. And now I say goodbye to all of you; I shall live my life in a new country.

[Gloucester enters with the King of France, the Duke of Burgundy and his men.]

GLOUCESTER: Here are the King of France and the Duke of Burgundy, your majesty.

KING LEAR: Burgundy, I will speak to you first. What do you expect to have if you marry my daughter Cordelia?

(DUKE OF) BURGUNDY: Your majesty, I only expect to have what you promised me.

KING LEAR: I am sorry, but things have changed. Sir, there she is. You can marry her.

BURGUNDY: I don't understand.

KING LEAR: You'll get my daughter and nothing more. Take her, or leave her. It's your choice.

BURGUNDY: I'm sorry, sir. I cannot marry her without some of your land.

KING LEAR: Then leave her, sir.

CORDELIA: Goodbye, Burgundy! I see now that you love things more than you love me, so I shall not be your wife.

KING LEAR: *[To the King of France]* So, the great King of France, I don't want you to marry someone I hate; so I suggest you give your love to a better girl.

(KING OF) FRANCE: But sir, Cordelia was your favourite daughter! It is very strange that she has suddenly lost all your love. I cannot believe that Cordelia could do anything terrible to anyone.

CORDELIA: *[To King Lear]* Father, understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words. Please tell him that I haven't done anything wrong to make you hate me.

KING LEAR: I shall not. Go! You will have nothing from me!

FRANCE: My beautiful Cordelia, you are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated! I'm happy for you to be my wife.

[To the King] Your daughter will be the queen of my country. Say goodbye to them, Cordelia, although they've been unkind to you. You have lost your life here, but you'll find a better one with me.

KING LEAR: She is yours, King of France; I'll never see her face again.

[To Cordelia] Leave now; without my love. Come with me, Burgundy.

[King Lear leaves with Burgundy, Cornwall, Albany, and Gloucester.]

Act I Scene i
Exercises (SB)

1 Read the list of characters in the play and answer the questions:

Cordelia   Duke of Albany   Duke of Burgundy
Duke of Cornwall   Edgar   King of France   King Lear

1. Who is the King of Britain?
2. Who is King Lear's third daughter?
3. Who is married to Regan?
4. Which two characters want to marry Cordelia?
5. Who is Edmund's brother?
6. Who is married to Goneril?

2 Match the words with their meanings:

1. a play	**a)** a larger part of a play
2. a character	**b)** a piece of writing that is written for acting in a theatre
3. an act	**c)** a small part of a play which happens in one place
4. a scene	**d)** a person that an actor plays

3 Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentences:

1. King Lear wanted to *divide / shout about* his *kingdom / duty* into three parts.
2. The old king had a large amount of *beauty / riches* like silver and gold.
3. Cordelia couldn't think of a good *answer / sir* for her father.
4. The *Duke / title* of Kent is a very important man.
5. Kent thinks that it's *honest / foolish* to tell Cordelia to go away.
6. When King Lear gets angry with Kent, he touches his *power / sword*.

4 Read this part of the play again and answer the questions:

1. Who does King Lear want to give the largest part of his land?

A) The King of France.

B) The daughter who loves him best.

C) The daughter who is the oldest.

2. How much does Goneril say she loves her father?
   A) More than health, beauty and riches.
   B) More than anyone else.
   C) As much as a daughter should love her father.
3. What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia?
   A) Give Cordelia all of his kingdom.
   B) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters.
   C) Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom.
4. What does Kent tell King Lear?
   A) That he has made a bad decision.
   B) That he has made a good decision.
   C) That he wants to marry Cordelia.
5. Who will Cordelia leave with?
   A) The Duke of Burgundy.
   B) The King of France.
   C) The Duke of Kent.

5 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions:

1. Do you think Cordelia made the right decision? Why? Why not?
2. If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away because she didn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?

Act I Scene i
Exercises (WB)

1 Match the words and the definitions:

1. sword	a) a lot of money or things
2. divide	b) a country that has a king or queen
3. duty	c) the official name of a job
4. foolish	d) separate something into two or more parts
5. kingdom	e) a long, sharp knife
6. riches	f) not sensible or clever
7. beauty	g) something that looks nice or attractive has this
8. title	h) something you do because it is right or part of your job

2 Put the events in the correct order:

a) Cordelia says it is her duty to love her father.
b) King Lear shows people a map of his kingdom.
c) Regan tells Lear how happy he makes her.
d) King Lear tells Kent to leave the kingdom.
e) France says he will marry Cordelia.
f) Goneril says how much she loves her father.
g) Kent meets Gloucester's son, Edmund.
h) King Lear gives all his kingdom to Regan and Goneril.

3 Are these sentences *true* (T) or *false* (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. The King of France and the Duke of Burgundy both want to marry Cordelia. ☐
2. Gloucester's son Edmund is older than Edgar. ☐
3. Cordelia tells her father that she does not love him. ☐
4. King Lear decides to give all his power and riches to Goneril and Regan. ☐
5. Kent tells Lear that he is doing a good thing. ☐
6. The Duke of Burgundy does not want to marry Cordelia without some land too. ☐
7. King Lear advises the King of France to marry Cordelia. ☐
8. Cordelia knows she has done something wrong to her father. ☐

4 Read again. Who has or will have the following?

Cordelia King of France Duke of Gloucester
Goneril King Lear Regan

1. a son he is proud of ....
2. three daughters and a title ....
3. green forests and beautiful countryside ....
4. a half of her father's kingdom with Goneril ....
5. a new wife ....
6. nothing from her father ....

5 Match to make collocations:

1. ask	**a)** an answer to a question
2. divide	**b)** someone happy
3. give	**c)** something into two
4. make	**d)** to meet someone
5. pleased	**e)** someone to marry you

6 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. "No child can love a father more than I love you." Why do you think Goneril says this?
2. "You've got five days to leave my kingdom, or you'll be killed!" Who does Lear say this to and why?
3. "Understand that I show my love in my actions, not my words." Who says this and why?
4. "You are richer for being poor and I love you more now that you are hated!" Why does the King of France say this?

7 Imagine that you are Kent. Write a diary entry about the events of the day and what King Lear said to you. Write about 180 words:

....
....
....
....
....
....

Act I, Scenes i-ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
adult	شخص بالغ	income	إيراد/دخل
anger	غضب	inheritance	ميراث
beat	يتغلب	lie about	يكذب بشأن
believe	يصدق	loyalty	وفاء/إخلاص
break somebody's heart	يفجع/يحزن	pocket	جيب/كيس
bring	يحضر	powers	قوة/سلطة
conversation	محادثة	receive	يتسلم
deceive	يخدع	respect	يحترم
decision	قرار	send ... away	يرسل .... بعيدًا
deserve	يستحق	succeed	ينجح
exit	يخرج	test	يختبر
fail	يفشل	throw	يرمي
fool	أحمق	trust	ثقة
forgive	يغفر	truth	حقيقة/صدق
hide	يخفي	writing	خط/أسلوب الكتابة

Scene Text



[In King Lear's Palace]

FRANCE: Cordelia, it is time to leave your country now. Say goodbye to your sisters.

CORDELIA: Goneril and Regan, I am sad to leave you both. My heart is broken. Be good to our father. If he still loved me, I'd take good care of him! Please look after him well.

GONERIL: Don't tell us what to do, Cordelia.

REGAN: Yes, go to your husband. You've failed to do what your father asked you to do. Now, you've got what you deserve.

CORDELIA: I don't know what you are planning, sisters, but remember: everyone discovers the truth in the end. Goodbye!

FRANCE: Come with me, my dear Cordelia.

[The King of France and Cordelia leave.]

GONERIL: Sister Regan, we must talk. I think our father will leave here tonight.

REGAN: I'm sure he will, and he'll leave with you. Next month, he'll stay with my husband Cornwall and I.

GONERIL: Our father always loved Cordelia the most, and a poor decision has made him send her away.

REGAN: He is becoming a little mad in his old age.

GONERIL: Even when he was younger and healthy, he was a difficult man. So we must be prepared for what ill health and old age will bring.

REGAN: He was angry when he sent Kent away today. He will probably be angry more often in the future.

GONERIL: Let's sit together and talk. If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us.

REGAN: You are right. Let's think about what we can do.

GONERIL: We must do something, and quickly.

[At the Duke of Gloucester's Castle. Edmund enters with a letter.]

EDMUND: My father Gloucester says that his first son, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. But why should I not have my inheritance just because I'm twelve or fourteen months younger than my brother? Is it just because I'm the second son? I'm just as strong and kind as my brother, and as clever too. Well, elder brother, Edgar, I will have your land. Our father loves me, his younger son, as much as he loves you. And I have a letter here. If this letter succeeds, then Edmund the younger son will beat the older son Edgar!

[Gloucester enters.]

GLOUCESTER: Ah Edmund, my son! Have you heard? The King has sent Kent away! And the King of France has left with Cordelia! And the King has left the palace tonight without his powers! This has all happened so quickly!

[Gloucester notices Edmund hiding the letter.]

What are you doing Edmund?

EDMUND: Nothing, father.

GLOUCESTER: Why are you trying to hide that letter? What's in it?

EDMUND: Nothing, sir.



GLOUCESTER: Then, why did you hide it in your pocket? Let me see it.

EDMUND: Please forgive me, father. It is a letter from my brother Edgar that I haven't finished reading yet, but I don't think you should read it.

GLOUCESTER: Let me see that!

EDMUND: OK, but I hope he only wrote this to test me and my loyalty to my family.

GLOUCESTER: *[Reads the letter.]*

When we respect older people too much, it makes it hard for the young to live well. Our parents keep our money from us until we are too old to enjoy it. Older people only have power because we give it to them. Come and see me, so that we can discuss this. If our father were dead, you could enjoy half his income, and be loved by your brother Edgar.' Did my son Edgar write this letter? When did you receive this? Who brought it?

EDMUND: It wasn't brought to me, sir. I found it. It was thrown in through my bedroom window.

GLOUCESTER: Are you sure the writing is your brother's?

EDMUND: Yes, it is his handwriting, father.

GLOUCESTER: Has he ever talked to you about this before?

EDMUND: No, never. But I've often heard him say that when a son becomes an adult, he should be given some of his father's income.

GLOUCESTER: Oh, what a cruel son! Go and find him, Edmund. Where is he?

EDMUND: I don't know, father. Please, don't be angry with my brother. Let's find out what he meant, then you can decide what to do. I'm sure he wrote this to test my love and loyalty to you, and for nothing more dangerous than that.

GLOUCESTER: Do you really think so?

EDMUND: Yes. Listen, I have a plan. I'll hide you somewhere tonight. I'll discuss it with my brother and you can listen to our conversation. Then you'll know what he really thinks.

GLOUCESTER: My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much. Edmund, find Edgar and make him talk to you. I want to know the truth.

EDMUND: I'll go and find him immediately.

GLOUCESTER: Find him, Edmund, and be careful. (to himself) What is happening? I cannot believe that Kent has been sent away! He is an honest man. It is all too strange.



[Gloucester exits. Edgar enters.]

EDMUND: Ah, Edgar. There you are. How are you? When did you last see our father?

EDGAR: I am well, Edmund. I saw our father last night.

EDMUND: And did you talk to him?

EDGAR: Yes, we spent two hours together.

EDMUND: Did you say anything unkind to him? He's very angry with you at the moment. Please don't go near him until he's less angry.

EDGAR: Really? Then somebody has lied about me.

EDMUND: That's what I'm worried about. Stay with me for now. I'll take you to see our father when he feels better. Here's my key. Oh, and if you go out, take your sword.

EDGAR: My sword? But why?

EDMUND: That's the best advice I can give you. Please, go quickly!

[Edgar exits.]

EDMUND: My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive. I need these two fools to make my plan work. If I can't get some land in the correct way, I'll have to be clever to get it.

[Edmund exits.]

Act I Scenes i-ii Exercises (SB)

1 Replace the words or phrases in bold with the words and phrases in the box:

deceive him	deserves	exits	have a lot of anger
an inheritance	loyalty	sent ... away	

1. The King has **told** .... Cordelia to **leave** ....
2. Cordelia **leaves** .... with her husband, France.
3. Goneril thinks that Cordelia should get what she **should receive** ....
4. Goneril and Reagan expect their father **to feel unhappy and shout** ....
5. Edmund wants to get **some money** .... when his father, Gloucester, dies.
6. Gloucester reads the letter that Edmund has written **to make him believe a lie** ....
7. Edmund says his brother wrote the letter to test his **support** .... to his family.

2 Match the sentences to the characters they describe:

1. ☐ His/Her heart was broken.
2. ☐ He/She wanted a bigger income.
3. ☐ He/She was wrong to trust someone.
4. ☐ He/She will be ill.
5. ☐ They were told that everyone will learn the truth.

a) Edgar
b) Goneril and Regan
c) King Lear
d) Edmund
e) Cordelia

3 Work in pairs. Discuss the questions:

1. If you were King Lear, would you be unkind to Cordelia because she couldn't say how much she loved you? Why? Why not?
2. Do you think that King Lear was right to give everything to Goneril and Regan? Why? Why not?
3. Are actions more important than words, or are words more important than actions? Why?

4 What are stage directions?

a) Words that the characters say.
b) Instructions that the actors in a play follow.
c) Notes for people who are watching the play.

5 Look at this part of the play again. What information is in the stage directions? Tick what you can find:

a) ☐ the place where a scene is happening
b) ☐ which character is leaving/coming on to the stage
c) ☐ how a character is feeling
d) ☐ something that a character says
e) ☐ something that a character does

Act I Scenes i-ii Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words:

anger	deceive	exit	lie	income
inheritance	loyalty	succeed	trust	truth

1. Mr Ahmed did not buy his house. It was an .... from his parents.
2. My younger brother always tells the .... He never ....
3. It is natural to feel .... sometimes, but it is important to learn to control it.
4. We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we ....
5. The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't .... him. I think they are all quite old.
6. Do you think that .... is the most important quality that a best friend can show you?
7. My grandmother had a small .... as a cleaner, but she never had very much money.
8. This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to .... us.
9. You can go into the building one way and .... through a different door.

2 Match to make sentences:

1. Cordelia's heart
2. Cordelia hopes that her sisters will take
3. Regan thinks that Cordelia got
4. Goneril was surprised when Lear decided to send
5. Goneril and Regan say they must prepare for problems with Lear's ill

a) Cordelia away.
b) health and old age.
c) was broken when she had to leave her sisters.
d) what she deserved because she failed to do what her father asked.
e) care of her father

3 Match the people with how they are described, or how they describe themselves:

1. Kent
2. Edger
3. Edmund
4. Lear

a) strong, kind and clever
b) angry and a little mad
c) an honest man
d) cruel

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences in your notebooks:

1. Cordelia has to leave her family in England. ☐
2. Regan and Goneril don't think that Cordelia should leave them. ☐
3. Edmund thinks that his brother Edgar deserves his inheritance. ☐
4. Edmund writes a letter and tells his father that Edgar wrote it. ☐
5. Gloucester is angry after hearing what is in the letter. ☐
6. Edmund is an honest and kind man. ☐

5 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. "If our father still has some power, his anger will become a problem for us."
   Do you think that Goneril and Regan want to take care of Lear, or do they want something else?
2. "My son cannot be so cruel to a father who loves him so much."
   Why does Gloucester think that Edgar is cruel?
3. "My brother and father trust me, which makes them easy to deceive."
   Why is Edmund trying to deceive his brother and father?

6 Answer these questions:

1. Why will Edgar get his father's inheritance and not Edmund?
2. In what ways are Goneril and Regan like Edmund?
3. What do you think will happen next?

7 Imagine that you are Gloucester. Write a letter to a friend describing the day's events, including what Edmund has told you. Write about 180 words:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

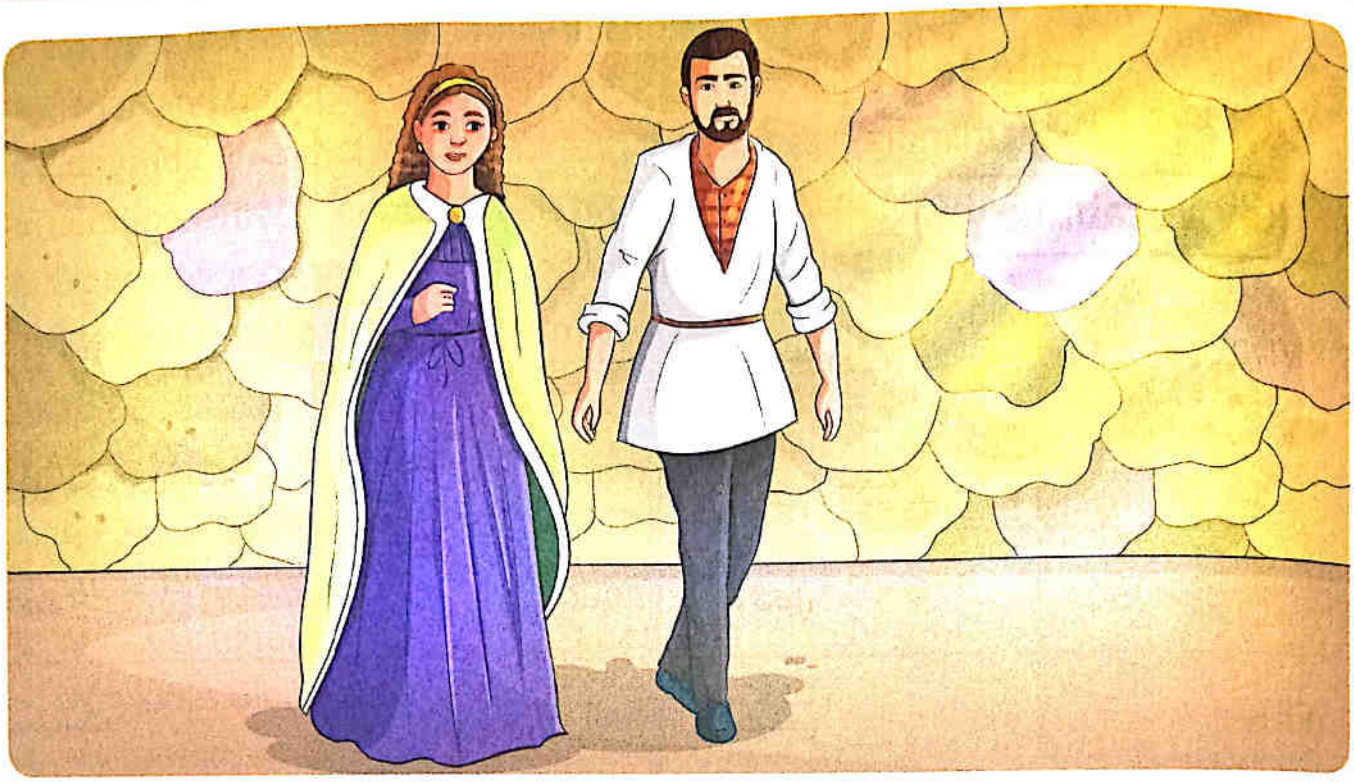
Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

attendant	مضيف/خادم	lady	سيدة
behave	يتصرف	mad	غاضب/مجنون
cart	عربة الخيل	notice	يلاحظ
disguise	يموه/يخفى	pull	يسحب/يشد
encourage	يشجع	rude	وقح
follow	يتبع	servant	خادم
fool	مهرج /مجنون	soldier	جندى
guilty	مذنب	taste	مذاق
hit	يضرب	wise	حكيم/عاقل
hold	يعلق/ يمسك		

Scene Text



[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Goneril enters with her servant Oswald.]

GONERIL: Did my father, King Lear, hit my servant?

OSWALO: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I must do something. His soldiers are starting to behave badly, and my father gets angry about everything. When he comes here, I won't speak to him. I'll tell him that I am ill.

OSWALD: He's coming, madam; I can hear him.

GONERIL: Tell the other servants not to do what he asks them. If he's unhappy, he can stay with my sister. The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!

OSWALD: Yes, madam.

GONERIL: I'll write to my sister immediately and tell her my plans.

[She exits.]

[At the Duke of Albany's Palace. Kent enters in different clothes.]

KENT: I've disguised myself in different clothes, and I have changed how I usually speak, so I can help the man who told me to leave. I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me.

[King Lear enters with soldiers and servants.]

KING LEAR: Get my dinner ready.

[A servant exits.]

[To Kent] Who are you?

KENT: I am a poor but honest man.

KING LEAR: What do you want?

KENT: I want to help you, sir.

KING LEAR: Do you know me?

KENT: No, sir; but I want to help you because I can see that you are an important man.

KING LEAR: What can you do?

KENT: I can give good and honest advice.

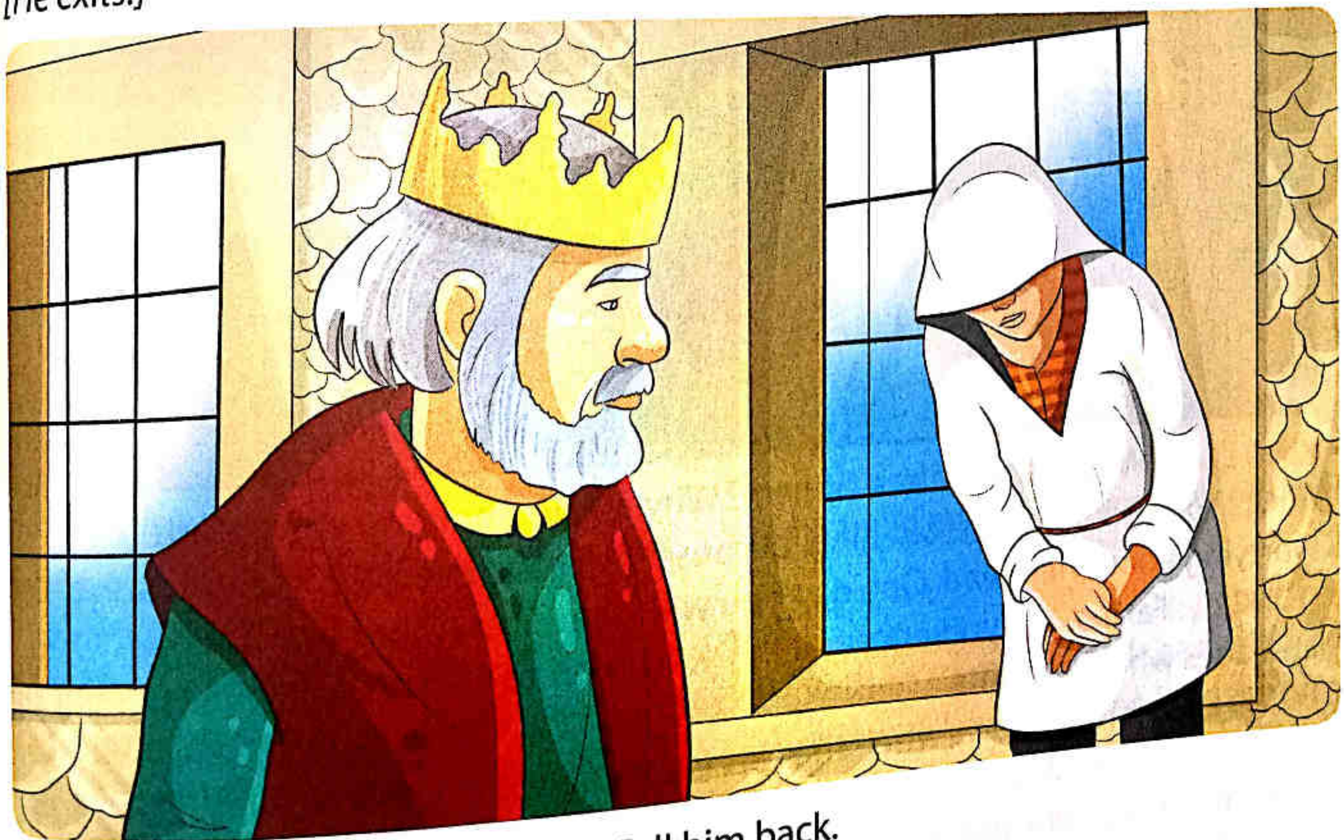
KING LEAR: Then follow me. You can be my servant.

[Oswald enters.]

You, where's my daughter?

OSWALD: I'm sorry, sir ...

[He exits.]

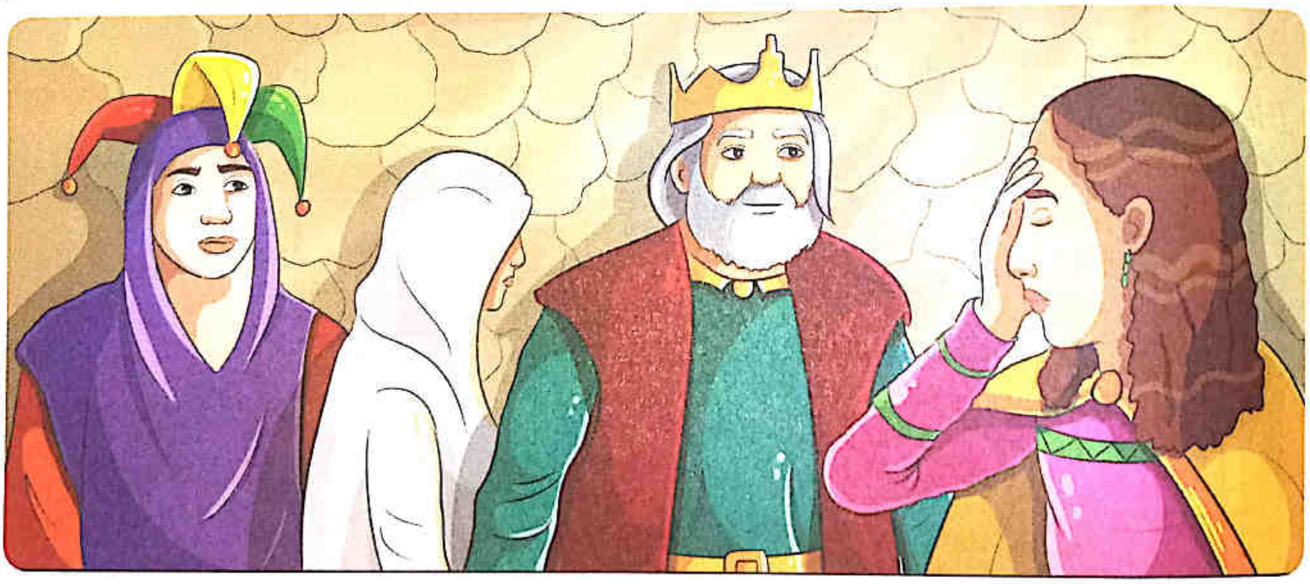


KING LEAR: What did the man say? Call him back.

SOLDIER: He said that your daughter wasn't well.

KING LEAR: Why didn't he come back when I called him?

SOLDIER: Your majesty, he was very rude. I don't know what the problem is, but the servants, the Duke and your daughter are all being very unkind to you.
KING LEAR: I've noticed that too. But where's my Fool? I haven't seen him for two days.
SOLDIER: He has been very unhappy since Cordelia went to France.
KING LEAR: Don't say her name to me! Go and tell Goneril that I want to speak to her.
[The soldier exits. Oswald and the Fool enter.]
Oh, you, come here! Who am I?
OSWALD: My lady's father.
KING LEAR: My lady's father? How rude!
[King Lear hits him.]
OSWALD: Don't hit me, my lord.
KENT: *[Hitting him]* Don't be rude to the King or I'll hit you, too!
KING LEAR: Thank you. You are a good man.
[Goneril enters.]



KING LEAR: What's the matter, Goneril? Why are you holding your head?
FOOL: You should worry, old King, because you gave everything away, rather than worrying about her head. One day, you will want everything back.
GONERIL: Father, are you encouraging your men to behave badly? Your Fool says and does what he wants.
FOOL: Even a fool knows when the cart is pulling the horse.
KING LEAR: Does anyone here know who I am? Tell me!
GONERIL: You're old and you should be wise. But you're keeping a hundred soldiers here; they are noisy and rude. Please don't have so many soldiers, and only keep the men who can behave well.

KING LEAR: *[Angry]* What did you say? Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left.
[Albany enters and he is very surprised.]
[To the soldiers] Prepare my horses.
ALBANY: Please, sir, wait.
KING LEAR: *[To himself]* Oh, why was I angry with Cordelia? She was not as rude to me as Goneril. Why was I so foolish?
ALBANY: Your majesty, I don't know what's made you angry, but I'm not guilty.
KING LEAR: That might be true, but listen. If Goneril has a child one day, and the child is cruel to her, she will understand how I feel. Then she will have a taste of her own medicine.
[King Lear exits.]
ALBANY: What has happened, Goneril?
GONERIL: Nothing. Let him shout. He is a mad old man.
[King Lear enters again.]
KING LEAR: Goneril, you have told fifty of my soldiers to go!
ALBANY: What is the matter, sir?
KING LEAR: I'll tell you. *[To Goneril]* I cannot believe that you have the power to make me so unhappy. But you have. I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!
[King Lear exits with Kent and Attendants.]
GONERIL: Did you hear that, my husband?
ALBANY: You know how much I love you, Goneril, but ...
GONERIL: Do not say more.
[To the Fool] You, go.
[The Fool exits.]
GONERIL: Is it a good idea to let him keep a hundred soldiers to help him in his old age? They might attack us.
ALBANY: I think you are worrying too much.
GONERIL: It's better to worry and be safe. I've written to my sister Regan and told her everything. I'm not angry with you because you asked me to be kinder to my father, but you are being foolish.
ALBANY: Maybe you know more than I do, Goneril, but I think you are making problems rather than solving them.
[They exit.]

Act I Scenes iii-iv Exercises (SB)

1 Read the phrases in the box and write them in the correct column in the table:

behave badly   be guilty of something
be rude   be wise   encourage someone to do something

Positive	Negative

2 Match the phrases with their meanings:

1. Attack someone
2. Disguise yourself
3. The cart is pulling the horse
4. A taste of your own medicine

a) Change the way you look
b) Try to hurt someone
c) experience what you do to others
d) Things aren't the way they should be

3 Read this part of the play and match the characters with the things they do:

Albany   Goneril   Kent   King Lear   Oswald

1. This character tells the king not to be angry with him and then tells his wife not to worry about the king.
2. This character gets angry with his daughter when she tells him that he shouldn't keep so many soldiers.
3. This character disguises himself so he can continue to work for the king.
4. This character works for Goneril and tries to tell the king that he can't see her.
5. This character didn't want to see her father, but then she talks to him about the number of soldiers he has with him.

4 What do we learn about the characters in this part of the play? Choose the correct options:

1. Goneril feels *guilty / worried* because of the way her father is behaving.
2. Kent *will / won't* leave the king.
3. King Lear feels that Goneril *knows / doesn't know* how much she has hurt him.
4. Albany thinks that Goneril should worry *more / less* about her father.

5 Read the questions about what you think will happen next in the play. Write your answers in your notebook:

1. Will King Lear's soldiers hurt Goneril and Albany?
2. Will King Lear get angry with his other daughter, Regan, as well?
3. Will Kent continue to help King Lear as his servant?

Act I Scenes iii-iv Exercises (WB)

1 Fill in with the correct form of the words in the list:

disguise | wise | behave | rude | servant | encourage | cart

1. He rarely makes mistakes. He is very .... and careful.
2. We all respect him because he .... politely.
3. My father usually .... us to read different books.
4. Don't be ...., or you'll be punished.
5. We have a very honest .... who never steals anything from the house.
6. The criminal tried to .... himself so the police wouldn't recognise him.
7. Don't be cruel to animals; the little horse can't pull this huge ....

2 Match the characters in column (A) with the actions in column (B):

(A)	(B)
1. The King's soldiers are starting	a) to be his servant.
2. Kent has changed	b) is worrying too much.
3. King Lear asks Kent	c) fifty of the King's soldiers.
4. Kent hits Oswald	d) because he is rude to the King.
5. Goneril has sent away	e) to behave badly.
6. Albany believes that Goneril	f) how he usually speaks.

3 Complete the sentences with these adjectives:

angry | guilty | honest | kinder | mad | rude

1. King Lear is starting to get .... with everything.
2. Kent tells King Lear that he is a poor but .... man.
3. One of the soldiers is .... because he does not listen to Lear.
4. Albany says he is not .... of making Lear angry.
5. Goneril calls her father a .... old man.
6. Albany thinks that Goneril should be .... to her father.

4 Answer these questions:

1. Where does Goneril say that Lear can stay if he is unhappy at her home?
2. What does Kent tell Lear that he can give him?
3. Why does the fool say the cart is pulling the horse?
4. Who does Lear think is ruder to him than Cordelia?
5. Do you think that Albany is happy with his wife Goneril's behaviour?

5 Read the quotations and answer the questions:

1. *"The foolish old man still wants to have the power that he's given away!"*
   What does this tell us about how Goneril sees her father?
2. *"I still love the King and I'll continue to work hard for him, but he won't know me."*
   What does this tell us about Kent?
3. "My lady's father! How rude!"
   Why is King Lear angry with Oswald?
4. *"Call my soldiers. You won't have any more trouble from me, because now I have only one daughter left."*
   Why does King Lear say this to Goneril?
5. *If Goneril has a child who is cruel to her, "... she will have a taste of her own medicine."*
   What does King Lear mean by this expression?
6. *"It's better to worry and be safe."*
   Why does Goneril say this to Albany?

6 Match to make collocations:

1. be angry	a) someone's problems
2. give	b) someone unhappy
3. hold	c) with someone
4. make	d) your head
5. solve	e) advice to someone

7 King Lear says to Goneril, "I still have one daughter left, and I am sure she will be kind to me when she hears what you have done. She will not be happy with you!" What will Regan say? Write the conversation that King Lear has with Regan when he tells her how Goneril has treated him. Write about 180 words:

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

arrest	يقبض على	guard	حارس/يحرس
back	ظهر	inherit	يرث
beggar	شحاذ	persuade	يقنع
call out	يصرخ	plot against	يتآمر ضد
catch	يقبض على	port	ميناء
change one's mind	يغير رأيه	pretend	يتظاهر
disbelief	جحود/عدم ثقة	profit	يربح/يستفيد
disguise	يموه	reward	مكافأة
duty	واجب	stab	طعنة
faithful	مخلص	stocks	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
follow	يتبع	warn	يحذر
get (to)	يصل		

Scene Text



[In the Castle of the Duke of Gloucester. Edmund enters.]

EDMUND: *[To himself]* So, I hear that the Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. That's good! It will help my plan a lot. My father has a guard ready to arrest my brother. But there's one more thing I should do first. Here's Edgar.

[Edgar enters]

Brother, can we talk? Our father's coming here soon, so you must go! He knows you are hiding here. But first, we must pretend to fight. Pick up your sword. Quickly, before our father gets here. Now run from here, brother.

[Calls out.] Help me!

[To his brother again] Goodbye, Edgar.

[Edgar exits.]

[To himself] If there's some blood on me, people will think I've been in a fight. *[He cuts his arm]*

Father, father! Stop him, stop him! Help!

[Gloucester enters with servants.]

EDMUND: Look, at my arm, father, I'm injured.

GLOUCESTER: What happened? Where's Edgar?

EDMUND: He ran that way when I refused his plan.
GLOUCESTER: You there, follow him!
[Some servants exit.]
What plan, Edmund?



EDMUND: His plan is to kill you, father. I told him that I loved you. Finally, when he understood that I didn't want to help with his terrible plan, he cut my arm with his sword. Then he saw that I was ready to fight him, and he quickly ran away.
GLOUCESTER: He'll not run very far. If he stays in this country, we'll soon find him. Then we'll arrest him. The Duke of Cornwall is coming here tonight. I will tell him that there's a reward for any man who finds Edgar. And anyone who hides him will be arrested, too.
EDMUND: Father, I tried to persuade Edgar to stop his plan, but he wanted to continue with it. I told him that I would tell you all about it.
"Do you think anyone will believe you?" Edgar said. "No. I'll say that it was all your idea. They know that you will profit most if father dies, not me.'
GLOUCESTER: This is terrible! It is a stab in the back. I'll stop people from leaving England's ports; Edgar won't leave the country. Thank you, my loving son Edmund. Now I will do everything to help you. You will inherit all my land.
[The Duke of Cornwall enters with his wife Regan and servants.]

CORNWALL: Gloucester, how are you, my friend?

Since I've arrived here, I've heard some strange news.

REGAN: If it is true, it is terrible news!

GLOUCESTER: Oh Regan, my heart is broken!

REGAN: Did your son really try to kill you? Your son Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, it's true! I wish it were different.

REGAN: I know Edgar spent time with my father's soldiers.

EDMUND: That's correct, madam, he spent some time with them.

REGAN: Then the soldiers have given him the idea of plotting against his father, trying to kill him, so that he can use his father's money. I've just had a message from my sister Goneril about the soldiers. She has warned me to be careful of them. If they come to my house, I won't be there.

CORNWAlI: Edmund, I hear that you've been a good son to your father.

EDMUND: It was my duty, sir.

GLOUCESTER: Edmund told me of Edgar's plan, and he got this cut on his arm when he tried to stop him.

CORNWAlI: Is anyone following Edgar?

GLOUCESTER: Yes, I've sent some guards.

CORNWALL: The guards must arrest him. Edmund, I'd like you to work for me. I need men like you that I can trust.

EDMUND: I'd be happy to help you, sir.

GLOUCESTER: I thank you, Cornwall.

[They exit.]

Act II, Scene ii

Scene Text



[In the countryside. Edgar enters.]

EDGAR: I've heard people say that I'm guilty! But I was not caught, because I hid in this old tree. It's not safe for me to go to any port now. Guards are looking for me. So I must disguise myself as a beggar. I will change my clothes and make my face and hair look dirty.

[He changes his clothes.] I'll wear these clothes of a poor man, and live outside under the rain. Nobody will see Edgar any more. From now, I'll call myself Poor Tom.

[Edgar exits.]

[Enter, Lear, Fool and Knight. Kent is in the stocks.]

KENT: Good morning, my lord.

KING LEAR: [Looks in disbelief at Kent in the stocks.] What has happened? Who did this to you?

KENT: It was your daughter Regan and her husband Cornwall, sir.

KING LEAR: But you are working for the King! They should not do this to you! This is terrible.

Where's my daughter?

[King Lear exits.]

KENT: Fool, why has the King got so few soldiers now?

FOOL: He has no money, so he has fewer people to help him. But I'll be faithful to him; the Fool will always stay and let the wise men run away.

[King Lear and Gloucester enter together.]

KING LEAR: Why don't they want to speak to me? You say they are sick? They are tired? That's no answer.

GLOUCESTER: I'm sorry your majesty, but you know that the Duke of Cornwall easily feels angry. He won't change his mind.

KING LEAR: What? He's angry! Well, I'm angry, too!

[He sees Kent in the stocks again.]

Why is he sitting in the stocks? Go and tell the Duke of Cornwall and his wife that I want to speak to them, now!

[Gloucester exits.]

KING LEAR: Oh, my heart, my unhappy heart!

[Cornwall, Regan, Gloucester and Servants enter]

REGAN: Father, I'm pleased to see you.

KING LEAR: My dear daughter Regan, your sister is nothing to me. Oh Regan, she's been so cruel to me! You won't believe how badly she has behaved.

REGAN: I don't think my sister could be unkind to you. If she has stopped your badly behaved soldiers, she has only done it to help you.

KING LEAR: I'm very angry with her!

REGAN: Father, please go back to my sister's house; you're the one who is wrong, not my good sister Goneril.

Act II Scene ii Exercises (SB)

1 Match the words and the definitions:

1. guard
2. beggar
3. reward
4. profit
5. pretend
6. plot against someone
7. disbelief
8. faithful
9. persuade
10. port

a) benefit from something
b) someone who protects a place or a person
c) act in a way that is not true
d) get someone to do something or to agree with you
e) someone who asks other people for food or money
f) the feeling that something cannot really be happening
g) money for someone who finds or helps someone important
h) loyal, continue to support someone
i) a place where ships enter and leave a town or country
j) make a secret plan to do something that is wrong to another person

2 Find these phrases in the text and choose the correct answer:

1. Gloucester says, "it's a stab in the back" because ....
   A) he didn't expect his son to be against him
   B) Edgar has given Gloucester's a new knife
   C) he doesn't understand what Edmund means
2. When Gloucester says to Regan, "my heart is broken," he is telling her that ....
   A) he can't breathe properly
   B) he is feeling ill
   C) he is extremely sad
3. When Gloucester says, "He won't change his mind," he means that the Duke of Cornwall ....
   A) won't change his behaviour
   B) won't get ill
   C) won't try to make King Lear think differently

3 Complete the summary using the names in the box:

Cornwall	Edgar	Edmund	Gloucester
Kent	King Lear	Regan	

In Act II, scene i, (1)...................... runs away, because he thinks his father, the Duke of (2)...................... is angry with him. His younger brother, (3)......................, cuts himself with his sword and tells the Duke that his brother did it. His plan works, and his father says that he will give all his land to him. The Duke of (4)...................... is so impressed by Edmund that he offers him a job.

In Act II Scene ii, (5)...................... finds (6)...................... in the stocks. It was his daughter, (7)...................... who put him there and now she won't speak to her father.

4 Work in groups to answer these questions:

1. What does Edmund say Edgar's plan is?
2. Who does Regan think gave Edgar the idea?
3. In what ways have Regan and Goneril changed since the beginning of the play?
4. Who is Poor Tom?
5. Who is in disguise in the play at this point?

5 Discuss these questions in pairs:

1. Why does King Lear say, 'Well, I'm angry, too!" in Act II Scene ii? Do you think he is right to feel angry?
2. What do you think will happen next to these characters?
   - King Lear
   - Kent
   - Edgar
   - Edmund

Act II Scene ii Exercises (WB)

1 Put the words into the correct group. Some words can be used as either a noun or a verb:

beggar - disbelief - faithful - follow guard - persuade - ports - pretend - profit - reward

Verb	Noun	Adjective

2 Complete the sentences using the words from Exercise 1.

1. All the ships had to remain in their .... due to the bad weather.
2. There was a .... at every door in the castle to help protect the king.
3. I will try to .... my mother to let me go to the cinema tomorrow.
4. Look! Someone is offering a .... if we find the lost mobile phone.
5. If you get a benefit from something, you .... from it.
6. The police will .... the suspect to see where he goes.
7. My mother usually gives money to any .... she sees on the street.
8. During the difficult times the soldiers remained .... to the king.
9. The children .... to be kings and queens when they are playing.
10. Everyone looked at him in .... when my brother said he wanted to climb the mountain.

3 Match the phrases with their meanings:

1. to get here
2. to call out
3. a stab in the back
4. to have your heart broken
5. to plot against
6. to change your mind

a) when a friend breaks your trust
b) to have a different opinion from before
c) speak loudly to people can hear you far away
d) arrive at a place
e) plan in secret with others to do something
f) how you feel when someone you love hurts you

4 Read the sentences and replace the phrases in bold with phrases from Exercise 3:

1. When my brother closed the door on my fingers, I **shouted** for help ....
2. It looks like the football players are secretly **planning against** the coach as they don't like him.
3. It was like **deception** when my friend told my classmates my secret.
4. When the character died at the end of the film, **I felt very sad**.
5. At the last minute, my sister always **has a different opinion** about what to wear.
6. The students were almost late for the exam but **arrived** just in time.

5 Put the events from the play in the order in which they happened:

- a ☐ Edmund told Gloucester that Edgar planned to kill him.
- b ☐ Edgar runs away to avoid getting arrested.
- c ☐ The King is unhappy about how his daughter has behaved.
- d ☐ The Fool promises to stay with the King.
- e ☐ Edgar changes his appearance.
- f ☐ King Lear is surprised when he sees Kent.
- g ☐ Edmund pretends to fight with his brother.
- h ☐ Edmund pretends his brother cut his arm.

6 Write the characters' names next to what they said. Then listen and check:

Cornwall - Edgar - Edmund - Duke of Gloucester - Duke of Kent - King Lear - Regan

1. .... asked his brother if they could talk.
2. .... called out to his father for help.
3. .... said it was a stab in the back.
4. .... asked if his son had really tried to kill him.
5. .... asked if anyone was following Edgar.
6. .... said he would change his clothes.
7. .... asked why they didn't want to speak to him.
8. .... asked her father to go back to her sister's house.

7 Act II, Scene i shows how money can cause problems in families. Which do you think is more important in life: having lots of money or having a good relationship with family? Why? Write about 180 words:

....

....

....

....

....

....

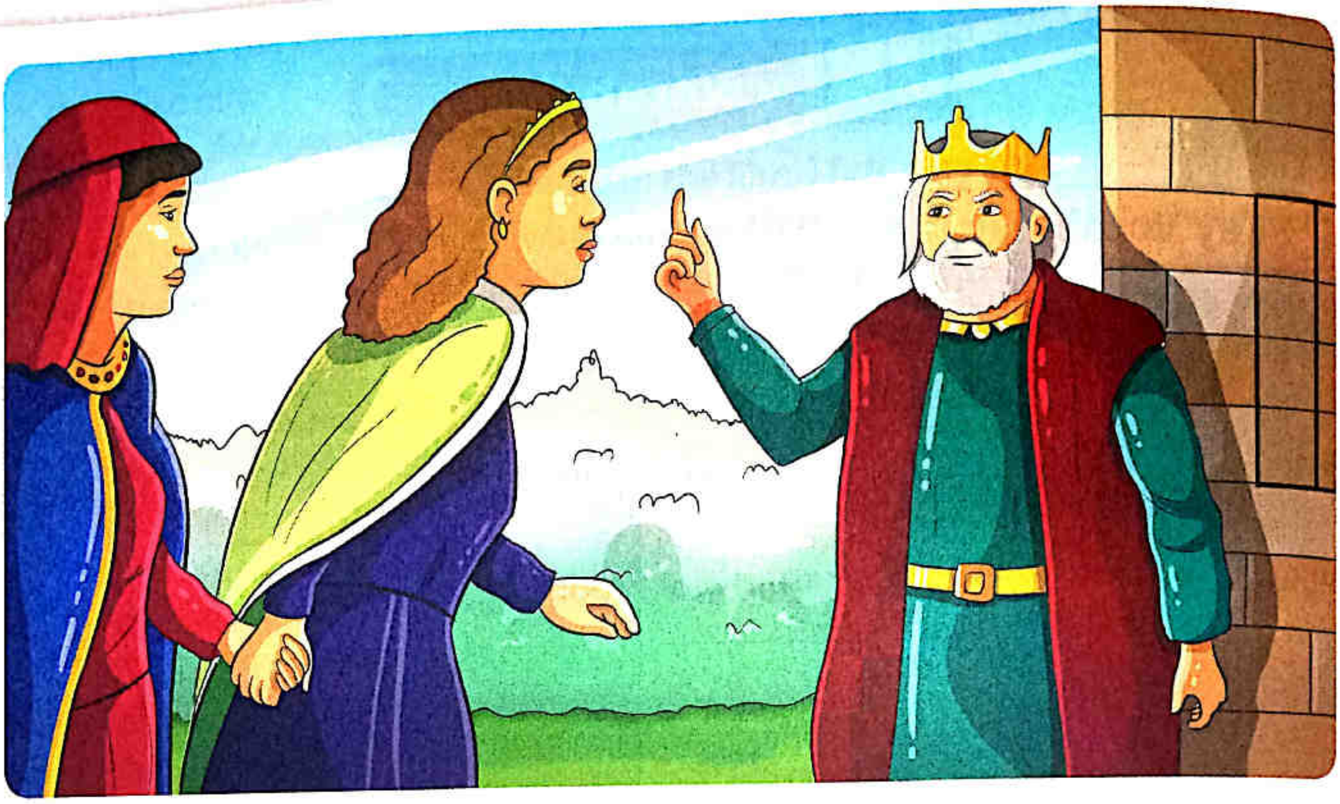
Act II, Scene iii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

apologise	يعتذر	patience	حلم /صبر
bear	دب	ring	خاتم
blow	تهب (الرياح)	room	مكان/حيز
cave	كهف	set eyes on	يرى/يشاهد
choice	اختيار	shelter	مأوى/يحمى/يقى
disagreement	خلاف	spy	جاسوس/يتجسس
double	يضاعف	turn back on	يعرض عن/يتجاهل/يهمل
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	wet	مبلل/مطير
joke	نكتة/فكاهة	wind	ريح
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من العمل		

Scene Text



[In the countryside.]

KING LEAR: Regan, I will not stay with your sister Goneril. Please, give me clothes, food and a bed. Remember, I am old.

REGAN: Please, father! Go back and stay with my sister.

KING LEAR: Never, Regan! She's told half of my soldiers to leave! She's has been cruel and rude to me! I want rain to always fall on her head!

REGAN: You'll want the same to happen to me soon.

KING LEAR: No, Regan, I'll never say bad things about you. Goneril's eyes are cruel, but yours are kind. You would never turn your back on me. And you'd not lock me out of your house. You understand how a daughter should help her father. You haven't forgotten that I've given you half of my kingdom.

REGAN: Father, why are you unhappy?

CORNWALL: Listen! Who's coming?

REGAN: It's my sister. She said in her letter that she would come soon.

[Goneril enters with Oswald].

KING LEAR: Who put my servant in the stocks? Regan, I hope that you didn't know about this.

[To Goneril] You shouldn't want to look at me. Oh Regan, why are you holding her hand?

GONERIL: Why shouldn't she hold my hand, father? What have I done wrong?

KING LEAR: Oh, how unhappy you've made me.

You're too cruel! Why won't you apologise to me? And why is my servant in the stocks?

CORNWALL: I put him there, sir, because he didn't behave well.

KING LEAR: You? Was it you?

REGAN: Please, father, you're ill today. Stay with my sister until the end of the month. Then, if you ask half of your soldiers to leave, you can come and stay with me.

KING LEAR: Stay with her, and ask my soldiers to leave? No, I would rather sleep outside under the stars.

[To himself] Return with Goneril? I would prefer to stand in front of the King of France and ask him for food. Go back with her? I would prefer to be the servant of this terrible man. *[Points at Oswald]*

GONERIL: It's your choice, father.

KING LEAR: Please, daughter, don't make me mad. I won't set eyes on you again, my child; goodbye. We won't meet any more. But you will soon feel bad about what you've done. I'll be patient for now, and I'll stay with Regan with my hundred soldiers.

REGAN: That is not possible. My home isn't ready for you. Listen to my sister.

Are fifty soldiers not enough for you?

GONERIL: My servants could help you.

REGAN: Yes, why not, father? We have enough servants. When you come to me (for now I see the danger of so many men), I ask you to bring just twenty-five soldiers.

I won't have rooms for any more.

KING LEAR: But Regan, I gave you everything ...

REGAN: And you gave it to me at the right time!

KING LEAR: I gave you enough to live well for all time! I asked for just one thing - to keep a hundred soldiers. Are you really asking me to come with just twenty-five, Regan?

REGAN: Don't talk to me any more about this.

KING LEAR: *[To Goneril.]* Then I'll go back with you.

Your fifty soldiers is double her twenty-five, so you must love me twice as much as she does.

GONERIL: Listen, father. You do not need twenty five, ten or even five soldiers in a house where we have fifty servants to look after you.

REGAN: Why do you even need one soldier?

KING LEAR: Why do I need them? Even the poorest beggars have things that they don't need. If you only give people what they need to live, then they are little more than animals. You are a lady. If you just want to stay warm, you don't need those beautiful clothes you're wearing. They don't keep you warm at all. But, if you ask me what I really need, I need patience! Oh, give me patience, or I will go mad!

[King Lear exits with Gloucester and the Fool. There is a huge storm.]

CORNWALL: We should go inside; there's a big storm coming.

REGAN: This house is small; there isn't room for Lear and his soldiers.

GONERIL: Where is the Duke of Gloucester?

CORNWALL: He followed Lear.



[Gloucester enters.] Here he is.

GLOUCESTER: The King is very angry. He has called for his horse.

CORNWALL: Let him go. He won't listen to anyone.

GONERIL: Yes, don't try to stop him.

GLOUCESTER: But it is nearly night and strong winds are blowing. There is nowhere to shelter for many kilometres.

REGAN: That will teach him a lesson. Lock the doors. He has his soldiers with him, and who knows what they'll persuade him to do.

CORNWALL: Regan is right. Lock the doors, it's a wet night. Come in out of the storm.

[They exit.]

Act III, Scene i

Scene Text



[In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier.]

KENT: Who's there, in this terrible weather? Where's the King?

SOLDIER: He's fighting with the wind and the rain. This terrible night would make a bear hide in a cave, but the King is running around outside without even a hat.

KENT: But who's with him?

SOLDIER: Only the Fool, who tries to make him happier with his jokes.

KENT: Sir, I trust you. I have got something to tell you. There's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. If you trust me, go quickly to Dover. There are people there who'll thank you when you tell them about the King's problems. I'm not the person who you think. I'm really an important man. If you see Cordelia, show her this ring, and she'll tell you who I am. Here's some money. Oh, this storm! I must go and find the King. *[They exit.]*

Act ii Scene iii & Act iii Scene i Exercises (SB)

1 Complete the sentences with these words from the play:

apologise — disagreement — double — patience — jokes — room — shelter (v) — spy(n)

1. My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough .... for a desk.
2. We had a .... about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy.
3. Azza is a great friend. She has a lot of ...., so she never gets angry.
4. Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny ....
5. I asked Seleem to .... to Ziad for shouting.
6. Mr Hassan could be a .... because he speaks five languages and he often travels to foreign countries.
7. Twenty-four is .... twelve.
8. We can .... in this shop until the rain stops.

2 Find these phrases in the text and choose the correct answer:

1. When King Lear says to Regan, *"You would never turn your back on me,"* he means that she would not ....
   A) say bad things about him.
   B) refuse to look at his face.
   C) refuse to help him.
2. When King Lear says *"You'd not lock me out,"* to Regan, he means that she would not ....
   A) stop him coming into her home.
   B) ignore him when he spoke to her.
   C) lie to him about her plans.
3. When King Lear says *"I won't set eyes on you again,"* to Goneril, he means that ....
   A) he won't look at her again.
   B) he won't visit her again.
   C) he won't believe her again.

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. Regan is happy that her father has come to stay with her. ☐
2. Goneril and Regan don't want their father to bring any soldiers to their homes. ☐
3. The Duke of Cornwall follows Lear into the storm. ☐
4. Regan keeps the door open so that her father can come back inside. ☐
5. There is somewhere near that Lear can stay for the night. ☐
6. Kent asks a soldier to help Lear. ☐

4 Where are the characters at the end of Act II Scene i? Write *Out* (outside in the storm) or *In* (inside the Duke of Cornwall's home):

Cornwall	(......................)	Gloucester	(......................)
Edgar	(......................)	Kent	(......................)
The Fool	(......................)	King Lear	(......................)
Goneril	(......................)	Regan	(......................)

5 Discuss these questions in pairs:

1. Why does Kent give the soldier his ring?
2. Do you think Cordelia will want to help her father? Why? Why not?

Act ii Scene iii & Act iii Scene i Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the crossword with words from Act II, Scene iii. Use the clues to help you:

Across

1 A synonym for 'space', e.g. There isn't enough space for everyone in the car.

2 People who collect information secretly.

3 The action of saying sorry.

4 Two times the quantity of something.

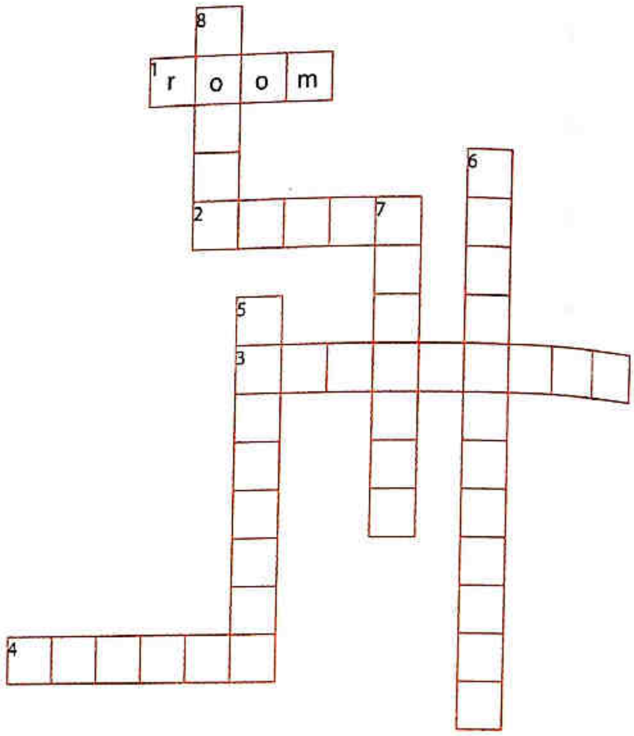
Down

5 Something you need so that you do not get angry.

6 A situation where people have different opinions.

7 A place that will protect you from bad weather.

8 Something you tell others to make them laugh.



2 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1:

1 I had a .... with my brother yesterday and we're not talking now.

2 Stop buying clothes! You haven't got any more .... in your wardrobe.

3 I .... for posting that photo of you. I didn't realise it would make you angry.

4 That tech company used .... to discover what the competition was doing.

5 You need a lot of .... with this APP. It takes ages to open!

6 While walking in the hills, we had to find .... due to the storm.

7 My new phone has .... the amount of memory as my last one.

8 Have you seen this website? It has loads of .... which are really funny!

3 Complete the collocations with the words in the box:

on out mad on

1. If you 'turn your back .... someone', it means you ignore them.
2. If someone 'locks you ....; it means you cannot enter a place.
3. If you 'set eyes .... someone', it means you see them, often for the first time.
4. If you 'go ....; it means you get angry or lose your mind.

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. King Lear is happy to stay with his daughter Goneril. ☐
2. Regan wants her father to stay in her house. ☐
3. Both daughters want their father to abandon his soldiers. ☐
4. There is a disagreement between King Lear and his daughters. ☐
5. Regan stopped her father from returning to her house. ☐
6. King Lear is wearing clothes to protect him from the rain. ☐
7. The Duke of Kent tells the soldier to take the King to a shelter. ☐
8. The King of France is planning an attack. ☐

5 Imagine that you are one of King Lear's soldiers. Describe what happened at Goneril's home. How do you feel? What do you think of your king?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Act III, Scene ii

Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

blanket	بطانية	hut	كوخ
burn	يحرق	lightning	برق
fall	يسقط	philosopher	فيلسوف
force	يجبر	rise	ينهض
forgive	يغفر/يسامح	straw	قش
go into	يدخل	torch	كشاف/شعلة
hard-hearted	قاسى القلب	try	يحاول
homeless	بلا مأوى/مشرد	walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى مكان شخص ما
horrible	رهيب	walking fire	نار متحركة

Scene Text



[In another part of the field. The storm continues. King Lear enters with the Fool.]

KING LEAR: Blow winds, and let the rain fill our houses with water! Let lightning cut a tree in two, and burn my white hair!

FOOL: Oh, old man, go inside, and ask your daughters to forgive you!

KING LEAR: I'm a poor, weak old man. Why is the weather being cruel to me, like my daughters?

[Kent enters.]

KING LEAR: Who's there?

FOOL: Ah, here's someone who is both a wise man and a fool.

KENT: Oh no, why are you here? Even bears want to stay in their caves on a night like this. There's so much wind and rain! The storm is terrible. Your majesty, there's a poor man's hut near here. It will shelter you from the storm. Stay there and rest, while I go to the house of your hard-hearted daughters.

KING LEAR: When I asked for you, they did not let me in their house, so I'll force them to allow you in. But I think I'm going mad!

[To the Fool.] How are you, my boy? I'm cold.

Where's the straw? It's strange how I now want to have horrible things such as a bed of straw to sleep on!

[King Lear exits with Kent.]

Act III, Scene iii

Scene Text

[At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund.]

GLOUCESTER: Oh, Edmund, I don't like the way Goneril and Regan are behaving with their father! When I asked them to help Lear, they told me not to talk about him or to look after him.

EDMUND: That's very cruel of them!

GLOUCESTER: Go to them; but do not say anything. There is some disagreement between the two Dukes and maybe something even worse than that. I got a letter tonight ...

[To himself.] No, it's too dangerous to talk about it to him.

[To Edmund] I have locked the letter in my bedroom. Some of the French army have already arrived in England. We must help King Lear. I will go and look for him and help him. You go and talk to the Duke of Cornwall and do not tell him where I am. If he asks for me, tell him I'm ill and have gone to bed. Strange things are happening, Edmund. Please be careful.

[He exits.]

EDMUND: [To himself.] I'll go and tell the Duke immediately about your worries for the King, father. I will tell him about that letter, too. Then I'll get rewarded for this, and I'll win the trust that my father loses. The younger man rises as the old man falls!

[He exits.]

Act III, Scene iv

Scene Text



[In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool.]

KENT: Here is a hut where we can shelter, my lord. Please, go inside. This terrible storm makes it impossible for anyone to stay outside.

KING LEAR: Oh, my cruel children! You sent me out into a terrible storm like this. Oh Regan, Goneril! Your kind old father gave you everything! But I'll go mad if I think about this. I won't think about it anymore!

KENT: Please, go inside.

KING LEAR: *[To the Fool.]* You go in first, my boy.

[The Fool goes into the hut.]

Poor homeless people, you are always outside when there's a cruel storm. How can your hungry stomachs and old clothes help you when it rains? Why have I not thought about this before? Rich people should try walking in a poor person's shoes, and then the world would be a better place for us all.

[The Fool enters. He has just come out of the hut and he's very frightened.]

FOOL: Don't go in there, sir. There's a mad man in that hut.

KENT: Who's in there?

FOOL: A mad man! He says his name is Poor Tom.

KENT: Who are you? Come out here.

[Edgar enters disguised as a madman called Poor Tom.]

EDGAR: Keep away from me!

KING LEAR: Are you mad like me? Have you given everything to your two daughters?

EDGAR: Nobody gives anything to Poor Tom.

KING LEAR: Have his daughters done this to him?

[To Edgar.] Don't you have anything?

FOOL: No, he only has a blanket.

KING LEAR: Only cruel daughters could have made a man so poor. Who were you?

EDGAR: I was a servant, who was very proud.

KING LEAR: It would be better if you were dead than go around with nothing but a blanket on a night like this!

FOOL: Look, here comes a walking fire. *[Gloucester enters carrying a torch.]*

KING LEAR: Who's this?

GLOUCESTER: What's your name?

EDGAR: My name is Poor Tom, and I once had six shirts to wear and a horse to ride, but now all I have is mice to eat.

GLOUCESTER: Has your majesty nobody to help you apart from this mad man? Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord? Why do they hate their fathers?

EDGAR: Poor Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Come inside with me, your majesty. I didn't want to do what your cruel daughters asked me to do. They asked me to lock the doors and leave you outside on this terrible night. I've come to find you and take you home, where there's a fire and food ready for you.

KENT: My lord, please accept this man's offer and go to the house.

KING LEAR: First, let me talk to this philosopher.

What are you researching?

EDGAR: I am researching how to keep warm and to kill mice.

KENT: *[To Gloucester.]* Ask him again, my lord. He's beginning to go mad. He thinks the poor man is a philosopher.

[Gloucester holds his torch it in front of him and looking at Edgar and Kent, but they are both disguised.]

GLOUCESTER: I'm not surprised Lear is mad. His daughters want him to die. Ah, that good man, Kent! He knew what would happen – the poor man! I'm almost mad myself. I have a son who tried to kill me. No father loved his son more than I loved him. What a night this is! Please, your majesty, come with me.

EDGAR: Tom's cold.

GLOUCESTER: Go into your hut, Tom; keep yourself warm.

KENT: This way, your majesty.

KING LEAR: *[Pointing to Edgar.]* I am going with him!

KENT: My lord, let him bring the poor man with us.

GLOUCESTER: OK. Sir, come on; come with us.

KING LEAR: Let's go then, my good philosopher.

[They exit.]

Act III Scenes ii-iv Exercises (SB)

1 Choose the best word to complete each sentence:

1. In a storm, you often see *lightning / a torch.*
2. A *fool / philosopher* is someone who studies the meaning of life.
3. They spent the night in a small *hut/ straw* in the mountains.
4. If you *forget / forgive* someone, you stop being angry with them.
5. People who are *hard- / soft*-hearted, don't care how other people feel.

2 Read King Lear's speech on page 69 again. What does the phrase 'to walk in someone's shoes' mean?

A) To take someone's shoes without asking them.

B) To experience life the way someone else does.

C) To be the same as one of your parents.

3 Arrange these events in order on the timeline:

1	2	3	4	5	6

a. Gloucester tells Edmund about a letter.

b. They take Poor Tom with them.

c. Kent tells Lear about a poor man's hut.

d. Gloucester finds Lear.

e. Gloucester goes to look for Lear.

f. Lear meets poor Tom.

4 Who is the speaker of each quotation? Who are they speaking to and why do they say it?

1. "Ask your daughters to forgive you!"

....

2. "We must help King Lear."

....

3 "Are you mad like me?"

....

4 "Why have our children grown up to be so terrible, my lord?"

....

5 "He's beginning to go mad"

....

5 Answer these questions:

1 Who is the 'old man' that Edmund refers to?

....

2 Is Edmund a good son to his father? Why? Why not?

....

3 Why do you think Poor Tom does not tell King Lear who he really is?

....

4 How does King Lear feel about the poor man?

....

6 Discuss these questions in pairs:

1 In your opinion is King Lear going mad? Give your reasons.

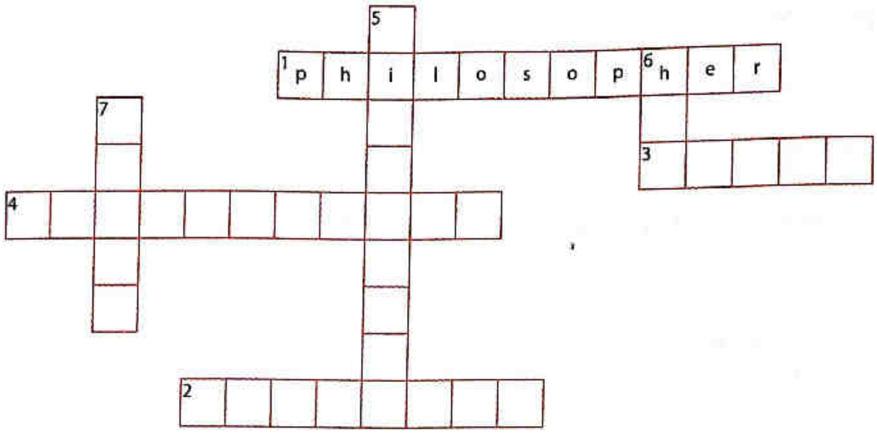
....

2 What do you think happens next in the play?

....

Act III Scenes ii-iv Exercises (WB)

1 Complete the crossword with words from Act III, Scene iii-iv. Use the clues to help you:



Across

1. A person who studies and thinks about the meaning of life.
2. To stop being angry with someone who has done something wrong.
3. A light you can carry to help you see.
4. An adjective to describe someone who is unkind.

Down

5. Bright light that comes from the sky in a storm.
6. A small building, usually with just one room.
7. Dry yellow wheat used to feed animals.

2 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1:

1. My grandmother is scared of thunder and .... She hides under the stairs.
2. In the past, people used to light a .... with fire. Today, we use batteries.
3. Hatem's finding it hard to .... Hazem for what he said in that online post.
4. I asked my brother but he won't help me. He is very ....
5. Hatem should be a .... because he likes to think about important questions.
6. My horse loves to sleep on a bed of fresh ....
7. We got lost in the mountains and spent the night in a wooden ....

3 When King Lear talks about walking in a poor man's shoes he says rich people should understand how it feels to be poor:

1. What would rich people learn if they were poor for some time?
2. How do you think this comment by King Lear shows a change in his way of thinking?

4 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences:

1. King Lear is scared of the storm.
2. King Lear is happy to sleep anywhere that is dry.
3. Gloucester tells Edmund everything that is happening.
4. Edmund plans to betray his father to get his power.
5. King Lear thinks it is good to see things from a different perspective.
6. The King recognises Edgar and is happy to see him.
7. Edgar says that he has always been poor.
8. Gloucester can understand why the King has gone mad.

5 Answer the questions in your own words:

1. Think about the weather in this section of the story. What are the similarities between the weather and what is happening in King Lear's life?
2. What does Edmund mean when he says, "The younger man rises as the old man falls"?
3. Why does King Lear say he won't think any more about how his daughters have treated him?
4. Why do you think King Lear calls Poor Tom a philosopher?

Irregular Verbs

	INFINITIVE	PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
يكون	be	was/were	been
يتحمل	bear	bore	borne
يضرب	beat	beat	beaten
يصبح	become	became	become
يبدأ	begin	began	begun
يثنى	bend	bent	bent
يلف	bind	bound	bound
يعض	bite	bit	bitten
يهب	blow	blew	blown
يكسر	break	broke	broken
يحضر	bring	brought	brought
يبنى	build	built	built
يحرق	burn	burnt/burned	burnt/burned
يشترى	buy	bought	bought
يمسك	catch	caught	caught
يختار	choose	chose	chosen
يكلف	cost	cost	cost
يتناول	deal	dealt	dealt
يفعل	do	did	done
يرسم	draw	drew	drawn
يحلم	dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed
يشرب	drink	drank	drunk

يقود	drive	drove	driven
يسقط	fall	fell	fallen
يطعم	feed	fed	fed
يشعر	feel	felt	felt
يقاتل	fight	fought	fought
يجد	find	found	found
ينسى	forget	forgot	forgotten
يسامح	forgive	forgave	forgiven
يتجمد	freeze	froze	frozen
يحصل على	get	got	got/gotten
يعطى	give	gave	given
ينمو	grow	grew	grown
يعلق	hang	hung	hung
يملك	have	had	had
يسمع	hear	heard	heard
يضرب	hit	hit	hit
يمسك	hold	held	held
يؤذى	hurt	hurt	hurt
يحفظ	keep	kept	kept
يعرف	know	knew	known
تضع (بيضًا)/يُعِد	lay	laid	laid
يؤدى/يقود	lead	led	led
يتعلم	learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned

يرحل/يغادر	leave	left	left
يسلف	lend	lent	lent
يدع	let	let	let
يرقد	lie	lay	lain
يخسر	lose	lost	lost
يعنى	mean	meant	meant
يقابل	meet	met	met
يدفع	pay	paid	paid
يضع	put	put	put
يتصل تليفونيًا/يدق	ring	rang	rung
ينهض/يشرف	rise	rose	risen
يجرى	run	ran	run
يقول	say	said	said
يرى	see	saw	seen
يبيع	sell	sold	sold
يرسل	send	sent	sent
يخيط (الملابس)	sew	sewed	sewn/sewed
يهز	shake	shook	shaken
يسطع	shine	shone/shined	shone/shined
يطلق النار	shoot	shot	shot
يبين / يظهر	show	showed	shown/ showed
يغطس	sink	sank	sunk

يجلس	sit	sat	sat
ينام	sleep	slept	slept
يسكب	spill	spilt/spilled	spilt/spilled
يشق / ينشطر	split	split	split
يفسد	spoil	spoilt/spoiled	spoilt/spoiled
ينشر	spread	spread	spread
يقف	stand	stood	stood
يسرق	steal	stole	stolen
يلدغ	sting	stung	stung
يضرب	strike	struck	struck
يمسح	sweep	swept	swept
يقسم	swear	swore	sworn
يأخذ	take	took	taken
يدرس	teach	taught	taught
يخبر	tell	told	told
يفكر	think	thought	thought
يلقى	throw	threw	thrown
يفهم	understand	understood	understood
يرتدى	wear	wore	worn
ينسج	weave	wove	woven
يبكى	weep	wept	wept
ينسحب	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
يكتب	write	wrote	written

قاموس بمعانى الكلمات الواردة فى قطع الفهم

Dictionary

absolutely	تمامًا/إطلاقًا
accurate	دقيق/محكم
adapt	يتأقلم/يتكيف
adaptation	تأقلم/ملاءمة/تكيف
adopt	يتبنى
adult	راشد/بالغ
afford	يقدر على/يطيق
alarming rate	معدل (مزعج/مخيف)
appearance	ظهور/مظهر
apprentice	تلميذ (فى الصناعة)
argue	يتجادل
article	مقالة
artificial	اصطناعى
associated with	متعلق بـ
attend	يحضر/يشاهد
balance	توازن/ميزان/موازنة
bat	الخفاش
behaviour	سلوك
benefits	فوائد
blend	يخلط/يمتزج/يندمج
blizzard	عاصفة ثلجية

bloom	يزهر/يتفتح/يورد
boosts	يعزز
bounce	يثب/يرتد
bubble	فقاعة
buffalo	الجاموس
cactus	نبات الصبار
camouflage	التستر أو التخفى عن عيون العدو
cardiovascular	قلبى وعائى
carnivores	آكلات اللحوم
carpet	سجادة/بساط
catalysts	مواد محفزة
caves	كهوف
chameleon	حرباء أو أبو قلمون
characteristics	شمائل/خصائص
charge	شحنة
chew	يمضغ
chicle	نوع نبات (الشيكل/الزجر)
citizenship	مواطنة/حقوق ابن البلد
claw	مخلب
competition	المنافسة
competitive	تنافسى

English	Arabic
complexity	تعقيد/صعوبة
component	مكون/عنصر
compound	مادة مركبة/مستحضر
concentration	تركيز
confidence	ثقة
conserve	يحفظ
constitution	الدستور
consume	يستهلك
contract	يتقلص/ينكمش
convenience	مواءمة/موافقة/ملاءمة
convert	يحول/ينقلب
convinced	مقتنع/متيقن
cooperative	تعاوني
coordination	التنسيق
crack	شرخ
craftsmen	حرفيون
cubs	الأشبال
cut down	يقلل/يخفض
cycle	دورة/دائرة
daring	جرىء
declare	يعلن/يظهر
defend	يدافع عن

English	Arabic
delicacy	حساسية
depression	منخفض/اكتئاب/ركود
determine	يقرر/ يعزم على/ينوى
deviation	انحراف/شذوذ/ضلال
devote	يكرس
diabetes	مرض السكر
die casts	قوالب الصب
digest	يهضم
disabilities	عجز/عدم مقدرة
discipline	نظام/انضباط
disjoint	يتفكك/يخلع
disorder	اضطراب/عدم ترتيب
do without	يستغنى
drag	يسحب/يجر
drastically	بصورة عنيفة
dreadful horror-movie	فيلم رعب
duties	مهام/واجبات
dwelling	المسكن
echo	صدى الصوت
echolocation	تحديد موقع الصدى
eels	ثعابين البحر
elections	انتخابات

eliminate	يزيل
emerge	يخرج/يطلع/يستبين
emit	تنبعث
entertainment	استضافة/ترفيه
entire	إجمالى/كلى/كامل
epidemic	وباء/وبائى/شوطة
equipment	معدات
essence	جوهر/خلاصة/مضمون
evaporation	تبخير
excellence	إجادة/تفوق
excess	زائد/فائض/تجاوز
exchange	تبادل/أخذ وعطاء
exist	يتواجد/يتوافر/يعيش
exploitation	تسخير/ استغلال
express	يعبر عن
expressions	تعبيرات
facial	ظاهر على الوجه
fair	عادل
fan	مناصر/هاوٍ/متحمس
features	سمات/مميزات
females	الإناث
figure out	يحسب

flavouring	معطيات النكهة
fool	يضلل/يخدع/يغش
force	يقهر/يكره/يجبر
frightful	مخيف
gauge	مقياس
genetics	علم الوراثة
glass works	مصانع الزجاج
grasses	الأعشاب
gravity	جاذبية
guarantee	يضمن/يتكفل
gum	العلكة/اللبان
habitat	بيئة طبيعية لحيوان أو نبات
hares	أرانب
hedgehog	القنفذ
hogs	الخنازير
hurricane	إعصار/زوبعة
identified	عرف/ميز/حدد الهوية
immune	المناعة
impatiently	بفارغ الصبر
impressive	مؤثر
include	يتضمن/ يتكون من/يشتمل
independent	مستقل

English	Arabic
influence	فاعلية/سيطرة
ingredients	مكونات
inhale	يستنشق
intake	يمتص/يتناول
intake	المأخوذ/منفس
internal	داخلى/باطنى
interpreting	يفسر/يترجم
interval	فترة/فاصل
invisible	غير مرئى
irrational	غير منطقى/لامعقول
kinetic	حركى
knock down	يهدم
knot	عقدة
lab	معمل
labour	عمالة/تشغيل
latex	سائل أبيض كثيف
leopard	نمر أرقط
licking	لعق
lizard	سحلية
lunar	قمرى
made up	يتكون/يتألف
maintain	يحافظ على/يبقى

English	Arabic
males	الذكور
mammal	الثدييات
manufactured	مصنعة
mastic	نوع شجر (المصطكى)
mate	تزاوج
meanwhile	فى الوقت نفسه
meow	مواء
meteorologist	عالم بالأرصاد الجوية
mimicry	محاكاة/مماثلة
mines	مناجم
minimal	أصغر/دنىء
misleading	مضلل
moths	حشرة مجنحة/عثة
mould	يصب/يشكل/يصور
mud	الطين
muffle yell	صرخة مكتومة
muscles	عضلات
nightmare	كابوس
nocturnal	ليلية
numerical	رقمى
nutrition	تغذية
obesity	سمنة مفرطة

obey	يمتثل/يطاوع/يطيع
object	شيء/حاجة/موضوع
options	اختيارات
orbit	يدور/مدار
organism	كائن حى
output	منتج/الخارج/محصلة
partnership	مشاركة
peanut-butter	زبدة الفول السودانى
periods	فترات/حقبات/دهور
permission	تصريح/إذن/رخصة
perseverance	مثابرة
phases	مرحلة/طور/وجه
physical	جسدى/جسمانى
pink	وردى
planets	الكواكب
plantation	أرض مزروعة/زرع
pointer	مؤشر
pop	يخرج/يبرز فجأة
position	مركز/موقع
potential	طاقة/قوة كامنة
predators	الحيوانات المفترسة
predispose	مستعد/جعله عرضة لـ
prevalence	سيادة/تحكم
prey	فريسة
pride	الفخر
protection	حماية
prove	يدلل/يبرهن
psychological	نفسى
pull	جذبة/شدة
purple	الأرجوانى
pursuit	مواصلة/تعقب/ملاحقة
rainbow	قوس قزح
raise	يرفع
raw	ناقص النضج أو غير مطبوخ
realistic	واقعى
reflecting	انعكاس
region	منطقة/إقليم
related	ذات صلة/متعلقة
religious	دينى
reptiles	زواحف
reputation	شهرة/سمعة
require	يتطلب/يستلزم
requirements	متطلبات
responsibilities	مسئوليات

rim	إطار/حافة
roar	هدير
rodents	القوارض
roll up	يلف
rubbery	مطاطى
rubbing	فرك/حك
rucksack	حقيبة الظهر
scan	يمسح ضوئيًا
scatter	يفرق/ينتشر/يتناثر
scent	رائحة
section	قطاع/طائفة
sedentary	ملازم الجلوس/قعود
serve	يخدم
severe	شديد/قاسٍ
sketch	يرسم/يخطط
skillful	بارع/ ماهر/حاذق
skunk	حيوان الظربان
smelly	رائحة كريهة
snarling	زمجرة
sneak	يتسلل/ يتسرب إلى
soccer	كرة القدم
softeners	الرقائق/المنعمات
spiny	شائك
stick	عصا
stretch	يمتد
struggle	يكافح/يناضل
summit	مؤتمر قمة/قمة/ذروة
support	يساند/يشجع
supporter	معاون/مدافع/مناصر
surface	سطح
surroundings	البيئة المحيطة
survive	يبقى حيًا
swallow	يبتلع
syrup	شراب
tap	قرع بخفة/يضرب
taxes	ضرائب
thermal	حرارى/سخن
thermometer	مقياس الحرارة
thunderstorm	عاصفة رعدية
tiny	دقيق/صغير
tore	مزقت
trial	محاكمة

tripled	تضاعفت ثلاث مرات	vocally	جهارًا
ugly	قبيح	vote	يصوت/ينتخب
undeniable	لا يمكن إنكارها	wander	يتجول/يهيم
universe	الكون	wasp	دبور
vane	دليل اتجاه الريح/دوارة الهواء	wildebeest	حيوان كبير الحجم
variety	اختلاف/تنوع	yummy	لذيذ
vision	رؤية		



Video Scripts

Video Script (Unit 1)

Have you heard of CPR? It's short for cardiopulmonary resuscitation and it's a technique you perform on a person who isn't responding[1] and isn't breathing. CPR can help someone to stay alive until an ambulance[2] arrives.

So, before you start performing CPR on someone, you need to call an ambulance. Then while you're waiting for the ambulance, you can start performing CPR with your hands. This is the easiest way of performing CPR and the technique that's used the most often.

Start by getting down on the floor next to the person and putting the base[3] of your hand on the bone[4] in the centre of their chest. Then put your other hand on top of that hand and put the fingers from both hands together.

Move so that your shoulders are above your hands and press 5 or 6 centimetres down onto the person's chest. Then keep your hands on the person's chest, but stop pressing on it. The chest will come back up again.

Repeat[5] this one hundred, or one hundred and twenty times a minute, every minute until the ambulance arrives.

(1) يستجيب
(2) عربة الإسعاف
(3) أساس/قاعدة
(4) عظمة
(5) يكرر

0:00

Video Script (Unit 2)

People in different countries celebrate different festivals, but they all cook special meals for their families when they're celebrating together. Let's look at three examples of special meals from around the world.

Many Egyptians celebrate the festival of Eid-al-Adha[1] every year. The most popular meal to eat on this occasion[2] is a traditional fattah[3]. Egyptian families usually eat fattah for breakfast.

In Britain, Christmas is the most popular festival of the year. British families come together on this occasion to eat a special meal, which is usually roasted[4] turkey with potatoes and other vegetables.

And, finally, let's go to China where the New Year is the most important festival[5] of the year. Families like to have lots of different things on the table when they get together to eat at Chinese New Year. This usually includes spring rolls[6], noodles[7], fish and chicken.

(1) عيد الأضحى
(2) مناسبة
(3) فتة
(4) مشوى
(5) مهرجان
(6) ملفوفات الربيع
(7) مكرونة سريعة التحضير

0:00

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Video Script (Unit 3)

Would you like to do more to help the environment[1] by living a more sustainable life? It's actually easier than you might think. There are many small changes you can make that will help to protect the Earth. Here are three of them.

Let's start with food. You don't have to become a vegetarian[2], but eating less meat will help the environment. Livestock produce dangerous gases[3] and they can damage the land they live on.

When you need to travel, think about whether you really need to go in the car or take the bus. It's often possible to walk or ride a bike instead[4] and these are more sustainable ways of travelling.

Everyone likes to get new things, but before you ask your parents to buy you new clothes or new games, ask yourself if you really need them. It isn't sustainable for people to continue buying so much stuff[5]!

(1) البيئة
(2) شخص نباتي
(3) غازات
(4) بدلًا من
(5) أشياء/مواد

0:00

Video Script (Unit 4)

Smartphones are changing the way we choose to communicate with each other. More people use their phones to send and receive messages than they do to make phone calls. Messaging is quick and cheap. We can keep in contact with friends, make and check arrangements[1], send photos, ask questions and receive answers within seconds.

Messaging is now more popular than emails, especially between friends and family. Messaging increased[2] by 7,000% in the ten years between 2007 and 2017 and is still rising. Reports suggest that more than 560 billion text messages are sent around the world every month. And it seems that teenagers send more than most adults.

Staying in contact[3] with people is really important and messaging is a fun way to do this, but we need to remember that text messaging is not the same as having a conversation[4] or spending time with someone: that's important too.

(1) ترتيبات
(2) يزيد
(3) اتصال
(4) محادثة

0:00

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Video Script (Unit 5)

Social media can keep us in contact with friends, entertain[1] us and keep us up-to-date. So, it's important to know how to use it safely.

First of all, take care[2] with privacy[3] settings. Make sure that the only people who can see what you're posting are people who you want to contact online.

Think carefully about the information that you share. Why not use a nice image instead of your face in your profile? And never put real details about yourself online, such as your date of birth, school, home address or your telephone number.

Don't be unkind. If you haven't got anything nice to say, don't say anything. And always check that you know who you are sending messages to. Is it one person or a large group?

If you want to meet more people online, there are lots of groups that you can join[4]. Look for one with people who share your interests. But if anyone asks to meet you in person, tell an adult. Never meet them on your own[5].

(1) يسلي/يستضيف
(2) يهتم
(3) خصوصية
(4) ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ
(5) بمفردك

0:00

Video Script (Unit 6)

Charles Dickens was born in England in 1812. He wrote fifteen novels[1] including *Great Expectations*, *Oliver Twist*, *David Copperfield*, and *Hard Times*. His most popular novel is probably[2] *A Christmas Carol*, which was published in 1843.

In *A Christmas Carol*, Dickens wrote about some of the problems in Britain at that time. Many people were very poor and Dickens thought that rich people should be kinder and help the poor people who worked for them.

The main character is Ebenezer Scrooge. At the beginning of the story, he is mean and he won't help anyone, including[3] his employee, Bob Cratchit, who is very poor with a large[4] family and a sick child.

However, by the end of the story, Scrooge has changed and he sees life in a completely different way. We are told that Scrooge became as good a friend, as good an employer[5] and as good a man as the good old city of London had ever seen.

(1) روايات
(2) من المحتمل
(3) مشتملًا على/بما فيه
(4) كبير
(5) صاحب العمل

0:00

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Unit 1

1. b) bleed

- تستخدم bleed هنا بمعنى (يختلط اللون بآخر).

2. c) injury

- يستخدم التعبير do oneself an injury بمعنى (يسبب ضررًا لنفسه).

3. d) base

- تستخدم base هنا بمعنى (قاعدة عسكرية).

4. a) label

- يستخدم التعبير own label/own brand بمعنى (منتج من ماركة محددة).

5. c) survived

- يستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يعيش أكثر من شخص آخر).

6. c) react

- يستخدم react against بمعنى (يرفض/يكره).

7. a) severe

- تستخدم severe هنا بمعنى (جاد/حازم).

8. b) allowing

- تستخدم allow for بمعنى (مع احتساب).

9. d) area

- تستخدم area هنا بمعنى (مساحة شكل هندسى).

10. c) surface

- تستخدم under the surface بمعنى (تحت السطح – شىء عكس ما هو ظاهر).

11. b) course

- تستخدم course هنا بمعنى (مسار حياة).

12. d) organ

- تستخدم organ هنا بمعنى (مجلة/جريدة تمثل أو تتخصص فى مجال أو مجموعة محددة).

13. a) immune

- تستخدم immune هنا بمعنى (محصن).

14. b) cell

- تستخدم cell هنا بمعنى (زنزانة/مكان احتجاز).

15. d) diet

- يستخدم التعبير go on a diet بمعنى (يتبع نظامًا غذائيًا خاصًا (ريجيم)).

16. c) I've had to
17. b) to have put
18. a) didn't need to wait
19. a) must
20. c) may
21. a) you can't
22. b) mustn't
23. c) not allowed
24. d) must
25. a) must
26. b) were
27. c) He is to study hard.
28. d) didn't have to
29. b) need polishing
30. a) Is it a necessity

Unit 2

1. c) celebrating

- تستخدم celebrate هنا بمعنى (يحتفى/يمجد شخصًا أو حدثًا).

2. a) event

- يستخدم التعبير in the event of بمعنى (فى حالة حدوث).

3. c) extract

- تستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص/يستنتج).

4. d) made

- يستخدم التعبير make it a rule بمعنى (يتأكد من فعل شىء دائمًا).

5. b) native

- تستخدم native هنا بمعنى (موجود أساسًا فى مكان محدد).

6. a) spicy

- تستخدم spicy هنا بمعنى (مثير و غير لائق).

7. c) climate

- تستخدم climate هنا بمعنى (الجو المحيط أو الشعور السائد).

8. d) respect

- يستخدم التعبير with all (due) respect بمعنى (مع كل الاحترام اللازم).

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

3. c) link

- تستخدم link هنا بمعنى (رابط لموقع أو صفحة إنترنت) .

4. b) available

- تستخدم available هنا بمعنى (موجود لأداء عمل).

5. d) earn

- يستخدم التعبير earn their keep بمعنى (يكسب قوت يومه).

6. c) description

- تستخدم job description هنا بمعنى (طبيعة الوظيفة أو مهامها).

7. d) heating

- تستخدم heat up هنا بمعنى (يزداد حدة).

8. a) contained

- تستخدم contain هنا بمعنى (يحتوى النار أو يطفئها).

9. c) crop

- تستخدم crop هنا بمعنى (جيل/دفعة لتعليمها).

10. b) electric

- تستخدم electric هنا بمعنى (مثير/مؤثر).

11. a) flow

- تستخدم cash flow هنا بمعنى (سيولة مالية).

12. b) cause

- تستخدم cause هنا بمعنى (قضية).

13. c) vehicles

- تستخدم vehicle هنا بمعنى (أداة/وسيلة لنقل عدوى).

14. d) capital

- تستخدم capital هنا بمعنى (رأس مال).

15. c) project

- تستخدم project هنا بمعنى (يظهر صورًا بواسطة جهاز عرض).

16. d) all are possible
17. a) before you leave home
18. a) is waiting
19. c) do you want
20. c) to get
21. b) will pass
22. a) is coming
23. c) offer
24. a) will have
25. b) will feel
26. a) have finished
27. b) am going to buy
28. c) promise
29. d) finish/ will not be able to
30. b) will probably go to

9. c) served

- تستخدم serve هنا بمعنى (يقوم بدور).

10. b) occasion

- يستخدم التعبير on occasion بمعنى (أحيانـًا/بشكل غير مستمر).

11. a) amount

- تستخدم amount هنا كفعل بمعنى (يصعد/يصل إلى).

12. b) articles

- تستخدم articles هنا بمعنى (أدوات مستخدمة بمكان ما ومرادفها (item).

13. c) introduces

- تستخدم introduce هنا بمعنى (يعلم/يخبر).

14. d) distant

- تستخدم distant relative هنا بمعنى (شخص ذو قرابة بعيدة).

15. c) options

- تستخدم options هنا بمعنى (الميزات الإضافية التى تأتى مع منتج كالسيارة).

16. c) famous German medical
17. a) as tall as
18. b) further
19. d) the little
20. a) latter
21. c) What a big car has he!
22. b) further
23. d) latest
24. c) better
25. d) slightly
26. c) latter
27. a) nearest
28. b) a little
29. d) later
30. a) few

Unit 3

1. c) solution

- تستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول).

2. a) ocean

- يستخدم التعبير a drop in the ocean بمعنى (قطرة فى محيط/جهد قليل بالنسبة لشيء أكبر).

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Unit 4

1. d) deal

- تستخدم deal هنا بمعنى (قدر/مقدار).

2. a) titles

- تستخدم title هنا بمعنى (لقب فى لعبة أو مسابقة).

3. a) receive

- تستخدم receive هنا بمعنى (يستقبل ضيوفًا).

4. b) tone

- يستخدم التعبير set the tone بمعنى (يحدد الاتجاه السائد فى مقابلة أو مكان).

5. c) gift

- تستخدم gift هنا بمعنى (موهبة).

6. d) headlines

- يستخدم التعبير make the headlines بمعنى (يظهر فى عناوين الأخبار).

7. a) section

- يستخدم التعبير in section بمعنى (على مقاطع/أجزاء).

8. c) record

- يستخدم التعبير break the record بمعنى (يحطم الرقم القياسى).

9. b) Society

- تستخدم Society هنا بمعنى (جمعية).

10. d) image

- تستخدم image هنا بمعنى (صورة/موقف).

11. c) admit

- تستخدم admit هنا بمعنى (يسمح بدخول).

12. b) parcel

- يستخدم التعبير part and parcel بمعنى (جزء لا يتجزأ من شىء).

13. a) post

- تستخدم the post هنا بمعنى (البريد).

14. d) tip

- يستخدم التعبير the tip of the iceberg بمعنى (قمة جبل الجليد/الجزء الظاهر فقط).

15. c) members

- تستخدم member هنا بمعنى (أحد أفراد فصيلة من الحيوانات).

16. a) could
17. d) could have taken
18. a) could
19. b) could
20. d) didn't
21. d) couldn't
22. a) should have said
23. d) couldn't/can
24. d) may have run
25. c) ought to have been sent
26. c) should have given
27. c) you shouldn't have done it.
28. c) to have been shown more consideration
29. a) extended
30. b) should have

Unit 5

1. c) criticise

- تستخدم criticise هنا بمعنى (يحكم على/يفحص جيدًا).

2. b) profile

- تستخدم profile هنا بمعنى (صورة فوتوغرافية بأحد جوانب الوجه).

3. d) presentation

- تستخدم presentation هنا بمعنى (طريقة عرض).

4. a) scanned

- تستخدم scan هنا بمعنى (يجرى فحصًا بالأشعة).

5. c) collect

- تستخدم collect هنا بمعنى (يحضر شخصًا من مكان).

6. b) character

- تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (الميزة المعروفة عن مكان).

7. a) connecting

- يستخدم التعبير connecting flight بمعنى (رحلة جوية مكملة (ترانزيت) إلى مكان).

8. d) developed

- يستخدم التعبير develop the film بمعنى (يقوم بطبع الصور الفوتوغرافية على أحد أفلام الكاميرا).

9. b) support

- تستخدم support هنا بمعنى (يوفر البيئة المناسبة لحياة كائن حى).

10. c) registered

- تستخدم register هنا بمعنى (يسجل رقمًا على مقياس محدد).

المسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

11. a) symbol

- تستخدم chemical symbol هنا بمعنى (رمز كيميائى لعنصر).

12. b) stamps

- تستخدم stamps هنا بمعنى (أختام).

13. c) influence

- تستخدم influence هنا بمعنى (شخص مؤثر).

14. d) stole

- تستخدم stole هنا بمعنى (ينسل خارجا/يخرج بهدوء).

15. c) purpose

- تستخدم purpose هنا بمعنى (هدف فى الحياة).

16. d) mean
17. c) to be done
18. b) It seems
19. a) meant/seems
20. d) obligatory
21. a) supposed
22. c) to have invented
23. c) to be influenced
24. d) supposed/mean
25. b) doesn't seem
26. a) The apple must have been eaten by Hassan.
27. c) They should help sick people.
28. d) I should have called her at seven
29. b) was supposed to
30. c) You shouldn't have done it.

Unit 6

1. c) pile

- يستخدم التعبير a pile of cash بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

2. b) fire

- يستخدم التعبير under fire بمعنى (معرض للنقد الشديد).

3. a) breath

- يستخدم التعبير a breath of air بمعنى (نسمة من الهواء).

4. d) races

- تستخدم race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس بشرى).

5. b) treated

- تستخدم treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج خشبا بمادة كيميائية).

6. c) boss

- تستخدم boss هنا بمعنى (يمارس سلطة/تحكم).

7. a) waste

- تستخدم waste هنا بمعنى (إهدار لموارد).

8. b) into

- تستخدم get into هنا بمعنى (يعرض/يناقش).

9. c) owned

- تستخدم own up هنا بمعنى (يعترف).

10. d) pockets

- تستخدم pocket هنا بمعنى (جيوب/مناطق عنف/إرهاب).

11. a) would have had to answer
12. c) in case of
13. d) boils
14. b) would be
15. a) If
16. c) were
17. b) had/would have to give
18. d) provided
19. a) Should
20. c) today
21. b) isn't
22. b) read/ would be able to get
23. d) I won't go if Ahmed doesn't go.
24. a) Should
25. c) Don't use

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

Check Point Answers

	Unit 1					Unit 2				
Check Point 1	1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b	5. c	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. a	5. b
Check Point 2	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. c
Check Point 3	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. b		1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. b
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b			1. c	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. c
Check Point 5	1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c	5. a					
Check Point 1	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. b		1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. d
Check Point 2	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. b	5. d	1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. b
Check Point 3	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. a	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. a	4. c	5. b
Check Point 4	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. a

	Unit 3					Unit 4				
Check Point 1	1. b	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. a	1. c	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. a
Check Point 2	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d
Check Point 3	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. a		1. b	2. a	3. b	4. a	5. c
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. a	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. d	5. c
Check Point 5						1. d	2. d	3. b	4. c	5. b
Check Point 6						1. b	2. d	3. a	4. b	5. c
Check Point 1	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. c	3. b	4. d	5. c
Check Point 2	1. b	2. a	3. b	4. c	5. d	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. b
Check Point 3	1. d	2. b	3. a	4. d	5. a	1. b	2. b	3. a	4. c	5. c
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. a	1. a	2. b	3. b	4. c	5. b
Check Point 5						1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. b

	Unit 5					Unit 6				
Check Point 1	1. d	2. c	3. a	4. b	5. c	1. b	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. a
Check Point 2	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. b	1. d	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. c
Check Point 3	1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b	5. a	1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c	5. d
Check Point 4	1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a	5. d	1. b	2. c	3. a	4. d	5. c
Check Point 5						1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a	5. a
Check Point 1	1. c	2. a	3. c	4. d	5. c	1. b	2. a	3. c	4. b	5. d
Check Point 2	1. a	2. c	3. c	4. d	5. b	1. b	2. d	3. a	4. a	5. d
Check Point 3	1. a	2. c	3. d	4. b	5. c	1. c	2. a	3. b	4. a	5. c
Check Point 4	1. a	2. b	3. a	4. b	5. a	1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a	5. b
Check Point 5						1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a	5. c

الممسوحة ضوئيا بـ CamScanner

2nd SEC.

2023

Answers to Main Book Exercises

UNIT 1 Staying healthy

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) severe
2. a) performed
3. b) react
4. c) technique
5. d) bleeding
6. b) instructions
7. d) sign
8. a) examination
9. a) wrapped
10. a) risen
11. c) allow
12. d) expert
13. b) else
14. c) responsibility
15. c) CPR
16. b) performance
17. a) immediately
18. b) make
19. a) about
20. d) to
21. c) doing
22. c) stay
23. b) injury
24. b) collaboration
25. d) infection
26. a) acute/ d) extreme
27. a) performed/ c) did
28. c) technique/ d) method
29. b) do/ e) take up
30. b) reacted/ d) responded

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) mustn't
2. d) didn't have to cook
3. d) didn't have to
4. b) have got to
5. b) needn't have bought
6. d) mustn't
7. d) won't have to
8. b) had to
9. c) needn't
10. a) didn't have to
11. c) must
12. c) have to
13. a) had to
14. d) weren't allowed to
15. a) must
16. a) needed to
17. b) had to stay
18. d) mustn't
19. c) won't have to
20. b) have to
21. a) needn't have written
22. a) must
23. b) don't have to
24. b) don't have to
25. b) didn't have to tidy
26. c) doesn't have to
27. c) it's against the law to park here
28. b) We didn't need to wear coats yesterday as it was so hot.
29. b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
30. b) Osama has got to find another job.
31. b) have to/ c) must
32. a) mustn't/ d) can't
33. b) It wasn't necessary for you to/ e) You needn't have shouted
34. a) don't have to/ e) needn't
35. a) had to/ b) was obliged to

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) severe
2. a) doing
3. c) kit
4. b) aid
5. d) normal
6. b) regularly
7. a) another
8. b) trophy
9. d) don't have to
10. b) needn't
11. c) don't have to
12. a) mustn't
13. d) have to
14. c) must
15. d) have to
16. b) have got to

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1. d) There are many running clubs and teams you can become involved in.
2. c) To persuade readers to try running.
3. a) heart, lungs, and muscles
4. b) immune system
5. b) perseverance and focus
6. c) helps people think clearly
7. c) the internet
8. c) self-control

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - لقد أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحية أكثر أهمية مع انتشار الأمراض الجديدة و يعتبر الطعام الصحى والرياضة أهم عوامله.

٢ - كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـــفيروس كورونا. حتى إن العلماء المصريين يمكنهم اختراع لقاح للفيروس الجديد.

٣ - السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصادر العملة الصعبة فى مصر، كما أنها تضيف كثيرًا إلى الدخل القومى؛ لذلك توليها الحكومة الاهتمام اللازم.

٤ - إن شباب مصر هو طاقة متجددة يجب استثمارها والاستفادة منها، فبجهودهم يمكن أن نحظى بأمة عظيمة ونحقق التقدم فى كل المجالات.

٥ - تعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية المياه النظيفة والطعام أحد الحقوق الأساسية للجنس البشرى ولهذا تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

٦ - الشباب ليسوا فقط شركاء اليوم لكنهم قادة المستقبل فهم مليئون بالطاقة والحماس للتعلم والعمل والإنجاز.

B) Translate into English:

1. Although many developed countries have abandoned the precautionary measures for coronavirus, the World Health Organisation advises developing countries to continue with them because of the small percentage of their people who have taken vaccinations.
2. We are proud of our great scientists such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz who made great scientific achievements that shared in/contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

3. Football has become a big industry which attracts a lot of investments and makes greater profits than many other industries. In addition, it receives more media interest/ coverage than the other sports.
4. A book is considered man's friend and it is one of the best ways to widen knowledge and fulfill cultured people's needs/wishes. That's why we should encourage children and young people to read in all different fields.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) cell
2. a) coughing
3. a) support
4. c) persuasive
5. d) diet
6. b) behaved
7. a) reminded
8. a) reason
9. d) boost
10. a) persuade
11. d) mistake
12. b) Olympic
13. b) improve
14. b) immune
15. a) announcement
16. a) about
17. b) made
18. c) explanatory
19. a) place
20. d) support
21. c) do
22. d) stay
23. b) addition
24. c) boost
25. a) convincing
26. b) perfect/ c) brilliant
27. a) boost/ d) improve
28. c) sadness/ e) sorrow
29. c) became/ d) got
30. d) about/ e) of

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) don't need to
2. a) mustn't
3. d) have to
4. b) needn't
5. d) mustn't
6. b) had to
7. a) have got to
8. c) don't need to
9. b) need to
10. c) don't have to
11. a) don't have to
12. b) must
13. b) needn't phone
14. a) had to
15. b) mustn't
16. c) must
17. a) have to
18. a) have to
19. c) cannot leave your car here
20. c) have to
21. d) needn't have revised
22. c) needn't have got up early
23. a) invitation
24. c) had to
25. b) don't have to
26. b) It's necessary for you to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock
27. c) needn't
28. a) needn't have written
29. a) We can't go away! We must help him!
30. c) It is forbidden
31. a) Do you need to/ b) Need you
32. d) a must/ e) necessary
33. c) don't need to leave/ d) needn't leave
34. b) have to be dry-cleaned
    c) must be dry-cleaned
35. b) It isn't necessary/ c) You don't need

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) had
2. c) situation
3. c) get
4. c) perfect
5. b) organ
6. c) champion
7. c) course
8. a) with
9. d) mustn't
10. a) don't need
11. d) must
12. c) has got to
13. c) had to
14. b) have to
15. c) has to
16. a) Does your sister have to/doesn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) eat before going to sleep
2. b) nightmare
3. d) quiet and less clear sound
4. c) Much eating and good sleep
5. c) he was afraid of her
6. b) is a bad scary dream
7. d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again
8. a) would never eat just before sleeping

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - أفضل طريقة لمكافحة الفيروسات والبكتيريا هى تعزيز جهاز المناعى، ويمكن أن يتم ذلك بطرق بسيطة مثل النظام الغذائى الصحى والتمرينات الجيدة.

٢ - الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء القادرين على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

٣ - تلعب المدرسة دورًا هامًا فى تعليم الشباب قيم الانضباط والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعى، ومن الأفضل أن يتم اكتسابها فى سن صغيرة.

٤ - يتأثر الكُتاب بالخبرات التى يمرون بها فى حياتهم والمشكلات التى يواجهونها فأعمالهم هى مرآة المجتمع.

٥ - البطالة والأمية سببان رئيسيان يؤديان إلى الجرائم والعنف لذلك يجب أن نكافحهما.

٦ - الأشخاص الأذكياء ليسوا أولئك الذين يمكنهم العمل لمدة ١٦ ساعة فى اليوم، ولكن أولئك الذين يمكنهم الموازنة بين عملهم وحياتهم الشخصية.

B) Translate into English:

1. Reforming education involves new methods to combine students with special needs with their colleagues with the same curricula. This will help them combine with their society in a better way.
2. Education aims at developing students' abilities and preparing them to fulfill the needs of the work market/workplaces coping with the increasing technological development. This led to the establishment of new schools and colleges during the last few years.
3. Nowadays, air pollution is considered one of the most dangerous problems all over the world especially in big cities because of the large level/standard of the industry.
4. With the coronavirus crisis, online education has become more important. It has become the only way for the students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries.

King Lear Exercises (Act 1 – Scene i)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** Kingdom
2. **d)** answer
3. **a)** divides
4. **c)** beauty
5. **d)** riches
6. **b)** third
7. **a)** duty
8. **c)** title
9. **a)** away
10. **b)** sword
11. **d)** marry
12. **c)** cruel
13. **d)** foolish
14. **b)** honest
15. **a)** promised

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) got/ e) had
2. b) athlete/ d) champion
3. b) gentle/ e) mild
4. c) in/ d) with
5. c) emergency
6. b) advertisement
7. d) immune
8. b) run
9. a) had to buy
10. a) mustn't
11. a) necessary
12. d) need to
13. b) had to
14. c) need
15. b) mustn't
16. d) must

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) obesity and our health
18. a) three times
19. b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
20. d) Outbreak
21. c) a major cause for
22. a) causes many health problems
23. b) thirty or more
24. d) genes

25. Translate into English:

- Reading is a very useful hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say that it has a calming effect that can relieve stress levels and help you relax. In addition, it enriches your culture.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيدًا إذا تم توظيفه/اســتغلاله فى تطوير شــخصية الإنسان جســديًا ومعنويًا/عقليًا، لذلك يجب أن ندرك جميعًا أهميته.

UNIT 2 Eating around the world

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** celebrate
2. **a)** got
3. **b)** old-fashioned
4. **b)** native
5. **c)** curious
6. **d)** fun
7. **b)** prepare
8. **a)** serve
9. **b)** dessert
10. **c)** arrive
11. **b)** passengers
12. **d)** spicy
13. **c)** exist
14. **d)** taste
15. **c)** extracts
16. **c)** occasion
17. **d)** traditional
18. **d)** least
19. **d)** rare
20. **b)** arrival
21. **c)** keep
22. **a)** place
23. **c)** expected
24. **c)** popular
25. **b)** probably
26. **b)** assemble/ **e)** collect
27. **a)** amounts/ **d)** quantities
28. **b)** served/ **e)** prepared
29. **c)** recipes/ **d)** dishes
30. **b)** deny/ **d)** exclude

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** the most important
2. **c)** the most powerful
3. **a)** the nearest
4. **a)** more difficult
5. **c)** the prettiest
6. **b)** more populated
7. **a)** the best
8. **d)** the heaviest
9. **b)** better
10. **c)** more serious than
11. **a)** healthier
12. **c)** safer
13. **d)** younger
14. **b)** the most
15. **b)** more important
16. **c)** big/bigger
17. **d)** both a and b
18. **c)** quieter
19. **a)** longer
20. **d)** more
21. **a)** the fewer
22. **d)** hotter
23. **c)** taller
24. **c)** the cleverer
25. **d)** worse
26. **b)** solar
27. **a)** I find physics more difficult than English.
28. **b)** What is the world's most popular sport?
29. **d)** The blue dress costs more than the red dress.
30. **c)** All society should take care of the disabled.
31. **a)** Young people/ **c)** The young
32. **a)** Nada is the same age as Sara./ **e)** Nada isn't older than Sara.
33. **a)** much cheaper/ **b)** less expensive
34. **a)** much easier/ **e)** easier and easier
35. **c)** No one in my family is kinder than my grandmother./ **d)** My grandmother is the kindest one in the family.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) traditional
2. b) whatever
3. c) catch up
4. c) event
5. a) seafood
6. d) amount
7. b) quantity
8. c) celebrate
9. a) earlier
10. b) happier
11. c) the nicest
12. b) the worst
13. c) nice
14. b) better
15. a) the most modern
16. c) the hungriest

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) People in ancient times, such as the Greeks, chewed different types of tree sap as a form of gum.
2. d) He blew a 20-inch bubble in 2004.
3. b) Latex.
4. a) cause food or drink to pass down the throat
5. c) thousands of years ago
6. c) ancient Greeks
7. a) rubber
8. d) The History of Gum

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- سرعان ما تصبح مهرجانات الطعام جزءًا من صناعة السياحة الغذائية وهى نفسها أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من صناعة السياحة عبر العالم.

٢- فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الغذاء المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة لكنهم الآن يأكلون طعامًا مصنوعًا فى أجزاء عديدة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة العالمية.

٣- ينصح الأطباء الموظفين الذين يعملون بالمكتب أن يقوموا بممارسة التمرينات فهى طريقة جيدة للتخلص من الضغوط والإحباط فى مكان العمل.

٤- تواجه معظم البلاد المشكلات بسبب نقص وظائف العمل للشباب، لذلك تعمل الحكومات بجد لحل مشكلة البطالة.

٥- نحن نعيش فى عصر السرعة الهائلة حيث لا مكان للكسل وهذه السرعة تزيد الضغوط وتؤدى إلى أمراض خطيرة.

٦- يعتقد الكثيرون أن الفن يمكن أن يلعب دورًا فى تعزيز القيم الاجتماعية، فالأفلام والمسرحيات يمكن أن تكافح التدهور الأخلاقى بين الشباب.

B) Translate into English:

1. Experts warn young people that fast food can be a threat to their health. Despite its delicious taste, it contains a large quantity of fats and other materials which can lead to weight gain.
2. We hope that charities in Egypt, such as Resala and the Egyptian Food Bank, take part in relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.
3. Reclaiming the desert is the most important way to solve the problem of food shortage in many developing countries. So, the Egyptian government is planning to reclaim one and half thousand feddans of the desert in Egypt.
4. We should look after the old people so that they can feel comfortable after their hard work for us. Many of them sacrificed their health and time for the coming generations.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) considered
2. a) general
3. c) light
4. a) mean
5. b) relatives
6. b) achieve
7. c) repeat
8. b) confuse
9. d) details
10. a) suitable
11. d) share
12. d) questionnaire
13. a) produce
14. b) tradition
15. b) customs
16. a) climate
17. b) introduction
18. d) with
19. a) distant
20. a) belief
21. c) attractive
22. c) show
23. a) make
24. b) belief
25. c) on
26. c) goes/ e) travels
27. a) considered/ d) believed
28. b) close/ d) near
29. a) relations/ e) relatives
30. c) appreciation/ e) esteem

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) as long as
2. a) ever
3. d) far
4. a) rather
5. d) less
6. b) the least
7. c) as beautiful
8. c) the cleverest
9. a) age
10. c) funnier
11. d) much better
12. a) most intelligent
13. b) harder/better
14. b) more and more
15. a) as
16. c) harder
17. b) the cleverer
18. d) more
19. b) last
20. c) older
21. d) as tall as
22. b) older
23. c) much more
24. b) best
25. c) worse
26. b) friendly
27. b) I live farther from my mother than my sister.
28. a) My brother is as tall as my father.
29. a) The poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.
30. c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.
31. a) much more boring/ b) less boring
32. b) farther/ c) further
33. a) For me, no other programme is more interesting than watching football.
    e) For me, watching football is more interesting than any other programmes.
34. a) How intelligent a footballer
    b) What an intelligent footballer
35. c) Ali and Osama are the same strength.
    d) Ali is as strong as Osama.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) respect
2. d) products
3. d) rules
4. c) include
5. d) respected
6. a) introduce
7. a) share
8. a) climate
9. b) the sunniest
10. a) oldest
11. b) so
12. b) least
13. c) faster
14. d) as precious
15. a) fewer
16. b) happier than them

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
2. a) don't have to be old
3. d) Child employment and manipulation.
4. c) farms

5. **b)** read the newspaper
6. **a)** She worked for long hours and had no education.
7. **c)** read it several times
8. **b)** escaped from the factory

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد لآخر، فبعض الناس يتميزون بالطعام الصحى بينما يفضل آخرون الطعام الشهى سواء أكان صحيًا أم لا.

٢- نقـص الغـذاء إحدى أهم المشـكلات الخطيرة التى يواجهها العالـم فى الوقت الحالى، ويقول الخبراء: إن ذلك يرجع إلى سـوء توزيع الغذاء وليس وجود عجز فيه.

٣- تفرض معظم الحكومات قوانين لتأكيد أمان الغذاء لشعوبها ومع ذلك فنحن جميعًا مسئولون عن طاعة القوانين بحزم فى كل مكان.

٤- تحدث مشـكلات التعلم بسـبب الطريقة التى يقوم بها المخ باسـتقبال المعلومات وإجراء العمليات عليها، ولهذا من المهم أن نفهم كيف يعمل.

٥- يتطلب تحقيق تنمية اقتصادية تخطيطًا جيدًا واهتمامًا بالتقدم العلمى، ولذلك يجب أن تقوم الحكومات بالاستثمار فى المؤسسات العلمية.

٦- إن صحارينا من أهم موارد الثروة الرئيسية لدينا التى يجب أن نعطيها اهتمامًا كبيرًا وبهذه الطريقة سوف نضيف كثيرًا إلى اقتصادنا.

B) Translate into English:

1. The Egyptians, like the rest of the peoples of the world, celebrate different fests/festivals which are characterised by specific types of food. Meat is eaten in Eid Al Adha and different sweets are eaten in Eid El Fitr and Christmas.
2. With the spread of coronavirus all over the world, doctors advise us to pay attention to healthy foods which contain vitamins. These help our bodies to protect ourselves from/prevent this dangerous virus.
3. Learning difficulties didn't prevent some famous people from succeeding in life and investing their abilities and talents. Yet, they achieved success with persistence and hard work.
4. Despite some people's objection to using animals in experiments, many people think that if we hadn't used them, we wouldn't have many of the medicines/drugs which save people's lives.

King Lear Exercises (Act I Scenes i (Continued) -ii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** anger
2. **a)** beat
3. **d)** deceive
4. **c)** decision
5. **b)** deserves
6. **a)** forgives
7. **b)** income
8. **c)** inheritance
9. **d)** loyalty
10. **b)** power
11. **d)** away
12. **a)** succeed
13. **c)** trust
14. **b)** truth
15. **c)** lie

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** inconvenient/ **c)** improper
2. **d)** option/ **e)** choice
3. **a)** with/ **d)** by
4. **a)** example/ **e)** instance
5. **c)** festival
6. **a)** together
7. **b)** serve
8. **c)** get
9. **a)** more expensive
10. **c)** more
11. **a)** Box B is the smallest box.
12. **b)** later
13. **c)** the easiest
14. **d)** the saddest
15. **b)** more correct
16. **d)** Carrots are better for you than cakes.

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** has begun to give much attention to football
18. **a)** highest point
19. **c)** lose enjoyment
20. **c)** Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
21. **c)** famous
22. **b)** sold their properties
23. **c)** they take the World Cup
24. **c)** How People Think of Sport

25. Translate into English:

- Unemployment is a very serious problem. It doesn't only affect individuals but also the progress of the country as it has a negative effect on the economic and social growth and the spread of crime in society.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- على الفرد أن يزن/يوازن الإيجابيات والسلبيات بعناية قبل الاندماج بإفراط فى مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى، فلو تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة فستكون نعمة للبشرية.

UNIT 3 The future of food

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) crop
2. a) sustainable
3. d) variety
4. a) electric
5. d) innovation
6. c) production
7. d) create
8. b) agriculture
9. c) involve
10. b) negative
11. c) researcher
12. d) charity
13. c) save
14. a) solutions
15. d) destroyed
16. c) energy
17. a) name
18. b) success
19. c) by
20. b) effect
21. c) of
22. b) got
23. b) organisation
24. a) source
25. c) made
26. c) smash/ d) devastate
27. b) produce/ e) production
28. a) to/ d) for
29. a) grown/ b) increased
30. b) say/ c) tell

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) will see
2. d) will
3. c) are flying
4. b) are playing
5. a) starts
6. b) will be
7. a) am going to spend
8. c) leaves
9. d) comes
10. c) is having
11. d) takes
12. a) is travelling
13. c) am going to visit
14. b) am going to
15. c) is going to travel
16. b) am going to read
17. b) is going to be
18. d) will be
19. a) Will you go
20. d) will open
21. d) finishes
22. b) are going to
23. c) Will you drive
24. b) will buy
25. c) will be done
26. a) It's cold in here. I will close the window.
27. b) I will help you with your homework if you want.
28. c) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil up already.
29. a) won't go out today
30. b) What do you do next weekend?
31. b) am going to cook/ e) have decided to cook
32. a) to study/ c) I will study
33. a) I'll turn on the air conditioner / b) Will you turn on the air conditioner?
34. d) Are you going to/ e) Do you intend to
35. b) On-the-spot decision/ c) offer

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) sustainable
2. b) production
3. d) energy
4. a) researchers
5. b) result
6. d) cutting
7. c) decade
8. a) space
9. d) will start
10. c) is going to be
11. b) am going to sneeze
12. d) will win
13. c) will lend
14. a) am going to
15. a) will be like
16. a) will go

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) The constitution
2. d) The citizen's rights and responsibilities
3. a) obeying
4. b) respectable and noble
5. d) are asked for a set of requirements
6. a) duties
7. c) To practise sports.
8. c) money given to the government

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- خلال الخمسين عامًا الماضية غيرت التكنولوجيا بالفعل الطريقة التى يقوم بها الفلاحون فى إنتاج الغذاء، فلقد تطورت الزراعة الآن بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

٢- تلعب الصناعات الغذائية الحديثة أدوارًا مهمة فى الحد من إهدار الطعام وتحسين الحفاظ على الغذاء، وبالتالى تقليل التأثير البيئى الكلى على الزراعة وتحسين الأمن الغذائى.

٣- إن تنظيم حياتك ضرورة إذا أردت أن تحقق أهم أهدافك، فالناس المنظمون جيدًا هم الأفراد الأكثر نجاحًا وفاعلية/ كفاءة فى الحياة.

٤- للهجرة من الريف إلى المدينة آثار سلبية على المجتمع المصرى، وذلك لأنها تؤدى إلى مشكلات اقتصادية خطيرة.

٥- كان لمصر دور قيادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشرق الأوسط، ولذلك يجب أن نحاول استرداد هذا الدور.

٦- تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا هامًّا فى تشكيل الرأى العام والوعى المؤثر فى بلدنا، ولذلك يجب استخدامها بشكل صحيح فى أغراض مفيدة.

B) Translate into English:

1. It is important for farmers to realise the importance of keeping sustainable agriculture to preserve the food supply for us and for the future generations. Thus, we can solve the problem of food shortage.
2. Dramas affect people a lot, so they must be used to correct social concepts and support values and ethics in society.
3. One of the most important disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is widening the gap between young people and their parents. They spend long hours using them without communicating with their parents and family. Therefore, we should face/deal with this serious phenomenon.
4. Throughout history, Egypt has always been known as the land of religious tolerance and co-existence of Muslims and Christians. They lived peacefully for centuries; which is considered an important factor of its people's unity.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) algae
2. c) available
3. b) chance
4. d) conclusion
5. b) fashion
6. d) link
7. a) topic
8. c) summary
9. b) win
10. c) predict
11. d) fresh
12. b) Hydroponics
13. c) specific
14. c) flow
15. a) view
16. c) evidence
17. a) heating
18. b) tasteful
19. d) boring
20. c) on
21. b) control
22. d) make
23. c) about
24. b) factual
25. b) description
26. b) forecast/ d) anticipate
27. a) topics/ c) subjects
28. c) fresh/ e) new
29. c) ignore/ e) overlook
30. a) conclusion/ c) end

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) am leaving
2. d) is going to be
3. a) will be
4. c) am going to
5. d) will be preparing
6. d) am revising
7. a) be using
8. b) will be seeing
9. d) will be watching
10. b) will be sunbathing
11. a) be driving
12. b) will be performing
13. c) will be doing
14. b) aren't going to rent
15. d) finishes
16. a) are having
17. b) get
18. a) Are you going
19. c) will be published
20. d) will see
21. b) will be working
22. a) will be talking
23. c) may be living
24. b) will be waiting
25. b) will be sleeping
26. c) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
27. b) have done
28. b) will be meeting
29. a) am going to visit
30. b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
31. a) finish/ e) have finished
32. b) will be watching/ d) am watching
33. c) will be raised/ e) will rise
34. a) he would help/ b) to help
35. a) reaches/ e) is reaching

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** chance
2. **d)** make
3. **b)** conclusion
4. **c)** evidence
5. **b)** fashion
6. **a)** replaced
7. **b)** link
8. **a)** tasty
9. **b)** will be wasting
10. **c)** will be playing
11. **d)** am going to spend
12. **c)** be still living
13. **d)** recognises
14. **a)** won't arrive
15. **b)** will have
16. **b)** will be revising

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.
2. **c)** The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
3. **d)** both small and large animals
4. **b)** victim
5. **a)** the members of the group help them raise the cubs
6. **d)** because lions can eat the prey by force
7. **b)** drawing
8. **a)** The Life of the Lioness

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء فهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة سوف يواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

٢- يعتقد الكثيرون أن إنتاج الغذاء فى المعامل خيال علمى فقط ولا يستطيعون تحمل فكرة أكل لحوم أو فاكهة منتجة بطرق صناعية.

٣- تعتبر الأمم المتحدة استخدام البشر فى التجارب العلمية جريمة، كما أنه أحد أهم أخلاقيات المهن الطبية.

٤- لا أحد يولد كاملًا أو مثاليًا، ويجب على الآباء والمعلمين مضاعفة الجهود لإخراج الإمكانيات الكامنة فى الطفل.

٥- قد يُدهش المعاقون الأصحاء/الناس العاديين بأشياء رائعة لا يستطيعون هم أنفسهم القيام بها كما قد يحققون أرقامًا قياسية مذهلة.

٦- يجب أن يعتنى المجتمع بالأطفال المشردين لمساعدتهم على أن يكون مستقبلهم أفضل، ولهذا السبب تحاول معظم الجمعيات الخيرية تدبير/جمع المال لمساعدتهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. The United Nations is trying, through its organisations, to secure enough food and medicine for all the people of poor countries which face severe lack, especially with the spread of the novel coronavirus.
2. History is full of many prominent Arab writers who enriched the international literature, such as Taha Hussein and Naguib Mahfouz; the only Arab writer who won the Nobel Prize for Literature.
3. Population increase is one of the most important obstacles to development in society. Therefore, the government is working on finding suitable solutions to this problem, such as family planning programmes.
4. There should be strict laws to punish all factories which manipulate expiry dates on cans of different food products. This represents a danger to people's health and food safety.

King Lear Exercises (Act I, Scenes iii-iv)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** attendant
2. **a)** behave
3. **c)** disguised
4. **a)** guilty
5. **d)** encourages
6. **c)** holding
7. **d)** noticed
8. **a)** rude
9. **a)** servants
10. **c)** soldiers
11. **d)** taste
12. **b)** wise

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 3)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) damage/ b) ruin
2. b) get/ d) become
3. c) grow/ e) increase
4. c) in/ e) on
5. b) agriculture
6. c) solution
7. c) innovation
8. d) contain
9. d) am going to watch
10. a) will show
11. c) will be working
12. a) will increase
13. d) will probably get
14. b) will be swimming
15. a) have finished
16. b) get/will be waiting

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) safe
18. d) meteorologist
19. a) rainbow
20. c) appears
21. c) predicting the conditions of the weather
22. b) they won't be able to measure the quantity of rain
23. b) The wind blows the clouds.
24. c) is not always right and we need better knowledge about it

25. Translate into English:

- All trials to devastate the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity which stands as a great obstacle in front of anyone who tries to miss/manipulate the stability of the Egyptian people.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يحتـاج مجتمعنـا إلى أفراد كثيرين يتمتعون بالأخـلاق الحميدة لكى ينمو ويتطور بالطريقة الصحيحـة؛ فالأخلاق هى بالفعل العلامات الجيدة على المجتمع المتحضر.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 1, 2 & 3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) disease/ c) illness
2. a) isolated/ e) remote
3. b) do/ c) give
4. d) view/ e) opinion
5. c) techniques
6. b) celebrate
7. c) focus
8. d) course
9. d) the nicest
10. b) mustn't
11. c) am going to call
12. a) the most valuable
13. c) will be playing
14. d) as far as
15. c) must/mustn't
16. b) will be running

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) motivate us to do well
18. a) admit your failure
19. b) Confidence
20. c) How to achieve success
21. d) perform the task hastily
22. a) when you think that you don't mistake
23. c) after we succeed
24. b) learn from it

25. **Translate into English:**
   - Each country has its own style of cooking and ingredients which chefs use in their dishes. What seems strange in one country becomes familiar and popular in another.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**
   - نقص الغذاء أحد أهم المشكلات التى من المتوقع أن يواجهها العالم فى السنوات القليلة القادمة؛ لهذا يعمل العلماء على إيجاد طرق مبتكرة للتغلب عليها.

UNIT 4 Changing English

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** emoji
2. **d)** formal
3. **c)** frowned
4. **d)** innovators
5. **a)** linguist
6. **c)** necessarily
7. **b)** tone
8. **d)** basic
9. **d)** communication
10. **c)** requires
11. **d)** warn
12. **c)** advantage
13. **b)** chatted
14. **a)** personal
15. **c)** adults
16. **b)** teenager
17. **d)** alert
18. **b)** expression
19. **d)** stay
20. **c)** got
21. **b)** warning
22. **c)** with
23. **a)** taking
24. **b)** pass
25. **c)** frown
26. **b)** primary/ **e)** main
27. **a)** tone/ **d)** voice
28. **b)** took/ **e)** had
29. **b)** everyday/ **c)** daily
30. **b)** to/ **d)** with

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** could have caught
2. **a)** couldn't have gone
3. **c)** should have
4. **d)** couldn't hear
5. **a)** not to go
6. **c)** to lock
7. **b)** could beat
8. **d)** should have worked
9. **b)** could have gone
10. **b)** could have walked
11. **a)** not to touch
12. **b)** ought to have behaved
13. **a)** could have been
14. **d)** not to go
15. **b)** might have taken
16. **b)** should have brought
17. **d)** could have
18. **c)** couldn't remember
19. **a)** couldn't have heard
20. **c)** shouldn't have
21. **a)** shouldn't have parked
22. **d)** could have got
23. **d)** couldn't have been
24. **c)** shouldn't have stayed
25. **c)** could have bought
26. **b)** could have phoned
27. **a)** I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
28. **c)** could have gone
29. **a)** managed to
30. **b)** were able to escape
31. **b)** advised/ **e)** warned
32. **a)** could have set up/ **d)** should have set up
33. **a)** request/ **c)** suggestion
34. **b)** managed to/ **d)** were able to
35. **b)** shouldn't have/ **e)** oughtn't to have

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) gifts
2. d) online
3. c) parcel
4. a) regret
5. c) communicate
6. c) meeting
7. b) apply
8. a) messaged
9. a) shouldn't have cut
10. c) could have lent
11. b) Could
12. c) should have gone
13. c) should have
14. b) ought to have seen
15. d) shouldn't have
16. c) couldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) hot and dry
2. c) either tiny leaves or no leaves at all
3. a) remain as seeds and do not emerge from the soil
4. d) exclude
5. a) stores water
6. c) survives
7. d) They stay without water for long.
8. d) The Desert Hard Life

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- بالرغم من أن اســتخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية ليس مقبولًا فى أى تعلم أو كتابة رسـمية فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم/ دردشتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

٢- تعلــم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية يوســع الأفق ومجال التعلم؛ لأن معظم الأبحــاث العلمية والمعلومات على الإنترنت مكتوبة باللغة الإنجليزية.

٣- تؤثر المنافســة فى عصرنا الحديث على كل فرد فى المجتمع وأحيانًا تؤدى إلى أفعال شـريرة؛ فالجشــع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل الكثير من الجرائم.

٤- نستخدم الرسائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

٥- منتدى شــباب العالم، الذى يعقد ســنويًا فى شرم الشــيخ، هو منبر بناه الشــباب الواعدين. إنه يبعث برسالة سلام وازدهار ووئام وتقدم إلى العالم بأسره.

٦- معظم الشباب اليوم أقل من المستوى فى الثقافة والمعرفة، وذلك لأنهم يهملون القراءة ومشاهدة البرامج الثقافية.

B) Translate into English:

1. Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries. That's because it is an international language which helps for many educational and entertaining purposes.

2. Everyone should choose a job which suits their abilities and differences with others. They shouldn't only look for a job with a big salary in order to achieve success in life.

3. The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war proved that it is important for Egypt to try to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and reduce its imports.

4. The Egyptian champions of individual sports win many medals and trophies. However, they don't receive the same interest and support as team sports, which haven't made many great achievements.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) debate
2. c) grandparents
3. b) report
4. d) partner
5. c) section
6. d) aim
7. a) comment
8. b) compared
9. c) hobby
10. b) images
11. a) remain
12. d) recorded
13. d) results
14. c) members
15. b) powerful
16. a) title
17. a) compare
18. c) recognisable
19. a) for
20. b) disagreement
21. a) feel
22. d) to
23. d) took
24. d) negligence
25. b) give
26. b) old/ d) ancient
27. c) important/ e) powerful
28. c) findings/ e) results
29. a) procedure/ d) process
30. b) keep/ e) stay

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) should
2. d) could stay
3. a) couldn't
4. d) couldn't
5. b) should
6. c) could
7. a) can't
8. b) could make
9. a) shouldn't
10. a) ought to
11. d) could have consulted
12. b) may
13. d) shouldn't
14. a) can't
15. b) ought to
16. d) could do
17. b) might
18. c) shouldn't
19. d) Could
20. a) could have
21. b) could
22. b) should have informed
23. a) not to
24. b) couldn't have
25. c) shouldn't have
26. c) may be
27. a) didn't buy
28. d) might have left
29. a) could have passed
30. d) might have finished
31. a) important/ b) advisable
32. a) couldn't/ e) wasn't able to
33. b) regret/ d) blame
34. c) was supposed to/ d) should have
35. b) They should help sick people e) They ought to help sick people.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) title
2. a) procedures
3. d) proper
4. b) society
5. c) conclusion
6. b) media
7. a) summarised
8. c) survey
9. c) should
10. d) could have taken
11. c) might have met
12. c) ought
13. b) shouldn't
14. b) might not
15. d) shouldn't
16. a) couldn't

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) she was very angry
2. d) was clever enough to think about everything
3. a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions
4. c) Albert Einstein and his deep thinking
5. c) we live in a massive universe
6. d) he thought a lot
7. a) she didn't know the answer
8. c) he knew many things

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- يحذر الخبراء كل الناس من أن يقوموا بنشـر معلومات شـخصية كثيرة على فيس بوك وتويتر لأن ذلك قد يتم اسـتخدامه بشكل سيئ من قبل المجرمين والأعداء أيضًا.

٢- لـدى معظم المشـاهير صفحاتهم الخاصة على فيسـبوك التى ينشـرون بها أخبارهـم وصورهم، وهذه يتـم متابعتها عن طريق الملايين من الناس فى كل أنحاء العالم.

٣- الفساد وعدم الانضباط عاملان رئيسيان يؤديان إلى تدهور اقتصادنا، ولهذا تحاول الحكومة محاربتهما.

٤- يحتـاج الطـلاب المصريون إلى فرص حقيقية لإثبات أنفسـهم كقادة ومخترعين. فهناك الكثير من الأدلة على أنهم يسـتطيعون فعل العجائب.

٥- لقد أدت النزاعات والحروب فى العالم كله إلى مشكلات عديدة، إحداها مشكلة اللاجئين التى تزيد كل يوم.

٦- التعاون والعمل الجماعى صفتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع، ويجب تعليمهما لأبنائنا فى سن مبكرة.

B) Translate into English:

1. Experts warn of children's overuse of the internet. That's because this will result in bad effects on health. Therefore, we should teach them how to rationalise this use.
2. Developing education is one of the most important causes which the government pays attention to. This helps create new generations who are able to face modern challenges and build a productive society characterised by the quality of the 21st century.
3. Friends have a great influence on the lives of teenagers. So, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps his friend to succeed in life.
4. The government is trying to find untraditional solutions to the energy problem. So, it increases/widens the establishment of solar energy stations and started building Dabaa nuclear station.

King Lear Exercises (Act II, Scene i)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) arrested
2. b) beggar
3. c) disbelief
4. d) faithful
5. c) guards
6. b) inherited
7. a) persuade
8. c) plotting
9. d) pretended
10. a) profits
11. b) rewards
12. d) stab
13. b) port
14. c) duties

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** basic/ **d)** main
2. **a)** introduce/ **c)** present
3. **b)** suitable/ **d)** convenient
4. **d)** to/ **e)** into
5. **b)** tone
6. **d)** basic
7. **c)** frowned
8. **a)** apply
9. **d)** could smell
10. **d)** should be done
11. **b)** couldn't
12. **a)** could
13. **c)** should
14. **d)** could
15. **b)** were able to
16. **d)** it's possible that you left it there

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** silicate
18. **d)** after a lot of practice and experience
19. **a)** apprentice
20. **b)** making glass needs a lot of money
21. **c)** moulds
22. **b)** harm their lungs
23. **a)** handle special rim
24. **c)** Glass Industry

25. Translate into English:

- If/When you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in time of suffering, strong in time of trouble, and a loving person, you will be/ are a really successful person with lots of good morals.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- من الصعب حقًا أن نفهم لماذا يستمتع بعض الناس بالهوايات الخطيرة مثل تسلق الجبال وسباق السيارات؛ فهم بالفعل قد يفقدون حياتهم فى هذه الهوايات

UNIT 5 Being smart online

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** publishes
2. **a)** subscribe
3. **c)** printed
4. **a)** adapt
5. **c)** upload
6. **c)** cookies
7. **d)** reliable
8. **d)** Targeted
9. **c)** upgrade
10. **b)** views
11. **c)** Advertisers
12. **b)** keywords
13. **d)** knowledge
14. **c)** resources
15. **a)** scanned
16. **b)** characters
17. **a)** fake
18. **d)** obvious
19. **b)** go
20. **a)** at
21. **d)** about
22. **b)** application
23. **c)** have
24. **c)** consultative
25. **c)** honest
26. **a)** urgent/ **d)** immediate
27. **b)** do/ **d)** write
28. **b)** skimmed/ **e)** scanned
29. **d)** installed/ **e)** fixed
30. **a)** task/ **d)** job

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** was meant
2. **b)** seem
3. **a)** 'm supposed
4. **d)** was meant
5. **c)** was supposed
6. **b)** seems
7. **a)** was meant
8. **b)** is meant
9. **a)** seems
10. **c)** is supposed to be collected
11. **d)** 're supposed
12. **b)** seem
13. **c)** seem
14. **b)** was meant
15. **c)** seems
16. **d)** was meant
17. **b)** 'm supposed
18. **a)** seems
19. **b)** not supposed to
20. **a)** were supposed
21. **c)** was supposed
22. **b)** are meant
23. **b)** to be checked
24. **b)** meant
25. **b)** are supposed
26. **c)** Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.
27. **a)** it's necessary to do so
28. **c)** it's forbidden to do so
29. **a)** were supposed
30. **a)** He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.
31. **b)** is supposed to be/ **e)** seems to be
32. **a)** seem to have/ **d)** seem to be having
33. **a)** was supposed to/ **c)** was meant to
34. **c)** doesn't seem/does/ **e)** seems/doesn't
35. **a)** seems to learn/ **b)** seems to have learnt

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) followers
2. c) printed
3. a) subscribe
4. c) access
5. d) browser
6. b) moral
7. d) consult
8. d) updates
9. c) is supposed
10. b) are you supposed
11. c) meant
12. d) were supposed
13. a) seem to
14. c) seem
15. d) 'm supposed
16. a) seems

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) The ability to make a high-pitched sound that bats use to locate things in the dark.
2. a) living or residing
3. c) they have great night vision and excellent hearing
4. b) the ability to see
5. b) are active at night
6. c) releasing bad odour
7. a) Plants.
8. d) animals life at night

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - يجب أن نكون جميعًا حريصين عندما نســتخدم الإنترنت فالمجرمون يخترقون معلومات الناس الشـخصية وبخاصة عن بطاقاتهم الائتمانية ليستخدموها فى جرائمهم.

٢ - بسبب التكنولوجيا أصبح الإعلان علمًا حقيقيًا، وبعض الكليات بالفعل أنشأت أقسامًا جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

٣ - تشجع إنجازات محمد صلاح الكبيرة الشباب على العمل بجد أكثر ليصلوا إلى أصعب أحلامهم، كما أنه يعطيهم الأمل فى حياة أفضل.

٤ - يمتلئ التاريخ المصرى بالنســاء العظيمات اللاتى كن مســتعدات للتضحية بحياتهن لكى تحصل مصر على مســتقبل أفضل؛ لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن نتذكرهن.

٥ - دراســة حياة العلماء والكتاب الكبار تظهر أننا يجب علينا جميعًا أن نبذل جهودا كبيرة للنجاح فى الحياة؛ فكما يــقال: «لا حصاد/ مكسب بدون ألم».

٦ - إن معرض القاهرة للكتاب أحد أهم الأحداث الثقافية فى العالم العربى، فيه الكثير من الأنشطة الثقافية مثل المؤتمرات والندوات.

B) Translate into English:

1. People mustn't believe or share/post all that they read on social media. They are full of rumours which may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.
2. All peoples of the world dream of peace. So, we should all work to end wars which spread in many parts of the world, especially the Arab world.

3. Television and other mass media have a great effect on shaping the attitudes of new generations. So, they must be used well to direct /guide them to the attitudes which will benefit them and their country.
4. Social networking sites, especially Facebook, changed the communication ways of people, especially young people. They have become an important part of modern life, which young people cannot do without.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) profile
2. d) explained
3. c) highlight
4. b) criticised
5. a) entertained
6. b) experience
7. d) forum
8. a) imagine
9. b) platform
10. a) addicted
11. a) sensible
12. b) victims
13. c) employees
14. d) presentations
15. b) ranked
16. a) register
17. d) imagination
18. c) support
19. b) into
20. a) keep
21. c) made
22. d) pay
23. a) with
24. b) connection
25. a) annoy
26. c) employ/ e) hire
27. a) site/ d) platform
28. b) every/ c) each
29. c) develop/ e) make
30. c) alike/ d) related

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) was supposed
2. d) seems
3. a) mean
4. b) 'm supposed
5. b) is supposed
6. a) to be
7. c) checking
8. b) means
9. b) seemed
10. a) meant
11. c) are supposed
12. d) seem
13. d) supposed to
14. a) seems
15. b) seem
16. d) meant
17. a) are supposed
18. c) seemed
19. b) 'm supposed
20. a) seem
21. b) seems
22. c) seem to
23. d) supposed
24. b) is supposed
25. c) is supposed
26. b) It is against the law to get on the plane without a ticket.
27. b) He is seeming to be innocent.
28. b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.
29. b) has
30. d) is seeming to be a luxurious one
31. b) are supposed to/ d) seem to
32. c) do you mean/ e) are you supposed
33. a) seems/ d) seems to be
34. c) seem to be having/ e) seem to have
35. c) You shouldn't have done it./ e) It was wrong to do it.

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) highlighted
2. c) viewpoint
3. c) entertaining
4. b) on
5. d) guide
6. c) symbol
7. a) criticised
8. d) forum
9. a) paying
10. b) are you supposed
11. c) seems
12. b) meant
13. a) seems
14. d) seems
15. b) is supposed
16. b) are not supposed

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) well-educated
2. b) video and television
3. a) not an effective
4. d) self-determining
5. d) TV and video.
6. b) a short story is read
7. a) like TV
8. a) The Importance of Reading

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١- لقد أصبح إدمان التليفون المحمول إحدى المشـكلات النفسـية التى يعانى منها الشـباب، ولدى الأطباء برامج خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

٢- لا يجب أن تثق فى إعطاء معلوماتك الشخصية والمالية لمواقع غير معروفة؛ فقد يستخدمها المجرمون لسرقة مالك أو شخصيتك.

٣- تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا هامًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتوفير المساندة لهم، ولذا يجب علينا دعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.

٤- بدأت الحضارة المصرية منذ آلاف السنين؛ لذلك يطلق على مصر مهد الحضارة.

٥- إن العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنين ليكتمل، مع ذلك سيوفر حلًا رائعًا لمشكلة الزحام فى القاهرة.

٦- قد يساعد الآباء الأطفال ذوى مشكلات/إعاقات التعلم على تحقيق النجاح بتشجيع نقاط قوتهم ومعرفة نقاط ضعفهم.

B) Translate into English:

1. Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of their users although they confirm that they are careful about the personal data of all who has an account on them.
2. Medical progress is the most important of man's achievements which led to the increase of his happiness and welfare. It also resulted in the increase of the average age of people in the last few years.
3. As science and technology develop more, psychological problems, from which people suffer, increase more. Writers and directors deal with these stories in their movies.
4. Mass media warn young people of illegal immigration to Europe as it may lead to losing their lives as they travel through dangerous ways.

4 Students' own answer.

King Lear Exercises (Act II, Scene iii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** apologise
2. **c)** cave
3. **b)** disagreement
4. **a)** doubled
5. **b)** went
6. **c)** joke
7. **c)** patience
8. **d)** shelter
9. **a)** spy
10. **c)** turn

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** characters/ **d)** spaces
2. **b)** gain/ **e)** have
3. **c)** contact/ **d)** touch
4. **a)** praise/ **b)** approve
5. **a)** sponsored
6. **b)** profile
7. **d)** Forum
8. **c)** upgrade
9. **d)** seems
10. **a)** attending
11. **c)** wasn't supposed
12. **b)** are meant
13. **d)** 's supposed
14. **a)** means
15. **a)** suppose
16. **c)** are supposed

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** strong
18. **a)** helps her carry heavy bags
19. **c)** sixty five
20. **c)** because of her husband's prank
21. **c)** he thinks they are silly
22. **b)** everybody knows uncle Azmy's character
23. **a)** feelings
24. **b)** Mr Azmy's Rebirth

25. Translate into English:

- The great national projects, which are carried out all over Egypt, contribute in solving many of the economic problems and providing job opportunities for young people who wish for a better life.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يقال: إن كثيرًا من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ فى سن المراهقة، لذلك يجب أن يحترس المراهقون من الانخراط بها.

UNIT 6 Learning from our mistakes

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) disappointed
2. c) employers
3. a) office
4. a) treating
5. d) generous
6. d) international
7. a) regret
8. b) waste
9. c) maps
10. c) alone
11. a) begged
12. b) carols
13. c) fired
14. d) mean
15. c) piles
16. a) sighed
17. c) mistake
18. b) invitation
19. b) mind
20. c) do
21. a) missed
22. d) for
23. a) for
24. c) wasteful
25. b) assistant
26. b) depressed/ d) dissatisfied
27. a) free/ e) spare
28. b) with/ c) among
29. c) scrape/ e) scraping
30. a) maintain/ e) save

Language Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) can lend
2. c) fail
3. b) will you
4. c) 'd known
5. d) will pass
6. a) had offered
7. b) would have stayed
8. c) would have seen
9. a) talk
10. d) would buy
11. c) rises
12. a) tell
13. b) hadn't fallen
14. c) would be
15. b) would have succeeded
16. a) had
17. b) would have been
18. c) were
19. c) would have contacted
20. c) might have arrived
21. a) wouldn't have been
22. a) were
23. d) sold
24. c) had studied
25. d) would have known
26. c) want
27. d) would go
28. a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al-Hussein Market.
29. d) If water boils at 100oC, it is evaporated.
30. b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
31. a) will be able to/ e) can
32. b) applied/might choose
    c) had applied/might have chosen
33. b) help me./ d) will you help me?
34. b) might buy/ e) could buy
35. c) read/ would be able to get
    d) reads/ will get

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 1 & 2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) donations
2. a) logical
3. b) begged
4. c) treated
5. b) assistant
6. b) including
7. c) race
8. a) alone
9. c) had come
10. a) drink
11. c) would see
12. a) will go
13. a) would spend
14. b) would understand
15. c) does not sleep
16. c) gets

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) the prey and the predator
2. a) physical features
3. d) Green.
4. b) mimicry
5. b) hide themselves
6. a) can't be seen
7. b) the surroundings
8. d) the leopard

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - إن الســعادة هى أكثر من مجرد شــعور جيد ووجه ذى ابتســامة صفراء/مصطنعة، إنما هى الشعور بالاستمتاع بحياتك والرغبة فى الاستفادة القصوى بها.

٢ - يعتقد بعض الناس أن المال قد يجعلك سعيدًا وعندما نمر بتجارب ونشترى أشياء بالمال هذا قد يجعلك سعيدًا.

٣ - يمكن للأدب أن يلعب دورا حيويًا فى حل الكثير من مشكلات المجتمع، وذلك لأنه إحدى الوسائل المثلى لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حل لها.

٤ - تؤثر وسائل الإعلام على حياتنا كثيرًا فلقد أصبحت إحدى أدوات التغيير السياسى؛ لذلك تستخدم بشكل واسع فى كل الحملات السياسية.

٥ - يمكن اعتبار سن التقاعد وقتًا للراحة لكثير من الناس، ولكن يرغب الكثير من الناس فى الاستمرار فى العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

٦ - لا يتفق المراهقون عادة مع كبار السن لديهم ولا يرغبون فى أن يثقوا بأسرارهم معهم، ومعظمهم يلجأ إلى أصدقائهم من أجل ذلك.

B) Translate into English:

1. Naguib Mahfouz's stories depicted Egyptian society with all its values and problems at the time when he lived. He won the Nobel Prize because of his great effect on the Arab Literature.
2. The government helps young graduates from the Faculty of Agriculture by granting/offering them areas of land in different places. They can reclaim them and start their own businesses/projects.

3. Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world. Society members must work on increasing production and changing their consuming habits to face different crises and the continuous rise in prices.
4. Universities represent the main source of supplying society with its needs of scientists and researchers in different fields. Therefore, we must provide them all financial support which is necessary for their continuous development.

4 Students' own answer.

Vocabulary Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) fell
2. b) get
3. d) lost
4. b) hanging
5. d) apparently
6. a) caption
7. b) chat
8. b) guess
9. c) ignored
10. d) improve
11. d) memory
12. c) amount
13. b) leader
14. d) pick
15. b) relationship
16. a) reunion
17. b) organise
18. c) back
19. b) keep
20. a) as
21. d) with
22. a) past
23. b) appearance
24. d) ignored
25. d) prompt
26. a) remembrance/ e) memorisation
27. a) become/ c) get
28. d) mall/ e) centre
29. b) had/ c) caught
30. b) far/ d) distant

Language Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) as long as
2. c) In case of
3. c) Had
4. c) unless
5. c) Had
6. a) to reappear
7. a) as long as
8. a) were
9. b) hadn't been for
10. b) provided that
11. a) But for
12. b) have
13. c) Without
14. a) could
15. c) weren't
16. a) in case
17. a) But for
18. b) on condition that
19. b) had done
20. b) had
21. c) had taken
22. b) wouldn't
23. b) Had
24. c) Had
25. b) to eat
26. b) she did not quit her job and she has enough money
27. a) had/would backpack
28. a) Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.
29. b) I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today
30. c) would you have done/had had
31. a) won't open/push
    d) wouldn't open/pushed
32. c) without driving/ b) unless you drive
33. c) provided/ d) if
34. a) Without/ e) But for
35. b) If there is/ c) In case of

Test yourself Exercises (Lessons 3 & 4)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) back
2. a) fell
3. c) ignored
4. a) organise
5. d) apparently
6. c) polite
7. c) in
8. d) friendship
9. b) Unless
10. a) Without
11. d) had asked
12. a) will get
13. d) were/could translate
14. c) In case of
15. b) to work
16. c) in case

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) the ability to cause change
2. d) convert
3. a) potential energy
4. c) cooked
5. d) motion
6. d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one
7. b) The energy in a mobile phone
8. b) What is Energy?

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

١ - إن الصداقة من أجمل الأشياء فى الحياة؛ لأن الأصدقاء يمكن أن يوفروا لك كل المساعدة والدعم لكى تؤدى بشكل أفضل فى الحياة.

٢ - يحذر الخبراء من أن استخدام التليفون لساعات طويلة قد يكون له آثار خطيرة علينا؛ فقد يسبب مشكلات جسدية ونفسية

٣ - يمكن أن نحل كثيرًا من مشكلاتنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا أن يدركوا ويغيروا أخطاءهم السيئة، فالآباء والمدارس دور كبير فى ذلك.

٤ - تعتبر الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية؛ لأن كل الرياضيين يحاولون الفوز لكى يكرموا بلدهم، لذلك قد تكون الألعاب فقدت معناها الأصلى.

٥ - تساعد الاكتشافات العلمية التى تتم فى أى بلد على تنميته وتقدمه، والعلم هو أيضًا القوة التى يمكن أن تدفع عجلة الإنتاج به.

٦ - يجب أن تدرب وزارة التربية والتعليم الأطفال على أمان الطعام من خلال حصص الدراسات الاجتماعية فى المرحلة الابتدائية، وذلك سيساعدهم فى حياتهم التالية.

B) Translate into English:

1. There are many disadvantages of technology. Due to young people's attachment to technological social networking, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose ways of communication with other members of society.
2. It is said that the secret of success in life is that man should be ready when chances come to him. If he doesn't make use of them, they may not come back again. So, you must take all available chances.
3. Unemployment doesn't only affect individuals, but also the country's growth. It has a bad effect on the economic and social growth. So, we must put an end to it.
4. Sport has a lot of benefits. It can improve our mood and relieve stress. So, many psychologists think that it is the best way to fight depression.

King Lear Exercises (Act III, Scene ii)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) lightning
2. b) forgive
3. c) hut
4. d) hard-hearted
5. c) straw
6. b) rising
7. a) forced
8. c) homeless
9. b) torch
10. d) horrible

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Unit 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) at/ c) about
2. a) taken/ b) shown
3. d) mean/ e) miserly
4. c) obviously/ d) clearly
5. b) mean
6. b) donations
7. c) hanging
8. a) on
9. d) had been
10. b) stop
11. a) didn't exist
12. c) hadn't walked
13. d) wake up
14. c) would you have done
15. b) aren't
16. a) could go

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:
Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.
18. a) A specialty food item.
19. b) Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.
20. d) harmless
21. c) hunt and move
22. d) it's not an eel
23. b) cook it well
24. b) A Knife Fish

25. Translate into English:

- One of our duties towards our friends is to give them useful advice out of the experience which we have gained through our life experiences and learnt from our mistakes.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود، وهذا قد يؤدى إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو فيروسات جديدة.

Al-Adwaa Test Based on (Units 4, 5 & 6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** formal/ **e)** official
2. **a)** offer/ **d)** give
3. **a)** modern/ **e)** fashionable
4. **b)** bad/ **c)** sorry
5. **c)** frowned
6. **a)** titles
7. **b)** consult
8. **c)** back
9. **a)** In case of
10. **a)** would have lost
11. **b)** couldn't
12. **c)** shouldn't have stayed
13. **b)** is supposed to be
14. **b)** couldn't
15. **a)** to drink
16. **d)** was meant

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **c)** the internet "advantages and disadvantages".
18. **d)** all of these
19. **a)** hackers
20. **d)** unattainable
21. **b)** the internet
22. **a)** stealing people's personal information
23. **c)** they are all over the world
24. **b)** fake advertisements

25. Translate into English:

- Speaking more than one foreign language and learning computer skills have become two of the most important qualifications which job markets/workplaces need. This importance has increased with the resort of companies to the internet because of the corona pandemic.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- لعبت التكنولوجيا دورًا هامًـــا فى تغيير أسلوب حياة الناس؛ فهم يقومون بالدردشة و إرسال الإيميلات للناس بدلًا من التحدث إليهم، ويقومون بلعب ألعاب الفيديو بدلًا من ممارسة الرياضة والتمرينات.

King Lear

Act I, Scene i

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) divide
2. b) riches
3. c) answer
4. d) Duke
5. c) foolish
6. a) sword
7. d) Duke
8. d) duty
9. c) sword
10. c) kingdom
11. a) honest
12. a) third
13. b) sword

Act I, Scene i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) inheritance
2. a) truth
3. b) anger
4. d) succeeded
5. b) trust
6. d) loyalty
7. c) income
8. a) deceive
9. d) exit
10. a) breaks
11. c) inheritance
12. a) Loyalty
13. c) deceives
14. a) hurt
15. c) deserve

Act I, Scene iii-iv

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) wise
2. c) behaves
3. b) encourages
4. a) rude
5. b) servant
6. c) disguise
7. d) cart
8. a) guilty
9. b) wise
10. b) servant
11. d) medicine
12. b) disguised
13. a) guilty
14. d) encouraged

Act II, Scene i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** ports
2. **a)** guard
3. **d)** persuade
4. **c)** beggar
5. **d)** faithful
6. **c)** pretend
7. **b)** disbelief
8. **d)** changed
9. **c)** beggar
10. **d)** plots
11. **d)** inherited
12. **a)** stab
13. **a)** guard
14. **d)** stocks

Act II, Scene (iii) - Act III, Scene (i)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **c)** room
2. **b)** disagreement
3. **a)** jokes
4. **c)** spy
5. **a)** shelter
6. **c)** patience
7. **d)** go
8. **b)** apologised
9. **a)** out
10. **d)** back
11. **b)** shelter
12. **d)** mad
13. **d)** shelter
14. **b)** set

Act III, Scene (ii-iii-iv)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** lightning
2. **b)** torch
3. **c)** forgive
4. **d)** hard-heartened
5. **c)** philosopher
6. **b)** straw
7. **c)** hut
8. **c)** hut
9. **a)** room
10. **a)** pardon
11. **c)** lightning
12. **c)** straw

AL ADWAA

Gem

New

HELLO ENGLISH LANGUAGE

First Term

2021

Skills & Ongoing Assessment

2nd Secondary

Contents

Part 1



Skills

1. Reading Comprehension
2. Writing
3. Translation

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

لاشك أن سؤال قطعة الفهم هو من أكبر الأسئلة فى الامتحان وأعلاها درجات، لذلك يجب الاهتمام بها والتدريب المستمر عليها، وللإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم إليك النصائح الآتية:

١- قم بقراءة القطعة مرة واحدة لتفهم المعنى العام دون التوقف عند الكلمات الصعبة.
٢- اقرأ أسئلة القطعة ثم قم بقراءة القطعة مرة ثانية بحثا عن الإجابة.
٣- عند عدم معرفة كلمة فى الجملة حاول تخمينها من سياق الجملة ككل.
٤- عند الاختيار من متعدد يمكن أن يكون هناك اختياران لهما نفس المعنى فتقوم باستبعادهما وتفكر فى الاختيارين الآخرين.
٥- لاحظ صيغ الأسئلة التالية:

Do you agree/oppose/think ....?	هل (توافق)/(تعارض)/(تعتقد) ....؟
Find in the passage words which mean: a) .... b)	استخرج كلمات من القطعة تعنى .....
From the point of view of the writer (author)	من وجهة نظر الكاتب (المؤلف) .....
From your point of view.... / In your opinion	من وجهة نظرك /(فى رأيك) .....
Give a suitable title for the passage.	ضع عنوانا مناسبا للقطعة.
Mention in detail ..../ in brief	اذكر بالتفصيل ...../باختصار .....
Show/Explain/Discuss the reasons	وضح/اشرح/ناقش الأسباب .....
What do you think (is your opinion) of ....?	فسر لماذا/ما رأيك فى .....؟
What does the pronoun .... refer to?	ما الذى يشير إليه الضمير .....؟
hat does the underlined word mean/refer to?	ماذا تعنى الكلمة التى أسفلها خط؟ إلى ماذا تشير الكلمة التى تحتها خط؟
hat is the main idea of the passage?	ما هى الفكرة الرئيسية فى القطعة؟
te down/Summarise with words on your own	اكتب- لخص بكلمات من عندك .....
marise the main idea in the passage.	لخص الفكرة الرئيسية فى القطعة.

Exercises

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

1 "No smoking" this is what we read in public closed places and public means of transport. If you do not smoke, do not start. This is a valuable piece of advice we often receive from the majority of doctors. Cigarette smoking and pollution represent fearful enemies to man as they destroy health and bring about suffering a death. Smoking is one of the most important factors in the development of heart diseases and cancer.

Doctors have proved that the smoker's lungs, throat and respiratory system are often attacked by cancer. Male cigarette smokers have higher death rate from heart diseases than non-smoking ones. Female smokers are less affected because they do not breathe in the smoke so deeply. So, smoking is banned in cinemas, theatres and all closed places. In some places, there are special rooms for smoking, just to protect the non-smokers from its danger. They are helpless victims since they inhale poisonous gas and nicotine, they receive much more than the smokers themselves. The majority of smokers who want help to stop smoking prefer to seek it from a medical practitioner or other qualified health professional, rather than using self-help approaches. Patients should accept advice on changing their smoking habits from an acknowledged expert on health problems.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors have recently proved that smokers are exposed to ....
   a) punishment b) good health
   c) cancer and heart diseases d) non-smokers' attack
2. Non-smokers have .... death rate from heart diseases than male cigare smokers.
   a) higher b) greater c) lower d) as much as
3. What does the underlined word "they" refer to?
   a) Male smokers. b) Non-smokers.
   c) Female smokers. d) Diseases.
4. The underlined verb "inhale" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
   a) breathe in b) breathe out c) consume d) produce

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why is cigarette smoking dangerous? Give two reasons.
6. What do doctors advise smokers to do?
7. Mention two of the human organs that can be badly affected by smok
8. In your opinion, why do people resort to smoking? Give two reasons.

2 Dirty water can be dangerous to drink and can make people ill. It can damage the environment, animals and fish. What do you think causes water pollution? People often throw rubbish into rivers. This makes the river look horrible and affects the lives of people, animals, and fish. We all need to get rid of waste materials from our bodies. In many places untreated sewage goes straight into rivers, lakes or seas. Too much sewage kills fish and other water life. It can make the water unsafe for drinking, washing or swimming.

Oil is an important source of energy, but it can also cause pollution. If it is spilt while lorries or ships are transporting it, plants and animals die. Factories often pump waste liquid into sewers and rivers. This may contain dangerous chemicals which could harm plants, animals, fish and humans. Some factories filter or clean the waste before it goes into sewers or rivers. This helps to keep the environment cleaner. It may be concluded, that all live organisms on Earth utterly depend on water, and if the water they consume is not clean, it reflects negatively on these organisms.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) water life b) fish life
   c) too much sewage d) untreated sewage
2. Factories try to keep the environment cleaner by ....
   a) pumping waste liquid into rivers
   b) throwing dangerous chemicals into sewers
   c) filtering the waste before it goes into rivers
   d) transporting their products abroad
3. Water pollution affects people because ....
   a) it provides sewage b) it filters waste
   c) it spills oil d) it contaminates water
4. From the author's point of view, what is responsible for water pollution?
   a) Human activities. b) Fish.
   c) Animals. d) Sewage.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. According to the passage, what causes water pollution?
6. Pollution is a serious problem. Suggest two ways to solve it.
7. Find words from the passage which mean:
   a) garbage b) moving something to other places
8. How do you think people and the government can solve the problem of dirty water?

3 It was a very foggy day in London. Mr. Smith arrived from Edinburgh to go to a very important meeting, but no buses or taxis were running because of the fog.

It was nine o'clock and his meeting was at ten, so he thought he would walk to the office where it was going to be. But nobody was even trying to walk anywhere. While Mr. Smith was standing there, a young man came up to him and said, "Sir, if you want to go somewhere, I can guide you." Mr. Smith was surprised and said, "How can you find the way in this fog?" "Don't worry, Sir," answered the man. So Mr. Smith told the young man where he wanted to go. They walked quite fast. At last Mr. Smith thought, " Perhaps this man is mad, or a thief." But a minute later, the young man stopped and said, "Here is the place, Sir." Mr. Smith was surprised to find that he reached the office. He gave the young man a pound and then said, "How did you find the way in the fog?" "I'm blind, Sir," answered the young man, "but I know London well, and it is exactly the same in the fog."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meeting was going to be in ....
   a) Edinburgh b) Scotland
   c) London d) Glasgow
2. Mr. Smith rewarded the blind man by ....
   a) walking with him b) giving him money
   c) thinking he was mad d) telling him a funny story
3. What does the underlined word "it" refer to?
   a) The office. b) The fog.
   c) The guide. d) The meeting.
4. Mr Smith seemed to .... the man who guided him.
   a) trust b) doubt
   c) hate d) recognise

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why couldn't Mr. Smith find a bus or a taxi?
6. What do you think of the blind man?
7. Find words from the passage that mean:
   a) lead b) burglar
8. Do you think the story is fiction or non-fiction? Why?

4 Helicopters are very different from airplanes. They can do three things that airplanes cannot do. First, when airplanes move upward, they must also move forward, but helicopters can move straight up without moving ahead. Second, helicopters can fly backward, which airplanes cannot do. Third, helicopters can use their rotors to hover in the air (stay in one place) which is impossible for airplanes.

Because helicopters can perform actions that airplanes cannot, they are used for different tasks. Since helicopters can take off without moving forward, they do not need a runway for takeoff. They are used in congested areas where there is no room for airplanes or in isolated areas which do not have airports. Because they can hover, they are used on firefighting missions to drop water on fires. They are used in logging operations to lift trees out of forests. Helicopters are used as air ambulances to airlift patients out of situations which are difficult to reach by conventional ambulances. The police use helicopters to follow suspects on the ground or to search for cars on the ground. Of course, helicopters have military uses because of their design and capabilities.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Helicopters are able to ....
   a) move straight up b) fly backward
   c) hover d) all of the previous
2. The best synonym for "perform" is ....
   a) fly b) do c) lift d) can
3. If an area is isolated it is ....
   a) crowded b) popular c) cut off d) in the city
4. How are helicopters used as ambulances?
   a) They chase suspects on the ground.
   b) They airlift people out of accidents.
   c) They can drop water on fires.
   d) They lift trees out of forests.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What must airplanes do when they move upward?
6. Why are helicopters used in firefighting?
7. Why don't helicopters need runways?
8. Helicopters can be used in many different things. Mention two.

5 Football or soccer, which is considered to be the most popular sport in the world, is a team sport played between two teams of eleven players using a spherical ball.

The object of the game, which is played on a wide rectangular field with a goal on each end of the field, is to score by putting the ball into the adversary goal. A goalkeeper who is allowed, at the exception of other players, to use his/her hands in the game, keeps the goal. The winners are those who score the most goals. If the football match ends in a draw, the two teams may be redirected to play extra time and/or penalty shootouts (each team taking turns to have a set number of kicks at the goal.)

The way football is played now was first codified in England. Nowadays, it is governed by the FIFA, «Fédération Internationale de Football Association» (International Federation of Association Football.) The game is played now all over the world and competitions are organised nationally, continentally and internationally. The most prestigious of football competitions is the World Cup, which is held every four years.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is another word for football.
   a) Soccer b) FIFA
   c) The World Cup d) Goal
2. The rules of the game were established ....
   a) by an international committee b) in England
   c) by FIFA d) every four years
3. The number of players on the pitch in a football match is ....
   a) ten b) eleven c) sixteen d) twenty two
4. The most important football competition nowadays is ....
   a) FIFA b) the World Cup c) soccer d) football

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How is football played?
6. What exception does the goalkeeper have?
7. Find in the text words which mean:
   a) worldwide
   b) high-status
8. In your opinion, how can football be a means to please people?

6 Statistics show that the rapid growth in population creates problems for developing countries. So, why don't people have fewer children? It has also been found that only when people's education and living standards begin to rise, birth rates begin to fall. Now poor countries can't afford social services and old age pensions, and people's incomes are so low that <u>they</u> have nothing to spare for savings. So people need their children to provide them with security in their old age. Having a large family can be a form of insurance. Even when they are still young, children can help on a small farm.

Improvements in public health services and medical care have assured that many more babies survive infancy and grow up. It has also helped the parents to live longer. No wonder populations are being added to both ends. These people have to be convinced that with smaller families, there will be more food, better schools, more employment and thus a better standard of living. This means changes in attitudes.

To sum up, the population explosion has caused huge pressure on the surface of the earth. Also, we can control many issues of the earth by controlling population growth. Besides, many problems like food insecurity, illiteracy, poverty and unemployment can be minimised by controlling the population.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... had decreased the number of deaths among babies.
   - a) Medical care
   - b) The standard of living
   - c) Birth control
   - d) Education
2. We have to convince people to ....
   - a) work on farm
   - b) build more houses
   - c) go to school
   - d) have smaller families
3. The underlined pronoun "<u>they</u>" refers to ....
   - a) people's incomes
   - b) social services
   - c) people
   - d) poor countries
4. The best title to this text is "............".
   - a) Statistics
   - b) Family planning
   - c) Smaller families
   - d) Developing countries

B) Answer the following questions:

5. When do birth rates go down?
6. Why did people like to have many children in the past?
7. Find in the text words which mean:
   - a) the science which deals with numbers and facts
   - b) early childhood
8. In your opinion, how can we solve the problem of over-population?

7 All spiders spin webs. That's because webs help spiders. Webs help spiders do three things. Webs help spiders hold eggs. Webs help spiders hide. And webs help spiders catch food.

Webs help spiders hold eggs. Many spiders like to lay their eggs in their webs. The webs help keep the eggs together. Webs help spiders keep their eggs safe.

Webs help spiders hide. Most spiders are dark. They are brown, grey, or black. But spider webs are light. They are white and cloudy. When spiders hide in their webs, they are harder to see.

Webs help spiders catch food. Spider webs are sticky. When a bug flies into the web, it gets stuck. It moves around. It tries to get out. But it can't. It is <u>trapped</u>! Spiders can tell that the bug is trapped. That's because spiders feel the web move. And the spider is hungry. The spider goes to get the bug.

Without webs, spiders would not be able to live like they do. Spiders need their webs to survive!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This passage is mostly about ....
   - a) spider colors
   - b) spider webs
   - c) spider eggs
   - d) spider prey
2. As used in paragraph 4, the word <u>trapped</u> most nearly means ....
   - a) stuck
   - b) hidden
   - c) eaten
   - d) escaped
3. How can spiders tell when something is trapped in their web?
   - a) They hear it.
   - b) They smell it.
   - c) They feel it.
   - d) They see it.
4. As used in the last sentence of the passage, the word survive means to stay ....
   - a) awake
   - b) hidden
   - c) caught
   - d) alive

B) Answer the following questions:

5. The passage lists three reasons why spiders spin webs. Of these reasons, which do you think is the most important? Why?
6. Find words from the passage that mean:
   - a) gluey
   - b) imprisoned
7. Do you like spiders? Why? Why not?
8. In what ways can spider webs help spiders?

8 Mona says that all of her friends have a cell phone, but Mona's mom doesn't want to buy her one. Mona's mom doesn't want Mona to play video games either. What is more, the Internet scares her. Mona's mom says, "If Mona has a cell phone, how do we know whom she is talking to? Video games are bad for you. The Internet is dangerous and uncontrolled. It's like having a gun in the house. We should just ban her from using the computer, and I'm not buying her a cell phone until she is eighteen. This is the only way we can be sure that Mona is safe."

Mona's dad disagrees with Mona's mom. Although he agrees that there are some dangers to it, he likes the Internet, and finds it to be very useful. "The trouble is," he says, "we just can't stop Mona from using the Internet, as this would put her at a disadvantage. What is more, I like video games. I think that, when played in moderation, they are fun. Obviously, it is not good to play them without restraint or self-control. Finally, I think Mona needs a cell phone. We can't take these things away."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona's mother doesn't want to buy her a cell phone because she is more ....
   a) ridiculous b) careful c) cruel d) rude
2. Mona's dad can best be described as ....
   a) shameless b) foolish c) wild d) reasonable
3. Which of the following best shows the difference between Mona's mom and Mona's dad?
   a) Mom wants to ban Mona from using the computer, while dad likes to play video games.
   b) Mom thinks technology is dangerous, while dad thinks it can be useful.
   c) Mom cares little about Mona's future, while dad is very supportive.
   d) Mom is very strict while Dad is open-minded.
4. Which of the following explains the similarity between Mona's mom and Mona's dad?
   a) Mom and dad both like technology.
   b) Mom and dad both think video games are bad.
   c) Mom and dad both think the internet is dangerous.
   d) Mom and dad both care about Mona's wellbeing.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. *What do you think would be the best way for Mona to change the way her mom thinks about technology?*
6. *On what condition will Mona's mother buy her daughter a cell phone?* If she is eighteen.
7. *Do you think we should let children use modern technology without restrictions? Why ? Why not?*
8. *Do you think technology is useful to children? Why? Why not?*

2 Translation

1 Translation from English into Arabic:

١ نحدد أجزاء الجملة من حيث الفاعل والفعل والمفعول ونبدأ الترجمة للعربية بالفعل كلما أمكن.

٢ يحول المجهول إلى المعلوم ولكن إذا كان المجهول واقعيا فلا بأس.

٣ يمكن استخدام كلمات وحروف مثل: «الواو، من، ثم، كذلك، لهذا، الفاء» لربط المعنى.

٤ يمكن إضافة كلمة أو أكثر للسياق لكى يستقيم المعنى.

٥ نترجم should/must/ought to الى: يجب أن/ينبغى أن/إنه للزام علينا أن.

٦ نترجم المضارع التام (have/has + p.p.) الى: لقد + الفعل الماضى.

٧ نخمن الكلمة الصعبة من التى قبلها أو التى بعدها أو من سياق الجملة.

٨ يمكن التخمين باستخدام مقاطع أول وآخر الكلمة مثل: non-renewable فإن أصل الكلمة new وأضيف لها re بمعنى يعيد و able تضيف الصفة و non للنفى فيصبح معنى الكلمة «غير متجدد».

٩ إذا لم نستطع التخمين لا نترك مكانها فارغًا.

١٠ نلتزم بزمن الجملة فى الترجمة، المضارع يترجم إلى مضارع والماضى يترجم إلى ماض.

2 Translation from Arabic into English:

Part (1)

١ الجملة هى أهم شىء فى تعلم أى لغة فلو لم تكن الجملة صحيحة لا يستطيع أحد أن يفهم ما تريد ولابد أن تكون فى زمن صحيح أيضًا. والجملة فى اللغة الانجليزية لا تعرف إلا شكلا واحدا وهو:

Subject +	verb +	object +	adverb +	place +	time
الفاعل	الفعل	المفعول	الحال	المكان	الزمن
Noun/pron. اسم/ضمير		Noun/pron. اسم/ضمير			
The boy	studies	his lessons	carefully	at home	every day.

- ينقص تكوين الجملة الصفة وهى ليس لها مكان محدد بل تأتى قبل كل اسم، فيمكن أن تأتى قبل الفاعل أو المفعول أو المكان أو الزمن.

PART 1

١ الجملة تكون فى نفس الزمن الذى نتحدث فيه.

- زرت العديد من البلاد. I visited a lot of countries.

٢ ينظر الطالب إلى الفاعل جيدا فالفاعل فى الجملة العربية هو الفاعل فى الجملة الإنجليزية.

- تلعب السياحة دورًا هامًا فى زيادة دخلنا القومى.

- Tourism plays a vital role in increasing our national income.

٤ يمكن أن يكون الفاعل v.ing وهنا لابد من وجود فعل رئيسى آخر.

- Reading gives us a lot of information and widens our knowledge.

٥ إذا بدأت الجملة بفعل مضاف إليه ing فيعامل كفعل مفرد (is/ was/ has/ does/ s/ es).

- يقوى لعب كرة القدم أجسامنا.

- Playing football strengthens our bodies.

٦ نترجم قد أو لقد وبعدهما فعل ماض إلى المضارع التام.

- لقد نظفت والدتى الشقة وطهت الطعام.

- My mother has cleaned the flat and cooked the food.

٧ نترجم لقد إلى زمن الماضى البسيط إذا كان فى الجملة كلمة من كلمات الماضى البسيط.

- لقد اتصلت بصديقى مرتين أمس.

- I phoned my friend twice yesterday.

٨ إذا لم نجد فعلًا فى الجملة فهى جملة اسمية وفى هذه الحالة يكون الفعل:

- إن العلم هو العمود الفقرى لتقدم أى دولة.

- لا يوجد فعل فى هذه الجملة وعند الترجمة لابد من وجود فعل فى الإنجليزية فهل معناه يكون أم يملك؟ نجد أنه (يكون).

- Science is the backbone of the progress of any nation.

- لدينا ظروف صعبة هذه الأيام.

- لا يوجد فعل فى هذه الجملة وعند الترجمة لابد من وجود فعل فى الإنجليزية فهل معناه يكون أم يملك؟ نجد أنه (يملك).

- We have difficult circumstances these days.

Translate into English:

١ تلعب القراءة دورًا هامًا فى حياتنا لأنها تمدنا بالمعرفة فى شتى المجالات.

....

٢ يعطينا السلام فرصة ذهبية لتنفيذ العديد من المشاريع المفيدة فهو يوفر المال المنفق على الأسلحة.

....

٣ السياحة شيء ضرورى لزيادة الدخل القومى ولتنفيذ العديد من المشاريع الإنتاجية الضخمة.

....

٤ يعانى عالمنا فى الوقت الحاضر من كثير من المشكلات مثل الاحتباس الحرارى وندرة المياه ونقص انتاج الغذاء.

....

٥ يساعدنا تعلم اللغات الأجنبية على قراءة أفضل الكتب فى العلم والطب والهندسة.

....

٦ لدينا العديد من الموارد الاقتصادية التى لو أحسنا استغلالها لأصبحنا من أرقى الأمم.

....

٧ لقد ساعد الحاسب الآلي الإنسان على توفير الوقت والجهد وأداء الحسابات بسرعة وبسهولة.

....

Part (2)

١ الاسم الجمع العام لا يأخذ the وكذلك الاسم المفرد العام (غير المخصص).

- تعطينا الأشجار الظل والأخشاب والثمار والأكسجين.

- Trees give us shade, wood, fruit and oxygen.

٢ الأسماء المعنوية (غير المحسوسة) لا تأخذ the:

- إن التسامح والحب والإخلاص والتعاون من أسمى الصفات الإنسانية.

- Tolerance, love, loyalty and cooperation are of the best human qualities.

٣ الصفة تسبق الاسم فى اللغة الإنجليزية.

- يساعدنا المعلمون المهرة على فهم دروسنا الصعبة.

- Clever teachers help us understand our difficult lessons.

٤ يترجم الفعل المضارع فى اللغة العربية إلى زمن المضارع البسيط أو المضارع المستمر.

- تبذل الحكومة أقصى جهدها لإيجاد فرص عمل للشباب.

- The government is doing (does) its best to provide job opportunities for the youth.

- يعانى كثير من الناس من ارتفاع الأسعار والبطالة.

- A lot of people suffer (are suffering) from the rise in prices and unemployment.

٥ الضمائر المستترة فى اللغة العربية تظهر فى الإنجليزية.

- يجب أن نهتم بالتعليم والصناعة والزراعة والسياحة والاقتصاد.

- We should care about education, industry, agriculture, tourism and economy.

٦ طريقة تكوين المضاف والمضاف إليه.

مع العاقل يمكن أن نستخدم 's أو s' للتعبير عن الإضافة. هكذا:

The boy's hand يد الولد	the cat's leg رجل القطة	the man's heart قلب الرجل
The boys' room حجرة الأولاد	the soldiers' camp معسكر الجنود	

ومع الجماد وغير العاقل لا نستخدم 's أو s' ولكن نستخدم:

Pollution problem	The problem of pollution	مشكلة التلوث
Cairo university	The University of Cairo	جامعة القاهرة
Living standard	The standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
Food shortage	The shortage of food	نقص الطعام

لقد كسر اللص باب المنزل.

- The thief has broken the door of the house.

Translate into English:

١ يجب أن نعتنى بالأطفال ونربيهم جيدًا من جميع النواحى فهم شباب المستقبل.

....

٢ الماء ضرورى للحياة وله فوائد كثيرة للإنسان والحيوان فيجب أن نحافظ عليه.

....

٣ أجاب الطالب الذكى عن كل الأسئلة الصعبة ولذلك حصل على درجات عالية.

....

٤ تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة البطالة ورفع مستوى المعيشة فى كل مكان.

....

٥ يجب أن ندرك قيمة العلم لأنه سلاح الأمم وأساس حضارتها ومصدر تقدمها وازدهارها.

....

Part (3)

١ عندما تكون and أداة ربط يكون الفعل الذى بعدها يساوى ما قبلها.

- We suggested going out and visiting the Pyramids. — اقترحنا الخروج وزيارة الأهرامات.
- We decided to go out and visit the Pyramids. — قررنا أن نخرج ونزور الأهرامات.

٢ فى الغالب لا نترجم الفعل «يعمل» أو «يقوم» إذا جاء معه فعل آخر.

- تقوم الأم بمساعدة زوجها فى تربية الأولاد.
- Mother is helping (helps) her husband in bringing up children.

٣ المفعول المطلق لا يترجم وتحول الصفة إلى حال.

- Pollution affects man badly. — يؤثر التلوث على الإنسان تأثيرا سيئا.

٤ بعض الأفعال يأتى بعدها حرف جر فى اللغة العربية ولا تأخذ حرف جر فى اللغة الإنجليزية.

affect	يؤثر على	admire	يعجب بـ
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	suspect	يشك فى
feel	يشعر بـ	include	يشتمل على
join	يلتحق بـ	sacrifice	يضحى بـ
enjoy	يتمتع بـ	recognise	يتعرف على
arrest	يقبض على	obtain/get	يحصل على
reach	يصل إلى	fear	يخشى أن
seek	يبحث عن	should/ must	يجب أن

- يريد صديقى أن يلتحق بكلية الطب.
- My friend wants to join the faculty of Medicine.

٥ «إن» لا تترجم ولكن «أن» تترجم إلى that.

- Friendship is a beautiful thing in life. — إن الصداقة شىء جميل فى الحياة.
- People think that money brings happiness. — يعتقد الناس أن المال يجلب السعادة.

Translate into English:

١ تهدف السياسة التعليمية الجديدة إلى تحسين النظام التعليمى وخلق جيل جديد واع بمشكلات بلده.

....

٢ تقوم الدولة بتوفير فرص عمل للشباب من خلال إقامة مشروعات ضخمة فى المدن الجديدة.

....

٣ دمر الزلزال المدينة تدميرا كاملا وأصيب كثير من الأشخاص إصابات بالغة .

....

٤ إن التدخين يدمر الصحة ويضيع المال وإن غير المدخنين يعيشون حياة أكثر صحة من الآخرين.

....

٥ لقد استمتعنا بالحفلة أمس وشعرنا بالسعادة لرؤية أصدقائنا القدامى.

....

٦ لقد أثبتت مصر أنها لا تخشى الإرهاب الذى لا يعرف فقط إلا الخراب وأنها جادة فى القضاء عليه.

....

٧ يعتقد البعض أن النجاح فى الحياة هو الحصول على المال فقط وأن الفقر مصدر الشقاء والبؤس.

....

Vocabulary & Expressions for Translation

English	Arabic
a means (to)	وسيلة لـ
ability	القدرة
achievements	انجازات
acquire	يكتسب
adapt to	يتأقلم على
addiction	الادمان
admiration	الاعجاب
adolescence	فترة المراهقة
advance	تقدم /يتقدم
adventure	مغامرة
adventurer	مغامر(شخص)
aggression	عدوان
aging	كبر السن(الشيخوخة)
agricultural development	التنمية الزراعية
agricultural investment	الاستثمار الزراعي
agriculture	الزراعة
all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
alternatives	بدائل
ambitions	طموحات
ambitious	طموح
ancient monuments	الآثار القديمة
assassination	اغتيال
attitude	موقف
authority	سلطة
aware of	واعٍ بـ/على دراية بـ

English	Arabic
awareness	وعي
backbone	العمود الفقري
baggage/luggage	أمتعة السفر
balanced diet	غذاء متوازن
basis	أساس
armed with	متسلح بـ
beauty of nature	جمال الطبيعة
behaviour	السلوك
believing that	إيمانا بـ
birthplace	مهد
blessing	نعمة
book fair	معرض الكتاب
boredom	ملل
bossy	متغطرس
bring prices down	يقلل الأسعار
bring up	يربي
bringing up	تنشئة
broaden the mind	يوسع المدارك
brotherhood	الأخوة
campaign	حملة
capacity	قدرة/طاقة
car fumes	عوادم السيارات
catastrophe	كارثة
catch up with	يواكب / يساير
challenges	تحديات

English	Arabic
championship	بطولة
chaos	فوضى
characteristics	خصائص
childhood	الطفولة
circumstances	ظروف
citizens	مواطنين
civil wars	الحروب الأهلية
civilisation	حضارة
cloning	الاستنساخ
co-existence	التعايش
colleagues	زملاء العمل
comfort	راحة
comfortable	مريح
communities	مجتمعات
competition	منافسة
competitive	متنافسة
concentration	تركيز
considerate	مراع للآخرين
consideration	اعتبار
construction	تشييد
consume	يستهلك
consumer	مستهلك
consumption	الاستهلاك
contaminate	يلوث/يدنس
contemporary	معاصر

English	Arabic
contribute to	يساهم في
cooperation	التعاون
cope with	يواكب
corporation	شركة كبيرة
corruption	فساد
costs of living	تكاليف المعيشة
create	يخلق
creatures	مخلوقات
crime	الجريمة
criteria	معايير/مقاييس
crocodiles of tourists	أفواج السياح
cultivated land	أرض مزروعة
culture	ثقافة
cultured	مثقف
curative tourism	السياحة العلاجية
curse	نقمة
customers	زبائن
declared aim	هدف معلن
deepen	يعمق
demand	الطلب
democracy	ديمقراطية
density	كثافة
dependence	اتكال/تبعية
depression	اكتئاب/انخفاض/ركود
deprivation	حرمان

English	Arabic
deserve	تستحق
destruction = ruin	دمار
destructive	مدمر
devastating	مدمر/مخرب
develop	يطور/ينمي
developing countries	الدول النامية
development	تنمية
deviation	الانحراف
dignity	كرامة
directions/trends	اتجاهات
distinguish	يميز
divine	سماوي
do sports	يؤدي رياضة
do without	يستغني
do ... best	يفعل ما بوسعه
donation	تبرع
double edged weapon	سلاح ذو حدين
drought	الجفاف
duties	واجبات
earthquake	الزلزال
economic	اقتصادي
economic crisis	أزمة اقتصادية
economise on	يقتصد في
economy	الاقتصاد
ecotourism	السياحة البيئية

English	Arabic
education	التعليم
effective	مؤثر/فعال
efficient	كفء
efforts	جهود/مجهودات
election	انتخاب
element	عنصر/عامل
eliminate	يمحو
emotions	عواطف
employab	صالح للوظيفة
employe	موظفون
endange	يشكل خطرا
enrich	يثري
entertainment	التسلية
epidemics	أمراض وبائية
essential	ضروري
expenditure	إنفاق
explosion	إنفجار
exports	الصادرات
extinct	منقرض
extra time	وقت إضافي
extrovert	انبساطي
fabulous	رائع
factors	مقومات/عوامل
famines/starvations	المجاعات
fans	مشجعون

features	ملامح/سمات
fertile soil	تربة خصبة
fields	مجالات
flock	يتدفق
floods	فيضانات
flourish	يزدهر
fluency	طلاقة
food crisis	أزمة الطعام
foreign	أجنبي
foreign currency	العملة الصعبة
foreign policy	السياسة الخارجية
forgery	تزوير
frankness	الصراحة
freedom	الحرية
friendship	الصداقة
fumes	أدخنة
generation	جيل
gestures	إيماءات/إيحاءات
get rid of	يتخلص من
glory	مجد
good example for	مثال طيب لـ
good manners	الأخلاق الحميدة
governorate	محافظة
governors	محافظون
gratitude	عرفان بالجميل
hard currency	العملة الصعبة
hardships	صعوبات
heart transplant	زراعة القلب
herbal medicines	العلاج بالأعشاب
herbicides	مبيدات الأعشاب
heritage	تراث
hinder/delay	يعوق
holidaymaker	سائح
home tourism	السياحة الداخلية
hostility	عدوان/خصومة
housing	الإسكان
human cells	خلايا بشرية
human rights	حقوق الإنسان
humanity	الإنسانية
ignorance	الجهل
ignorant	جاهل
ignore	يتجاهل
illiteracy	الأمية
immigration	هجرة
impact	تأثير
implement	يطبق/ينفذ
imports	الواردات
increase	يزيد/زيادة
incredible	لا يصدق
indebted	ممتن/مديون
indeed	حقا
independence	استقلال
individual skills	مهارات فردية
individuals	الأفراد
industrial	صناعي
industrial sector	قطاع الصناعة
industrialisation	التصنيع
industry	الصناعة
infancy	الطفولة
inflation	تضخم
influence	تأثير
infrastructure	البنية الأساسية
injustice	الظلم
innocence	براءة
innovation	ابتكار
inorganic farming	الزراعة غير العضوية
insecticides	مبيدات الحشرات
instability	عدم استقرار
instinct	غريزة
integration	تكامل
invade	يغزو
investment	الاستثمار
investor	مستثمر
irrigation	الري
job opportunities	فرص العمل

jogging	عدو/هرولة
justice	العدل
knowledge	معرفة
lack	نقص
land reclamation	استصلاح الأراضي
leaders	قادة
legend	أسطورة
leisure	وقت الفراغ
lifelong learning	التعلم مدى الحياة
losers	خاسرون
loyalty	الوفاء/الولاء
luxury goods	سلع كمالية
majority	الأغلبية
mankind	الجنس البشري
manners	أخلاق/سلوكيات
mass production	الإنتاج بالجملة
measure	يقيس
medicine	طب/دواء
merciful	رحيم
mercy	رحمة
merits	فوائد/مزايا
migrate	يهاجر
migration	هجرة
mind	يُبالي
ministry	وزارة
missions	مهام
mixed blessing	سلاح ذو حدين
monopolist	محتكر
monopoly	احتكار
motivation	إثارة/تحفيز
multinational	متعدد الجنسيات
national duty	واجب قومي
national income	الدخل القومي
national unity	وحدة وطنية
nations	أمم
natural	طبيعي
natural reserves	محميات طبيعية
nature	الطبيعة
necessary	ضروري
official	رسمي/موظف
on-going	متواصل/مستمر
opportunity	فرصة
optimism	التفاؤل
optimistic	متفائل
organic farming	الزراعة العضوية
outlet	مخرج
outstanding	بارز/ظاهر
overcome	يتغلب على
owe	يدين
patience	الصبر
patriotism	وطنية
pave	يمهد
perfection/mastering	الإتقان
perform	يؤدي/يعمل
performance	أداء
pessimistic	متشائم (صفة)
phenomena	ظواهر طبيعية
phobia	خوف مرضي
pioneer	رائد/قائد
policy	سياسة
pollution	التلوث
population	السكان
positively	بإيجابية
postpone	يؤجل
potentials	قدرات كامنة
poverty	الفقر
praise	يمدح/يشهد بـ
pray	صلاة/يصلي
preserve	يحافظ/يحصنون
president	رئيس
prevention	وقاية
Prime Minister	رئيس الوزراء
principles	مبادئ
privacy	خصوصية
process	عملية

producer	منتج	religious	دينى	shortage	نقص
production	إنتاج	reputation	سمعة	shortage of food	نقص الطعام
productive	منتج/غزير الإنتاج	resources	مصادر	shoulders	اكتاف
profits	ارباح	respect	يحترم	sights	المعالم السياحية
progress	التقدم	responsibility	مسئولية	sightseeing	رؤية المعالم السياحية
projects	مشروعات	restore/recovery	استرجاع	sit-in/strike	اعتصام
prosperity	الرخاء	revolution	ثورة	slogan	شعار
protection	حماية	rewarding	مجزية	social affairs	الشئون الاجتماعية
provide	يوفر/يمد بـ	rights	حقوق	solidarity	تماسك/تضامن
psychologists	علماء النفس	rise/leap	طفرة	source	مصدر
psychology	علم النفس	rivals	منافسون	spirit	روح
punctual	مواظب	rumour	إشاعة	splendid	رائع
qualities	سمات/صفات	rush hour	ساعة الذروة	spoil	يفسد
quarrels	مشاجرات	sacrifice	التضحية	sports centre	مركز رياضى
rapidly	بسرعة	satisfaction	الرضا	sports facilities	تسهيلات رياضية
rationalisation	ترشيد	science	العلم	springs	ينابيع
rationalise	يرشد	sects	طوائف	stability	استقرار/ثبات
reasonable	معقول	security	الأمن	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
recycling	إعادة تصنيع/تدوير	selfish	أنانى	sterilisation	تعقيم
reduce/limit	يحد/يقلل	selfishness	الأنانية	stimulate	يحفز
reflection	انعكاس	self-reliance	الاعتماد على النفس	strength	قوة
reform	إصلاح	self-sufficiency	الاكتفاء الذاتى	strike	إضراب
refresh	ينعش	serious	جاد/خطير	struggle	يكافح
relationships	علاقات	severe	شديد/قاس	sufficiency	اكتفاء/كفاية
religion	الدين	shade	الظل	summer resort	المصيف

summit conference	مؤتمر القمة	treason	خيانة عظمى	values	القيم
superstructure	بنية فوقية	treatment	معاملة	various purposes	اغراض عديدة
support	يؤيد/يشجع	treaty	معاهدة	violence	العنف
survive	يعيش/يبقى حيا	tremendous progress	التقدم الهائل	votes	اصوات انتخابات
talented	موهوب	understanding	التفاهم	waste	يضيع
terrorism	الإرهاب	undertake	يتعهد	wasteful	مبدر
thanks to	بفضل	unemployment	البطالة	wealth	ثروة
the press	الصحافة	unite	يتحد/يتوحد	weapons	اسلحة
theft	السرقة	unrest	عدم استقرار/اضطراب	welfare	رفاهية
threaten	يهدد	unselfishness	عدم الانانية	whereas	بينما
throughout	فى كل أنحاء	update	يحدث بيانات	wisdom	الحكمة
time bomb	قنبلة موقوتة	uprising	انتفاضة	witness	يشهد
tolerance	التسامح	uproot	يستأصل	worry	القلق
tourism	السياحة	up-to-date	حديث/عصرى	wrestling	المصارعة
tourist revenues	إيرادات السياحة	urge	تحث على	youth	الشباب

Exercises

A) Translate into Arabic:

1. The Coronavirus known as COVID-19 was declared as a pandemic by the World Health Organisation. It affected most countries of the world and caused great deaths.
2. The crisis faced by the Coronavirus showed the importance of cooperation and solidarity among people. Even great economies needed the help of other nations.
3. The whole world is looking forward to producing a vaccine for the Coronavirus. Until then, we should all stick to the health precautionary procedures.
4. Mohamed Salah has become a role-model for all young people who look for great achievements. He is also praised for his kind and generous donations to charity in Egypt.
5. There are many charities in Egypt to help the poor such as the Food Bank, Resala and Misr El Kheir. They give poor people all help and support they can afford.
6. Bullying has become a strange phenomenon in the Egyptian society. We all should fight it whether it was physical, verbal or even cyber bullying.
7. Many experts believe that we should limit the children's use of the internet especially social media. They say that they may have bad effect on them.
8. Poetry is one of the finest arts that a civilised society is marked by. However, most young people are not attracted to reading it.
9. Hygiene and sanitation are very important in protecting us against most infectious diseases. Therefore, rules of cleanliness should be taught to children at an early age.
10. Most modern inventions are considered double-aged weapons. It is our role to benefit from them and avoid their bad effects.
11. The Ministry of Education has established STEM schools all over Egypt. These are specialised for teaching scientific subjects using the most up-to-date teaching methods.
12. People are successful in their workplace if they choose the job which they enjoy. It should also suit their skills and talents not only their academic qualifications.
13. To build a strong nation, it is the duty of parents and teachers. They have a great role to build the youth of the nation to take their responsibility seriously.

14. People must be taught to follow and respect all traffic rules and regulations. These are designed by the government to ensure our safety.
15. Money spent on fighting terrorism every year is enough to build a great country and improve industry, education and economy. That's why we should all work hard to eliminate this crime.
16. Planting trees helps the environment. They provide shade in summer, give us many things to use in everyday life and absorb carbon dioxide.
17. Globalisation has brought both happiness and sadness. Although it has made the world one global village, it has given rise to competition, crime and terrorism.
18. Sports and games are very beneficial to us. They teach us punctuality, patience, discipline, teamwork and dedication. They also help us live a healthy life.
19. Although people in villages are very sociable and have the peace of mind, they lack sanitation and some medical facilities and modern means of transport.
20. With modern technology, learning has become easier and easier. It made information more available and it has developed the student's personality as well.
21. Parents must understand that their children cannot attain excellence and success in life on their own. They need their help and support.
22. Bad friends can ruin our life completely whereas good friends motivate us to do any hard work and pass bad times cheerfully.
23. Our ancestors always asserted that the way of glory is not paved with flowers, but it is filled with hard work and fatigue.
24. People differ in their colour, height, weight, size, strength, hairstyle, and even in their intelligence. However, they all can succeed if they are given the same opportunities and attention.
25. Time is more precious than money. Money lost can be restored by any means; however time lost can never be earned by any means.
26. Climbing dangerous mountains is like illegal immigration. In both of them, people risk their lives for a far-fetched goal.
27. It isn't impossible for a person to achieve his ambitions if he has patience and a strong will. They are important qualities to achieve success.
28. Psychologists think that the rising rate of unemployment leads in turn to the spread of violence and crime. So, governments should work hard to solve this problem.

29. Thanks to Professor Magdi Yacoub's high qualifications, he has become the pioneer of heart transplant operations. He received great honours and awards for his great works.
30. Fighting pollution and many of the world's other problems requires peoples' awareness and their cooperation. In addition, good planning is also important for this.
31. Food shortage is a serious problem threatening the world and causing starvation in many poor countries. Rich countries have a responsibility to help avoid this.
32. The Nile is a source of water, fertile soil for growing crops and is used for transportation. That's why we should all work on keeping it clean.
33. Cooperation together with tolerance is essential for the success of any work and any company. This can be applied to all easy or difficult tasks in life.
34. Developing Sinai and providing job opportunities for its people are the ideal way to combat extremism and terrorism. So, the government is doing its best to do this.
35. Individuals differ in their abilities to understand complex ideas and to adapt effectively to the environment. This concept should be applied in education.
36. Sports and games are both very important to improve the person's potentials, and work efficiency. They can help individuals overcome some psychological problems.
37. Science can help us improve health, food production and nearly every aspect of our lives. Therefore, it should be given much care.
38. We must forget our disagreements and unite for the sake of Egypt to direct our energy to production. This unity can help us solve all economic problems.
39. Teamwork teaches us cooperation, tolerance and forgiveness and it is the best means to achieve our goals. It can help us achieve development in many fields.
40. The government is carrying out great national projects. These can provide job opportunities and give a great boost to our economy as well.
41. Great efforts are being exerted to provide enough food, education and jobs for people in Egypt. The project of developing the slums is a clear example for this.
42. We are all facing a challenge to rebuild our country through strong determination and cooperation. People should bear their responsibilities to achieve this.
43. Reforming education is one of the priorities of the government in Egypt. However, it is a great national mission that needs all our efforts.
44. Hundreds of African people have tried to escape their difficult economic conditions through illegal immigration. However, many of them failed to achieve their ambitions.
45. Although eating food is a way of keeping us fit, we need exercise to feel healthy. Relaxing and refreshing yourself can also add to our healthy lifestyle.

46. It has been proved that traditional learning is unsuitable for building up an independent citizen. That's why the Ministry of Education urges students and teachers to move to modern methods of education.
47. To avoid pollution and diseases and to be healthy, we should correct our mistakes and selfishness towards our environment. Damaging the environment is the most important cause of diseases.
48. Terrorists are working in the dark to spoil Egypt's economy and ruin tourist industry. They are traitors who should be rejected and fought by all means.
49. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. It can also help in treating diseases and overcome health problems.
50. Ecotourism is now defined as responsible travel to natural areas that conserves the environment. It has become very important for Egypt to make tourism sustainable.

B) Translate into English:

١ ستحتاج الخسائر الاقتصادية التي سببها فيروس كورونا وقتا طويلا للتغلب عليها، لذلك من المتوقع أن تتخذ الحكومات إجراءات صارمة قد تؤثر على الأفراد.

٢ خلال أزمة فيروس كورونا أصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت هو الوسيلة المثالية لاستمرار الطلاب في تعليمهم بل وإجراء الاختبارات للطلاب في جميع المراحل.

٣ تتعاون كل الدول والمؤسسات الطبية في سبيل إيجاد أدوية ولقاحات لفيروس كورونا المستجد كما يتم التأكيد على إتاحتها لجميع دول العالم بأسعار مناسبة.

٤ يواجه الأطباء والممرضات بعض الصعوبات في محاربة فيروس كورونا المستجد بسبب سرعة انتشاره ونقص المعلومات عن آثاره على المصابين ذلك لأنهم يواجهونه لأول مرة.

٥ يأتي كثير من السياح إلى مصر ليس فقط لآثارها القديمة ولكن أيضا لمناظرها الطبيعية الخلابة خاصة في منطقة البحر الأحمر لذا يجب حماية تلك الأماكن لضمان استمرار السياحة.

٦ تساهم المنظمات الخيرية في تخفيف آثار الأزمات الاقتصادية على الفقراء والمحتاجين وخاصة في المناطق العشوائية لذلك يجب أن ندعمها سواء بالمال أو العمل التطوعي.

٧ يلعب الأدب دورا كبيرا في إظهار مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مما قد يساعد على إيجاد الحلول المناسبة لها، وقصص نجيب محفوظ وتشارلز ديكنيز من أكبر الأمثلة على هذا الدور.

٨ يقضي الشباب وقتا طويلا على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي مما يقلل من مهارات التواصل لديهم ويؤثر على علاقاتهم مع والديهم وباقي أفراد أسرهم.

٩ للإنترنت أهمية كبيرة حيث تتزايد استخداماته كل يوم، حيث أصبح يشكل جزءا هاما من حياة الناس فيستخدمه الناس في قراءة الأخبار والتواصل أو حتى التسوق.

١٠ يفوز الرياضيون المصريون ذوو الاحتياجات الخاصة بعدد كبير من الميداليات في الألعاب الأوليمبية للمعاقين رغم أنهم لا يلقون قدرا كبيرا من الدعم مثل الرياضيين الأصحاء.

١١ العمل الجاد والصبر من أهم الصفات التى تساعد الإنسان على النجاح فى الدراسة وفى كل مجالات العمل.

١٢ تعطى الرياضة أهمية كبيرة فى العديد من البلدان بسبب فوائدها الحقيقية وأهميتها فى الحفاظ على اللياقة البدنية وتعليم الأطفال والشباب قيم التعاون والعمل الجماعى.

١٣ يعتمد معدل التطور فى أى بلد على كيفية الالتزام الدقيق والانضباط لأفراد تلك الدولة فى وظائفهم. لذلك فإن الالتزام بالمواعيد هو مفتاح النجاح للجميع.

١٤ يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فهذه القيم هى أساس التقدم فى أى أمة.

١٥ يجب على الجميع الحفاظ على البيئة نظيفة فيجب أن يتعلم الأطفال استخدام صناديق القمامة لرمى الأشياء عديمة الفائدة فيها والعناية بالممتلكات العامة.

١٦ اعتاد الناس من جميع الأعمار على تناول الوجبات السريعة والمشروبات الغازية والرقائق والبيتزا وأنواع أخرى من الوجبات السريعة المتوفرة فى السوق رغم تحذير الخبراء من آثارها على زيادة الوزن.

١٧ أفكارك تبنى واقعك فالأفكار الإيجابية تجلب الأشياء الجيدة فى الحياة والأفكار السلبية تجلب تجارب مماثلة لذا علينا جميعا أن نفكر بشكل إيجابى لبناء مستقبل أفضل.

١٨ الماء ضرورى لبقاء الإنسان . ومع ذلك، للأسف يتم إهداره بسرعة كبيرة فى جميع أنحاء العالم لذا يجب على الجميع أن يساهم فى توفير المياه.

١٩ يسيء الكثيرون استخدام مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فيقومون بنشر الأخبار دون التأكد من صدق ما فيها لذلك يطالب البعض بفرض رقابة أكثر على تلك المواقع.

٢٠ لقد أقيم الكثير من المشروعات على ضفتى قناة السويس الجديدة مما يساهم فى زيادة دخلنا القومى وتوفير فرص العمل وتحسن الاقتصاد.

٢١ يجب أن يهدف التعليم إلى تنمية قدرات ومهارات المتعلمين وخلق مواطن قادر على مواجهة تحديات الحياة الحديثة وتطورها.

٢٢ يوصى الخبراء بأن يكون لكل شخص هواية تساعده على الاسترخاء وتجديد طاقته مما يساهم فى تخفيف الضغوط وأداء أفضل فى العمل.

٢٣ لقد بدأت مصر فى إعطاء أولوية عالية لاستخدام الطاقة المتجددة فأنشأت فى أسوان واحدة من أكبر محطات إنتاج الكهرباء من الطاقة الشمسية بالعالم.

٢٤ تحاول مصر تحسين وضعها الاقتصادى عن طريق جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية وبناء المشروعات القومية الكبرى مما يعطى دفعة للاقتصاد فى الوقت الحالى.

٢٥ الفقر والمشاكل الاجتماعية قد يكونان سببا لعيش بعض الأطفال فى الشوارع ويصبحون بلا مأوى لذا تحاول الحكومة حل مشكلة أطفال الشوارع.

٢٦ المواطنون الصالحون هم أولئك الذين يكرسون أنفسهم ووقتهم وأموالهم من أجل رفاهية أسرهم وخدمة مجتمعهم وحماية أوطانهم.

٢٧ إن زيادة الإنتاج هى السبيل الوحيد لتحقيق التقدم الاقتصادى ورفع مستوى المعيشة الذى نأمل جميعا فى الوصول إليه.

٢٨ هناك عدة طرق لمواجهة مشكلة البطالة ومنها المشروعات الصغيرة التى تتيح للشباب فرصًا جيدة للعمل. لذا توفر البنوك القروض لهذه المشروعات.

٢٩ نعمل جميعا على التغلب على مشاكلنا لنكون على قدم المساواة مع البلاد التى حققت نجاحات فى العديد من المجالات.

٣٠ ساهمت مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى فى نشر الأفكار سواء الصالحة أو الفاسدة فى جميع أنحاء العالم لذا يجب توجيه الأطفال والشباب نحو الصالح منها.

٣١ من أهم وسائل الحفاظ على السياحة هو المحافظة على الآثار لذلك يجب نشر الوعى بين الناس لأهمية هذه الآثار ودورها فى تطوير صناعة السياحة فى مصر.

٣٢ يعتبر المعلم ركنا أساسيا فى أى إصلاح للتعليم لذا تحاول وزارة التربية والتعليم توفير وسائل كثيرة لتدريب المعلمين على أحدث الطرق التربوية.

٣٣ يعتقد الكثيرون أن المال يجلب السعادة ولا نستطيع العيش بدونه لكن بعض الحكماء يقولون إن المال هو أصل الشرور.

٣٤ بسبب ارتفاع تكلفة المعيشة، لا يمكن للكثير من الناس تحقيق التوازن بين عملهم وعائلاتهم حيث لا يقضون وقتا كافيا مع أسرهم.

٣٥ تعتبر الأعياد والمهرجانات فرصة جيدة للناس للاسترخاء ونسيان ضغوط حياتهم اليومية وفرصة للتقارب بين أفراد العائلة.

٣٦ بسبب التطور التكنولوجى الكبير نشأت وظائف جديدة كثيرة تتطلب مهارات وظروف عمل مختلفة عن التى اعتادها الموظفون وأصحاب الأعمال.

٣٧ ينبغى على الحكومة أن تساعد فى إعادة تدوير الأشياء مثل العلب والورق والزجاج والبلاستيك عن طريق بناء المزيد والمزيد من مصانع إعادة التدوير.

٣٨ بالإضافة إلى مساعدة الناس على أن يكونوا على اتصال بأقاربهم وأصدقائهم، تعد مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى وسيلة مثالية لبيع المنتجات وتقديم الخدمات.

٣٩ تعاقب القوانين فى معظم دول العالم نشر الشائعات لأن الشائعات لها أثر سيئ كبير على المجتمع فلا تشارك فى نشرها سواء بالقول أو على مواقع الإنترنت.

٤٠ عندما تهمل الأسرة المبادئ والأخلاق، فسوف يسوء سلوك الشباب وتزيد الجرائم التى تهدد المجتمع وتمنع تطوره.

٤١ من أهم الوسائل التى تساعد على محاربة الأمراض زيادة الوعى لدى الناس بقواعد النظافة العامة والإجراءات التى يجب اتخاذها لحماية أنفسهم من تلك الأمراض.

٤٢ العلم سلاح ذو حدين، فعلى الرغم من أهميته فى السلم، فلقد حقق أحلام الأشخاص العدوانيين الذين كانوا يحلمون دائمًا بالسيطرة والقوة.

٤٣ ليست المدارس أماكن فقط لتعلم المواد الدراسية، ولكن أيضًا لاكتساب الأخلاق الحميدة والسلوكيات الصحيحة التى تجعل المتعلم مواطنًا صالحًا.

٤٤ يعتقد بعض الناس أن الكتب والصحف الإلكترونية ستؤدى إلى اختفاء الكتب والصحف الورقية التقليدية. فهل توافق على ذلك؟

٤٥ يجب أن تتذكر دائمًا أن التوتر قد يؤدى بك إلى عواقب وخيمة تجعلك مريضًا وبائسًا وغير سعيد.

٤٦ هل تعتقد أنه من المهم البحث عن الحياة على كواكب أخرى أم حل مشكلاتنا على الأرض كالفقر والمرض أولاً؟

٤٧ التكنولوجيا الحديثة، كعلامة للحضارة الحديثة، غيرت أسلوب حياة معظم الناس فى جميع أنحاء العالم.

٤٨ تستفيد الدول المتقدمة سياسيا واقتصاديا من استكشاف الفضاء رغم أن البعض يعتبره مضيعة للوقت والجهد الذى يجب استخدامه فى حل مشكلات العالم.

٤٩ إن قطع الغابات يمكن أن يؤدى إلى آثار كارثية مثل تغير المناخ وقلة الأمطار وفقدان مساكن الحيوانات البرية التى تعيش فى تلك الغابات.

٥٠ لقد لعبت المرأة المصرية دائمًا دورًا حيويًا فى مشروعات التنمية الشاملة التى ساعدت فى تطور ونمو الاقتصاد المصرى.

PART 1

Vocabulary on Translation Exercises

aggressive	عدوانى	far-fetched	بعيد المنال	public property	الممتلكات العامة
ancestors	أجداد	festivals	المهرجانات	recycling	إعادة تدوير
aspect	جانب	globalisation	العولمة	reforming	إصلاح
awareness	الوعى	glory	المجد	regulations	تنظيمات
behaviour	سلوك	homeless children	أطفال الشوارع	respect	يحترم
beneficial	مفيد/ نافع	honours	تكريمات	responsibility	مسئولية
boost	دفعة	ideal	المثالية	rumours	الشائعات
challenges	تحديات	illegal	غير قانونى/ غير شرعى	slums	العشوائيات
citizen	مواطن	immigration	الهجرة	sociable	اجتماعى
civilization	الحضارة	investments	الاستثمارات	solidarity	التضامن
comprehensive	الشاملة	lack	نقص	solutions	الحلول
cooperation	التعاون	literature	الأدب	standard of living	مستوى المعيشة
cost of living	تكلفة المعيشة	loans	القروض	stick to	يلتزم بـ
crisis	أزمة	miserable	بائسا	stress	التوتر
determination	العزم/ التصميم	motivate	يدفع/ يحفز	strict	صارمة
discipline	الانضباط	observance	رقابة	terrorism	الإرهاب
economic	اقتصادى	pandemic	جائحة	traditional	التقليدية
economy	الاقتصاد	Paralympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية للمعاقين	traitors	خونة
efficiency	كفاءة	pioneer	رائد	unemployment	البطالة
eliminate	يمحو/يزيل	positive	الإيجابية	urge	يدفع/يحث
employees	الموظفون	precious	قيم/ نفيس	vaccine	لقاح
employers	أصحاب الأعمال	pressures	الضغوط	values	القيم
evils	الشرور	principles	المبادئ	vital	حيويًا
excellence	امتياز	priority	أولوية	voluntary	التطوعى
exploration	استكشاف	procedures	إجراءات	will	إرادة
extremism	التطرف	production	الإنتاج		
facilities	إمكانيات/تسهيلات	psychologists	علماء النفس		

3 Writing

A Sentence writing

- لكتابة مقال جيد يجب البداية بكتابة جملة صحيحة sentence ثم فقرة paragraph وللقيام بذلك عليك مراعاة التالى:

1. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital كبير وواضح.
2. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
3. أن تستخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب لنوعية الموضوع الذى تكتبه، فقد يكون فى المضارع وقد يكون فى الماضى أو المستقبل أو خليطًا بينهم.
4. الاستخدام الصحيح للضمائر حسب موقعها فى الجملة.
5. تجنب استخدام الجمل المعقدة التى تحتوى على مفردات وتركيبات صعبة قد توقعك فى أخطاء أنت فى غنى عنها، وعليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة والسهلة فى المعنى.
6. إذا قمت باستخدام أى من أدوات الربط فيجب عليك مراعاة القواعد الصحيحة لها.

B Paragraph writing

- الفقرة paragraph أحد أجزاء المقال، ويتحدد دورها وطبيعة الجمل بها حسب نوع المقال، ولكن هناك بعض القواعد العامة التى يجب اتباعها منها:

- أن تراعى الترابط والتنسيق العام بين جمل الفقرة.
- استخدام بعض الكلمات والعبارات التى يمكن أن تقوم بدور الرابط بين الجمل (عند الضرورة).
- تبدأ كل فقرة بجملة تسمى (جملة الموضوع topic sentence)، وفيها يتم تحديد الفكرة الأساسية المراد توضيحها فى الفقرة، ثم يتبعها عدد من الجمل لتوضيح أو التدليل على الفكرة الأساسية، وتنتهى بجملة استنتاجية توضح حقيقة أو اتجاه الكاتب وشعوره.

Topic Sentence →	Terry Fox was a Canadian who suffered from bo[ne] cancer and raised awareness for cancer research trying to run across Canada.
Supporting Sentences	He attracted a lot [of] attention by running the distance of a marat[hon] daily on one prosthetic leg. He also challenged [e…] Canadian citizen to contribute one dollar for ca[ncer] research. Unfortunately, Fox was forced to end hi[s …] near Thunder Bay because of health complication[s …] CTV network organised a nation-wide run to co[…] Fox's fundraising efforts.
Concluding Sentence →	Clearly, Terry Fox had an [… impact] on both cancer research and the millions of Ca[nadians] who participate in the Terry Fox Run every year.

C Essay writing

[illegible]

1. Decide what kind of essay to write.

[illegible]

A. Narrative Essay
B. Descriptive Essay
C. Expository Essay
D. Argumentative Essay
E. Persuasive Essay

2. Brainstorm your topic.

[illegible]

3. Outline your essay.

[illegible]

A. Introduction (paragraph 1) — مقدمة
B. Main body (paragraphs 2-3) — جسم الموضوع
C. Conclusion (paragraph 4) — خاتمة

[illegible]

4. Write a draft of your essay.

[illegible]

5. Review your essay to correct mistakes.

[illegible]

A. Spelling mistakes
B. Grammar mistakes

6. Finish your essay

[illegible]

General Outlines of Essay Writing

Introduction	**The introduction:** المقدمة ترشد المقدمة القارئ إلى المقال من خلال تقديم الموضوع. يجب أن تبدأ بلفت انتباه القارئ. يمكن أن يكون هذا اقتباسًا أو تشابهًا أو سؤالاً، وما إلى ذلك. بعد جذب انتباه القارئ يجب أن تقدم المقدمة بعض المعلومات الأساسية حول الموضوع، ويجب أن تكون الأفكار الموجودة في المقدمة عامة بما يكفي ليتمكن القارئ من فهم الاتجاه الرئيسي، وتصبح تدريجيًا أكثر تحديدًا ليقود إلى بيان هذا الاتجاه.
Main Body Main idea (1) Main Body Main idea (2)	**The main body:** صلب الموضوع يدعم نص المقالة النقاط الرئيسية الواردة في المقدمة. يتم تطوير كل نقطة بواسطة فقرة واحدة أو أكثر، ويتم دعمها بتفاصيل محددة. وبالإضافة إلى هذا النص، كل مناقشته للموضوع يربط الأفكار معًا ويستخلص النتائج التي تدعم الاتجاه الرئيسي للمقال.
Conclusion	**The conclusion:** الخاتمة يجمع الاستنتاج بين جميع النقاط الرئيسية للمقال، يشير إلى بيان الأفكار الرئيسية للمقال، ويترك القراء فكرًا نهائيًا عن طريق حل أو أفكار تم طرحها في المقالة. ولا ينبغي تقديم مواضيع أو أفكار جديدة لم يتم تطويرها في المقال.

A Narrative Essay

- المقال القصصي هو الذي تحكي فيه قصة أو تجربة، ولا يقف عند وصف ما حدث فقط، بل يحمل أيضًا ما شعرت به في ذلك الوقت، وكيف أثرت عليك، وما تعلمته منه. والخطوط الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هي كالتالي:

Outline of a Narrative Essay

Introduction	ابدأ بتقديم الموضوع والحادث الذي ترويه، واشرح سبب أهميته بالنسبة لك، كما يمكنك أن تلخص بسرعة ما تعلمته أو شعرت به نتيجة للحادث الذي تصفه.
Main body	سوف تتحدث الآن عن الحادث الذي ترويه وأثناء القيام بذلك تأكد من تضمين جميع النقاط المهمة من خلال: أين حدث هذا؟ لماذا حصل هذا؟ متى بالضبط ما حدث. وقد يتم ذلك في فقرة واحدة أو أكثر.
Conclusion	ارجع إلى ما تعلمته من الحدث، وكيف أثر على معتقداتك أو نظرتك للموضوع المطروح. وقد لا يتضمن هذا الموضوع خاتمة أخلاقية إذا كنت تصف حدثًا لم يؤثر بشكل كبير عليك.

A wedding party that I attended

1. Introduction

Last week, I was invited to my cousin's wedding party which I attended with my wife. The party was in a big hall at a famous hotel in Cairo. It was so amazing and everything was exciting. I can say that it is one of the most exciting events that I have attended lately.

2. Main body

When we arrived at the wedding hall, my wife and I were taken by the size of the place. There were about 30 tables of 10 people. Most of the guests were relatives and friends. When all the guests arrived, the waiters began to serve all kinds of juice and soft drinks, while the band was playing music. The camera man was filming everything that was happening. Then, the bride and the groom made their wonderful entrance. Everyone was gazing at them happily. The bride was wearing a fabulous white dress, and the groom was wearing a nice suit. Next, the band started its show with a famous singer who sang beautiful songs while other guests were taking pictures with the bride and groom.

A few minutes later, we sat down at the dinner table and we had a very nice and delicious dinner. They brought us delicious dishes of vegetables, meat and a plate of roasted chicken for every table. The party lasted till late in the morning, the time when the two married couple went out followed by some guests.

3. Conclusion

To tell the truth, the wedding was really beautiful and unforgettable. I was so happy that day. My wife was much impressed by it and she reminded me of our wedding party which was simpler than this one, but we always remember it with great excitement and joy. We were very happy to see the couple begin their new life just as we did years ago.

My first day in the kitchen

1. Introduction

When I was ten years old, I almost died in the kitchen. One day, I was the only one home I was bored, and I played video games a lot. In the early evening, I became hungry, but there was nothing to eat. I decided to make some food by myself, but it would be dangerous because I had never cooked anything until then.

2. Main body

At first, I started to cook some rice. Second, I cut onions, but I couldn't stop crying for 20 minutes. After I stopped crying, I cut carrots. I did well partway, but I cut my middle finger because I didn't fold my fingers away from the knife. I felt foolish. I almost gave up, but I continued to cook. Next, I peeled potatoes with a peeler. I thought it was safe, but I was wrong. My nail was skinned a little by the peeler.

After I made my small dish, I looked at my hand, and it was all cut up. When I ate it, it was very tasty. Later, when my mother got home, she ate my curry and said, "this is so delicious." She looked so happy, and I was so happy, too. After that, my father was happy, so I wanted to cook again.

3. Conclusion

These days, I often cook rice by myself. Now that I know how to make it properly, I have become much better at it.
I think it is good for us to try new things. Even if we are not perfect at first, we can become better and better.

B Descriptive Essay

المقال الوصفي هو المقال الذى تصف فيه شيئًا أو شخصًا أو مكانًا أو عملية أو حدثًا، ويكون هدفك هو إنشاء تجربة قراءة حية لو ... سلأً من الزاوية، والخطوط الرئيسية لكتابة هذا النوع من المقال هى كالتالى:

Outline of a Descriptive Essay

introduction	Main body	Conclusion
تقدم المقدمة لمحة عامة موجزة عن موضوع المقال، تحدد فيها الشيء أو الموقف الذى ستقوم بوصفه كما يمكن إعطاء بعض الانطباعات أو الاتجاهات أو الآراء الخاصة بالموضوع، وعادة ما يحصل القراء على تلميح عما ستكون عليه المقالة من الفقرة الأولى.	يتم استعراض موضوع المقال الوصفية وشرحه بالتفصيل فى نص المقال. يمكن لك أن تصف كل جانب من جوانب الموضوع/ الشيء اعتمادًا على ما تعتبره مهمًا. عادة يستخدم الكاتب مجموعة كبيرة ومتنوعة من الصفات والظروف لجعل المقال أكثر حيوية وإثارة للاهتمام للقراءة. أيضًا، فى هذا القسم، يمكن للكاتب تقديم أمثلة محددة لتحسين وصف الموضوع (الشيء الموصوف) وتسهيل فهمه للجمهور. يوفر هذا الجزء من المقال للقراء نظرة شاملة لكل جوانب الوصف.	... هذا الجزء نقدم ملخصا لما تعتقده ... نقاط الوصف، كما يتضمن أفكارك وشعورك فيما يخص موضوع ... المقال وهذا يعتمد بشكل كبير على ... الكتابة والخيال والمهارات التحليلية للكاتب.

Sample Descriptive Essays

My favourite holiday place

1. Introduction

As a child, I always enjoyed spending time at our chalet in Marsa Matrouh. It was a place where you could go and get away from the busy life in the city and enjoy doing things that you might not be able to do back home. We always tried to go at least a couple of times during the summer when my father would get his vacation from work. There was so much to do and see. Even though things have changed now, I won't forget all of the memories that I have from when I was a child.

2. Main body

The first time we went there, I noticed a difference in the way the air smelled. I took in a deep breath of air and noticed how clean it smelled. I couldn't help myself. I wanted to breathe in more and more to keep taking it all in. I felt my lungs clearing from all the pollution and stale air back home. I never wanted to let go of this feeling of freshness.

At night, it was so quiet you could have heard a pin drop. The sky was clear and the sea was so nice. It was a sight that was far unlike anything I could have ever imagined. You could sit outside for hours just listening and watching nature in its truest form.

3. Conclusion

Now, I have my own family and I always spend all summer vacations with them here. I am thinking of moving to Marsa Matrouh live here permanently. Now, my family get to enjoy the fresh air and relaxed atmosphere. Those experiences as a child opened my eyes to something far better beyond the city that I get to remember every day with my family.

My best friend

1. Introduction

A person's best friend is the closest and most special person in that person's life. A best friend is someone with whom we share all of the most important and crucial things in our life. Best friends support each other in everything they do. My best friend is Mohamed; our parents are also very good friends. I can't even remember when we became friends which show how long we have been friends.

2. Main body

Your best friend is the only person in the world that will give you equal love and devotion like your parents. We both study in the same school. Mohamed also helps me in my studies. We also live in the same locality. My best friend Mohamed and I spend most of the time together doing the things we like to do. We enjoy our life according to our needs and wishes. He is the person who I can truly count on all through my life. Whenever I need help or support, my best friend is always there for me. We have lived moments together and have created memories that will remain throughout my life.

Having a best friend like Mohamed makes my life easier. In any crucial situation, the first person that comes to my mind is my best friend. Whenever I am in any problem, my best friend helps me to get out of the problem by providing the best solutions. My best friend gets angry when I do something wrong and appreciates me when I achieve something.

3. Conclusion

My best friend helps me to become a better person. We plan our weekends and enjoy together. He is the person who makes me happy and deserves all my love and attention. My best friend has been my support system and my strength. No one can take the place of my best friend Mohamed in my life.

C Expository Essay

• المقال التفسيري هو الذي تقوم فيه بشرح حقائق متصلة بموضوع ما أو توضيح شيء بطريقة يسمح وضعها أقرب للقارئ بشكل أو يكون تحقيقا أو تقييما لأهمية الموضوع المتناول للتوضيح

Outline of an Expository Essay

Introduction	تحتوي المقدمة على تحديد الموضوع المراد الكتابة عنه مع عرض موجز للجوانب التي ستقوم بتفصيلها وسردها في المقال، ويجب ألا تتضمن أي تفاصيل عن هذه الجوانب.
Main body	في فقرتين أو ثلاث قم بسرد كل الجوانب والحقائق عن الموضوع ويمكن تضمين بعض الأدلة والتفاصيل الخاصة بكل جانب من جوانب الموضوع، مع ملاحظة أن الموضوع لا يتضمن أي وجهة نظر محددة، بل هو سرد للمعلومات الخاصة بالموضوع المراد توضيحه للقارئ.
Conclusion	تتضمن الخاتمة تلخيصا موجزا للحقائق التي تم عرضها في المقال، ويمكن إدراج أي تقييم للموضوع الذي تم توضيح جوانبه المختلفة. ويمكن أن تتضمن الخاتمة حثًا للقارئ للبحث عن جوانب وحقائق أخرى لهذا الموضوع

Sample Expository Essays

Friendship

1. Introduction

Friendship plays an important role in everyone's life. It is based on the simple rules of trust and honesty. It is the most wonderful relationship that every person can have if he or she is loyal, dependable, kind, caring, and loving. True friends try to avoid conflicts and do everything possible to make their relations stronger. A true friendship is a reward for all the good we do in our life.

2. Main body

A true friend is a person you can always count on when you face challenges and serious problems. He or she always offers a shoulder to cry on in case something wrong happens. Your friend always listens to your problems, gives you good piece of advice, and never talks behind your back. A true friend is never envious of your achievements. This person respects you and keeps all your secrets. A true friend is there for you in the times of need, he makes you smile when you forgot how to, and lift you up when you can`t lift up yourself.

A true friendship is something that can`t be expressed with words. Friendship is being able to cry together. Friendship is being foolish together. It is being mad at each other. True friends are always ready to protect each other from being hurt emotionally and physically. It takes time and patience to build a strong friendship and achieve trust between two friends. It is very important to have somebody with whom you can share your thoughts freely.

3. Conclusion

A good friendship is very difficult to find. That is why we should appreciate this divine relationship that is based on understanding and feelings. There are a lot of benefits of friendship. We just need friends to live happily. Lasting friendship is a blessing for everybody. We don`t have to pretend to be someone else when we spend time with our friends. They give us total freedom to be who we really are. We should be grateful to people who make us happy. A true friend is one of the most precious possessions that one can have in his life.

PART 1

The history of chess

1. Introduction

Chess is perhaps the most popular and treasured board game in the world. Millions of people play it daily, and millions of dollars of sponsorship go into the world championships of chess. It seems to be getting even more popular as the years goes on.

2. Main body

There are many legends surrounding the origin of chess, and also the rules of the game have transformed so much during its about 1500 years of history, that it is difficult to trace exactly when "chess" came into being as we know it. In each region, chess took on different rules, pieces and boards. However, we know that chess originated from the Gupta Empire (600CE), of India. The pieces come from the primary military elements of that time: the infantry, the elephants, the cavalry and the chariots. Some experts have claimed that the game could have originated in China, but these assessments are in the minority.

From India, chess travelled to Persia. Several variations of chess evolved in Persia. The queen and bishop had limited movement at this time, unlike the wide movement it has now. The form of chess which finally arrived in Europe was already being played in Persia some 1,350 years ago. The game became very popular in the Muslim world, and it was carried back, throughout Islam, across North Africa and eventually into Europe. Also, in Persia, the first recognisable chess pieces began to emerge that are similar to our modern ones.

3. Conclusion

Chess is a game of about 1,500 years that originated in India, travelled to Persia, and through Muslim influence, spread throughout Europe. In that progression, its rules have changed, and its pieces have also transformed. There are still several variations of chess in multiple countries, like China, Japan, Korea, and more. However, the international chess we play today was developed in Europe by giving the queen and bishop greater power—making the game more thrilling, and at the same time, subtle.

D Argumentative Essay

إن المقال الجدلي هو المقال الذي يقوم الكاتب فيه بعرض أفكار أو آراء مختلفة حول موضوع واحد، وقد يتخذ موقفاً من قضية ما يلي مقال جدلي جيد. ثم يحاول الكاتب إقناع القراء بتقديم وجهة نظره حول موضوع ما ويدعمها عن طريق ذكر أسبابه وتقديم أمثلة لدعمها.

Outline of an Argumentative Essay

Introduction	Main body	Conclusion
يجب أن تحدد المقدمة الفكرة الأساسية للمقال، وتوفر معلومات أساسية ضرورية لفهم الفكرة. وتحدد الجوانب أو الآراء المختلفة للموضوع التي سوف تقوم بعرضها (مثل المزايا والعيوب لموضوع المقال)، ويمكن أن تحدد اتجاهك الأساسي في الموضوع الذي ستناقش جوانبه.	يتألف المقال الجدلي النموذجي من فقرتين أو أكثر تشرح أسباب دعمك لرأيك. يجب أن تغطي كل فقرة فكرة مختلفة أو دليلاً مختلفاً حيث تقوم بعرض وجهات النظر المتعارضة. حيث أن تقييم الحقائق والنظر في موضوع من كل زاوية يضيف مصداقية، وسيساعدك على كسب ثقة القارئ.	هنا يجب عليك تلخيص رأيك وكل وجهة نظر من قسم المقال. يجب أن تجذب الخاتمة القارئ وتعرض صحة رأيك. كما يجب أن تضع في اعتبارك أيضاً أن الفقرة تربط فقط الجوانب المركزية للمقال، ولا يمكنها تقديم حجج أو حقائق جديدة.

Sample Argumentative Essays

The mobile phone

Introduction

The mobile phone is a good technology which is not lacking from our lives. Some people, especially young men and women, believe it is the best invention man has ever had. Yet, many people agree that it, like most modern inventions, has its own advantages and disadvantages.

Main body — Point of View (1)

On the One hand, the mobile phone has become popular to everybody since it is very convenient. The most advantage of having a mobile phone is you can communicate to your family and your friends no matter where you are. For instance, you can contact your friends easily by calling or sending messages everywhere without electricity. It is maybe the main reason why almost all people today choose to own a mobile phone. From the customer's point of view, it is obvious that mobile phones assist you in business a lot, such as, make timetables of working, surf the internet, and keep in touch with their companies. Moreover, you can relax with mobile phone's applications, for example, play games, listen to music, or chat with your friends.

Main body — Point of View (2)

On the other hand, there are also disadvantages. Using mobile phones a lot can harm your brain, particularly teenager and children who are under 16 years old. If you use mobile phones too much, you will get bad effects like dizziness, blood-brain barrier, or ears problems. In addition, when you use mobile phones while you are driving, you may get an accident. It is essential not good for you and others. It can also lead to social problems. It can affect your social relations badly. Young men spend much time chatting with their friends preferring it to face to face relations. This too can affect young people's communication skills and leads to bad family relations.

Conclusion

Owning a mobile phone in your hand is you can solve many issues and hold most of information around the world. It can help you do jobs easily and saves a lot of time. However is not good for your health and you have to protect yourself from bad effects of mobile phones if you choose to have one.

Should public libraries be shut down?

Introduction

As online learning becomes common more and more resources are converted to digital form, some people have suggested that public libraries should be shut down and, in their place, everyone should be given an iPad with an e-reader subscription.

Main body — Point of View (1)

Proponents of this idea state that it will save local cities and towns money because libraries are expensive to maintain. They also believe it will encourage more people to read because they won't have to travel to a library to get a book; they can simply click on what they want to read and read it from wherever they are. They could also access more materials because libraries won't have to buy physical copies of books; they can simply rent out as many digital copies as they need.

Main body — Point of View (2)

However, it would be a serious mistake to replace libraries with tablets or iPads. First, digital books and resources are associated with less learning and more problems than print resources. more Additionally, staring too long at a screen has been shown to cause numerous health problems, including blurred vision, dizziness, dry eyes, headaches, and eye strain, at much higher instances than reading print does. People who use tablets and mobile devices excessively also have a higher incidence of more serious health problems such as shoulder and back pain, and muscle strain. We should add to these problems by giving people, especially young people, more reasons to look at screens.

Conclusion

While replacing libraries with tablets may seem like a simple solution, it would encourage people to spend even more time looking at digital screens, despite the problems of this overuse. It would also end access to many of the benefits of libraries that people have come to rely on. In many areas, libraries are such an important part of the community network that they could never be replaced by a simple object.

PART 1

Persuasive Essay

- المقال الإقناعى هو المقال الذى يشرح الكاتب فيه موضوعًا، ويحاول إقناع القارئ بوجهة نظر محددة تجاه هذا الموضوع. والفارق هنا بين المقال الإقناعى والجدلى هو مناقشة فكرة واحدة (ميزة أو عيب) للموضوع الذى تتم الكتابة عنه، مع شرح أسباب رأى الكاتب حتى يستطيع فى النهاية إقناع القارئ أن ينحاز لوجهة نظره.

Outline of a Persuasive Essay

Introduction	الغرض الرئيسى من المقدمة هو تحديد الجوانب الرئيسية لموضوعك واتجاهك الأساسى بشكل موجز، ويمكن ذكر أسباب هذا الاتجاه (التى سوف تناقشها بالتفصيل بعد ذلك)، ويجب أن تكون فى شكل موجز.
Main body	يتكون من فقرتين أو ثلاث، تركز كل منها على فكرة منفصلة أو سبب من الأسباب المؤيدة لوجهة نظرك مع أدلة داعمة تجعل القارئ يقتنع بوجهة نظرك تجاه الموضوع.
Conclusion	تتكون من ملخص قصير للنقاط الرئيسية التى أيدت وجهة نظرك فى المقال، وذلك لتعزيز التأثير المقنع للقارئ، ولذلك يجب أن تكون واضحة ومنطقية.

Sample Persuasive Essays

The advantages of online learning (education)

Introduction	It seems everything is moving online these days. Even our education is transferring onto the internet. Online learning is now considered the best way of education in our modern world. There are reasons for this: you can learn whatever you want, it is more comfortable in a variety of ways and the cost of virtual education is often lower than traditional education.
Main body	The freedom to choose your educational path is an enduring quality of online education. For more creative people, or people who want to focus on a single activity, this can be a dream come true. With online education, you can take any program or course present in traditional four-year universities. So, the ease of access to the courses and majors you are striving to study are widely available online. This increases opportunities to gain the education we desire instead of making needless compromises.
	Similarly, comfort takes centre stage for many students. Countless students choose online education in order to avoid wasting time travelling and on many other activities in order to attend physical education institutions. Students listen to lectures and complete assignments sent to them electronically, with no need to fight traffic, leave work early for class, or miss important family time. Rather than miss important class sessions (due to weather conditions), students in online courses can always "attend" by participating in discussion boards or chat sessions, turning in their work on time, and watching lectures or reading materials.
	Finally, the cost of getting an online education is cheaper on average than receiving a traditional education. For example, there are no commuting costs, and sometimes required course materials, such as textbooks, are available online at no cost. In addition, many colleges and universities accept credits earned via free massive open online courses. Thus, there are a variety of reasons why an online education costs less.
Conclusion	Receiving an online education is becoming more and more popular due to a multitude of advantages it has over traditional instruction. These advantages include, to name a few: students can learn whatever they want, it is more comfortable, online courses often look great on resumes, the pacing of learning is managed by the pupil, and the cost is often lower than traditional education. With these reasons, it is hard to not see why this form of education is on the rise.

PART 1

Why people should stop smoking

Introduction

I am sure that you know that smoking harms your body. Then why do you continue smoking? Maybe you do it because you haven't really become conscious about all the effects that smoking has. There are a lot of reasons why you shouldn't smoke. Some of them are that smoking affects your health, that you spend a lot of money on cigarettes, and that when you smoke you are not respecting people around you.

Main body

The first reason why you shouldn't smoke is that smoking affects your health. If you smoke, your physical condition will be negatively affected, so it will be very difficult for you to succeed in sports. Also, smoking produces lethal diseases like cancer and reduces the length and quality of your life. Maybe you don't notice all the physical effects of smoking immediately, but you surely will be sorry one day.

The second reason why you shouldn't smoke is because of all the money that you spend on it. Maybe you start smoking only when someone offers you a cigarette, but there will be a day when you will feel the need of a cigarette. By this time, you will pay whatever to smoke, and each time you will smoke more, so you will spend more money. All the money you would spend on cigars could have be spent in something better, don't you think?

The last reason why you shouldn't smoke is out of respect for the people around you. When you smoke, you not only harm yourself, but you also harm all the people around you. So you mustn't be selfish; you should at least avoid smoking in front of people who don't smoke. Also, many people don't like the cigarette's smell, so they won't enjoy your company. Would you like that?

Conclusion

I have said just some reasons of why you shouldn't smoke, so I hope that now those of you who smoke are able to think a little and try to make a smart decision. In addition to all the reasons I've said, I would like you to think about how much you love yourself and then whether you want to continue harming yourself. Think also about all the people who love you, like your family who doesn't want to see you suffering or sick. If you decide to continue smoking, what a pity. But if you decide to stop smoking, congratulations! Remember that "If you can dream it, you can do it."

D Email writing

- تطبق نفس قواعد كتابة المقال السابقة إلى حدٍ كبير من تكوين الجمل السليمة إلا أن البريد الإلكتروني أسهل لأن به شكلًا معينًا يستطيع كل طالب أن يتبعه ويكون عادة أقل حجمًا من المقال المعتاد (رغم أن معظم الأسئلة يطلبون نفس العدد من الكلمات تقريبًا) ويمكن تقسيمه أيضًا إلى فقرات تتضمن المقدمة والموضوع والخاتمة، مع ملاحظة أنه هناك نوعان من البريد الإلكتروني

E-mail

A. Formal E-mail

هذا النوع تم استخدامه حديثًا من جانب الهيئات والشركات للتعامل مع بعضها البعض أو التعامل مع العملاء والموظفين والمتقدمين للوظائف المختلفة، وهذا النوع يتميز بلغة أكثر رسمية بعدم وجود جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه.

B. Informal E-mail

هذا النوع يتضمن رسائل التواصل بين الأشخاص، مع كتابة الجمل في الموضوع بشكل أقل رسمية بتضمين جمل التحيات والمجاملات المتعارف عليه؛ لأن الرسالة عادة ما تكون بين الأصدقاء أو الأقارب أو المعارف.

Layout of E-mails

New message

To : .... اسم المرسل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

From : .... اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

Subject : .... موضوع الرسالة

Dear/Hi ....,

....

....

....

....

....

Sender name

اسم المرسل

SEND

Sample Formal E-mail

New message

To : jim36@hrdtt.com — اسم المرسل اليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

From : tdbusiness@hrdtt.com — اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الالكتروني

Subject : A thank you message — موضوع الرسالة

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer,

On behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goal and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company. We also hope that you liked our small presentation.

We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture.

Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,

Robert Spooner

Senior Vice President

SEND

Sample Informal E-mail

New message

To : john@gmail.com

From : sami0@gmail.com

Subject : A visit plan

Hi John,

I am so glad that you are planning to visit my country. I know you like travel when the weather is moderate, so I suggest you should come on December or January and I promise you will never experience a better weather. I hope when you come you stay with me but I can book a hotel as you want.

As you know I always have a plan for myself, so I have made a plan for us. At first we should go to the Pyramids and the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. After that we will go to the Red Sea coast area. I'm sure you will love Sharm El Sheikh where you will enjoy the beautiful scenery and the marvelous water sports. Sharm El Sheikh is one of the most famous places for tourists. If you could stay for more than ten days, we can go to Luxor and Aswan where you will enjoy the famous Ancient Egyptian temples and the Valley of the Kings.

Please, contact me when you book your ticket, so I will be at the airport to meet you.

With love,

Sami.

SEND

Exercises

A) Write an essay of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1. The most successful day in my life.
2. A story ending in "...... At last I found safety after the bad experience in the forest."
3. Some people believe that internet access must be limited to students. Give your opinion.
4. How should we encourage industry in Egypt?
5. The importance of practising a useful hobby.
6. A person you look up to as a role model or an example to be followed.
7. Everyone should have a role in building our country.
8. Your ambitions for a better life.
9. Hard work is the key to success.
10. How to make good use of your spare time.
11. Great projects provide job opportunities and better living conditions for all Egyptians.
12. Tolerance and cooperation are the keys to the development of any society.
13. The qualities of a good teacher.
14. The school you dream about.
15. Life today is better than that in the past.

B) Write an e-mail of ONE HUNDRED EIGHTY (180) words on:

1. You are studying English at a private language school attended by many international students. You are planning a surprise birthday party for a friend who has been feeling particularly sad and homesick. Write to another classmate and invite him/her to the party.
2. You borrowed an important book from a classmate last term. You now realise your classmate had returned home overseas and you still have the book. Write an e-mail to him/her.
3. You live in an English speaking country and you want to do some voluntary, unpaid work in a developing country. Write an e-mail to a company called Cultural Expeditions, which organises such trips.
4. You live in a small university town. Last week, you drove to a big city about two hours away to buy a new laptop at a good price. You worked on the laptop all week and finished writing a long assignment that is due shortly. However, this week, the laptop doesn't even switch on. Write to the store.
5. You are going to take a short holiday in London and you want to rent a holiday apartment while you are there. Write to the tourist information office.

Part 2



Integrated Skills

- Staying healthy
- Eating around the world
- The future of food
- Changing English
- Being smart online
- Learning from our mistakes

PART 2

Skills Integration Methodology

نهدف من خلال تدريس هذا الجزء (Skills Integration) إلى الارتقاء بمستوى تعلم مهارات اللغة الإنجليزية لدى الطلاب فى بداية المرحلة الثانوية، حاولنا من خلال ذلك الربط بين المهارات الأساسية للغة مثل مهارات القراءة والاستماع والكتابة (Reading & Listening & Writing) بصورة مترابطة عن طريق تدريس نفس الموضوع من جوانب عدة وذلك لتوسيع مدارك الطلاب بالإضافة إلى إكسابهم رؤى مختلفة يستطيعون من خلالها تكوين منظورهم الخاص، ثم تقديم المهارات بشكل يتواكب مع طريقة تلقى الطالب، فتم البدء بمهارة القراءة ثم مهارة الاستماع وانتهاء بمهارة الكتابة بعد أن ينتهى الطالب من اكتساب مفردات لغوية جديدة فى جزئى القراءة والاستماع.

بدأنا بتقديم مهارة القراءة Reading Skill فى صورة قطعة فهم (Comprehension Passage) يليها أسئلة مشابهة لما قد يتعرض له الطالب أثناء أدائه الامتحان الفعلى يلى ذلك تقديم ومراجعة بعض الإرشادات الخاصة بقواعد اللغة الإنجليزية (Grammar notes).

يأتى بعد ذلك الجزء الخاص بتقديم مهارة الاستماع (Listening Skill)، ويعتبر كتاب GEM رائدًا فى تقديم تلك المهارة فى قالب غير تقليدى لمساعدة الطلاب فى تنميتها من خلال تقديم نص مسموع حول نفس موضوع قطعة الفهم، ثم تقديم ترجمة الكلمات الجديدة التى قد تساعد فى فهم الطالب للموضوع وتكوين حصيلة لغوية لديه، ثم تقديم أسئلة حول هذه الكلمات للتأكد من فهم الطالب لها وقدرته على استخدامها بطريقة صحيحة.

فى الجزء الأخير يطلب من الطالب تطبيق نتائج ما تم فهمه فى الأجزاء السابقة من خلال ممارسة مهارة الكتابة Writing Skill عن طريق:

١- ترجمة لبعض الجمل المتعلقة بالموضوع.

٢- كتابة مقال مطابق للمعايير متعلق بالموضوع أيضًا.

وبذلك يكون الطالب قد تحصل على معلومات إضافية فى قالب غير تقليدى تساعده فى الإجابة عن أية أسئلة محررة مسايرة لاتجاهات التقييم الحديثة.

Staying healthy

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

If you want to be healthy and fit, you need to follow certain rules, whether you're a boy, a girl, young or old. People are advised to eat healthy food. It is really important if you want to be healthy. You don't need to go on a diet, just pay attention to what you're putting in your body. You can eat three meals a day or 5-6 mini-meals a day. NEVER skip meals. Try healthy alternatives, instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen yogurt. Drink more water. This is basically the most important thing of all. If you drink more water, you will be much healthier because it flushes the toxins out of your body and gives your skin a healthy glow.

It's important to exercise more whether it's walking in the park, or cycling, do at least 20 minutes of physical activity several times a week. You should not exercise every day. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles. You can go to the gym, swim or run. Exercising will make you healthier and happier about your body. It also reduces stress and helps to calm the mind!

During adolescence, you'll find you need more sleep. Sure, it's tempting to stay up late chatting with friends on the phone or computer, but the next morning you'll be miserable. You need to get a minimum of 8 hours of sleep every night. It may be tough if you get back late and have to wake up early on a normal school day, but if you put things in the right way, you will feel much more refreshed the next morning. This will help your concentration and you will be in a much happier and friendly mood.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do you need to be healthy?
   a) Go on a diet.
   b) Follow certain rules.
   c) Neglect meals.
   d) Drink little water.
2. What can you eat instead of an ice-cream?
   a) 5-6 mini-meals.
   b) A kilo of meat.
   c) A frozen yogurt.
   d) Three meals.

3. What can exercising do to us?
   a) Makes us healthier and happier.
   b) Gives us stress.
   c) Reduces the peace of mind.
   d) Weakens our muscles.
4. What does the sentence "put things in the right way" mean?
   a) Chat a lot with friends.
   b) Make extra effort.
   c) Get up early.
   d) Sleep well.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What will exercise do to your body? Mention two points.
6. There are a lot of advantages to getting enough sleep. Mention two.
7. Give two reasons why water is important to our bodies.
8. How, do you think ,we can keep healthy? Mention two.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. You need to follow certain rules.

- تعبر need to عن الضرورة مثلها مثل have to/has to/must

2. You don't need to go on a diet.

- تعبر don't need to عن عدم الإلزام مثلها مثل needn't /don't/doesn't have to

3. Instead of having a bowl of ice-cream, go for a frozen.

- بعد حروف الجر تستخدم v.ing ما عدا to و instead of معناها بدلاً من.

4. You should not exercise every day.

- تعبر should عن النصيحة سواء مثبتة أو منفية وتساوى ought to/had better

5. Exercise will make you stronger and strengthen your muscles.

- تعبر will عن أشياء كثيرة فى المستقبل ومنها الحقائق المستقبلية والتنبؤ.

6. It may be tough if you get back.

- تعبر may عن احتمال حدوث الشيء، وهى بمعنى ربما و be هنا فعل منفصل عنها؛ لأن هناك كلمة أخرى تأتى فى أول الجملة وبعدها جملة كاملة وهى maybe متصلة وبمعنى ربما أيضًا.

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to 3 students talking about healthy ways of life:

Student 1: I'm crazy about fast food. I eat junk food every day. I have got some problems with my stomach, but at the same time I'm sure that eating fast food isn't bad for health.

Student 2: Sometimes, I eat fast food because I'm always busy with my lessons and after-school activities. My parents have no time to cook because they are always at work. My parents and I are absolutely sure that modern life runs so quickly that people often don't have enough time even to eat.

Student 3: I lead a healthy way of life. I eat a lot of fruit and vegetables. I can't stand junk food. I go to the gym and swimming-pool. I enjoy cycling and going for a walk with my friends. I'm really healthy and fit. I use my computer only for study or in order to find some useful information.

Helping Vocabulary

absolutely	مطلقًا	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
activities	الأنشطة	fit	لائق بدنيًا
can't stand	لا أتحمل	junk food	الوجبات السريعة
crazy about	مجنون/مفتون بـ	stomach	المعدة

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. An infected person can pass the .... to others.
   a) virus b) drug c) wound d) tumour
2. Antibiotics are not effective against viral .... such as COVID-19.
   a) rays b) infections c) operations d) damages
3. Two players are out of the team in the next match because of ....
   a) treatment b) training c) injury d) award
4. The .... system is the system in your body that produces substances to help it fight against infection and disease.
   a) digestive b) nerve c) respiratory d) immune
5. Girls should be taught the basic .... of childcare as they will be future mothers.
   a) devices b) techniques c) kits d) fashions
6. The disease in the patient's lungs made .... very painful.
   a) hearing b) temperature c) breathing d) pressure
7. The moon's atmosphere cannot .... human life.
   a) support b) risk c) neglect d) prevent
8. The new resort area in Galala is expected to .... tourism in Egypt.
   a) detach b) mend c) damage d) boost
9. Scientists say there are many treatments which can destroy some kinds of cancer ....
   a) calls b) cells c) bones d) organs
10. The surgeon who .... the operation said it had gone well.
   a) performed b) explored c) discovered d) covered

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

يقول الأطباء إننا نحتاج جميعا إلى تعزيز جهازنا المناعي بسبب الانتشار السريع للفيروسات في عصرنا الحالي. ويقولون إن الحياة الصحية والغذاء السليم هما من أهم وسائل تحقيق ذلك.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Schools should have special courses to teach students how to do first aids. This will help them benefit themselves and their society if there is an emergency.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"To be healthy is easy and cheap. Write about the ways which enable you to lead a healthy life."

Eating around the world

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

Food is the basic human need to stay alive. Moreover, it is the need of every living organism. Therefore it is important that we should not waste food. Our world consists of different types of cultures. These cultures have varieties of dishes of food in them.

Thus, all the dishes have different taste. Furthermore, our nature provides us a variety of food. From fruits to vegetables, from dairy food to seafood, everything is available. Different countries have their own specialty of dishes. Here are some of them:

In China people eat eight, ten or twelve dishes of food at New Year. A lot of the food at New Year has a special meaning. Seaweed means good luck and long noodles mean long life. They eat whole vegetables and don't use knives to cut things, because this means the end of your good luck.

In Russia there is lots of food on the table, so the next year will be happy and plentiful. At 11.59 people have their special drinks and wait for the clock to strike twelve. Then they make a toast for the New Year. They wish everybody good luck and happiness.

In Spain people eat twelve grapes – one with each chime of the clock at midnight. This brings good luck for the next twelve months. But it is difficult to eat twelve grapes in twelve seconds, so people usually have a mouth full of grapes at the end!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Food is necessary for ....
   a) people b) animals c) trees d) all of these
2. People around the world have .... cultures.
   a) the same b) different c) strange d) bad

3. In China people eat an ________ number of dishes of food.
   a) even
   b) odd
   c) eight
   d) eleven

4. Eating twelve grapes in twelve seconds in Spain means ________
   a) Bringing good luck for the next twelve months.
   b) Bringing good luck for the next twelve seconds.
   c) Having a mouth full of grapes.
   d) Leaving no grapes for the next day.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Where do our dishes of food come from?
6. What does using knives to cut things mean?
7. Do you think that the dishes of each country represent its culture? Why?
8. What do Egyptians eat to celebrate their different occasions?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. Therefore it is important ________ .

- تعتبر therefore أداة ربط للنتيجة وقبلها السبب.

2. We should not waste food ________ .

- تعبر should عن النصيحة وفى النفى تساوى oughtn't to/had better not + inf.

3. Furthermore, our nature provides ________ .

- تعتبر furthermore من أدوات ربط الإضافة وبعدها جملة كاملة.

4. A lot of the food at New Year has ________ .

- استخدمنا has لأن a lot of food مفرد.

5. There is lots of food ________ .

- لاحظ أن lots of يأتي بعدها الذي يعد والذي لا يعد.

6. They wish everybody good luck.

- يأتي بعد wish إما فاعل ثم جملة كاملة لها شروط معينة، أو مفعول وبعدها الشيء الذي نتمناه.
ومثال الفاعل I wish he would attend my wedding party next week

7. It is difficult to eat ________ .

بعد التركيبة السابقة يمكن حذف for + object ونبقى to + inf. والجملة تكون كاملة.

It is difficult for them to eat ________ .

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to a conversation about "Food on different occasions":

Birthdays

Speaker 1: When a child is born in China, the father gives red eggs to his friends and family – an even number for a girl and an odd number for a boy.

Speaker 2: The birthday party started in Europe in the Middle Ages. People were afraid of ghosts and bad spirits on their birthdays. Friends and family came to visit you with presents and special kinds food to stop them.

Speaker 3: In Mexico people fill a paper animal with sweets. Children close their eyes and hit the animal until the sweets fall out. Then everybody eats the sweets.

Weddings

Speaker 1: Italians eat doughnuts in the shape of bowties for good luck. They also eat sugared almonds when they hope for a baby.

Speaker 2: Many years ago in Britain the father of the bride gave the groom 'honey mead' (a honey drink) for a whole month. In this way the couple had a month of sweetness and happiness. We have now changed the word to 'honeymoon' – the holiday a couple goes on after their wedding.

Helping Vocabulary

almonds	اللوز	groom	العريس
bowties	أقواس	Middle Ages	العصور الوسطى
bride	العروس	odd	عدد فردي
doughnuts	الكعك	shape	شكل
even	عدد زوجي	spirits	أرواح
ghosts	أشباح	wedding	الزفاف

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man made the trip home to ______ Christmas with his family.
   a) celebrate b) reward c) accept d) report
2. Some farmers still use ______ farming methods which have been used for hundreds of years.
   a) stylish b) modern c) inventive d) traditional
3. The sausage was too ______ for my children to eat.
   a) spicy b) warm c) cool d) cooked
4. Wearing a hat is now regarded as rather ______ .
   a) old-fashioned b) fashionable c) modernised d) updated
5. Many old customs عادات have ______ from earlier times in the Egyptian society.
   a) avoided b) affected c) survived d) flashed
6. These ______ are taken from a long essay about terrorism in the Middle East.
   a) words b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts
7. The Cairo International Film ______ takes place in November every year.
   a) Festival b) Ceremony c) Game d) Sport
8. The police are trying to find the ______ of the accident victims.
   a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters
9. It is important to know how to ______ a balance between work and family life.
   a) deceive b) remove c) hinder d) achieve
10. You have the ______ of walking to school or going by bus.
    a) task b) duty c) option d) assignment

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- خلال السنوات القليلة الماضية انتشرت في مصر مطاعم الطعام التي تقدم أطباقا من البلاد المختلفة كالمطعم السوري والإيطالي والهندي، ولكن الشباب لن ينسى الأطباق المصرية اللذيذة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

A food festival uses food as its central theme. It can also be a means of uniting communities through celebrations of harvests and giving thanks for a plentiful growing season.

3 Writing:

Write an e-mail of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How we celebrate the different feasts in Egypt and the different kinds of food we have in them. Your friend's e-mail is: tomgreen5000@yahoo.com. Yours is: ahmedtito23@gmail.com.

The future of food

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What sort of food are we likely to be eating in the year 2050? Most people, when you ask them a question like that, either say: "There won't be any left, or : "Whatever it is. There won't be much taste in it." Of course, there are good reasons for being pessimistic about the world's food supplies in the future. Nevertheless, not all experts share the general despondency. For one thing, although the world's population is rising fast, food production is keeping pace with it, even in developing countries. It is therefore argued that the main reason why people are hungry is not that there is a food shortage, but that methods of cultivation are not sufficiently advanced in some areas and the food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it. Moreover, in most industrialised countries, one important cause of the trouble is our conservative preference for meat. After all, we are already in a situation where we feed animals with grain to produce high-quality beef, even though the grain would feed the human population. By the time our grandchildren have grown up, it seems likely that many of these problems will have been resolved. Scientists are already capable of constructing steaks from vegetable ingredients like soya beans. However skeptical we may be about their claim that they can reproduce the substance, taste and colour of meat by these means, the fact is that the most common complaint about such "steaks" is that we will no doubt have discovered a way of including artificial bones skin and fat."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do most people think about our food in the future?
   a) They are optimistic by thinking that there would be much food.
   b) They are pessimistic by thinking that there would be no food left.
   c) They are pessimistic by thinking that there would be no taste in it.
   d) Both b and c.

2. What does the underlined word "despondency" mean?
   a) Hope. b) Hopelessness.
   c) Care. d) Wish.
3. What gives us hope despite the pessimistic view?
   a) Food production is keeping pace with the growing population.
   b) There is food shortage in some poor countries.
   c) We throw some much food in dustbins.
   d) We eat three times a day.
4. What is the reason for the problem of food shortage?
   a) We eat much food every day.
   b) Some traders hide food in their shops.
   c) The food is not fairly distributed to all those that need it.
   d) We throw food in seas and oceans.

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What are the main reasons for food shortage at the present time?
6. How can industrialised countries be a cause of the problem of food shortage?
7. How can scientists solve the problem of our preference for meat?
8. Do you think our diet is going to be the same or different in the future? Why?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. ______ are we likely to be eating ______?
   - الجملة الخبرية are likely to تفيد الاحتمال وتساوي may تقدمت are على we لأنها سؤال.
2. Nevertheless, not all experts ______.
   - تعتبر nevertheless أداة ربط للتناقض مثل However ومعناها ومع ذلك.
3. ______ although the world's population is
   - تعبر although عن التناقض وبعدها جملة كاملة.
4. ______ distributed to all those that need it.
   - استخدمنا ضمير الوصل that لأن قبله كلمة all.
5. Moreover, in most industrialised countries
   - لاحظ استخدام moreover كأداة ربط للنتيجة بمعنى «علاوة على ذلك».
6. By the time our grandchildren have grown up, many of these problems will have been resolved.
   - تستخدم by the time للمستقبل وبعدها مضارع بسيط أو مضارع تام والزمن الآخر مستقبل تام.
7. Scientists are already capable of constructing
   - بعد capable of الفعل به ing لأن بعد حروف الجر يأتي الـ gerund.

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to an optimist and a pessimist about "The future of food":

An optimist : I think we have enough food for everyone in the world, but the problem is unequal distribution. In our technological age, it's easy to know the poor countries and the rich ones. With the help of modern machines and the advanced ways of farming, we'll be able to produce and export great amounts of food products. To know that I'm right, look at our past and present concerning food production and consumption. I think our present is better than our past, so our future will be the best.

A pessimist : I think nearly a billion are hungry due to poverty and unequal distribution. To feed those who are currently hungry—and the additional 2 billion-plus people who will live on the planet by 2050—we will need to increase between 60 and 100 percent. Moreover, look around you and you will find nothing but wars, diseases, poverty, illiteracy, pollution, scarcity of water, etc. I don't think there will be enough food for all people. Great and developed countries only are the ones that will live happily and luxuriously.

Helping Vocabulary

unequal	غير متساو	poverty	الفقر
distribution	توزيع	currently	حالياً
advanced	متقدم	planet	الكوكب
products	منتجات	illiteracy	الأمية
concerning	بخصوص	scarcity	ندرة
consumption	استهلاك	luxuriously	بترف

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some people cleared the forest land to use it for .... and raising livestock.
   a) economy b) agriculture c) literature d) culture
2. Inorganic غير عضوي .... are sprayed with highly toxic chemicals to prevent insect damage.
   a) dairy b) soil c) crops d) earth
3. Fortunately, all wood used in our company's furniture comes from .... forests.
   a) believable b) noticeable c) avoidable d) sustainable
4. The food in the food festival was .... and well-presented.
   a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) terrible
5. The businessman began .... in the stock market البورصة many years ago.
   a) exploring b) investing c) building d) spending
6. Through technology and ...., we can enhance the progress of our country.
   a) desertification b) exhibition c) innovation d) prohibition
7. The government has established trade .... with many countries.
   a) methods b) trips c) spaces d) links
8. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
   a) Physics b) Hydroponics c) Biology d) Botany
9. The problem of air pollution is especially serious in .... areas.
   a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert
10. The new model of Toshiba laptops will go into .... next year.
    a) produce b) produced c) productive d) production

2 Translation:

Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يبحث العلماء عن طرق مستدامة لإنتاج الغذاء لحل مشكلة نقص الغذاء التى من المتوقع أن تزيد مع تزايد السكان وتناقص مساحة الأرض المتاحة للزراعة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

In the last fifty years, Egypt lost a large amount of its agricultural land. This is a great challenge as the population increase means millions of mouths to be fed.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your prediction about food production and its kinds in your country."

Changing English

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Language is always changing, evolving, and adapting to the needs of its users. This isn't a bad thing; if English hadn't changed since, say, 1950, we wouldn't have words to refer to modems, fax machines, or cable TV. As long as the needs of language users continue to change, so will the language. The change is so slow that from year to year we hardly notice it. Language changes for several reasons. First, it changes because the needs of its speakers change. New technologies, new products, and new experiences require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently. Another reason for change is that no two people have had exactly the same language experience. We all know a slightly different set of words and constructions, depending on our age, job, education level, region of the country, and so on. We pick up new words and phrases from all the different people we talk with. At the same time, various groups in society use language as a way of marking their group identity; showing who is and isn't a member of the group. Many of the changes that occur in language begin with teens and young adults. As young people interact with others their own age, their language grows to include words, phrases, and constructions that are different from those of the older generation. We get new words from many different places. We borrow them from other languages (sushi, chutzpah), (*gym* from *gymnasium*) we create them by shortening longer words or by combining words.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The language is .... to the needs of its users.
   a) steady b) adaptable
   c) inflexible d) stubborn
2. Although the users of the language need it badly, it changes ....
   a) hardly b) quickly
   c) slowly d) individually

3. The antonym of the word "combining" is ________ .

a) separating
b) joining
c) uniting
d) linking

4. Changing the language is most desirable by ________ .

a) seniors
b) teens and young adults
c) infants
d) children

B) Answer the following questions:

5. Why do you think youth and adults approve of language change?
6. Mention two things that make the language change necessary.
7. How does the language acquire its words?
8. Do ordinary people notice the language change? Why? Why not?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. Language is always changing.

- دائمًا تأتي الكلمات الدالة بعد v.to be واستخدام always مع المضارع المستمر لبيان أن هذا الشيء يتغير كثيرًا.

2. This isn't a bad thing.

- تأتي الصفة دائما قبل الاسم لكن تأتي بعد كلمات معينة منها something/everything قارن الآتي:

Learning languages is a useful thing. Learning languages is something useful.

3. If English hadn't changed since, say, 1950, we wouldn't have words to.

- لاحظ أن بعد if الحالة الثالثة لكن جواب الشرط حالة ٢ وهذه تسمى mixed وموجود شرحها كاملا في الوحدة السادسة الجزء الثاني.

4. The change is so slow that from ________ .

- قاعدة so + adjective + that بمعنى جدًا .... لدرجة أن ....

3 Listening text

Listening

Listen to two students talking about languages change:

Student 1: Have you understood what the lecturer has already said?

Student 2: Yes, I have. I know that languages change from time to time because there are new technologies, new products, and new experiences require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently. Moreover, old English no longer exists. For example, it used "not" after the verb, but now it doesn't.

Student 1: Can you give me an example?

Student 2: Of course. They used to say, "They toil not." and "Kill them not." But now we say; "They don't toil." and "Don't kill them".

Student 1: And he also said that the sounds of a language change over time. It's really amazing to know all this information.

Helping Vocabulary

clearly	بوضوح	refer to	تشير إلى
efficiently	بكفاءة	require	تتطلب
experiences	الخبرات	rules	قواعد
lecturer	محاضر	technologies	صور التكنولوجيا
products	المنتجات	toil	يكافح/يكدح

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
   a) picture b) emoji c) number d) photo
2. The actress got an anonymous text .... asking for money.
   a) message b) massage c) passage d) messenger
3. The "USA" is a/an .... for the United States of America.
   a) definition b) specialisation c) abbreviation d) expectation
4. Social .... are changing the way people communicate, work and shop.
   a) competition b) service c) course d) media
5. My younger brother spends hours playing .... games such as Pubg.
   a) online b) inline c) offline d) outline
6. COVID-19 news dominated newspaper .... around the world for a long time.
   a) addresses b) dresses c) headlines d) divisions
7. All advertising websites welcome .... from people who visit it.
   a) contents b) comments c) services d) symbols
8. The .... for logging on to the network involves a password.
   a) concept b) means c) provision d) procedure
9. The future of printed newspapers is a matter for great ....
   a) debate b) agreement c) search d) meeting
10. The actors feel that the people have completely .... the moral of their movie.
    a) mismanaged b) misunderstood c) misdirected d) misused

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يخشى كثير من الخبراء أن يؤدي استخدام الشباب المفرط لوسائل التواصل الاجتماعي إلى فقدانهم مهارات التواصل مع عائلاتهم وأقاربهم، بل قد يؤدي تلك ببعضهم إلى أمراض نفسية معقدة.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Chatting and messaging language has changed some of the features of the language people have used for thousands of years. Some linguists fear that this will affect the language badly.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"A play of Shakespeare you have just finished and you recommend us to read"

Being smart online

1 Comprehension passage

Reading

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Internet is full of useful information. You can find everything from food recipes, new jobs, news, and information on various topics. Most students use the internet to find information because there is so much information about almost anything you can imagine on the web.

Since anyone can put up anything there, you are likely to find false information. It is important to be able to tell the difference between false and correct information. The result for "pollution," for example, will give you many different results and how do you know what to trust and what to use? Most people settle for the first three results. There are many things you should consider while searching on the web:

1. Don't use personal sites as they are presenting the page owner's opinions.
2. Trust the sites whose endings are the. com, org. or edu.
3. Consider the date of the publishing. If it was written ten years ago, the facts are very likely to have changed. It is very important to use up-to-date facts.
4. It is a very good idea to check out the sources the author has used. Maybe they are even better than what the author has created.
5. Google the author and see if you can find any information on him/her.
6. It is often a good idea to see what sort of pages that links to the page you are looking up. These simple steps can help you to evaluate whether the information you have found is false or not. It is always important to remember that everyone can post anything on internet, and it is important to check your sources twice.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most students use the internet to ....
   a) know the weather b) find jobs
   c) find information d) know the current news
2. Because the internet is for everyone, we find ....
   a) bad things b) false information
   c) correct information d) false and correct information

3. In order to find what we need quickly, we should be a/an ....

a) explorer b) youtuber
c) researcher d) gamer

4. The synonym of the word "evaluate" is "..............".

a) know b) value
c) recognise d) find

B) Answer the following questions:

5. What do most people use the internet for?
6. Mention two of the tips that should be followed to be smart online.
7. Find two words from the passage that mean:
   a) untrue. b) outcomes.
8. Do you find the internet useful or useless? Why? Why not.

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. .... there is so much information ....

- المعلومات كلمة لا تجمع لذلك تأخذ much.

2. Since anyone can put up anything there, you ....

- لاحظ أن since هنا بمعنى لأن.

3. .... to be able to tell the difference ....

- لاحظ أن tell دائما يخبر شخص بشيء، ولكن هنا بمعنى يبين الفرق.

4. .... the sites whose endings are ....

- قاعدة whose بعدها اسم يملكه ما قبلها وهنا endings اسم بمعنى نهايات.

5. Google the author and see ....

- كلمة google هنا فعل بمعنى يبحث في المحرك البحثي ولذلك العطف عليها بـ see بعد and فكلاهما فعل.

3 Listening text

Listening

Ahmed and his teacher are talking about using the internet:

Teacher : Where is your essay on "Technology", Ahmed?

Ahmed : I'm sorry sir. I spent 5 hours searching, finding myself on hundreds of websites, meeting many people and giving my personal information, but in vain.

Teacher : You must be smart online.

Ahmed : What does this mean?

Teacher : "SMART" means 1. Safe 2. Meeting 3. Accepting 4. Reliable 5. Tell

1. Keep safe by not giving out personal information including your email address, phone number and password.
2. Meeting someone you have only been in touch with online can be dangerous. Remember online friends are still strangers even if you have been talking to them for a long time.
3. Accepting emails, IM messages, or opening files, pictures or texts from people you don't know or trust can lead to problems – they may contain viruses or nasty messages!
4. People might lie about their identities. If you like chatting online it's best to only chat to your real world friends and family.
5. Tell your parent or a trusted adult if someone or something makes you feel uncomfortable or worried, or if you or someone you know is being bullied online.

Helping Vocabulary

chat	يدردش	nasty	قبيح/كريه
contain	يحتوي على	reliable	يعتمد عليه
identity	هوية	smart	ذكي
in vain	بلا جدوى	trust	ثقة
including	متضمنا	uncomfortable	غير مريح

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can ______ your favourite songs by clicking here.
   a) load b) overload c) upload d) download
2. How much does it cost to ______ central heating?
   a) break b) smash c) attach d) install
3. A text message with more than 153 ______ will be divided into two messages.
   a) roles b) characters c) parts d) servants
4. The United Nations should be a ______ for solving international problems.
   a) forum b) view c) seminar d) tent
5. This course will help you to ______ your computer skills.
   a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure
6. Names of website visitors have been deleted to ensure their ______ .
   a) accuracy b) expectancy c) privacy d) behaviour
7. ______ advertising is those advertisements that appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
   a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted
8. This report ______ some of the problems faced by old people in winter.
   a) ends b) behaves c) highlights d) reduces
9. The baby's birth was ______ this morning.
   a) registered b) studied c) rehearsed d) reversed
10. Some people find it safer to use fake information in their Facebook ______ .
    a) address b) memory c) hardware d) profile

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- يختلف الناس في استخدامهم للانترنت في مصر؛ فمنهم من يستخدمه للبحث العلمي، ومنهم من يستخدمه للتواصل مع الأصدقاء. لكن الغالبية العظمى تستخدمه لأغراض الترفيه كمشاهدة الأفلام وممارسة الألعاب.

B) Translate into Arabic:

Most websites force their users to accept cookies. These are mainly used for many kinds of advertisement which brings money to websites owners.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The pros and cons of using the internet."

Learning from our mistakes

Reading

1 Comprehension passage

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Most people are afraid to fail. They worry constantly about not meeting expectations, making a mistake, or trying something new. Because of this, many never get started on the path toward reaching their goals. You'll likely have to fail a few times, learn from your lessons, and only then be able to come through a winner. In the world of academics, mistakes are perceived as bad and need to be avoided. For the first twenty-two years of your life, you are taught that mistakes are bad and embarrassing fact, mistakes are simply opportunities to learn something new. The more mistakes a person makes, the more they will have learned and the greater chance they will have of succeeding on their next try.

The key, however, is to learn from your mistakes and never make the same mistake twice.

Thomas Edison would have never invented the light bulb if he did not take this principle to heart. Edison failed more than 10,000 times before he found the filament that would create light for a sustained period of time. He did not view these as failures, however. On the 6,635th try to find a proper filament for the light bulb, Edison did not see himself has having failed 6634 times. He reframed the situation so that to him he had successfully eliminated 6,643 possibilities, refining and narrowing his search as he proceeded, drawing him closer and closer to his goal. Levi Strauss and Christopher Columbus and many others wouldn't have succeeded unless they had made mistakes many times. By taking action and learning from your mistakes and failures, you'll gain new knowledge and become aware of many new opportunities.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many never get started on the path toward reaching their goals for fear of ______ .
   a) success b) poverty c) regret d) failure
2. Students, teachers, researchers and professors should consider mistakes as ______ .
   a) an excuse to stop trying
   b) the end of life
   c) opportunities to learn something new
   d) a chance to fail more and more

3. What do the underlined words "this principle" refer to?
   a) Inventing the light bulb.
   b) Learning from the mistakes.
   c) Failure leads to more failure.
   d) Mistakes are bad and embarrassing.
4. The antonym of the word "embarrassing" is "................" .
   a) enjoyable b) discomforting
   c) uncomfortable d) awkward

B) Answer the following questions:

5. How should people think of their mistakes?
6. Find words from the passage that mean:
   a) attentive. b) constant.
7. What do you think people should do when they make mistakes?
8. How do you think people should behave towards the person who does a mistake?

2 Grammar hints

Grammar

1. People are afraid to fail ....
   - بعد afraid of نستخدم v.ing لكن لو استخدمنا to نستخدم المصدر وهى نفس المعنى.
2. You are taught that mistakes are bad ....
   - لاحظ أن are taught مجهول ولا يمكن استخدام learnt فى المجهول وقبلها عاقل.
3. The more mistakes a person makes, the more they will have learned and
   - هذه التركيبة بمعنى كلما .... كلما .... وهى استخدام الصفة فى المقارنة بعد the.
4. Thomas Edison would have never invented the light bulb if he did not take this principle to heart.
   - قاعدة if هنا هى الحالة المختلطة mixed conditional اى أن اختراع المصباح حدث ماض، ولذلك استخدمنا جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة ولكن الحديث عن تصحيح الأخطاء قائم على مدار الأزمنة كلها فهو مضارع يتحول إلى ماض بسيط.
5. By taking action and learning from.
   - بعد حروف الجر نستخدم gerund و and عطف لذلك بعدها يساوى ما قبلها فى الشكل (الزمن).

3 Listening text

Listening

Two teachers are talking about students' mistakes:

Teacher 1 : I see you are angry. What's the problem?

Teacher 2 : Many students have made many mistakes in doing today's exercise.

Teacher 1 : I think it isn't a problem. Making mistakes doesn't mean that they aren't clever. Success in the classroom shouldn't be determined by high marks and correct answers. But "make mistakes" is a goal I would love to see my students set for themselves! Why? Because mistakes are the essence of new learning! As teachers, it is important that we begin to normalise mistakes for our students.

Helping Vocabulary

determined	مصمم/عاقد العزم	goal	هدف
essence	جوهر	normalise	تطبيع

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Although they had a few disagreement, the young couple .... on well with each other.
   a) got b) went c) came d) received
2. The poor woman ran to the nearest house and .... for help to save her sick child.
   a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed
3. The security man was .... for surfing the Internet during work time.
   a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed
4. Our old neighbour was too .... to buy herself an air conditioner.
   a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean
5. Mona feels .... that we didn't tell her the truth.
   a) pleased b) upset c) appointed d) delighted
6. A .... is a Christian religious song sung at Christmas.
   a) priest b) carol c) pray d) sonnet
7. The two friends .... out over some stupid little things.
   a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose
8. Someone made a rude noise, which the teacher decided to ....
   a) reply b) welcome c) apply d) ignore
9. The .... of the train accident is still clear in my mind.
   a) memory b) anniversary c) memorial d) souvenir
10. Some people believe that there is a close .... between poverty and crime.
    a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

2 Translation: Writing

A) Translate into English:

- لقد تأثرت علاقتى بأصدقائى كثيرًا منذ أن بدأت استخدام موقع الفيسبوك، لكننى ندمت الآن وأحاول تصحيح علاقتى بهم، فقد أدركت أنهم شيء مهم فى حياتى.

B) Translate into Arabic:

We can learn from our mistakes more than our achievements. When we make mistakes, we should analyse them and put strategies to avoid repeating them.

3 Writing:

Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"An embarrassing situation you faced and the lesson you learnt from it."

Part 3



Ongoing Assessment

Unit (1)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 10

1. The lifeguard pulled the child out of the swimming pool and did .... for him to save his life.
   - a) VCR
   - b) CV
   - c) CPR
   - d) MRI
2. The fire has caused .... damage to the building that it was knocked down.
   - a) simple
   - b) severe
   - c) light
   - d) imaginary
3. When I told my mother I lost the mobile, she .... with anger.
   - a) represented
   - b) reacted
   - c) acted
   - d) protected
4. The doctor pressed tightly on the wound to stop the ....
   - a) breeding
   - b) leading
   - c) blading
   - d) bleeding
5. The big project has involved .... of three companies to finish in time.
   - a) collaboration
   - b) reservation
   - c) preservation
   - d) condensation
6. I .... eat healthy food if I'm going to be an athlete.
   - a) must
   - b) shouldn't
   - c) mustn't
   - d) don't have to
7. You .... exercise if you want to be healthy.
   - a) don't have to
   - b) have to
   - c) mustn't
   - d) can't
8. You .... visit the Pyramids when you're in Cairo. They are amazing.
   - a) mustn't
   - b) needed to
   - c) don't have to
   - d) must

9. If you are busy, you .... play football with them.
   - a) mustn't
   - b) must
   - c) have to
   - d) don't have to
10. You .... eat things with a lot of salt or fat in them.
    - a) mustn't
    - b) don't have to
    - c) must
    - d) have to

2 Choose the correct word: 6

A lot of factors play a role in (1) (staying / performing) healthy. In turn, good health can decrease your risk of developing certain conditions. These include heart (2) (treatment / disease), stroke and injuries. The first factor is having a healthy (3) (diet / fight) and lifestyle. The second factor is (4) (making / doing) exercises which will also help you have a strong body. These will help us (5) (boost / boast) our immune (6) (style / system) to fight diseases.

Answers:

(1).........	(2).........	(3).........
(4).........	(5).........	(6).........

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 2

A medical emergency is an acute injury or illness that shows an immediate risk to a person's life. It requires assistance from another person, who should be suitably qualified.

....

B) Translate into English: 2

- الاسترخاء والانفصال عن ضغوط الحياة من الوسائل الهامة التى تساعد على دعم صحة الإنسان، ويكون ذلك عن طريق ممارسة أنشطة الاسترخاء مثل تمارين اليوجا.

....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. While cleaning the house, the dust made her .... badly.
   a) cough b) train
   c) smell d) wave
2. Our teacher always .... in a friendly manner towards us.
   a) treated b) behaved
   c) cured d) misbehaved
3. Winning the cup .... the team's confidence.
   a) detached b) attracted
   c) reduced d) boosted
4. I shouldn't have gone to the party in the first ....! I was not in a good mood.
   a) place b) post
   c) position d) situation
5. The Art design .... consists of both lectures and practical workshops.
   a) coarse b) section
   c) course d) centre
6. You .... pay to go in the museum. It is free to enter.
   a) must b) had to
   c) don't have to d) have to
7. Leila .... work hard if she wants to pass her exams.
   a) had to b) must
   c) mustn't d) needn't
8. You .... forget to bring a coat to the mountains. It will be cold!
   a) have to b) must
   c) don't have to d) mustn't
9. You .... buy a ticket before you get on the train.
   a) have to b) don't have to
   c) mustn't d) can't
10. Which book .... you read if you are interested in having a healthy heart?
    a) have to b) must
    c) did you have to d) mustn't

2 Fill in the gap with the correct forms of the verb:

6

Our trip to Matrouh ....(1)............ (be) always fantastic. We always have two rooms booked, so ....(2)............ (have to) look for empty rooms in the area. Our children are really happy because they ....(3)............ (need) go to bed early. The beach is half an hour from the hotel, so we ....(4)............ (have to) drive to it tomorrow. The children ....(5)............ (go) to the beach by themselves because there are sharks there. We ....(6)............ (remember) that our country is full of many fabulous places.

Answers:

(1)............	(2)............	(3)............
(4)............	(5)............	(6)............

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

If you wish to acquire a healthy lifestyle, you will certainly have to make some changes in your life. Maintaining a healthy lifestyle demands consistent habits and disciplined life.

....

B) Translate into English:

2

- سيكون نظامك الغذائي المتوازن وممارسة التمارين الرياضية بانتظام عديمي الفائدة تماما إذا كنت تعيش في بيئة غير صحية. يجب علينا الحفاظ على النظافة في محيطنا لتجنب الإصابة بالأمراض المعدية.

....

Unit (2)

Quiz on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 20

1. The chef asserted that we should make sure to add the right .... of salt to the recipe.
   a) account b) quality
   c) length d) amount
2. My elder brother often .... together with his friends after work.
   a) goes b) makes
   c) gets d) pretends
3. Medals are usually worn only on ceremonial ....
   a) accidents b) occasions
   c) prohibitions d) intentions
4. The Galapagos island is home to several .... species of trees.
   a) strange b) native
   c) modern d) deadly
5. Breakfast is .... between 7 and 10 a.m. at this hotel.
   a) served b) reserved
   c) accepted d) perplexed
6. The curry was too hot, it was the .... thing I've ever eaten!
   a) spicier b) spicy
   c) spiciest d) most spicy
7. People in the countryside often cook food that's .... than the food people eat in cities.
   a) more traditional b) traditional
   c) the most traditional d) traditionally
8. Many people think that nut biscuits are .... the other biscuits on the menu.
   a) good than b) better than
   c) the best d) so good as

9. Vegetable curry costs 3 pounds and all the other meals at the restaurant cost .... than that.
   a) much b) most
   c) more d) many
10. Nut biscuits are .... of all the other biscuits in the market.
    a) much sweeter b) sweet
    c) sweeter d) the sweetest

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word: 6

(kinds – local – other – spicy – seafood – dish)

In the past, people made food from their available ....(1)........ ingredients in the same ways that their grandparents used to make their food. Nowadays, each country has their special ways of cooking. Some of these ways haven't changed up till now. Indian people like ....(2)........ food which has pepper and other spices. The Japanese like to eat ....(3)........ such as fish. They are famous for a special ....(4)........ called Sochi. The Chinese eat food less than any other people, but they eat many ....(5)........ of animals. Nowadays, people can enjoy food from ....(6)........ countries in different ways.

Answers:

(1)........	(2)........	(3)........
(4)........	(5)........	(6)........

3 A) Translate into Arabic: 2

Some people assert that our food should be organic, grown with traditional methods. However, others say that we can face food shortage problems if we do so.

....

B) Translate into English: 2

- بعض المهرجانات التى تحتفل بها الشعوب ترجع إلى سنوات عديدة سابقة مثل عيد الشكر فى أمريكا الذى يحرص عليه الأمريكيون كتعبير عن امتنانهم لأجدادهم الذين غامروا بحياتهم لتعمير القارة الجديدة.

....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Good families teach their children to treat other people with ....
   a) disrespect b) rudeness
   c) power d) respect
2. Egypt faces a lot of .... problems which need creative ideas to solve.
   a) modern b) complicated
   c) implied d) updated
3. Most of the meat .... of factories must be checked well.
   a) examples b) purchases
   c) fashions d) products
4. I usually meet most of my close .... in Eid El Fitr and Eid Al Adha.
   a) enemies b) relatives
   c) heroes d) opponents
5. One of the good uses of Facebook and Twitter is that people can .... their ideas with each other.
   a) share b) divide
   c) spill d) unite
6. Why does he always come to see me at .... possible time?
   a) bad b) the worst
   c) worse d) badly
7. That hotel is .... building in the town.
   a) the oldest b) older than
   c) the eldest d) elder
8. I didn't spend as much money as you. You spent .... money than me.
   a) much b) more
   c) many d) most
9. The meal didn't cost as much as I expected. The meal cost .... I expected.
   a) little b) the least
   c) less than d) more than
10. Karema's hair isn't as long as it used to be. Karema used to have .... hair.
    a) the longer b) long
    c) longest d) longer

2 Choose the correct word:

6

Cairo is the (1) (biggest / bigger) city in Egypt. No other city is larger (2) (from / than) it. Cairo's underground system provides transport for (3) (most / more) than 40% of the city's work force. Cairo is as famous (4) (as / than) many other cities in the world because of its monuments and places of interest. The people in Cairo are famous (5) (as / for) their generosity and bravery. The (6) (taller / tallest) building in it is the Cairo Tower.

Answers:

(1)	(2)	(3) ....
(4)	(5)	(6) ....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

Food is truly a central point in many cultures and all countries have their own specialty of dishes. One of the most memorable aspects of travelling is a country's food.

....

B) Translate into English:

2

- تختلف طرق طهي الطعام من بلد لآخر ولو أردت أن تجرب هذه الطرق فلابد أن تتمتع بحس المغامرة وألا تشمئز من طعم أو رائحة طعام؛ فقد يكون الطعام المحبوب في بلد غريبًا في أخرى.

....

Unit (3)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. We should work hard to achieve gradual and .... economic growth which will eventually lead to great progress.
   a) unbelievable b) movable
   c) avoidable d) sustainable
2. I was impressed by the .... of dishes on the restaurant's menu.
   a) mixture b) variety
   c) collaboration d) collocation
3. Many cleaning products contain .... that can be harmful.
   a) chemicals b) ingredients
   c) toxin d) recipes
4. .... is animals such as cows and sheep that are kept on a farm.
   a) Livestock b) Dairy
   c) Household d) Poultry
5. Rice is a main .... for more than half of the world's population.
   a) product b) receipt
   c) crop d) chemical
6. The police in my country are known to be very brave and strict. They .... any thief easily.
   a) are arresting b) will arrest
   c) are going to arrest d) will be arresting
7. This time next week, I .... for the airport.
   a) have left b) will leave
   c) will be leaving d) leave
8. Before I go to China next year, I .... some Cantonese.
   a) am learning b) am going to learn
   c) learn d) was learning

9. This building is old. It .... at any time.
   a) will collapse b) is collapsing
   c) collapses d) is going to collapse
10. Salah is shooting a penalty. He .... a goal.
    a) is scoring b) scores
    c) is going to score d) will be scoring

2 Choose the correct answer:

6

Rainforests are very important for life on the earth. In the past they covered many (1) (areas / districts) in Asia and South America. Unfortunately, farmers began to cut them (2) (up / down) or even set fire to them to grow (3) (crops / dairy). They are thirty percent smaller than they were in the past. This is one of the main causes (4) (for / of) climate change in the world. If we lose more of these forests, we won't be able to continue (5) (sustainable / avoidable) food production. This will affect the (6) (quality / amount) of oxygen for the earth.

Answers:

(1)	(2)	(3) ....
(4)	(5)	(6) ....

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

One of the most important causes of climate change is cutting down forests especially rainforests. This leads to more carbon dioxide which affects the earth badly.

____

B) Translate into English:

2

- يعتبر البناء على الأرض الزراعية جريمة؛ لأنه يقلل مساحة الأرض المتاحة لإنتاج الغذاء، مما يحد من الإنتاج المستدام للغذاء، وهذا يدفعنا إلى طرق جديدة قد تكون مكلفة.

____

Quiz on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (20)

1. The lady was relieved when she know that the dress is also .... in larger sizes.
   a) readable b) acceptable
   c) available d) probable
2. Police experts are still collecting .... at the scene of the crime.
   a) fiction b) art
   c) evidence d) science
3. These photographs are a direct .... with the past.
   a) method b) link
   c) space d) travel
4. We're looking for someone to .... our secretary.
   a) replace b) place
   c) renew d) destroy
5. Why don't we have breakfast .... for a change?
   a) indoor b) indoors
   c) outdoor d) outdoors
6. In the future, scientists and engineers .... hard to reduce the effects of climate change.
   a) will be worked b) will be working
   c) will have worked d) work
7. Don't ask Ahmed to cook the meat – he .... it.
   a) is burning b) is going to burn
   c) will be burning d) will burn
8. I'm still not feeling very well, so I think I .... the doctor sometime this week.
   a) am going to see b) won't see
   c) am seeing d) see

9. Hala .... us to organise the party at 7 tomorrow. This is arranged.
   a) will be helping b) will help
   c) helps d) is going to help
10. I haven't tidied my room yet, but I promise I .... it this afternoon.
   a) do b) will do
   c) am going to do d) have done

2 Fill in the gap with the correct form of the verb: (6)

In the near future, robots ....(1)........ (be performing) more and more tasks for humans. This ....(2)........ (have) both positive and negative effects. On the one hand, while robots ....(3)........ (doing) the boring and dangerous jobs, humans ....(4)........ (be devoting) more time to solving their problems on earth. On the other hand, the widespread use of robots ....(5)........ (create) a lot of future unemployment. Man should decide what he ....(6)........ (do) with robots.

Answers:

(1)........	(2)........	(3)........
(4)........	(5)........	(6)........

3 A) Translate into Arabic: (2)

Experts suggest solutions to the food problem in the future and that new and innovative plans must be prepared, so that people can eat less food, but with better nutritional value.

....

B) Translate into English: (2)

- سيتغير حتما شكل ومكونات الطعام في المستقبل نتيجة لوجود الطعام المحسن وراثيًا وتغير المناخ واستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة في الزراعة لإنتاج أنواع جديدة من المحاصيل.

....

Unit (4)

Quiz on Part (1)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I had to buy a new suit because .... dress is preferable at job interviews.
   a) normal　b) formal
   c) occasional　d) feast
2. Our nursery teacher didn't punish any child who did wrong severely. She just ....
   a) smiled　b) rewarded
   c) frowned　d) introduced
3. Bill Gates, the designer of Windows computer systems, is really a great ....
   a) searcher　b) editor
   c) explorer　d) innovator
4. It is a good idea to talk to your students in a friendly ....
   a) sound　b) tone
   c) intention　d) note
5. The website hasn't even given us the most .... information about our research topic.
   a) minor　b) unimportant
   c) trivial　d) basic
6. It was supposed to be a secret. You .... have told her.
   a) should　b) shouldn't
   c) can't　d) could
7. Why did you not help Ahmed? You .... have given him a hand!
   a) could　b) must
   c) shouldn't　d) can't
8. The meat is a bit burnt. You .... have cooked it for so long.
   a) can't　b) should
   c) shouldn't　d) couldn't

9. Soha's late. She .... have forgotten about the meeting.
   a) should　b) can't
   c) couldn't　d) could
10. I thought I saw Yousif in town, but I .... have been wrong.
   a) should　b) could
   c) shouldn't　d) couldn't

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

(sites – abbreviations – video – away – keep – messaging)

Smartphones have become an important part of children's life. They use them to .....(1)..... in touch with their friends. They are now used to .....(2)..... and its new language. They are even familiar with emojis, ...(3)..... and images. They also use them to play their favourite .....(4)..... games. They can use many .....(5)..... such as YouTube and Facebook easily. However we should watch them carefully as they can be harmed easily through harmful sites. Experts say that we shouldn't take smartphones .....(6)..... from them. We should teach them how to use them wisely, instead.

Answers:

(1)...........	(2)...........	(3)...........
(4)...........	(5)...........	(6)...........

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Using emojis, abbreviations and acronyms have become essential for messaging and chats. Young people say that this is a part of the fast life we live.

B) Translate into English:

- الهواتف الذكية من أهم الاختراعات التي أثرت كثيراً في حياة الناس وخاصة الشباب الذين يعتبرون استخدامه جزءاً هاماً في حياتهم، لكنها تبعدهم عن ممارسة الهوايات ومقابلة الأصدقاء والأقارب.

Quiz on Part (2)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The actor was really angry at the rude ______ on his post.
   - a) contents
   - b) images
   - c) comments
   - d) symbols
2. The ______ of the story we studied last year was "Treasure Island".
   - a) address
   - b) title
   - c) speech
   - d) text
3. The mobile has become the easiest way to ______ in touch with other people.
   - a) leave
   - b) sleep
   - c) keep
   - d) move
4. Facebook is the most widely used social ______ website in the world.
   - a) service
   - b) media
   - c) status
   - d) work
5. The computer company is doing an extensive ______ on their new software.
   - a) inspection
   - b) search
   - c) survey
   - d) estimation
6. Where's Ahmed's camera? He ______ have taken it with him.
   - a) ought to
   - b) can't
   - c) should
   - d) could
7. The plan ______ wrong, but in fact it was a great success.
   - a) should have gone
   - b) must have gone
   - c) could have gone
   - d) can't be
8. You ______ have met my brother. I haven't got one!
   - a) shouldn't
   - b) must
   - c) couldn't
   - d) should
9. I've done the washing up for you. - Oh, you really ______ have!
   - a) should
   - b) can't
   - c) shouldn't
   - d) may

10. She ______ have gone to the party with her friends, but she didn't.
    - a) must
    - b) could
    - c) can't
    - d) couldn't

2 Choose the correct word:

Doaa went for a day trip to Luxor last Saturday. She went by bus, but she (1) (could / couldn't) have gone by train. Although it was sunny in Cairo, it was raining there, so she (2) (shouldn't / should) have brought her umbrella. She wouldn't let the bad weather spoil her day. She (3) (visited / visits) lots of places of interest, museums and (4) (has / had) a lovely lunch in a nice restaurant. By the evening, she was really tired as she had been (5) (walked / walking) all day. When she returned back to Cairo, she told her friends what she (6) (could / shouldn't) do in Luxor.

Answers:

(1) ______	(2) ______	(3) ______
(4) ______	(5) ______	(6) ______

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Any language may change for many reasons. Maybe, it is because its speakers need this change. New technologies may require new words to refer to them clearly and efficiently.

____

B) Translate into English:

[illegible]

____

Unit (5)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. My grandfather was a very .... and honest man who would never betray anyone.
   a) doubtful b) distant
   c) reliable d) disorganised
2. The new engine can .... reduce the amount of petrol used by cars.
   a) affectingly b) effectively
   c) terribly d) excitedly
3. Due to security reasons, every shop should .... security cameras.
   a) break b) smash
   c) attach d) install
4. The rich man began .... antiquities many years ago.
   a) cutting b) dragging
   c) collecting d) detecting
5. King Lear is the main .... of the play we study this year.
   a) role b) character
   c) part d) servant
6. Although the ticket may .... to be expensive, it is good value for money.
   a) mean b) be supposed
   c) seem d) be meant
7. Strange as it may ...., my father has never been to Cairo.
   a) seem b) be supposed
   c) mean d) suppose
8. A calculator .... to help you do mathematical calculations quickly.
   a) supposed b) seems
   c) means d) is meant
9. The exam .... to start at 10.00 sharp but the teacher was late.
   a) is supposed b) was supposed
   c) is seemed d) is meant

10. You .... to listen during the lecture, not talk.
    a) seem b) mean
    c) are supposed d) suppose

2 Choose the correct answer :

6

Social media have their advantages and disadvantages. People can use them to stay (1) (connected / attacked) to their friends and relatives. They can also help people (2) (divide / share) their ideas and opinions with others. However, a lot of people have misused them. So, you must be (3) (careful / careless) when you use them. Don't believe all the information (4) (printed / posted) on them. You shouldn't share your (5) (public / personal) details with anyone you don't know. You should also update your privacy settings (6) (gradually / regularly).

Answers:

(1).........	(2).........	(3).........
(4).........	(5).........	(6).........

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

You need to be smart online. Keep a sharp eye out for threats like hackers and keep your personal information secure, and you'll have a safe internet experience.

....

B) Translate into English:

1

- اضطرت الحكومة لإصدار قانون لمعاقبة كل من ينشر معلومات أو إشاعات غير صحيحة على الإنترنت أو مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي؛ وكان ذلك نتيجة لإساءة استخدام بعض الناس لهذه المواقع.

....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. The government is doing great efforts to help people who are .... to drugs.
   a) addicted b) attained
   c) attacked d) applied
2. Winning the Premier League can be Mohamed Salah's .... in his career so far.
   a) headlight b) light
   c) highlight d) favour
3. The film .... the way some greedy employers treat their employees.
   a) punished b) criticised
   c) rewarded d) praised
4. It can take a year to .... a new vaccine for COVID-19.
   a) install b) reform
   c) develop d) treat
5. The .... we had at the trip was vey affecting as we lost one of our friends.
   a) reward b) experience
   c) award d) cure
6. Although it .... strange, I have never drunk coffee!
   a) means b) seems
   c) supposed d) is supposed
7. You aren't supposed to smoke in here. It means that it is not ....
   a) predicted b) necessary
   c) advisable d) allowed
8. ATM's .... to let a bank's customers withdraw cash when they need it.
   a) meant b) seem
   c) are meant d) supposed
9. It .... to rain today as the weather forecast said it would be sunny.
   a) wasn't supposed b) was supposed
   c) was meant d) seemed

10. I didn't want to annoy him. I only .... to make him forget about his sadness.
    a) seemed b) meant
    c) supposed d) seem

6

2 Choose the correct word:

There (1) (mean / seem) to be many good reasons why we should exercise. Sports are (2) (supposed / seemed) to be great for our health. Playing sports, running and swimming is (3) (supposed / supposing) to help us build strong bones and muscles. Exercise (4) (seems / is meant) to enable us to have much confidence in ourselves. A healthy person (5) (is / isn't) supposed to follow the rules of hygiene and sanitation and (6) (is / isn't) supposed to perform bad habits.

Answers:

(1)........	(2)........	(3)........
(4)........	(5)........	(6)........

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

Some Facebook users use it to deceive other people. They put untrue and deceitful information in their profiles and trick people to steal their money or blackmail them.

....

B) Translate into English:

2

- ينبغي على الإنسان أن يكون ذكيًا عند استخدام الإنترنت حتى يكون آمنًا. الوعي هو المفتاح، وعليه أن يتذكر دائمًا أن الإنترنت لا ينسى أبدًا.

....

Unit (6)

Quiz on Part (1)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. We all felt .... when we couldn't buy tickets for the final match.
   a) appointed b) disappointed
   c) acquainted d) imparted
2. My parents are still .... my younger brother as a child although he is 18 years old.
   a) treating b) curing
   c) healing d) affecting
3. Mona really .... wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
   a) pleases b) affects
   c) regrets d) rejoices
4. The longest running .... in the Olympics is the " Marathon".
   a) match b) path
   c) race d) passage
5. The new student in our class is ....; he refuses to lend anything to us.
   a) main b) generous
   c) benevolent d) mean
6. .... it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go out for a walk.
   a) If b) Unless
   c) In case of d) Should
7. If she plans things properly, she never .... into a mess.
   a) got b) will get
   c) would get d) gets
8. If you saw her, ... her to call me?
   a) tell b) you would tell
   c) would you tell d) will you tell
9. We wouldn't have taken the train if we .... the tickets.
   a) had booked b) hadn't booked
   c) booked d) didn't book

10. What .... if you are in trouble?
   a) do you do b) you will do
   c) you would do d) did you do

6

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

(treats – carol – dream – alone – employees – mean)

Charles Dickens' novel "A Christmas ....(1)............" is a novel about society. It raises the question about how characters can change. It tells the story of a rich man who is very ....(2)............ . He doesn't give any presents to anyone. He ....(3)............ his factory ....(4)............ very badly. He doesn't even pay for a good fire although it is very cold. One day he had a bad ....(5)............ when he woke up, he felt ....(6)............ at Christmas. That's why he changes his opinion about money and starts to treat people kindly.

Answers:

(1)............	(2)............	(3)............
(4)............	(5)............	(6)............

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

2

If everyone focuses on their mistakes and accepts them, then they can get rid of them quickly, unlike the person who insists on his mistakes, and does not admit them.

....

B) Translate into English:

2

- تمثل العائلة أساسا كبيرا فى الشعور بالسعادة فى الحياة؛ حيث توفر لك الدعم المعنوى المناسب للنجاح فى الحياة، كما أنها تشعرك بالأمان عندما يتخلى عنك الآخرون.

....

Quiz on Part (2)

20

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

10

1. Publishing the report about the murder brought .... sad memories to the relatives of the victim.
   a) about b) in
   c) back d) for
2. My cousin usually argue with his father .... out with his friends for a long time.
   a) changing b) hanging
   c) returning d) moving
3. The .... on the picture about the accident made us very angry.
   a) caption b) title
   c) subtitle d) address
4. My grandfather is 70 years old, but he still has a strong ....
   a) souvenir b) anniversary
   c) memorial d) memory
5. .... up a phone while talking to your friend can leave a bad impression on him.
   a) Holding b) Raising
   c) Moving d) Picking
6. Supposing you saved a lot of money, what ....?
   a) you'd do b) would you do
   c) will you do d) would you have done
7. We'll spend the day in the countryside. .... that the weather is good.
   a) Should b) Were
   c) Providing d) Whether
8. .... Ahmed to travel abroad, he would take his family with him.
   a) Were b) Providing that
   c) Should d) If
9. .... his carelessness, he wouldn't have been punished.
   a) In case of b) If
   c) If it weren't for d) Without
10. .... low blood pressure, consult your doctor immediately.
    a) Provided that b) In case of
    c) If it hadn't been for d) But for

6

2 Fill in the gap with the correct forms of the verb:

It's been two weeks since I started living in my new house. I honestly thought I ....(1).......... (enjoy) the quiet life of the village. The problem is that it's just so quiet here. If there ....(2).......... (be) more people of my age, I wouldn't feel so lonely. If my family ....(3).......... (moved) here, I wouldn't really have missed my friends in my old neighbourhood. Unless my dad had taken his new job; we ....(4).......... (wouldn't need) to move at all. I wish I ....(5).......... (adapt) to living here. If I forget my old days, I'm sure I ....(6).......... I (be) happier.

Answers:

(1)..........	(2)..........	(3)..........
(4)..........	(5)..........	(6)..........

2

3 A) Translate into Arabic:

Many young people believe that money can bring us happiness. They forget the fact that many of the important things that make you happy such as love and success can't be bought with money.

....

2

B) Translate into English:

- إن ارتكاب الأخطاء يختلف عن الفشل، لكنه يؤدى إلى الفشل، فيجب على الشخص تقبل الأخطاء وإصلاحها والتعلم منها حتى ولو كان صعبًا على نفسه.

....

Part 4



Important General Grammar

Important General Grammar

مراجعة بعض القواعد التى لم تدرس هذا العام

Tenses الأزمنة

1 The Present Simple المضارع البسيط

The Present Simple

- Form: I/They/We/You + Inf.
  Children like ice cream.
- Form: He/She/It + Inf. + s/es/ies
  Hala likes ice cream.
- Negative: don't/doesn't + Inf.
  We don't/He doesn't play golf.
- للحقائق العامة وقوانين الطبيعة.
  Water boils at 100°C.
- للأحداث المتكررة والروتين اليومى.
  Ali catches the bus to work.
- المواقف الحقيقية لمدة طويلة.
  He lives in Assuit.

- يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية تعبر عن حدوث الفعل لمدة طويلة فى المضارع.

usually, often, always, sometimes, never, ever, rarely, seldom, frequently, generally, every day/week/month/year, in the morning/afternoon/evening, at night, on Fridays

- I visit my relatives on Mondays.
- She sometimes visits her relatives.

- تستخدم الكلمات الدالة قبل أى فعل أساسى وبعد v. to be

- He always comes late.
- He is always late.

Other uses استخدامات أخرى

- مع الجداول المحددة ليشير إلى المستقبل.
  The plane arrives at 8:30 tomorrow.
- بعد بعض الروابط الزمنية ليشير إلى المستقبل.
  After he comes, I'll tell him the news.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The earth ______ around the sun.
   a) went b) has gone
   c) go d) goes
2. Adel usually ______ his relatives on Fridays.
   a) visits b) is visiting
   c) visited d) has visited
3. Amr ______ to work by train every day.
   a) travelled b) is travelling
   c) travels d) will travel
4. After my father ______ his work, he will take us to the club.
   a) finishes b) had finished
   c) is finishing d) finish
5. Omar never smokes. That is why he ______ fit.
   a) always is b) always
   c) always does d) is always
6. It ______ rain in Egypt. It is usually hot and sunny.
   a) is often b) doesn't often
   c) has often d) won't often
7. Ask Ahmed to get me a packet of tea when he ______ by the grocer's.
   a) pass b) passed
   c) passes d) passing
8. When ______ from England tomorrow, I'll visit her.
   a) does she come b) she came
   c) did she come d) she comes
9. We ______ football in the streets. We play in the club.
   a) never play b) play never
   c) are never played d) doesn't play
10. According to the timetable, the train ______ at 9 a.m.
    a) arrived b) arrives
    c) will arrive d) is arriving

2 The Present Continuous

المضارع المستمر

The Present Continuous

- Form: I am/ He - She - It + is + v.ing
  I'm/ He is watching TV now.
- Form: They/We/You + are + v.ing
  They're watching TV now.
- Negative: am/is/are + not + v.ing
  Ahmed isn't sleeping now.
- للأحداث التى تحدث لحظة الكلام.
  Noha is washing the dishes.
- للأحداث التى تحدث حول لحظة الكلام.
  Ali is looking for a job these days.
- للأحداث التى تم ترتيبها فى المستقبل.
  We're travelling tomorrow.

- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الزمنية التى تعبر عن حدوث الفعل وقت الكلام.

Now, at the moment, these days, at present, still, nowadays, Look!, Listen!

- Look! A car is coming towards us.
- I'm trying to improve my English these days.

Important Notes

- الأفعال الآتية لا تأتى مع صيغة المضارع المستمر لأنها أفعال غير حركية stative verbs.
- hate يكره - mean يقصد - seem يبدو - want يريد - own يملك - like يحب - belong يخص - believe يعتقد - surprise يندهش - understand يفهم - prefer يفضل - need يحتاج - love يحب - know يعرف.

- He believes that English is interesting.
- Ahmed owns two flats and has two cars.

- يمكن استخدام always مع المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المضايقة أو أن الفعل يتكرر كثيرًا.

- My brother is always coming late and my father is always shouting at him.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam is busy at the moment. She .... her hair.
   a) wash b) washes
   c) is washing d) has washed
2. Look! How fast that lorry ....!
   a) go b) went
   c) goes d) is going
3. Maya .... tennis at the moment. She is practising for a competition.
   a) plays b) is playing
   c) will play d) has played
4. We .... a card for my brother. Do you want to help?
   a) are making b) make
   c) have made d) made
5. My sister enjoys working with children. At the moment, she .... to be a primary school teacher.
   a) is training b) trains
   c) trained d) has trained
6. I bought my new camera last week. I .... a photo of you now.
   a) take b) 'm taking
   c) took d) had taken
7. At the moment we .... a history project at school. It is very interesting.
   a) do b) did
   c) are doing d) doing
8. We usually go abroad every year, but this year we .... at home.
   a) stay b) staying
   c) stays d) are staying
9. **A:** Where's Nada? **B:** She .... in a tennis match.
   a) played b) is playing
   c) has played d) plays
10. Everything is arranged for my travel next Saturday. It means I .... next Saturday.
    a) travel b) will travel
    c) am travelling d) was travelling

3 The Past Simple
الماضي البسيط

The Past Simple

Form
التصريف الثاني + كل الضمائر
We built the High Dam.

Negative
didn't + Inf.
We didn't play golf yesterday.

استخدام was/were بدون فعل آخر.
Osama wasn't ill yesterday.

أى حدث تم وانتهى فى الماضى.
Baird invented the TV.

أى حدث ماض مع كلمة دالة عليه.
Ali visited me yesterday.

عادات الماضى.
He lived in Assuit when he was young.

- يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية تعبر عن تمام حدوث الفعل فى الماضى.

yesterday, last night/week/month/year/Friday/two days/weeks/months ago, then, when, How long ago .....?, in 1900/2000/2019, the other day.

- He graduated in 1991.
- How long ago did she leave her work?

Other uses
استخدامات أخرى

- يستخدم مع نفس كلمات المضارع البسيط ولكن مع كلمة دالة على الماضى.

- He always came to school late when he was young. = He was always late.
- When he was a child, he usually/never walked to school.

Used to

تعبر عن عادات الماضى ولا تستخدم مع حدث قصير.
People used to travel on camels in the past.

didn't + use to + Inf.
I didn't use to be fat.

Osama used to smoke. =
Osama no longer smokes.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last Saturday we .... to visit our uncle in the countryside.
   a) went b) were going
   c) go d) have gone
2. We .... a very good time on the beach two days ago.
   a) were having b) had
   c) have had d) having
3. **A:** When did they .... married? **B:** 15 years ago.
   a) got b) have got
   c) getting d) get
4. I wasn't hungry so I .... anything.
   a) was eating b) ate
   c) didn't eat d) haven't eaten
5. **A:** .... you speak to Mr. Sayed? **B:** Yes, I phoned him.
   a) Did b) Have
   c) Were d) Had
6. My uncle .... in hospital last month.
   a) is b) has been
   c) was d) was being
7. Ali always .... to work when he was young.
   a) walks b) walked
   c) is walking d) was walking
8. When I was eight, I .... a programme about a famous Egyptian doctor on TV.
   a) was seeing b) have seen
   c) am seeing d) saw
9. My father works in a bank in the city centre. He .... there 15 years ago.
   a) started b) starts
   c) is starting d) was starting
10. The bus was terribly slow so it .... us four hours to get home.
    a) takes b) took
    c) is talking d) was taking

4 The Past Continuous الماضي المستمر

The Past Continuous

- للأحداث التي استمرت لفترة في الماضي.
  It was raining all day yesterday.
- عند تحديد وقت معين في الماضي.
  He was sleeping at 10 yesterday.
- لحدثين كان أحدهما مستمرًا وقطعه آخر.
  As she was cleaning the room, she found the ring.
- **Form:** I - He - She - It + was + v.ing
  I/He was watching TV then.
- **Form:** They/We/You + were + v.ing
  We were driving at 7 yesterday.
- **Negative:** was/were + not + v.ing
  It wasn't raining at 7 yesterday.
- يستخدم مع التعبيرات والروابط الزمنية الآتية:
  While/ As/ Just as/ When/ All ..... day/ night

While / When / As/Just as + Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر → Past simple ماضٍ بسيط

Past simple ماضٍ بسيط ← while / when / as/just as ← Past continuous ماضٍ مستمر

- While he was walking in the street, he met his old friends.

Important Notes

- الأفعال الآتية لا تأتي مع صيغة الماضي المستمر لأنها أفعال غير حركية stative verbs

be يكون - believe يعتقد - belong يخص - like يحب - own يملك - want يريد - seem يبدو - mean يقصد - hate يكره - know يعرف - love يحب - need يحتاج - prefer يفضل - understand يفهم - surprise, etc.

- While I was ill, I took much medicine.
- يمكن استخدام الحدثين مستمرين.
- As I was driving, I was phoning Ahmed.
- يمكن استخدام v.ing بعد While إذا لم يوجد فاعل.
- While driving, I saw an accident.
- بعد during نستخدم الاسم وليس v.ing
- During the match, the light went out.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mona .... a beautiful dream when the alarm clock rang.
   a) is having b) having
   c) was having d) had
2. The train .... when we arrived at the station.
   a) was waiting b) waited
   c) had waited d) waiting
3. When he was carrying a suitcase, he .... it on his foot.
   a) was dropping b) dropped
   c) has dropped d) drops
4. While I was doing the homework, my mother .... our dinner.
   a) prepare b) prepared
   c) will prepare d) was preparing
5. We .... dinner when you phoned, so we couldn't answer the phone.
   a) were having b) had had
   c) was having d) have
6. I .... my homework when the phone rang.
   a) did b) does
   c) was doing d) am doing
7. I .... my lesson at 6 p.m. yesterday.
   a) reading b) was reading
   c) have read d) reads
8. While we .... in Alexandria, we enjoyed ourselves a lot.
   a) are b) were being
   c) be d) were
9. .... the flight, a passenger threatened to hijack the plane.
   a) While b) During
   c) In d) For
10. While .... the tree, I fell down.
    a) climb b) climbed
    c) climbing d) was climbing

5 The Present Perfect

المضارع التام

حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمرًا ولكن مع work/learn/study و stative verbs
I have known Omar since 2001.

عند ذكر العدد وعدم ذكر متى حدث الفعل.
I have visited 4 European countries.

حدث غير محدد تم قبل وقت الكلام.
Ali has written 3 reports lately.

Form have/has + P.P.
The train has just stopped.

عند الحديث عن خبرات الشخص.
My brother has qualified in medicine.

Negative haven't/hasn't + P.P.
He hasn't come back yet.

حدث تم وانتهى ولكن له أثر واضح في الحاضر.
There is glass. Omar has broken the window.



just · already · ever · never · since · for · recently · lately · so far · over the time · up till now

already	She has already fed the baby.
just	I have just come back from my holiday.
ever	This is the most expensive car I've ever bought.
never	They have never visited Luxor.
yet	I haven't finished breakfast yet. Has your course started yet?
so far/up till now	What have you done so far?
lately/recently	Have you bought any shirts recently /lately?
over	Egypt has changed over the last 5 years.
How long	How long has he had this car?
for	I haven't seen Mohammed for five years.
since	She hasn't visited us since October.

For & Since

For
- a day/a month/a year
- weeks/months/years
- several days/weeks/years
- 2 hours
- ages
- a long time
- the last week/year
- a/an تأتى for مع كل ما انتهى بـ s أو بدأ بـ a/an

Since
- ماض بسيط + he left school.
- Friday/Monday الأيام
- June/April الشهور
- 2000 السنوات
- 2 o'clock الساعات
- عبارة اسمية + his childhood
- last week/last year
- then منذ ذلك الحين (يدل ماض بسيط)

Have been (to)/ Have gone (to)

have been to — ذهب إلى مكان وعاد منه
- He has been to Cairo.
- Ahmed, where have you been?

have gone to — ذهب إلى مكان ولم يعد أو فى الطريق إلى هناك
- They have gone to school.
- Where has Omar gone? I can't find him.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look! What you ______! How can we clean the floor now?
   a) will do b) has done c) have done d) had done
2. A: Where is Mai? B: She ______ to the shops. She will be back soon.
   a) has gone b) has been c) goes d) is going
3. My brother has ______ joined the football club.
   a) ever b) just c) yet d) since
4. I ______ a break since this morning.
   a) haven't b) had c) am not having d) haven't had
5. I don't need to wash my car. My brother ______ it for me already.
   a) had washed b) is washing c) has washed d) washes
6. She hasn't written to me ______ she travelled.
   a) yet b) ever c) for d) since
7. I ______ to be a doctor since I was ten.
   a) have wanted b) wanted c) wanting d) was wanting
8. I ______ in Cairo for ten years. I'm still living.
   a) have lived b) lived c) had lived d) living
9. Many people have studied it since it ______ in the 1980s.
   a) has written b) was written c) wrote d) writing
10. This is the best book I ______.
    a) have never read b) was reading c) have ever read d) am reading

6 The Past Perfect

الماضى التام

The Past Perfect

- **Form:** كل الضمائر + had + P.P.
  I had finished by 3 p.m.
- **Negative:** hadn't + P.P.
  I hadn't finished by 3 p.m.
- الماضى التام جملتين وليس جملة واحدة.
  Before leaving, I'd taken my keys.
- حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى.
  By 8, I'd finished my work.
- حدث انتهى وأثره كان واضحا فى الماضى.
  Ali was ill as he'd eaten bad food.

- يستخدم مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.
before, after, till/until, when, by, by the time, as soon as.

1 After / As soon as + Past perfect (ماض تام) , Past simple (ماض بسيط)

2 Before / By the time + Past simple (ماض بسيط) , Past perfect (ماض تام)

- After I had saved enough money, I bought the car.
- Before I bought the car, I had saved enough money.

3 ماض بسيط منفى didn't + inf. **till/until** ماض تام had + P.P.

- My son didn't cross the street until he had looked both ways.
- I wasn't happy until I had passed my exams.
- He wasn't given the job until the boss had signed his application form.

4 After / Before + N. / v.ing , ماض بسيط / ماض تام

- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد After أو Before نستخدم v.ing

- After finishing his work, he helped me.
= After he had finished his work, helped me.
- Before helping me, he had finished his work.
= Before he helped me he had finished his work.

5 No sooner / Hardly / Scarcely + had + subject + P.P. (لم يكد ..... حتى ..... / الماضى التام فى شكل سؤال) + than / when / when + Past simple (ماض بسيط)

- No sooner had Marwa found the money than she reported the police.

إذا جاءت هذه الكلمات فى أول الكلام تكون القاعدة السابقة وإذا لم تأت فى أول الكلام يكون الآتى:

الفاعل + had + no sooner / hardly / scarcely + P.P. + than / when / when + Past simple (ماض بسيط)

- Marwa had hardly found the money when she reported the police.

6 On + (v-ing) = When + (clause)

- On seeing the thief, he ran away. = When he saw the thief, he ran away.

7 By + فترة فى الماضى + Past perfect ماض تام

- By yesterday بحلول أمس he had reached Paris.

8 Having + P.P. = After + Past perfect

- Having booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.
= After I had booked the tickets, I took the train to Assuit.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We ordered our food after we ______ at the restaurant.
   a) sitting b) had sat
   c) sit d) were sitting
2. As soon as I ______ a story, I started the next one.
   a) 'd finished b) finish
   c) have finished d) was finishing
3. We got very wet because we ______ to take our umbrellas.
   a) forgotten b) forget
   c) had forgotten d) have forgotten
4. What did you do after ______ school yesterday?
   a) had left b) left
   c) leave d) leaving
5. When I ______ the station, the train left. I caught it.
   a) have reached b) had reached
   c) reach d) was reaching
6. No sooner had my brother joined the army ______ he had his hair cut.
   a) than b) when
   c) that d) then
7. Having ______ his ankle, he gave up playing football.
   a) had broken b) break
   c) broke d) broken
8. As soon as I ______ a space, I parked my car.
   a) was finding b) find
   c) had found d) have found
9. I ______ in the essay until I had completed it.
   a) have handed b) didn't hand
   c) handed d) had handed
10. When I reached home, father wasn't there. He ______ out.
    a) had gone b) went
    c) goes d) has gone

7 Question Tags السؤال المذيل

- السؤال المذيل هو سؤال يكون آخر الجملة الخبرية لتأكيد المعنى.
- يتم عمل هذا السؤال من الفعل المساعد أو الناقص فقط وبعده الضمير (الضمير العائد على الاسم)
- إذا كانت الجملة المراد تأكيدها مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفياً والعكس صحيح.
- يستخدم لطلب الموافقة أو التأكيد.
- لابد أن يكون السؤال المنفي مختصراً.

Positive statement (+)	,	negative question tags (−)	Positive statement (−)	,	negative question tags (+)
You are a student	,	aren't you?	Hala isn't a nurse	,	is she?

(+) Sentence		(−) Tag
Ali is Egyptian	,	isn't he?
You study hard	,	don't you?
He lives in Cairo	,	doesn't he?
You were at home	,	weren't you?
Ola visited her uncle	,	didn't she?
Omar was watching TV	,	wasn't he?
You have seen my bag	,	haven't you?
You have a new car	,	don't you?
She's finished the report	,	hasn't she?
She has blond hair	,	doesn't she?
He'd finished by 6 p.m.	,	hadn't he?
He'd rather leave now	,	wouldn't he?
He'd better find a job	,	hadn't he?
They'll help us	,	won't they?
He can ride a horse	,	can't he?
We need more money	,	don't we?
He used to get up early	,	didn't he?
I think he is a thief	,	isn't he?
I'm right	,	aren't I?

(−) Sentence		(+) Tag
John isn't Egyptian	,	is he?
You don't study hard	,	do you?
He doesn't live in Cairo	,	does he?
You weren't at home	,	were you?
Ola didn't visit her uncle	,	did she?
Omar wasn't watching TV	,	was he?
You haven't seen my bag	,	have you?
You don't have a new car	,	do you?
She hasn't finished yet	,	has she?
She doesn't have a car	,	does she?
He hadn't come by 6 pm	,	had he?
He'd rather not come	,	would he?
He'd better not go now	,	had he?
They won't help us	,	will they?
He can't ride a horse	,	can he?
We needn't more money	,	need we?
He didn't use to help us	,	did he?
I don't think he is a thief	,	is he?
I'm not mistaken	,	am I?

حالات خاصة					
Let's go out اقتراح	,	shall/shan't we?	Let us go out طلب	,	will/won't you?
Interesting	,	isn't it?	Beautiful	,	isn't she?
This/That is Ahmed's car	,	isn't it?	These are Ali's pens	,	aren't they?
There's a celebrity here	,	isn't there?	There're 2 cars here	,	aren't there?
Stop talking	,	will/won't you?	Don't speak loudly	,	will you?

ملاحظات

- الجملة التي تحتوي على never – rarely – hardly – seldom – nor – neither – few – little – no
  - تعتبر جملا منفية، لذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتا:
  - He can hardly run, can he?
  - He rarely visits you, does he?
- إذا كان الفاعل Everything - Something - Nothing يكون الضمير It.
  - Nothing can live without energy, can it?
- إذا كان الفاعل Everyone, body - Someone, body - No one, body يكون الضمير they
  - Everyone is coming to the party, aren't they?

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They're leaving soon, ...?
   a) aren't they b) don't they c) are they d) they aren't
2. She likes classical music, ...?
   a) isn't she b) did she c) does she d) doesn't she
3. He has been to Paris, ...?
   a) doesn't he b) hasn't he c) has he d) haven't they
4. She used to like it here, ...?
   a) used she b) wasn't she c) didn't she d) wasn't it
5. They had a party last night, ...?
   a) hadn't they b) weren't they c) do they d) didn't they
6. I'm shorter than her, ...?
   a) am I b) aren't I c) have I d) don't I
7. There is some coffee for me, ...?
   a) isn't there b) isn't it c) aren't they d) is there
8. Don't leave the door open, ...?
   a) won't you b) do you c) will you d) are you
9. Let's consult a specialist, ...?
   a) don't we b) do we c) shall we d) aren't we
10. Everyone has a mobile phone these days, ...?
    a) don't they b) haven't they c) does he d) hasn't he

11. Few students knew the answer, ... ?
    a) didn't they
    b) don't they
    c) do they
    d) did they
12. Life .... different in a hundred years' time, won't it?
    a) will not be
    b) would be
    c) will not
    d) will be
13. We can go out now; the danger is over, ... ?
    a) is it
    b) isn't it
    c) hasn't it
    d) isn't he
14. It's been a long time since you've seen him, ... ?
    a) haven't you
    b) isn't it
    c) hasn't it
    d) is it
15. You've never had a Mercedes before, ... you?
    a) have
    b) haven't
    c) had
    d) hadn't
16. You hardly ever panic, ... you?
    a) aren't
    b) have
    c) do
    d) don't
17. There is little we can do about it, ... ?
    a) isn't it
    b) is there
    c) isn't there
    d) aren't they
18. You have no money to lend me, ... you?
    a) can't
    b) haven't
    c) do
    d) don't
19. You'd never say such a thing behind my back, ... you?
    a) did
    b) would
    c) should
    d) had
20. You do have sugar in your coffee, ... you?
    a) haven't
    b) aren't
    c) isn't
    d) don't

8 Participle clauses عبارات اسم الفاعل

Participle clauses are groups of words which begin with a verb in the -ing form. These clauses can come before or after the main part of a sentence.

- عبارات اسم الفاعل هى مجموعة من الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ ing، وهذه العبارات تأتى قبل أو بعد الجملة الرئيسية.

Usage الاستخدام

1. Use participle clauses instead of clauses starting with as or when:

تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل لاستبدال الجمل التى بها When/As/While/After وبعدهم فاعل وفعل .

- As Sara was walking to town yesterday, she saw two of her friends.
- Walking to town yesterday, Sara saw two of her school friends.
- When they arrived home late, they found that the door was locked.
- Arriving home late, they found that the door was locked.

2. Participle clauses can also be used instead of clauses starting with and.

تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلاً من الجمل التى تبدأ بـ and.

- The bird flew away and made a very loud noise.
- The bird flew away, making a very loud noise.

3. The subject of the participle clause must be the same as the subject of the main clause:

فاعل عبارة اسم الفاعل يجب أن يكون هو نفس الفاعل للجملة الرئيسية.

- I heard the phone ring and I picked it up.
- Hearing the phone ring, I picked it up.
- The car crashed into a garden and knocked down a tree.
- The car crashed into a garden, knocking down a tree.

4. To replace a clause of reason (because, as, since + subject + verb).

تستخدم عبارات اسم الفاعل بدلاً من جمل السببية (because, as, since).

- Because I felt extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.
- Feeling extremely tired, I decided to rest under a tree.

5. To replace a relative clause in the active voice.

لاستبدال عبارة موصولة فى المبنى للمعلوم.

- The boy who is talking to Jim is my brother.
- The boy talking to Jim is my brother.

6. To form the negative of participles, we add not before the participles.

لصياغة النفى من اسم الفاعل أو اسم المفعول به فإننا نضيف not قبلهما.

- Not wanting to miss the bus, they ran to the bus stop.

7. After the verbs of sensation see, hear, feel, smell, listen, watch and notice.

بعد أفعال الشعور والإحساس السابقة لتعبر عن رؤية أو سماع جزء من الحدث وعند سماع أو رؤية الحدث كاملا نستخدم المصدر.

- I saw my neighbours leaving the house early this morning.

8. After the verbs: catch, find, leave, go, come, spend time, waste the time and be busy.

- He was busy painting the room.
- They wasted the time playing cards.
- I left my children doing their homework.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We broke the computer .... to my father.
   a) belonged b) belongs c) which belonging d) belonging
2. .... for her gloves, she dug through the entire wardrobe.
   a) Search b) Searched c) Searching d) Being searched
3. .... in the street, the police considered it a sign for the thieves to enter the shop.
   a) Whistling b) Whistle c) To whistle d) Whistled
4. .... in the shade, we ate cake and drank coffee.
   a) To sit b) Sitting c) Sat d) Sit
5. People .... late will not be allowed to enter.
   a) arrived b) arrive c) to arrive d) arriving
6. The child sat at the desk .... a picture.
   a) painting b) paint c) painted d) paints
7. .... to the bus stop, she lost her shoe.
   a) Run b) To run c) Running d) Ran
8. .... on the beach, we watched many people swimming in the sea.
   a) Lied b) Lying c) Lie d) To lie
9. .... on their beds, the children couldn't do their homework.
   a) To sit b) Sat c) Sit d) Sitting
10. The man .... a blue jumper is in the garden.
    a) wore b) wearing c) to wear d) wear
11. .... enough courage, they couldn't walk during the night.
    a) Had had b) Had c) Having d) Not having
12. .... to travel abroad, my brother bought a lot of his belongings.
    a) Not wanting b) Wanted c) Wanting d) Being wanted
13. .... to meet his friend, the boy didn't go to school.
    a) Wanting b) To want c) Wanted d) Not wanting
14. .... your room, Amira.
    a) Cleaning b) Cleaned c) To clean d) Clean
15. .... my brother in trouble, I offered to help him solve his problem.
    a) To find b) Finding c) Found d) Find

9 Linking words (Conjunctions) أدوات الربط

1 Cause أدوات ربط السبب

Because / As / Since / For	+	subject فاعل	+	verb فعل

Because of / On account of / As a result of / Owing to / Due to / Thanks to بفضل / Through	+	noun / adj.+ noun / (v + ing)

- Because (As/Since) he is clever, he always comes first.
- Because of his cleverness (being clever), he always comes first.

Being لكونه/لكونها + adj.

- Being polite, his teachers respect and love him.

لاحظ

(because of/due to the fact that + جملة)

- Because of the fact that **he made mistakes**, he was punished.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was .... his stupidity that we got into trouble.
   a) as b) because c) because of d) as a result
2. He found it difficult to work in China .... he could not understand Chinese.
   a) because of b) because c) due to d) so
3. Ramy didn't play .... his illness.
   a) because b) as c) for d) owing to
4. She was very unhappy .... she missed her children.
   a) for b) owing to c) due to d) because of
5. .... the bad weather, we cancelled the trip.
   a) As b) Because c) Due to d) Owing
6. .... I was having a nice time, I decided to stay longer.
   a) Although b) Because of c) Due to d) As
7. She couldn't walk .... she had broken her leg.
   a) so b) because c) owing to d) despite
8. She passed the test .... she had a good teacher.
   a) because b) so c) in spite of d) in addition
9. Thousands of people lost their jobs .... the recession.
   a) so b) as c) because d) because of
10. The government banned that movie .... the public opinion was against it.
   a) despite b) owing to c) because d) so

ادوات ربط التناقض

2 Contrast

Although / Though / Even though / Even if	+	subject فاعل	+	verb فعل

Despite / In spite of / For all / Regardless of	+	Noun / adj.+ noun / (v + ing)

- Although (Though) he is strong, he can't carry the bag.
- Despite (In spite of) his strength (being strong), he can't carry the bag.

Subject فاعل	+	verb فعل	, but / . However, / , however, / , yet,	subject فاعل	+	verb فعل

ملحوظة

He is strong, but (. However, / , however) he can't carry the bag.

- يمكن استخدام although/despite فى أول الجملة او وسطها.

- Although our team played badly, they won the match.
- Our team won the match although they played badly.

لاحظ

(In spite of/Despite the fact that + جملة)

- In spite of the fact that **he ran** fast, he couldn't win the race.

However مهما	+ adj./adv.	+ فاعل + فعل
Whatever مهما	+ noun	+ فاعل + فعل
Adj. كل صفة حسب معناها	+ as	+ فاعل + فعل

- However strong he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Strong as he is, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever strength he has, he can't carry the bag.
- Whatever you do, I'll forgive you.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... he was injured, he continued to play.
   a) Despite b) However
   c) But d) Though
2. She did not get the job, ... the fact that she did well in the interview.
   a) in spite b) in spite of
   c) despite of d) although
3. My husband did not like the movie; ...., I enjoyed it a lot.
   a) however b) despite
   c) in spite d) in spite of
4. .... fast our car was, we took 5 hours to reach Assuit.
   a) Whatever b) Although
   c) However d) As
5. .... mistakes he made, he wasn't punished.
   a) However b) Although
   c) Owing to d) Whatever
6. .... I was invited to the party, I did not go.
   a) Because b) Although
   c) Besides d) If
7. He failed .... working hard.
   a) without b) incase of
   c) despite d) because of
8. .... the headache, I enjoyed the movie.
   a) Despite of b) In spite of
   c) However d) But for
9. He passed the test, ..., he didn't get the job.
   a) besides b) but for
   c) because d) however
10. She passed her exam .... having many problems.
    a) in case of b) without
    c) despite d) in spite

3 Addition

أدوات ربط الإضافة

In addition to / As well as / Besides (بالإضافة إلى)	+ v-ing	, subject (فاعل)	verb (فعل)

In addition to / As well as / Besides ▸ **studying** her lessons, **Mona helped** her mother.

فاعل	فعل	مفعول		مفعول ثانٍ اسم
Osama	**plays**	**football**	**as well as / in addition to / and**	**tennis.**

فاعل	+ as well as	+ فاعل ثانٍ	+ فعل يتبع الفاعل الأول
Omar	as well as	his friends	is a doctor.

Not only .... but also ليس فقط ...... ولكن أيضًا

- لاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني.

▸ Not only Ahmed but also his friends are going to the party.
▸ Not only did Manal do her homework, but also she helped her mother.

- لاحظ أن الفعل يأتي في صيغة الاستفهام.

4 Result

أدوات ربط النتيجة

Subject (فاعل)	+ verb (فعل)	therefore / so / consequently / that's why / as a result	subject (فاعل)	+ verb (فعل)

▸ Our team played badly, so/therefore they lost the match.
▸ Forests are being destroyed. As a result a lot of animals are losing their homes.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The rent has increased drastically ...., we've decided to change the flat.
   a) although b) because
   c) consequently d) however
2. .... doing her homework, she helped her mother.
   a) Not only b) As well
   c) In addition to d) In addition
3. The teachers .... the principal were there.
   a) as well as b) in addition
   c) as well d) but also
4. She has got not only a motorbike, ... a car.
   a) as well as b) and
   c) but d) but also
5. I've always wanted to study philosophy, ... I've decided to go back to school.
   a) as b) so
   c) because d) but
6. The cricketer played badly. ...., he was extremely rude to a press photographer.
   a) because b) although
   c) as d) In addition
7. She has got a car .... a motorbike.
   a) as well b) as well as
   c) as d) in addition
8. He sustained severe injuries and, ..., spent the rest of his life in a wheel chair.
   a) consequently b) because
   c) although d) despite
9. Not only .... much time on the internet, but she finds time to play as well.
   a) she spends b) she does spend
   c) does she spend d) she spent
10. He visited many places of interest .... meeting his friends at the hotel.
    a) as well b) besides
    c) not only d) so

5 Purpose

أدوات ربط الهدف/الغرض

Subject فاعل + Verb فعل + in order to / to / so as to + Inf. مصدر

- He studies hard to/so as to/in order to get high marks.

Subject فاعل + verb فعل + so that / in order that + sub. + can/will/could/would + inf.

- He studies hard so that/in order that he can get high marks.
- He studied hard so that/in order that he could get high marks.

جملة + for لأجل + Noun/v-ing.

- He went to the doctor's for a check-up.

• لاحظ أننا نستخدم for + v.ing للتعبير عن الغرض العلم من الشيء وليس لماذا يفعل الشخص الشيء.

- We use a pen for writing. I use this brush for washing the dishes. Or (to wash)

I went into the kitchen to wash the dishes. (not for washing)

• في النفي نستخدم so as not to/in order not to

- He put his keys in his briefcase in order not to lose them.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I went to his office .... meet him
   a) so that b) because
   c) so d) in order to
2. I am planning to move house .... be closer to my place of work.
   a) so b) so as to
   c) so that d) because of
3. I talked to the shy girl .... she would not feel left out.
   a) in order to b) so as not to
   c) so that d) because
4. A barometer is used .... measuring pressure.
   a) for b) to
   c) owing to d) thanks to
5. He got up early .... miss the first bus to the factory.
   a) so as to b) so as not to
   c) so that d) to
6. I warned him .... he would not repeat the same mistake.
   a) so as not to b) so as to
   c) to d) so that
7. I took the phone back to the store .... a replacement.
   a) so that get b) to get
   c) to getting d) so as not to get
8. I am putting the meat in the oven now, ... it will be ready by eight o'clock.
   a) because b) so as not to
   c) so that d) so
9. I went to Canada .... my brother.
   a) so that see b) for seeing
   c) to see d) in order see
10. He borrowed some money from his friend so that he .... buy a car.
   a) might b) will
   c) can d) may

10 Phrasal verbs

Verbs followed by prepositions

- able to: قادر على ▸ He was able to climb the hill.
- ability at: القدرة على (good at - bad at - clever at - skilful at - quick at)
  ▸ She shows great ability at drawing. ▸ He is not good at mathematics.
- absorbed in: منهمك فى (much interested in)
  ▸ Tareq is absorbed in solving the problem.
- accused of: متهم بـ ▸ He was accused of killing his wife.
- accustomed to اعتاد على ▸ I am accustomed to getting up early.
- afraid of: خائف من (scared of - frightened of - terrified of)
  ▸ Are you afraid of darkness? ▸ Some people are scared of black cats.
  ▸ Maha is frightened of snakes. ▸ Few people are terrified of thunder.
- agree with: يوافق شخصاً (a person)
  ▸ I always agree with you.
- agree about: يوافق على موضوع (a subject of discussion)
  ▸ I agreed about most things.
- agree to: (suggestion) ▸ At last he agreed to my suggestion.
- aim at: يهدف إلى ▸ She aims at getting high marks.
- aim at: يصوب إلى ▸ The hunter aimed at the bird.
- alarmed at: منزعج من ▸ Nadia is alarmed at the noise.
- angry with: (a person) غاضب من شخص:
  ▸ I am angry with him.
- angry about/for (something) ▸ I am angry about/for his bad behaviour.
- anxious (worried) about قلق
  ▸ He is anxious about the results of his examinations.
- apologise for يعتذر عن ▸ I apologised for my mistake.
- apply for a job: يتقدم لوظيفة ▸ He can apply for this job.

- ask for: يطلب ▸ Don't ask for troubles.
- arrive in : يصل إلى المكان كبير) ▸ What time does the plane arrive in London?
- arrive at: يصل إلى المكان صغير) ▸ When did you arrive at the village?
- ashamed of: خجلان من ▸ She was ashamed of her behaviour.
- astonished at: مندهش/مصدوم
- surprised at/shocked at ▸ I was astonished at his bad conduct.
- attach to : (join) يتصل بـ ▸ He attached the wire to the radio.
- aware of : مدرك بـ ▸ I was aware of what had happened.
- back up: يساند
  ▸ The members backed him up in the parliament.
- believe in يؤمن بـ ▸ We believe in one God.
- belong to (someone) ينتمي إلى ▸ This coat does not belong to me
- beware of : يحذر (be careful) ▸ Beware of dogs.
- blame ... for: يلوم على
  ▸ The policeman blamed him for driving carelessly.
- blow up: يفجر/يكبر الصورة
  ▸ He blew the photo up so it looked nicer.
  ▸ The building was blown up by the terrorists.
- boast of (about) يتفاخر ▸ He boasted of his famous uncle.
- borrow ... from يستعير من ▸ I borrowed this book from the library.
- bored with: يمل من شيء
  ▸ She is bored with doing the same thing every morning.
- break down: يتعطل ▸ I need a mechanic. My car broke down.
- break down: ينهار
  ▸ She broke down when she heard the bad news.
- break into: يقتحم ▸ The thief broke into the house.
- break off: يفسخ ▸ They broke off their engagement.
- break out: تنشب الحرب/الحريق
  ▸ War broke out in 1973. ▸ Fire broke out all night.

- bring about/happen
  ▸ Science has brought about many changes in our life.
- bring up: يربي ▸ Bringing up children is not an easy task.
- buy ... for: يشتري بـ ▸ Noha bought this dress for 200 $.
- call on (visit) يزور ▸ We can call on Suzy tomorrow.
- call after: يسمى باسم ▸ She was called after her mother.
- call back: يعود ▸ The salesman will call back in the evening.
- call off: يؤجل
  ▸ The football match was called off because of the rain.
- calm down: يهدأ ▸ Calm down and don't lose your temper.
- care about: يهتم بـ ▸ Do you care about winning a prize?
- carry on: (continue) ▸ We can carry on our discussion at night.
- carry out: ينفذ ▸ Surgeons carry out operations.
- capable of: (thing) قادر على
  ▸ He is capable of doing a lot of things.
- careful of: يراعي ▸ You should be careful of your health.
- charge with: متهم بـ ▸ This man was charged with murder.
- check in: يسجل (report one's arrival at a hotel/an airport)
  ▸ You must check in at the airport two hours before the plane leaves.
- check out: ينهي إجراءات مغادرة الفندق ▸ You can't leave the hotel without checking out.
- collide with: يتصادم بـ (someone/something)
  ▸ A bus collided with a train.
- come about: يحدث ▸ How has it come about that it rains in July?
- complain to: يشكو إلى ▸ I complained to the manager about the food.
- complain about (of): يشكو من ▸ Mary is complaining about the noise.
- composed of: يتكون من ▸ Water is composed of hydrogen & oxygen.
- concentrate on: يركز على ▸ Please, concentrate on your work.

- consist of: يتكون من ▸ The robot consists of several parts.
- congratulate on: يهنئ على ▸ She congratulated Noha on her success.
- confidence in: ثقة في ▸ You should have confidence in me.
- covered with: مغطى بـ ▸ The table is covered with dust.
- crowded with : مزدحم بـ ▸ The cinema is crowded with people.
- crash into: (drive into — run into) يصطدم بـ
  ▸ His car crashed into the wall.
- cure of (v.): يعالج من ▸ This medicine cured me of the cold.
- cure for + (n.) علاج لـ ▸ Doctors didn't find cure for some diseases.
- curious to: فضولى لأن ▸ Rana was curious to know the secret.
- cut out: يفصل بالقطع ▸ He cut out the funny picture from the magazine.
- cut off: يفصل/يقطع ▸ The company cut off electricity last night.
- deal with: يتعامل مع ▸ This book deals with many subjects.
- deal in: يتاجر في ▸ This company deals in buying and selling cars.
- depend (rely) on: يعتمد على ▸ Children usually depend on their mothers.
- die down: يهدأ/يخمد
  ▸ Wait until her anger dies down. ▸ The fire died down at last.
- die of: يموت من ▸ Many people die of hunger in Somalia.
- different from: مختلف عن ▸ She is completely different from her mother.
- difficulty in: صعوبة في ▸ He found great difficulty in learning Latin.
- disappointed in/with:
  ▸ My parents will be disappointed in/with me if I fail.
- disappointed about/at:
  ▸ I am disappointed at/about losing the race.
- divide into: يقسم إلى ▸ She divided the cake into two parts.
- draw up: reach/stop ▸ The car drew up at the station.
- dress up: put on special clothes يتخفى في
  ▸ The clown dressed up funny clothes to make people laugh.

- dream of: يتخيل ▸ I always dream of becoming a millionaire.
- dream about: (asleep) يحلم بـ
  ▸ I dreamt about a fire that broke out in the room.
- dressed in: ▸ The waiter was dressed in black.
- drop in: [a short informal visit] يزور من غير ميعاد
  ▸ You can drop in for a cup of tea.
- drop off: (sleep for a short time) ينام
  ▸ My father always drops off for a few minutes in the afternoon.
- drop off: ينزل شخصا ▸ You can drop me off at the end of the street.
- drop off: ينخفض ▸ His interest in chess has dropped off.
- drop down: يسقط ▸ The apple dropped down from the tree.
- due to: نتيجة لـ ▸ The accident was due to his careless driving.
- eager for: شغوف بـ ▸ They are eager for success.
- effect on: تأثير على ▸ Soft music has a good effect on me.
- engaged in: منهمك في ▸ Sami is engaged (busy) in his new job.
- envious of: غيور من ▸ She is envious of her friend.
- exchange for: يستبدل بـ ▸ Farmers exchange cotton for wheat.
- exception to: مستثنى من ▸ What he said is exception to his behaviour.
- excited about: worried مثار لـ ▸ Jane was excited about meeting her uncle.
- excuse for: يعذر ▸ He excused his son for not coming early.
- fade away: تذبل/تبهت ▸ Plants need water otherwise they fade away.
- famous for: مشهور بـ ▸ He is famous for his bravery.
- fail in: يفشل في ▸ He failed in winning the prize.
- fond of: مغرم بـ ▸ She is fond of chocolate.
- full of: مملوء بـ ▸ This bottle is full of oil.
- fill in: يملأ استمارة ▸ You should fill in this application form.
- fill with: يملأ .... بـ ▸ He filled the pen with ink.
- get across: make clear يوضح ▸ He got the problem across to me.

- get by: يكسب بالكاد ▸ having just enough money to live
- get away with: يفلت من العقاب ▸ escape punishment
- get over: يتغلب على/يشفى من مرض ▸ He got over his serious illness.
- get rid of: يتخلص من ▸ At last he got rid of his bad habits.
- get along with: يساير ▸ Tom couldn't get along with his classmates.
- get on: يصعد ▸ The bus is full. We cannot get on it.
- get off: يهبط ▸ We should get off the bus at the next stop.
- get up: يستيقظ ▸ What time did you get up?
- get through: ينجح ▸ Dina got through her test.
- give away: يفضح ▸ His shaking hand gave him away.
- give in: yield يستسلم ▸ It was such a difficult problem that I gave in.
- give up: يقلع عن ▸ He gave up smoking.
- glad of/about: مسرور من ▸ She is glad of the news.
- good at: جيد فى ▸ I am good at marketing.
- good for: حسن لـ ▸ Much food is not good for health.
- good to: عطوف على ▸ You must be good to your mother.
- grieve at: يحزن على ▸ She grieved at the death of her grandmother.
- guilty of: متهم فى ▸ He was guilty of murder.
- hope for: يأمل فى ▸ Everyone hopes for success.
- ignorant of: جاهل بـ ▸ He is ignorant of even the simplest facts.
- indebted to: (grateful to) مدين لـ ▸ Students should be indebted to their teachers.
- insist on: يصر على ▸ He insisted on telling lies.
- interested in: مهتم بـ ▸ I am interested in fishing.
- indifferent to غير مهتم بـ ▸ He is indifferent to what his friend said.
- kind to: nice to/polite to لطيف ▸ We should be kind to animals.

- kind of: عطف من ▸ It's very kind of you to come to my party.
- keen on: متحمس لـ ▸ I am not very keen on coming.
- knock down: يلقي ارضا ▸ He was knocked down by his opponent boxer.
- laugh at: يسخر من ▸ People laughed at him because of his haircut.
- leave for: يغادر إلى ▸ He is leaving for America.
- listen to: يستمع إلى ▸ Listening to the BBC improves your English.
- live on: يعيش على ▸ He lives on his wife's income.
- look at: ينظر إلى ▸ Why are you looking at me like that?
- look after: يعتني بـ ▸ A child needs someone to look after him.
- look for: يبحث عن ▸ I am looking for my lost keys.
- look forward to: يتطلع إلى ▸ I look forward to hearing from you.
- look on: [without taking part] يتفرج ▸ Don't stand looking on. Try to help me.
- look out: يحترس ▸ You should look out before crossing the road.
- look round: [at everything] ينظر إلى كل شيء ▸ Hanan likes to look round the shops.
- look up : يبحث عن كلمة في قاموس ▸ You can look up new words in the dictionary.
- make-up: ماكياج ▸ Too much make-up looks unnatural.
- make up : (a story, an excuse) يختلق قصة ▸ He is a big lair. He always makes up stories.
- make out: see يرى/يميز ▸ I can make out a star in the sky.
- make for: go يتجه نحو ▸ We made for Alexandria at dawn.
- make up for: يعوض ▸ The referee should make up for the lost time.
- married to: متزوج من ▸ She is married to a millionaire.
- pass by: a place يمر بالقرب من ▸ Are you going to pass by the restaurant?
- pay for: يدفع لـ ▸ You should pay for your drink.

- pick out : يختار
  - Can you pick out a blouse for me to wear in the party?
- pick up: hear/receive يستلم
  - The ship picked up signals for help.
- play for: يلعب لـ
  - Hamada Imam used to play for Al Zamalek.
- pleased with: مسرور من شخص at (something) مسرور من شيء
  - He is pleased with Mona.
  - He is pleased at the good result.
- point at/to يشير الى
  - Noha pointed at/to the yellow flower in the garden.
- point at : يصوب
  - The policeman pointed the gun at the thief.
- point out: draw attention يجذب انتباه
  - The teacher pointed out my spelling mistakes.
- popular with: محبوب من
  - President Nasser was popular with his people.
- put out: يطفئ
  - The fireman could put out the fire.
- put on: يرتدى
  - She put on a new dress at the party.
- put off: يؤجل
  - The meeting was put off.
- put up: يشيد
  - He planned to put up a house near the garden.
- put up with: يتحمل
  - Sometimes we have to put up with our neighbours.
- prevent from: يمنع من
  - The cover prevents steam from escaping.
- proof of: برهان على
  - This is a proof of my honesty.
- prefer. .... to: يفضل ... على
  - I prefer winter to summer.
- protect from: يحمى من
  - You should protect your head from the sun.
- provide with: يمد بـ
  - Cows provide us with milk.
- proud of: فخور بـ
  - I am proud of my country.
- reason for: سبب لـ
  - There is no reason for his absence.
- reason with: يجادل
  - He agreed to come after reasoning with him.
- regard as: يعتبر
  - I always regard him as my friend.
- rejoice at/in: يفرح بـ
  - The mother rejoiced at/in her daughter's marriage.

- rely on: [count on] يعتمد على
  - You can rely on me to help you.
- remind of: يذكر بـ
  - Please remind me of what I said.
- responsible for: مسئول عن
  - Who is responsible for this mistake?
- retire at: يتقاعد
  - He retired at the age of sixty five.
- run after: يطارد
  - The policeman ran after the thief.
- run into: يقابل
  - He ran into his old friend.
- run out of: run short of ينفذ
  - I have run out of money.
- run over: يدهس/يدوس
  - The car ran over the poor dog.
- satisfied with: راض عن
  - He is not satisfied with his work.
- search for: يبحث عن
  - I'll search for my lost wallet everywhere.
- see off: يودع
  - He went to the airport to see his friend off.
- send for: يرسل فى طلب
  - Please, send for the doctor at once.
- set back: انتكاسة
  - She had a set back after her recovery.
- set off: ينطلق/يبدأ
  - Mr. Bill set off on a trip round the world.
- set out: ينظم
  - The meal was set out on a long table.
- set out: يعرض موضوع
  - He could set out his ideas clearly.
- shiver with: يرتعد من
  - She was shivering with fear.
- shoot at: يطلق على
  - The hunter will shoot at the bird.
- shout at: يصرخ فى
  - The teacher shouted at the pupils.
- shout to: call to: ينادى على
  - He shouted to me from the other direction.
- short of: نقص
  - I am short of money.
- similar to: مشابه لـ
  - Bread is not similar to cake.
- sit at: يجلس على
  - The manager is sitting at a big desk.
- sorry about: (something) يأسف بسبب
  - I am sorry about the accident.
- sorry about/for: (doing something) يعتذر عن
  - I am sorry for/about shouting at you.
  - People are sorry for him because he is blind.

- spend on: ينفق على ▸ He spent the money on his holiday.
- speak to (with): يتحدث مع ▸ Could I speak to Bill, please?
- speak for: يتحدث بالنيابة عن ▸ The lawyer speaks for people in court.
- succeed in: ينجح فى ▸ She succeeded in getting full marks.
- suffer from: يعانى من ▸ Many people suffer from anemia.
- superior to: يتفوق على ▸ He is superior to his brother in many things.
- sure about: متأكد من ▸ He is sure about the result of the exam.
- surprised at: مندهش لـ ▸ He was surprised at his honesty.
- suspect of: يشك فى ▸ He suspected his servant of stealing the vase.
- take after: يشبه ▸ He took after his father.
- take off: يخلع ▸ He took off the shirt to try another one.
- take off: يقلع ▸ The plane will take off at 7 o'clock.
- take up: يتعلم ▸ We took up playing the piano.
- take in : (deceive) يخدع ▸ Don't be taken in by his promises.
- take out: يخلع ▸ He had his tooth taken out by the dentist.
- take out: يخرج ▸ I'm taking the children out to the zoo.
- take over: يتولى مهمة ▸ After the manager had left, Mr. Jack took over.
- thank for: يشكر على ▸ I thanked my friend for typing the letter.
- think of/about: يفكر فى ▸ He always thinks of/about travelling abroad.
- throw at: يلقى ▸ Maha threw the stone at the dog.
- throw to: يقذف إلى ▸ She threw the ball to her but she couldn't catch it.
- throw away: يرمى ▸ Don't throw cigarette ends away. They may cause fire.
- tired of: متعب من ▸ I am tired of your stupid remarks.
- translate ... from ... into: يترجم إلى
  ▸ Translate this passage from Arabic into English.
- tremble with: يرتعد من ▸ He was trembling with fever.
- turn on/off: يفتح/يغلق ▸ When did you turn off the radio?
- turn up: يظهر ▸ We shouted when our friend turned up.

- wait for: ينتظر ▸ He has been waiting for the bus.
- walk about: يتجول ▸ They walked about the streets aimlessly.
- warn (a person) of/against danger: يحذر
  ▸ He warned him of/against driving fast.
- wear off: يقل ▸ I am happy because the pain in my teeth is wearing off.
- white with: شاحب بسبب ▸ She was white with fear.
- worthy of: جدير بـ ▸ He is worthy of the prize.
- wrong with: خطأ ▸ There is something wrong with him.
- worried about: قلق على ▸ He was worried about his health.
- write in ink/in pencil: يكتب بـ ▸ Cheques should not be written in pencil.
- by cheque: مستخدماً شيكاً ▸ Will you pay in cash or by cheque?
- by (accident/chance): صدفة ▸ I met him by chance.
- turn on/off: يشغل/يغلق ▸ TV/light/machines, etc.
- by day: نهاراً ▸ He works by day.
- by: بواسطة ▸ This story is written by Nagib Mahfouz.
- in love with: فى علاقة غرامية مع ▸ Romeo fell in love with Juliet.
- in my opinion: فى رأى ▸ In my opinion the story was boring.
- in the habit of: فى عادة ▸ He is in the habit of smoking a cigar.
- on fire: مشتعل ▸ The house was on fire all night.
- on the phone: عبر الهاتف ▸ I've spoken to her on the phone.
- on TV/on the radio: فى التليفزيون/الراديو ▸ I heard the news on the radio.
- on a diet: يتبع نظاماً غذائياً ▸ I want to lose weight. I'll go on a diet.
- on strike: مضرب عن العمل ▸ Workers were on strike yesterday.
- on business: من أجل العمل ▸ He travelled to London on business.
- on holiday: فى إجازة ▸ Now, he is on holiday.
- for a walk: من أجل التمشية ▸ It is nice to go for a walk in the afternoon.
- in touch with: يكون على اتصال بـ ▸ I can't get in touch with you.

Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed is extremely proud .... his students' rapid progress.
   a) from b) about
   c) for d) of
2. Mr. Mohamed is not very good .... remembering his students' names.
   a) on b) for
   c) at d) about
3. He's very unpredictable. He's always full .... surprises!
   a) from b) of
   c) about d) off
4. My father objected .... my going to the cinema.
   a) to b) about
   c) on d) for
5. A lot of diseases resulted .... pollution.
   a) in b) from
   c) to d) of
6. They were furious .... me for not inviting them to my party.
   a) of b) to
   c) with d) about
7. Are you excited .... going on holiday next week?
   a) on b) of
   c) about d) to
8. We stayed at home because Mary wasn't very keen .... going out in the rain.
   a) to b) on
   c) of d) about
9. She is very terrified .... spiders.
   a) of b) at
   c) about d) on
10. The flat is nice , but we object to .... without electricity.
    a) being living b) being lived
    c) live d) living

11. He is very fond .... animals.
    a) on b) about
    c) to d) of
12. She doesn't often go out in the night because she's afraid .... the dark.
    a) from b) ut
    c) of d) to
13. She is brilliant .... repairing things.
    a) on b) at
    c) to d) with
14. They are interested .... sports.
    a) on b) in
    c) by d) about
15. I'm angry .... him for telling lies about me.
    a) about b) at
    c) with d) from
16. I'm looking forward .... getting my driving licence.
    a) from b) on
    c) to d) about
17. Why are you always so rude .... your parents?
    a) about b) on
    c) of d) to
18. I can't understand people who are cruel .... animals.
    a) at b) about
    c) from d) to
19. Your shoes are similar .... mine but they are not exactly the same.
    a) on b) to
    c) from d) with
20. The airline is responsible .... the safety of its passengers.
    a) on b) to
    c) for d) of

ALADWAA Gem



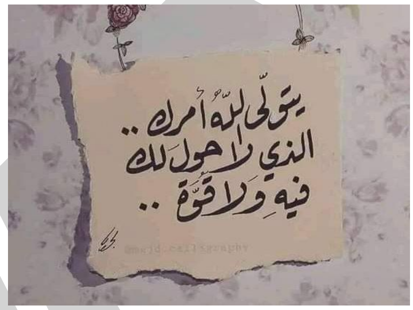
New Hello!

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

Final Revision & Tests

ملحق المراجعة النهائية والاختبارات



By

Emad Fawzy — Mohamed Abdel Aal — Ahmed Fadel — Ayman M. Ebrahim — Yacoub Moawad



حمّل
تطبيق الأضواء
الآن

ابحث عن
كودك الشخصى
الموجود فى ظهر الغلاف
واحصل مجانًا على جميع مزايا التطبيق.

1234567890

طالب
- اختبارات تفاعلية
- شرح الدروس
- تقارير وإحصائيات
- هدايا ومكافآت
- اسأل الأضواء
- تحدى الأصدقاء

ولى أمر
- تابع مستوى أولادك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- تعرّف أهم مستجدات العملية التعليمية.

معلم
- تابع مستوى طلابك الدراسى من خلال تقارير وإحصائيات.
- كون مجموعة من طلابك وتواصل معهم.

www.aladwaa.com Follow Us

NAHDET MISR PUBLISHING HOUSE

Contents

Part 1

General Revision

Part 2

Final Tests

© ALAWMA Gem

Part 1

General Revision

General Revision

Part 1 Revision (1) (Units 1-3)

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

English	Arabic
agriculture (n)	الزراعة
amount (n)	مقدار/كمية
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية التنفس الصناعى
crop (n)	محصول
eat out (v)	يأكل بالخارج
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل
infection (n)	عدوى
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة
livestock (n)	ماشية
occasion (n)	مناسبة
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى
prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
production (n)	إنتاج
react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعام
severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
sustainable (adj)	مستدام
technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب
traditional (adj)	تقليدى
variety (n)	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة

Helpful Vocabulary

English	Arabic
abroad (adv)	بالخارج
achieve (v) (d)	يحقق
advertisement (n)	أعلان
algae (n)	طحالب
area (n)	منطقة
argument (n)	جدال/حجة
arrive (v) (d)	يصل
article (n)	مقال
attractive (adj)	جذاب
available (adj)	متوفر/متاح
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة الشئ
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان
bleed (v) (ed)	ينزف
boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس
breathing (n)	التنفس
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب
cell (n)	خلية
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط
champion (n)	بطل رياضى

ONLINE Gem

championship (n)	بطولة
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية
chest (n)	صدر
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى
collaboration (n)	تعاون/الاشتراك
complicated (adj)	معقد
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام
confused (adj)	مرتبك
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على
continent (n)	قارة
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج
curious (adj)	فضولى
damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)
decide (v) (d)	يقرر
description (n)	وصف
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر
details (n)	تفاصيل
diet (n)	نظام غذائى
distant (adj)	بعيد
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب
education (n)	التعليم
efficiently (adv.)	بكفاءة
electric (adj)	كهربى

else (adv.)	أخر
emergency services	خدمات الطوارئ
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
energy (n)	طاقة
environment (n)	البيئة
event (n)	حدث
evidence (n)	دليل
examination (n)	فحص/اختبار
Executive Director (n)	مدير تنفيذى
expert (n)	خبير
extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى
feed (v)	يطعم/يغذى
festival (n)	مهرجان
first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
flat (adj)	مسطح/مستو
focus (v) (ed)	يركز
foreigner (n)	أجنبى
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ
general (adj)	عام
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد
heat up (v)	يزداد حرارة
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يُشمل
increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
injury (n)	إصابة

NAWA Gem

Word	Meaning
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم
invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات
land (n)	أرض
level (n)	مستوى
link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط
local (adj)	محلى
lung (n)	الرئة
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
menu (n)	قائمة طعام
muscle (n)	عضلة
native (adj)	أصلى
negative (adj)	سلبى
normal (adj)	طبيعى
old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
operation (n)	عملية
options (n)	اختيارات
ordinary (adj)	عادى
organ (n)	عضو
organisation (n)	منظمة
outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
oyster (n)	محار
perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
performance (n)	أداء
personally (adv.)	شخصيا
persuasive (adj)	مقنع
pioneer (n)	رائد
pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
population (n)	السكان
predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
press (v) (ed)	يضغط
produce (n)	إنتاج زراعى

Word	Meaning
products (n)	منتجات
protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
quantity (n)	كمية
questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
rainfall (n)	سقوط المطر
rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)
rare (adj)	نادر
recent (adj)	حديث
regularly (adv.)	بانتظام
relatives (n)	أقارب
replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
respect (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
rule (n)	قاعدة
seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
seriously (adv.)	بجدية/بخطورة
share (v) (d)	يشارك
shellfish (n)	المحار
sign (n)	علامة
solution (n)	حل
source (n)	مصدر
southern (adj)	جنوبى
space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء
specific (adj)	محدد
spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
suitable (adj)	مناسب
summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند

AL Gem

survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
tourism (n)	السياحة
tradition (n)	تقليد
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
United Nations	الأمم المتحدة
unusual (adj)	غير عادى
urban (adj)	مدنى
vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى
vertically (adv.)	عموديًا
wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
windy (adj)	عاصف
wrap (v) (ped)	يلف

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ
achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من
around the country	حول البلد
around the world	حول العالم
as a result	نتيجة لذلك
at all	أبدا/مطلقا
at any time	فى أى وقت
at least	على الأقل
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت
catch up with	يلحق بـ/يجارى/يعرف أحوال
do an action	يقوم بالتصرف
do CPR	يجرى عملية التنفس الصناعى
do sport	يمارس رياضة
do the course	يدرس منهج تعليمى
fall asleep	ينام فجأة
feel strong and healthy	يشعر بالقوة والصحة
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن
for example	على سبيل المثال
get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...
get better	يتحسن
get ill	يصاب بمرض
get worse	يسوء
go abroad	يسافر للخارج
have a meal	يتناول وجبة
have an infection	يصاب بعدوى
have the flu	يصاب بالأنفلونزا
in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع
in my view	فى رأيى
in the first place	فى المقام الاول
make more money	يدر مالًا
make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
make notes	يدون ملاحظات
make sense	ذو معنى
make sure	يتأكد
over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة التالية
perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
show respect	يظهر الاحترام
sound nice	يبدو لطيفا

sound perfect	يبدو رائعا (ممتازا)	tell the difference	يميز الفرق(الاختلاف)
stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة	years to come	السنوات القادمة
take up a new sport	يمارس (يتخذ) لعبة جديدة		

Phrases & Prepositions

amount of	كمية من	look after	يعتنى بـ
ask about	يسأل عن	look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
available for	متوفر لـ	look for	يبحث عن
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
care about	يهتم بـ	made from	مصنوع من
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه	opinion on/about	رأى عن
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ	remove from	يزيل من
cut down	يقطع	reply to	يرد علي/يستجيب لـ
difference between	اختلاف بين	rise up	يرفع (يرتفع) لأعلى
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على	solution to	حل لـ
focus on	يركز على	source of	مصدر لـ
good for	جيد لـ	spend on	ينفق على
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى	start with	يبدأ بـ
grow to	ينمو إلى	take place	يحدث
happy with	سعيد بـ	taste of	مذاق لـ
hope for	أمل لـ	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	think of/about	يفكر في
instead of	بدلا من	travel to	يسافر إلى
interested in	مهتم بـ	variety of	تنوع من
keep out of	يبتعد عن	wait for	ينتظر
kind of	نوع من	work with	يعمل مع
learn about	يعرف عن	worried about	قلق عن
link to	رابط لـ	wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
lock ... together	يغلق ... معا	write about	يكتب عن

ALNAWA Gem

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
act	يتصرف	action	عمل/فعل	acting active	قائم بعمل (فعل) نشيط
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
allow	يسمح	allowing	سماح	allowed	مسموح
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	---------------------------------------	
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	---------------------------------------	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation	خلق/إنتاج	creative	مبدع
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
destroy	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed	مدمر (تم تدميره)
encourage	يشجع	encouragement	تشجيع	encouraging	مشجع
exist	يوجد	existence	وجود	existing	موجود
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	مرشد/موجه
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى معدى
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation	إبداع/ابتكار	innovative	مبدع
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحي/مشغل
organise	ينظم	organisation	منظمة	organised	منظم
perform	يؤدى	performance	أداء	performing	مؤدى
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
produce	ينتج	production	إنتاج	productive	منتج
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح
survive	ينجو	survival	النجاة	surviving	ناجى
sustain	يساند/يؤازر/يدعم	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

ALNJWM Gem

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	commemorate	reproach/dishonour	يعاتب/يوبخ
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/ partnership	separation	انفصال
continue	يستمر	proceed	stop/cease	يتوقف
decide	يقرر	determine	delay/postpone	يؤجل
delicious	لذيذ	tasty	tasteless	بلا طعم
destroy	يدمر	smash	construct	يشيد
disease	مرض	illness	health	صحة
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation	neglect/ignorance	إهمال/تجاهل
exist	يوجد	live	depart	يغادر
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing	common/ordinary	عادى
flat	مسطح/مستو	straight	rough	خشن/غير مستقيم
fun	مرح	amusement	sorrow	أسى/حزن
gather	يتجمع	assemble	separate	يفصل
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise	misguide	يسئ التوجيه
immediately	فورا	instantly/soon	later	فيما بعد
increase	يزيد	raise	decrease	يخفض
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility	تعقيم
injury	إصابة	wound	comfort	راحة
mention	يذكر	name	ignore	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	adverse	positive	إيجابى
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated	fashionable	ذو طراز حديث
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	behave	give up	يتوقف/يقلع
popular	محبوب	attractive	unpopular	غير محبوب
press	يضغط	squeeze	release	يطلق
probably	من المحتمل	possibly	unlikely	من غير المحتمل

rare نادر	scarce	common	شائع
react يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed	cease	يتوقف
responsibility مسئولية	duty	irresponsibility	عدم مسئولية
severe شديد/خطير	acute	gentle	بسيط/لطيف
skill مهارة	proficiency	incompetence	عدم كفاءة
source مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج
success نجاح	achievement	failure	فشل
surprised مندهش	astonished	unsurprised	غير مندهش
survive ينجو	remain	die	يموت
sustainable مستدام	continuous	temporary	مؤقت
traditional تقليدى	conventional	modern	حديث
variety تنوع	diversity	similarity	تشابه
welcome يرحب بـ	greet	exclude/deny	يستبعد/ينكر

Notes on Vocabulary

1

another آخر (للمفرد)	▸ I had to change my old suit with another one.
other ١- الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط) ٢- أخرون (للجمع/اسم لا يعد)	▸ I can't find my other shoe. ▸ I've got some other friends I'd like to invite.
others الأخرون (يأتى بعدها فعل ووضعت «s» بعد حذف الاسم)	▸ Some people are at greater risk from the virus than others.
else ١- آخر/أيضا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ (some - any - every - no) ٢- آخر/أيضا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)	▸ There's something else I'd like to talk about as well. Where else can we meet?

2

sign ١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات ٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)	▸ The sign in the store window says "OPEN." ▸ All the signs point to him as the guilty party.
signal ١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون) ٢- إشارة (ضوئية/صوتية) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء	▸ Satellite dishes receive television signals. ▸ The teacher gave us the signal to finish what we were doing.
landmark علامة بارزة (تميز مكان) مثل برج أو مبنى	▸ The Empire State Building is a familiar landmark on the New York skyline.

No.	Word	Meaning	Example
3	athlete	رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)	The athletes are training hard for the Olympics.
	athletic	رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)	He was a true champion, a man among men, known for his kindness as well as athletic powers.
	athletics	ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى)	Athletics is largely an individual sport.
4	kit	عدة/طاقم أدوات (مجموعة من أدوات تستخدم لغرض معين)	My uncle runs a shop which sells sewing kits.
	tool	آلة (غالبا يدوية) تستخدم لإصلاح أو تركيب أو العمل على شىء	A saw is a tool for cutting wood.
5	operation	١- عملية جراحية ٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة	She's going to need an operation on her ankle. Britain will carry out a joint military operation with the US.
	process	١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شىء ٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شىء)	Breathing and the circulation of blood are life processes. Learning a foreign language can be a long process.
6	advertisement	إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة	The advertisement will appear in three magazines.
	announcement	تصريح/إذاعة خبر	The minister will make a formal announcement tomorrow.
7	organ	عضو من أعضاء الجسم	The liver is an extremely complex organ.
	member	عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كنادى أو فريق	She's a member of the local band.
8	champion	بطل رياضى	The show will be opened by the former world boxing champion.
	hero	بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	His father was a war hero, a former fighter pilot.
9	arrive	١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر in/at)	When will the plane from Paris arrive? We arrived at the hotel very late after the party.
	reach	١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شىء معنوى	We were the first people to reach the party. Finally, they reached their goal and became professional footballers.
10	event	١- حدث مهم ٢- حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	Getting married is a major event in anyone's life. The conference was an important social event.
	incident	١- حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢- حدث (فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية)	The report describes a number of related incidents. The film was boring and it didn't have many incidents.
	accident	حادث (شئ خاطئ أو مؤذى حدث بغير ترتيب)	Ahmed had an accident at work and had to go to hospital.

ALADWAA Gem

No.	Word	Meaning	Example
11	special	خاص (من نوع خاص)	I don't want an ordinary wedding. I want something special.
	private	خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	He didn't want to discuss his private life.
12	menu	١ - قائمة طعام (فى مطعم) ٢ - قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	He looked at the menu and decided to have the salad. Select PRINT from the main menu.
	list	قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	Make a list of all the things you have to do.
13	outdoor (adj)	بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة ...) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم	The programme of outdoor activities includes skiing, climbing, and hiking.
	outdoors (adv)	بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة ...) حال تصف فعلاً ولا يأتى بعدها اسم	They could play outdoors.
14	lose	يفقد/يخسر	Hundreds of people lost their homes in the floods.
	miss	يفتقد/يفوته شئ	It was great living in Prague, but I really missed all my friends. By the time we got there, we'd missed the beginning of the movie.
15	earn	يكسب (مالًا عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	You don't earn much money being a nurse.
	gain	يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager.
	win	يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
	beat	يهزم/يتغلب على	My brother easily beats me at chess every time we play.
16	tasty	ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)	The breakfast is complete and tasty.
	tasteful	ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)	The room is filled with tasteful furniture.
17	local	١ - محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة) ٢ - أحد السكان المحليين	You can find all these books in your local library. We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.
	national	قومى (خاص ببلد)	These buildings are part of our national heritage.
	international	دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)	The island now has an international airport.
18	earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The Earth is the third planet from the sun.
	ground	أرض فضاء	He fell to the ground, crying out in pain.
	land	اليابسة	The army fought both at sea and on land.
	soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	Herbs should be planted in warm soil.
	floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	He grabbed a broom and began sweeping the floor.
19	cause	١ - سَبَب (يتبعها حرف الجر of) ٢ - يسبب	We do not know the cause of the building collapse till now. The infection can cause severe pain.
	reason	١ - سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر why/for) ٢ - يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	We'd like to know the reason why she didn't accept the job. They reasoned that other businesses would soon copy the idea.

AL-WAN Gem

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. Egypt is investing more in .... energy resources such as solar and nuclear energy.
   a) removable b) avoidable c) sustainable d) acceptable
2. Mary .... the new job with a party for family and friends.
   a) celebrated b) rejected c) recommended d) reminded
3. The training has .... the students to deal with any small medical emergency.
   a) expired b) accepted c) appeared d) prepared
4. In modern farming, the .... are regularly sprayed with pesticides مبيد أفات.
   a) products b) crops c) roots d) ingredients
5. Scientists are trying to trace يتتبعوا the source of .... of the COVID-19 in China.
   a) perfection b) treatment c) infection d) vaccine
6. The new hotel's 200 rooms come in a .... of sizes; single, double or suites.
   a) property b) variety c) difference d) site
7. In America, it is .... to eat turkey and cranberry sauce on Thanksgiving.
   a) traditional b) fashionable c) modernised d) recent
8. This powerful computer can .... many tasks at once.
   a) design b) assign c) make d) perform
9. The number of people employed in .... has fallen in the last few years because many people left the countryside to live in the city.
   a) industry b) agriculture c) commerce d) economy
10. We aren't used to eating .... a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
    a) inside b) down c) out d) across
11. The recent .... in information technology have completely transformed the way students work.
    a) invitations b) decorations c) acceptances d) innovations
12. Firefighters are trained to .... quickly to emergency.
    a) react b) represent c) introduce d) inspect
13. The storm caused .... damage to the farmer's house and garden which were destroyed.
    a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep
14. Heart surgery.................. have improved considerably in the last few years.
    a) statuses b) techniques c) qualities d) quantities
15. .... are the animals kept on a farm, for example cows or sheep.
    a) Household b) Population c) Livestock d) Poultry
16. We wished our son all the best on the .... of his 20th birthday.
    a) accident b) assignment c) promotion d) occasion

ALNAWM Gem

17 The patient must take some medicine to boost his body's .... of red blood cells.
a) invention b) consumption c) destruction d) production

18 Car designers from some countries got .... and held a joint exhibition.
a) out b) away c) together d) up

19 In all five-star hotels, meals can be .... to you in your room.
a) sold b) served c) prepared d) consumed

20 Doctors say that we should all try to reduce the .... of fat in our diet.
a) amount b) quality c) intent d) expectance

Helpful Vocabulary

21 We had a/an .... with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
a) fight b) treaty c) argument d) truce

22 With the internet it is possible to make learning .... wherever it is needed.
a) avoidable b) invincible c) exceptional d) available

23 The accident victim was .... from the wounds in her face and hands.
a) bleeding b) paining c) relieving d) breeding

24 The desert land which the government reclaimed has .... wheat production by 25 percent.
a) blasted b) boosted c) damaged d) consumed

25 Caustic soda الصودا الكاوية is a/an .... which is often used to make cleaning products.
a) acid b) metal c) chemical d) induction

26 The book is the product of a/an .... between two writers.
a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection

27 The factory owner offers a pay rise only for the workers who work ....
a) lazily b) hardly c) carelessly d) efficiently

28 Athletes should have a regular heart .... especially before major championships.
a) surgery b) examination c) treatment d) operation

29 I have read only some .... from the new novel, but I liked it much.
a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines

30 .... is a method of growing plants in water rather than in soil.
a) Hydroponics b) Mathematics c) Micronics d) Gymnastics

31 To fight this new virus, you must try hard to make your .... system stronger.
a) security b) immune c) alarm d) nerve

32 It took the wounded soldier six months to recover from the ....
a) quarrel b) process c) invention d) injury

33 For elderly people, TV is an important .... with the outside world.
a) search b) outlet c) link d) exit

34 Regular mild exercise will help to strengthen your .... as much as training.
a) muscles b) vessels c) results d) substances

ALWAN Gem

35 The island's .... bird population began disappearing due to exposure to التعرض لـ diseases.
a) foreign b) native c) international d) vague

36 Selling the house was our only .... to overcome our financial problems.
a) result b) consequence c) option d) relevance

37 All the fans were impressed by their team's .... at the final match.
a) training b) performance c) relaxation d) avoidance

38 The young politician is a very .... speaker, so he was chosen for the Parliament.
a) aggressive b) convinced c) disorganised d) persuasive

39 A working woman has to deal with a lot of family and work ....
a) rights b) promotions
c) researches d) responsibilities

40 The best .... for water shortage is to greatly reduce our use of water.
a) evolution b) analysis c) solution d) exception

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes

41 Nurses are taught how to .... CPR as part of their first-aid course.
a) do b) make c) design d) operate

42 One of the main reasons of climate change is cutting .... rainforests.
a) in b) about c) down d) for

43 All vaccines will be safe and .... if they are used properly.
a) affect b) effect c) effective d) affecting

44 The noun "contagion" is similar in meaning to the noun "..................".
a) affection b) reflection c) perfection d) infection

45 People always come to this old restaurant because the food is very .... there.
a) taste b) tasty c) tasteful d) tasteless

46 The mother wrapped a scarf .... her child's neck as it was cold.
a) around b) away c) about d) off

47 If our son's illness .... any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.
a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises

48 The adjective "gentle" can be the opposite to the adjective "..................".
a) nice b) ordinary c) severe d) giant

49 My aunt has a severe allergic .... to Penicillin and some other drugs.
a) react b) reaction c) reactive d) reactor

50 Clubs insist that children must have a medical examination if they want to .... up a new sport.
a) make b) change c) play d) take

51 Major changes have taken .... in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
a) part b) place c) apart d) down

52 Most people are more .... in the morning than other times of the day.
a) produce b) production c) productive d) product

53 The verb "squeeze" is a synonym to the verb ".....................".
a) release b) press c) iron d) shield

54 I asked my wife to make a .... of the ingredients she needs for the pizza.
a) list b) menu c) brochure d) notice

55 I heard a/an .... on the loudspeaker saying that the hypermarket was closing in 10 minutes.
a) intention b) commercial c) announcement d) advertisement

56 Everyone should keep an emergency first-aid .... in their car.
a) tool b) instrument c) device d) kit

57 The word "temporary" is an antonym to the word ....
a) sustainable b) regular c) gradual d) timeless

58 Please, tell the children to go and play somewhere .... I'm trying to work.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

59 The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a .... that he was worried.
a) sign b) signal c) landmark d) note

60 Our small factory began to .... more money after three years of building it.
a) do b) perform c) make d) assign

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

hunger – Agriculture – member – countries – food – Nations

One of the important organisations of the United Nations is Food and ....(1).................... Organisation (FAO) which is the specialised organisation of the United ....(2).................... that leads international efforts to defeat ....(3).................... . Its main goal is to achieve ....(4).................... security for all and make sure that people have regular supply of enough high-quality food to lead active, healthy lives. With over 194 ....(5).................... states, FAO works in over 130 .... (6).................... worldwide. It believes that everyone can play a part in ending hunger.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

serve – tasty – menu – spicy – types – dishes

When you come to Egypt you should try different ....(1).................... of Egyptian food because the Egyptian dishes are very ....(2).................... and worth the experience. One of the famous Egyptian ....(3).................... is koshari, which is a mix of rice, brown lentils and macaroni topped with fried onions and a ....(4).................... tomato sauce, koshari is normally eaten in dedicated koshari restaurants that ....(5).................... the dish exclusively. Some hotels even put it in their ....(6).................... to provide tourists with a delicious traditional meal.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

On January 30, 2020, the WHO declared the COVID-19 outbreak a public economic / health emergency of international concern and, in March 2020, began to characterise it as a pandemic in order to emphasise the gravity of the situation / location and urge all countries to take action in detecting infection / destruction and preventing spread. Although there are cures for illnesses and developments made by the virus, the strongest and most defective / effective weapon that society has against this virus is the prevention of its spread. The main points in preventing the spread in society are hand bathing / hygiene, social distancing and quarantine. With increased testing capacity, detecting more COVID-19 positive patients in the community will also enable the reduction of secondary cases with stricter quarantine rules / directions.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

5 Choose the correct answer:

There are some rules that you should follow if you are helping a person with wounds. The most important one to consider with any open wound is control of operation / bleeding and infection. Before providing care, put on protective / infective gloves or use a barrier between you and the victim to reduce the chance of disease infection while assisting the sound / injured person. In case of bleeding, apply direct pressure with a clean cloth or absorbent dressing until bleeding stops. Wash the affected area / region with an antibacterial soap to improve / remove any foreign matter. Cover the dressing with a bandage / belt. Check for the person's feeling, warmth, and wound colour.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

ALMAWNA Gem

Language

Unit (1)

1) Necessity 2) Lack of necessity 3) Prohibition

1 Necessity الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
have to	It's necessary for .... to + Inf.	had to	It was necessary for .... to + Inf.	will have to	It will be necessary for .... to + Inf.
has to					
must					
have got to		no past			
has got to					
need to/needs to		needed to		will need to	

- It is necessary for all of us to fight diseases.
- All of us must/have to/have got to/need to fight diseases.
- It was necessary for him to find a job to support his family.
- He had to find a job to support his family. ضرورة فى الماضى وتم فعلها.
- It will be necessary for the new government to solve the problems related to health and education.
- The new government will have to solve the problems related to health and education.

have to/must الفرق بين	
Have to	ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لديك اختيار فى فعلها. As I'm very ill, I have to wait until the doctor arrives.
Must	strong advice نصيحة قوية You must wash your hands before you eat.
	a warm invitation دعوة حارة You must come and see us at the weekend.
	a strong reminder to ourselves رسالة تذكير قوية We must remember that tourism is important.
Mustn't	Prohibition المنع والحظر والتحريم You mustn't drive fast on this road. The maximum speed limit is 60 km/h.
	Strong negative advice للنصيحة القوية المنفية You mustn't play football in the flat. You may break something.

AL-Gem

2 Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present		Past		Future	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for .... to	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for .... to	won't have to won't need to	It won't be necessary for .... to
doesn't have to		needn't have + P.P لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			
needn't (to بدون)					
don't/ doesn't need to		didn't need to			

- It isn't necessary for her to buy many dresses.
- She doesn't have to/needn't/doesn't need to buy many dresses.
- It wasn't necessary for me to travel abroad.
- I didn't have to travel abroad. لم يكن واجبا فلم افعل.
- I needn't have travelled abroad. لم يكن واجبا ولكنى فعلت.

Unit (2)

Adjectives (comparatives – superlatives)

	Adjective		Comparative		Superlative	
			adj. + er + than		the + adjective + est	
One syllable	tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest
	young	صغير السن	younger	than	the	youngest
	soft	ناعم	softer	than	the	softest
			adj. + r + than		the + adjective + st	
One syllable ending in e	large	واسع	larger	than	the	largest
	wide	عريض	wider	than	the	widest
One syllable		- تضعيف الحرف الساكن ونضيف er				
			adj. + er + than		the + adjective + est	
ساكن + vowel + ساكن	big	كبير الحجم	bigger	than	the	biggest
	hot	ساخن	hotter	than	the	hottest
		- حذف حرف y ونضيف ier				
			adj. + ier + than		the + adjective + iest	
Two syllables ending in y	heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the	heaviest
	happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest

			more + adjective	the most + adj.
Two or more syllables	modern	عصرى	more modern than	the most modern
	expensive	غالى	more expensive than	the most expensive
	حالات خاصة تحفظ			
Irregular adjectives	good	جيد	better than	the best
	bad	سيئ	worse than	the worst
	little	قليل	less than	the least
	much/many	كثير	more than	the most
	far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/ furthest

as + adj.+ as /not as (so)+ adj.+ as	تساوى أوعدم تساوى الصفات
Omar is as clever as Ahmed.	فى التساوى الصفة بين as ... as
Eman isn't so/as young as her sister Rana.	فى نفى التساوى isn't as/so ... as
Special cases	حالات خاصة
Rana is the younger of two sisters.	فى التفضيل بين اثنين the + er/more
Gold is much/a lot more expensive than wood.	قبل المقارنة مع الفارق الكبير much/a lot
Silver is a bit/a little cheaper than gold.	عند الفرق القليل a bit/a little
No boy in class is cleverer than Ahmed.	نستخدم no فى المقارنة.
I've never met a stronger person than Ali.	نستخدم never فى المقارنة.
Ali is the strongest person I've ever met.	نستخدم ever فى التفضيل.
Summer is less cold than winter.	less قبل أى صفة فى المقارنة.
The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.	The+ صفة مقارنة, the + صفة مقارنة كلما .... كلما ....

Unit (3)

Future forms

Future forms

(be) going to + inf.
Look at those clouds. It's going to rain.

Will + inf.
I hope I will get the job.

Future perfect (will have + p.p.)
By 9 pm tomorrow, I'll have arrived in Cairo.

Future continuous (will be + v.ing)
This time tomorrow, I'll be working in my office.

Present simple
The train arrives at 10 p.m tonight.

Present continuous (am/is/are+v.ing)
I'm meeting my boss at 3 p.m.

Shall + inf.
Shall we walk to school?

1

Will + inf.

Will

١- التنبؤ بدون دليل
It will rain tomorrow.

٢-حقائق المستقبل
Tomorrow will be 12 Jan.

Form: Subj. + will + Inf.

٣-للقرارات السريعة
I'll take my umbrella.

Negative: Subj. + won't + Inf.

٤-للعرض والطلب
You seem busy. I'll make tea for you.

٥-للتحذير والتهديد
Without work, you will suffer a lot.

٦-يستخدم مع تعبيرات زمنية وأفعال معينة.
sure, hope, think, expect, predict, promise, perhaps, probably, etc.
- I'm sure Ali will win the race.
- I expect that she will visit us tomorrow.

2 (be) going to + inf.

(be) going to + inf.

Form
I'm going to + inf.
He/She/It is going to + inf.
They/we/you are going to + inf.

Negative
I'm not going to + inf.
He/She/It is not going to + inf.
They/we/you are not going to + inf.

١ - التنبؤ بدليل
Look! He is going to fall.

٢- القرارات المتخذة مسبقا
He is going to join university.

٣- للنوايا والخطط
We're going to buy a new car.

٤- للطموحات الشخصية
I'm going to be a doctor.

3 Future continuous

Future continuous

Form
Subj + will be + v.ing

Negative
Subj + won't be + v.ing

١ - حدث سوف يستمر لفترة فى المستقبل
This time tomorrow, I'll be travelling.

٢- احداث ستكون فى استمرار نتيجة للروتين
I'll be meeting Ahmed as usual.

٣- مع التعبيرات الزمنية الاتية:
This time tomorrow/next .....
At + time + tomorrow/next .....
In two hours' time .....

4 Present simple

Present simple

Form
He/ She/ It + v-s/es/y ies
We/ You/ They + inf

Negative
He/ She/ It + doesn't + inf.
We/ You/ They + don't + inf.

مع الجداول المحددة ليشير إلى المستقبل
The plane arrives at 8:30 tomorrow.

للجداول المحددة مسبقا مثل الطائرات والقطارات والبرامج والمباريات
The train leaves at 5 p.m tomorrow.

5 Present continuous

Present continuous

Form
I'm + v. ing
He/ She/ It is + v. ing
They/ We/ You are + v. ing

Negative
I'm not + v. ing
He/ She/ It isn't + v. ing
They/ We/ You aren't + v. ing

للأشياء التى تم ترتيبها مسبقا
I'm having dinner with Ahmed next weekend.

AL-WAN Gem

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Unit (1)

1. She .... take this medicine because she isn't ill.
   a) must b) doesn't have to c) had to d) has to
2. The players .... check their hearts before they were allowed to play.
   a) have to b) needn't c) had to d) don't have to
3. In the past, football clubs .... check players' hearts; they believed it wasn't necessary.
   a) didn't have to b) had to c) must d) don't have to
4. You .... visit the White Desert when you're in Farafra. It's amazing!
   a) needn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) must
5. The manager .... travel to London to attend an important conference last week.
   a) had to b) didn't have to c) doesn't have to d) mustn't
6. I .... wash my father's car; my brother had already washed it.
   a) had to b) didn't have to c) don't have to d) mustn't
7. You .... whisper. Nobody can hear us.
   a) must b) didn't have to c) have to d) don't have to
8. You .... drive so fast. It's very dangerous.
   a) don't need b) don't have to c) must d) mustn't
9. Fahmy .... wear a tie at work. It's the rule of his company.
   a) has to b) must c) have to d) mustn't
10. Yesterday, I .... stay at home with my brother as my parents were out.
    a) has to b) must c) had to d) mustn't
11. Children .... play with matches or cleaning liquids.
    a) have to b) must c) needn't d) mustn't
12. You .... take an umbrella. It isn't raining.
    a) needn't to b) don't need to c) mustn't d) need to
13. You .... wash your hands before you eat.
    a) must b) have c) need d) needn't
14. Yesterday, I .... meet my friend at the airport.
    a) have to b) must c) had to d) need
15. We .... lock the car. It's safe here.
    a) mustn't b) needn't c) can't d) shouldn't
16. You aren't permitted to stay here. You .... stay here.
    a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) should
17. I'm going to the shops because I .... buy some tea.
    a) must to b) don't need to c) need to d) has to

ALMAWMAN Gem

18. In Egypt, most employees .... work 6 hours a day, 6 days a week.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) have to
19. You .... pass your exams or the university will not accept you.
 a) needn't b) have to c) didn't have to d) don't have to
20. You .... forget to do your homework tonight. The teacher wants it tomorrow.
 a) mustn't b) don't have to c) have to d) must

Unit (2)

21. I'm not keen on football. For me, it is .... important sport.
 a) the least b) the most c) the best d) the little
22. Mr Naser is the .... director that can solve your problems.
 a) more intelligent b) intelligent c) most intelligent d) intelligence
23. He is .... of the two champions competing to win the race.
 a) the best b) better than c) better d) the better
24. Some people think that the more money you have, the .... you become.
 a) happy b) happier c) happiest d) more happy
25. The .... experience in my life was when I saw a big bear in the wild.
 a) frightening b) least frightening
 c) most frightening d) more frightening
26. You should buy the green trousers. They are the .... in the shop.
 a) more expensive b) less expensive
 c) expensive d) least expensive
27. Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are .... each other.
 a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than
28. Mr. Hamdy is the .... teacher I've ever had. His students respect him much.
 a) inspiring b) most inspiring c) much inspiring d) more inspiring
29. Tamer is a much calmer person than Omar, so before their exams Omar was much .... Tamer.
 a) more nervous than b) nervous than
 c) more nervous as d) more nervous
30. The .... animal which I have seen in Egypt is a camel.
 a) most big b) biggest c) more big d) bigger
31. Video cassettes are not .... DVDs.
 a) moderner than b) so modern so c) as modern like d) as modern as
32. This English exercise is the .... exercise in the book!
 a) more challenging than b) more challenging
 c) most challenging d) biggest challenging
33. No one in my family is .... my grandfather. He is the oldest person.
 a) older than b) elder c) younger than d) the youngest

AL AWAA Gem

34 All the other books in the library are .... than the book I am reading.
a) interesting b) most interesting
c) more interesting d) much interesting

35 The apple tree and the pear tree are both the same height. They are .... each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) most taller d) most tallest

36 Omar can run .... than all the other boys in his class.
a) much quickly b) most quickly c) quickly d) more quickly

37 .... water flooded into the house than I expected.
a) Few b) Less c) Much d) Most

38 There are .... people here than promised to come.
a) fewer b) many c) less d) much

39 Tennis is a far .... game than football.
a) hardest b) hard c) harder d) hardly

40 The more you protest, the .... guilty you look!
a) many b) much c) most d) more

Unit (3)

41 Scientists say that the satellite .... to Earth sometime this afternoon.
a) is going to fall b) is falling
c) falls d) won't fall

42 I've got a job in Luxor, so I .... there for the next two years.
a) was working b) will have worked
c) work d) will be working

43 He will tell me the details after he .... the boss.
a) meets b) will meet c) is going to meet d) is meeting

44 The government .... road repairs over the next two days.
a) do b) will do c) will be doing d) have done

45 It's unbelievable to think that this time tomorrow we .... to Matrouh.
a) will be driving b) will drive c) are going to drive d) drive

46 What .... next, now that you've finished your course?
a) do you do b) did you do
c) will you have done d) are you going to do

47 **A:** Chicken or meat, madam? **B:** I .... meat, please.
a) am having b) will have c) am going to have d) have

48 I won't have time to meet you next weekend, I'm afraid. I .... the school timetable for the next year.
a) will organise b) will be organising
c) organise d) will have organised

ALAWWA Gem

49 Ramy and his brothers .... two of the shops in our street before long.
a) are owning b) will be owning
c) are going to own d) own

50 .... to the supermarket today? Yes. Do you want me to get you something?
a) Will you have gone b) Will you have been going
c) Are you going d) Will you be gone

51 Look out! A car .... you.
a) will hit b) may hit
c) is hitting d) is going to hit

52 This time next week, I .... for the airport.
a) have left b) will leave
c) will be leaving d) leave

53 I have already told you why I can't see you tomorrow. I .... guests.
a) can have b) am having
c) have d) will have

54 The museum .... at 10 tomorrow morning as usual.
a) opens b) will open
c) is opening d) opening

55 I'm buying flour and eggs because I .... a cake.
a) will make b) make
c) making d) am going to make

56 Reham can't see her friend at the weekend as she .... relatives.
a) has visited b) visiting
c) is visiting d) visits

57 The match .... at 7.30. Don't call me at that time.
a) starts b) will start
c) is starting d) is going to start

58 He .... a geologist when he leaves university. This is his plan.
a) will become b) has become
c) is going to become d) becomes

59 In the future, we .... new cells from patients to repair parts of their body.
a) use b) may be used
c) will be used d) 'll be using

60 He .... in an hour. He has arranged that with his boss.
a) is leaving b) will leave
c) is going to leave d) leaves

EL MAWNA Gem

2 Choose the correct answer:

My brother has been living in a new city for about 3 months now. There is no public transport , so he ....(1).................. (has to / needn't) drive everywhere. He ....(2).................. (has / had) to sign up for driving lessons a week ago. In order to get a licence, he ....(3).................. (needn't / has to) pass a test. There are a lot of laws that must ....(4).................. (follow / be followed). It's the law there that everyone ....(5).................. (mustn't / must) wear a seat belt. Luckily, he can work from home, so he ....(6).................. (needn't / has to) go to work every day.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

3 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives:

My father has bought a new house lately. It's lovely. It's much ....(1).................. (large) in size and looks ....(2).................. (modern) than our last one. I finally have a room that I don't have to share with my ....(3).................. (young) brother who is still in primary school. The neighbours are also very kind. They are definitely the ....(4).................. (friendly) people I have ever met. My room overlooks a ....(5).................. (wide) street than the old street. It's also the ....(6).................. (clean) street in the area.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

The first day of the term will ....(1).................. (be / have been) horrible, for everybody ....(2).................. (must / will) be talking about their holidays and the photographs of marvellous foreign beaches, and as I haven't been anywhere I ....(3).................. (will / can) feel terribly out of it. Certainly, my friends will ....(4).................. (ask / be asked) me about my vacation. I have decided that I ....(5).................. (tell / am going to tell) them the truth. This year I haven't visited any place, but this time next year, I will ....(6).................. (be having / have) fun on one of the best beaches in the world.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

ALAWY Gem

King Lear
Act (1) scenes (i - ii - iii - iv)

Key Vocabulary

anger	غضب
answer	رد/إجابة
attendants	الحاضرين
beauty	جمال
behave	يتصرف
cart	عربة
deceive	يخدع
deserve	يستحق
disguise	يتنكر
divide .... into	يقسم ... إلى
Duke	الدوق
duty	واجب
encourage	يشجع
exit	يخرج
foolish	أحمق
give .... away	يتخلى عن
guilty	مذنب
income	دخل

inheritance	ميراث
kingdom	مملكة
lie	يكذب
loyalty	انتماء/ولاء
riches	ثروة
rude	وقح
send .... away	ينفى/يبعد
servant	خادم
shout about	يتحدث بصوت عالى عن
sir	سيد
succeed	ينجح
sword	سيف
third	ثلث
title	لقب
trust	يثق فى/ثقة
truth	الحقيقة
wise	حكيم

Phrases & Expressions

give an answer	يقوم بالرد
have a plan	لديه خطة
have a taste of her own medicine	تتذوق نتيجة أفعالها
my heart is broken	قلبى محطم/حزين
say goodbye to	يودع
the cart is pulling the horse	العربة أمام الحصان

ALAWWA Gem

Summary

Scene i

The play opens in King Lear's palace with a conversation between Kent, Gloucester, and Gloucester's son Edmund. We also learn that Gloucester has two sons. The older, Edgar, is his heir وريث , and the younger, Edmund. King Lear enters followed by his two sons-in-law — Albany and Cornwall — and his three daughters — Goneril, Regan, and Cordelia. Lear announces that he has divided his kingdom into three shares to be given to his daughters as determined by their declarations of love for him. Goneril, as the eldest, speaks first. She tells her father that her love for him is more than riches. Regan, as the middle child, speaks next. Her love, she says, is even greater than Goneril's. Finally, it is Cordelia's turn to express the depth of her love for her royal father. Cordelia replies that she loves him as a daughter should love a father, no more and no less. She reminds her father that she also will owe devotion ولاء to a husband when she marries, and therefore cannot honestly give all her love toward her father. Lear sees Cordelia's reply as rejection, saying that she will now be a stranger to him. King Lear then divides his kingdom between Goneril and Regan, giving each an equal share. Kent interferes يتدخل by asking Lear to reconsider his rash action. Lear, in anger, sends Kent away for defending Cordelia and for confronting تحدى/مواجهة the king. At Kent's departure, the King of France and Duke of Burgundy enter, both of whom are suitors خاطبين for Cordelia's hand in marriage. They are told that Cordelia will not receive a inheritance ميراث from her father. The King of France says that Cordelia is a prize, even without her share of Lear's kingdom, and announces his intent to marry Cordelia. Cordelia says goodbye to her sisters, and leaves with the King of France.

Scene ii

Edmund enters the scene — set in the Earl of Gloucester's house — talking out loud to himself. Edmund reveals يكشف his plan to undermine يقلل من his brother's position by tricking his father with a forged مزيف letter, which he presents to Gloucester in this scene. Edmund also succeeds in convincing Edgar that he's looking out for his brother's safety when he suggests that Edgar carry a sword as protection from their father's anger.

Scene iii

Set in the palace of Goneril and the Duke of Albany, this scene opens with Goneril asking her servant, Oswald, if Lear hit him. Oswald confirms the encounter. Goneril asked Oswald to keep Lear waiting when he needs something, and if the king is unhappy with this treatment معاملة, he should be told to move to Regan's palace. Goneril then commands her servants to treat the king's company with coldness since the king's soldiers are behaving badly.

Scene iiii

The setting is a hall in Goneril's palace. Kent, earlier banished منفى by Lear, reappears in disguise. Lear enters and begins asking Kent questions about his identity and his intent نية. Kent asserts his loyalty and willingness to serve the king. Kent's obvious admiration impresses Lear. When the king asks to see Goneril, Oswald leaves without responding to the request. A soldier reports that Goneril is unwell and unavailable. The soldier also tells Lear that all the members of Goneril's household are treating the king's entourage حاشية rudely. Goneril enters, complaining about the king's soldiers. Goneril demands that Lear reduce the number of soldiers in his service. In anger, the king declares that he will pack up his people and move to Regan's palace, where he is sure to receive a warmer reception.

AL AWA Gem

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the tourists admired the .... of the beaches in Hurghada.
   a) stability b) rudeness c) beauty d) surprise
2. The restaurant owners were .... by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
   a) accepted b) deceived c) honoured d) awarded
3. Parents have a .... to make sure that their children receive a good education.
   a) duty b) right c) plan d) research
4. I advise you to give your old clothes .... to a charity as they are still good to wear.
   a) into b) off c) out d) away
5. You must feel .... about not visiting your parents more often.
   a) shy b) guilty c) innocent d) proud
6. The new owner of the club is a rich man who had a large .... from his parents.
   a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
7. A citizen's primary .... should be to his country.
   a) research b) right c) loyalty d) performance
8. The present duke inherited his .... and property from his father.
   a) rank b) address c) headline d) title
9. Working together is going to be difficult if you don't .... each other.
   a) agree b) trust c) trick d) deceive
10. As the actors .... the stage, the lights went on.
    a) decorated b) prevailed c) exited d) exempted
11. Who does King Lear want to give the largest part of his land to? SB
    a) The King of France. b) The daughter who loves him best.
    c) The daughter who is the oldest. d) The daughter who is the wisest.
12. How much does Goneril say she loves her father? SB
    a) More than health, beauty and riches. b) More than anyone else.
    c) As much as a daughter should love her father. d) More than her husband.
13. What does King Lear decide to do after listening to Cordelia? SB
    a) Give Cordelia all of his kingdom.
    b) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters.
    c) Give none of his daughters any of his kingdom.
    d) Give his kingdom to the dukes.
14. What does Kent tell King Lear? SB
    a) That he has made a bad decision. b) That he has made a good decision.
    c) That he wants to marry Cordelia. d) That he deceived his daughters.

ELMOASSER Gem

15. Who will Cordelia leave with? SB
   a) The Duke of Burgundy.
   b) The King of France.
   c) The Duke of Kent.
   d) The King's soldiers.
16. Edmund intends to undermine his brother's position to ....
   a) fight with him
   b) help him fight the king
   c) get his money back
   d) get his father's title and inheritance
17. Goneril asked her servants to ....
   a) respect the king and do what he asked for at once
   b) obey the king all the time
   c) keep the king waiting when he needs something
   d) accept the king's wishes
18. When King Lear visited Goneril's palace, she treated him ....
   a) coldly
   b) warmly
   c) heartily
   d) nicely
19. Kent came back in disguise in order to ....
   a) trick the king
   b) help the king
   c) revenge himself
   d) get the title
20. King Lear decided to move to Regan's palace because ....
   a) Cordelia left England
   b) his soldiers advised him to go there
   c) Regan's husband treated him very well
   d) Goneril complained about his soldiers

2 Answer the following critical thinking questions:

1. What do you think of King Lear's decision to divide his kingdom among his three daughters?

   ....

   ....

2. If you were King Lear, would you send Cordelia away for not saying much about her love for her father? Give reasons.

   ....

   ....

3. What do you think of the King of France's decision to marry Cordelia?

   ....

   ....

4. Although King Lear sent him away, Kent came back in disguise to help Lear. What does this show about him?

   ....

   ....

5. Do you think that King Lear will be treated better in Regan's palace? Why? Why not?

   ....

   ....

ALAWWA Gem

Test 1 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many Egyptian football fans .... Liverpool's winning of the Premier League because of Mohamed Salah.
   a) celebrated b) rejected c) recommended d) reminded
2. The Egyptian cuisine فن الطبخ has a lot of .... dishes which are liked by foreigners such as Mahshi and Koshari.
   a) traditional b) fashionable c) modernised d) recent
3. The head teacher .... angrily at our request to leave school early to watch the match.
   a) reacted b) represented c) introduced d) inspected
4. Our grandmother is a .... old woman, and we all value her advice.
   a) lazy b) distracted c) wise d) foolish
5. The police were able to arrest a terrorist .... before they could carry out any action.
   a) sign b) call c) tumour d) cell
6. Father always tells us to keep .... of his office.
   a) on b) out c) about d) up
7. You .... take things that don't belong to you.
   a) don't have to b) mustn't c) have to d) must
8. You .... buy a pen. I can lend you one.
   a) must b) need to c) don't need to d) have to
9. He .... visit his uncle as he was ill in hospital.
   a) has to b) is necessary to c) didn't have to d) had to
10. I .... work every day from 9 to 4. If I don't, I will be fired.
    a) don't have to b) must c) have to d) mustn't
11. That's by far .... dam I've ever seen.
    a) the large b) the larger c) the largest d) largest
12. My sister is probably .... person in my life.
    a) important b) the most important
    c) more important d) the more important
13. Out of the two of them, she was far and away .... singer.
    a) a better b) the good c) the best d) the better
14. According to the schedule, the bus .... at 8:00 tomorrow.
    a) will leave b) leaves
    c) is leaving d) is going to leave
15. Where do you think you .... when you're 50?
    a) shall work b) will be worked c) will be working d) work
16. In my opinion, the population of Egypt .... by 20% next year.
    a) is increasing b) has increased c) is going to increase d) will increase

ALWAN Gem

PART 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You go to bed at night, close your eyes, and drift off to sleep. Have you ever wondered how exactly sleep works? Plus, where do dreams come from? When you fall asleep, you go through the four stages of the sleep cycle.

Stage 1. This is when you feel yourself becoming drowsy. Your muscles begin to relax and your brain activity slows down. Your eye movements are slow during Stage 1. It lasts several minutes and you can be woken up easily.

Stage 2. When your sleep becomes a bit deeper. You won't wake up as easily.

The slow eye movements continue and your brain waves slow down even more. Your body temperature goes down and your heart rate slows down.

Stage 3 is known as deep sleep. It's more difficult for you to be woken up. And although you are sleeping deeply, this is when sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs. So all those sleepwalkers out there may not actually remember doing anything strange in their sleep the next day.

Then finally, you move into REM. That stands for rapid eye movement. During the REM stage, your eyes move quickly beneath your closed eyelids. This is caused by certain brain activity. You may have vivid dreams during this stage. Your brain waves are more active than in Stages 2 and 3. They're similar to when you're awake. It's easier for someone to wake you up, but you may feel groggy or sleepy.

Once your REM phase is over, the cycle starts all over again with Stage 1.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 "You begin to feel drowsy. Your muscles relax." This happens in stage ....

a) one　　b) two
c) three　　d) four

18 What happens in stage two?

a) Sleepwalking or sleep talking occurs.
b) The person's body temperature goes down.
c) The person can be woken up easily.
d) The person may have vivid dreams.

19 The synonym of the word "drowsy " is ....

a) active　　b) vivid
c) sleepy　　d) awake

20 When you are asleep, the quick eye movement is caused by ....

a) the person's movement　　b) the person's thoughts
c) the light around the person　　d) certain brain activity

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What changes could you make to help yourself get enough sleep?

....

....

....

ALASMA Gem

㉒ Find words from the passage that mean:

a) happening at a quick pace.

b) a course of events that is repeated over and over again.

....

....

....

㉓ In your opinion, what are the benefits of getting enough sleep?

....

....

....

㉔ What do you think is better: sleeping during the day or the night? Why?

....

....

....

㉕ Translate into English:

- مع استمرار انتشار فيروس كوفيد-١٩ لجأت وزارة التربية والتعليم إلى وضع خطة للمزج بين التعليم فى المدارس والتعليم عبر الإنترنت لكى يعود الطلاب إلى المدارس هذا العام.

....

....

....

㉖ Translate into Arabic:

Peace among nations is vital. It gives every country the chance to carry out its development plans and it saves the money spent on wars and destructive weapons.

....

....

....

㉗ Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- The importance of friendship.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALMAWIA Gem

Test 2 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Schools in Egypt must have their plans to prevent COVID-19 ....
   a) perfection b) treatment c) infection d) vaccine
2. Teachers should be regularly trained on modern teaching .... to cope with modern education styles.
   a) processes b) techniques c) qualities d) quantities
3. Many young writers are used to getting .... in seminars of Cairo Book Fair.
   a) out b) away c) together d) up
4. Leaving my job was a .... decision to make as it was well-paid.
   a) foolish b) wise c) gentle d) complicated
5. The singer gave a/an .... performance that made all the fans excited.
   a) electronic b) electric c) election d) devastating
6. I can never .... the difference between these twins. They are much alike.
   a) do b) make c) design d) tell
7. When we are on holiday, we .... go to bed early.
   a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to
8. You .... smoke in hospitals. It's forbidden.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) didn't have to
9. **A:** What sort of house do you want to buy? Something big?
   B: Well, it .... be big - that's not so important. But it .... have a nice garden - that's essential.
   A) mustn't/mustn't b) mustn't/must c) must/must d) needn't/must
10. The .... thing about being unemployed is having no money.
    a) worst b) better c) worse d) best
11. Tamer and Galal are easily .... students in my class.
    a) better b) good c) well d) the best
12. The slower you work, the .... the job will take you to finish.
    a) longest b) long c) longer d) more long
13. The computer seems to be more and .... in the future.
    a) more complex b) complex
    c) most complex d) the most complex
14. Get out of the building! It sounds like the generator ....
    a) explodes b) will explode
    c) is going to explode d) will be exploding
15. I think I .... home across the park. 'That's a good idea.'
    a) am walking b) am going to walk c) walk d) will walk
16. At this time tomorrow Sameh .... for his exam.
    a) will sit b) will be sitting c) has sat d) may sit

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

All of us know how important recycling is. Recycling is when you take old things and turn them into new things. It sounds like magic. But it's actually very scientific.

Only certain materials can be recycled. These include things made out of paper, metal, glass and plastic. Can you think of everyday items made out of these materials? Soda cans are a good example. They are made out of metal. Magazines and newspapers are made out of paper. So are cereal boxes. Some bottles of juice are made out of glass. Bags and yogurt containers are made out of plastic. There are many things that can be recycled.

These things are usually stamped with the recycling loop. It has 3 arrows that go in a triangular circle. This shows that the cycle continues. Items are thrown away but continue their lives as something else. Once you put all your items in a recycling bin, a truck comes to pick them up. Everything goes to a recycling plant.

There, the materials get separated. They go into different piles. There are special machines that crush each pile together. The materials get squashed into square cubes. They are really heavy. You would need a forklift to carry them. Companies buy these cubes and turn them into new products. Old paper is torn into tiny pieces. Then special water with chemicals is poured onto it. The fibers start to stick together. In time, a brand new roll of paper is created! If there were things written or printed on the first paper, they disappear.

Recycling keeps our planet healthy. It reduces waste. It also saves energy. You can do your part. So just remember the golden rule: always recycle your products!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. When old paper is transformed into new paper, what causes the fibers of the tiny pieces of paper to stick together?
    a) A thick, sticky paste.
    b) Special water with chemicals poured onto it.
    c) A very strong glue.
    d) A yellow powder.
18. Which one of the following isn't of the steps in the process of recycling?
    a) The new recycled items are sold cheaper than the original ones.
    b) The materials get separated into different piles.
    c) Special machines crush each pile into a square cube.
    d) Companies buy the cubes of crushed materials and turn them into new products.
19. What does the word "plant" mean in "Everything goes to a recycling plant."?
    a) Tree. b) Vegetable.
    c) Factory. d) Flower.
20. Recycling is a/an .... process.
    a) difficult b) old
    c) easy d) scientific

B) Answer the following questions:

21. According to the article, give four examples of household items that can be recycled.

22. What do the three arrows of the recycling loop show?

23. What are two ways that recycling keeps our planet healthy?

24. Find words from the passage that mean:
    a) to go out of view
    b) a box used to store things

25. **Translate into English:**

- يقال أن الأدب والفن هما مرآة المجتمع التى تعكس حضارته وقيمه التى تتطور على مر العصور لذا تهتم الدولة بهما وتحاول توفير الدعم اللازم لتطويرهما.

26. **Translate into Arabic:**

We should be optimistic and always think about the good sides in our life. Pessimism is a deadly enemy that defeats our hopes and hinders our ambitions.

27. **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Our duty towards our great heritage and ancient monuments.

ALADWAA Gem

Test 3 Units 1-3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The paramedics couldn't .... CPR to the patient in the street, so they did that inside the ambulance.
   a) design b) assign c) make d) perform
2. The people who suffer .... illness due to COVID-19 are taken to intensive care units.
   a) severe b) gentle c) high d) simple
3. It is believed that taking care of people's health will certainly lead to an increase of .... in all fields.
   a) invention b) consumption c) destruction d) production
4. The young man took on extra work to increase his ....
   a) outcome b) income c) tax d) cost
5. We must remain alert for any .... of danger as a result of the COVID-19 pandemic.
   a) signs b) signatures c) landmarks d) notes
6. The students must finish the test within the .... of two hours, no more.
   a) location b) area c) space d) region
7. We .... paint the house. It hasn't been painted for many years.
   A) needn't b) don't have to c) need to d) mustn't
8. You .... eat a lot of fresh fruits to keep healthy.
   a) must to b) must c) needn't d) didn't have to
9. There's a lift in the building, so we .... climb the stairs.
   a) must b) mustn't c) have to d) don't have to
10. This house is .... the other one we saw.
    a) as big as b) much big as c) as bigger as d) the biggest
11. Your father is .... than anyone I have ever seen.
    a) a friend b) friendlier c) friendly d) more friendlier
12. It's becoming .... and harder to secure a good job nowadays.
    a) hard b) hardest c) harder d) hardly
13. The train to Alexandria .... from platform 5 at 10 p.m. This is the timetable.
    a) is leaving b) will be leaving c) will leave d) leaves
14. If I were you, I wouldn't walk across that old bridge. It looks like it ....
    a) is going to collapse b) will be collapsing c) will have collapsed d) collapses
15. Dr Sameh isn't in his office at the moment. In that case, I .... him at home.
    a) phone b) am phoning
    c) will phone d) will have phoned
16. Don't call her after half an hour. She .... a nap.
    a) will have b) will be having c) has d) is having

ALWAN Gem

PART 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

In the UK, the diseases connected to smoking are a big problem. Doctors think that the annual medical cost for lung cancer, heart disease, and other illnesses connected to smoking is between 12 and 35 million pounds.

And smoking costs society money in other ways. Between 27 and 61 billion pounds are spent each year on sick days when people don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick.

This money counts the wages from people who die of cancer at young age and stop paying taxes. This does not count fire started by cigarettes, which kill fifteen hundred people yearly and injure another four thousand. Smoking costs every man, woman and child in the UK from one hundred and ten to two hundred and fifty pounds each year in the lost work and wages. When you add another fifty to one hundred and fifty pounds yearly in insurance cost, that comes to one hundred and sixty to four hundred and ten pounds. If everyone stopped smoking, a family of four could have up to one thousand six hundred and forty pounds a year more.

In the end, the value of a non-smoking nation is not in pounds. The good health of the people is the true value for us all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. If everyone stopped smoking, all the United Kingdom ....
    a) would have more money
    b) would live longer
    c) would have less money
    d) would have no more problems

18. Every year companies lose .... because of the disease.
    a) money
    b) work
    c) wages
    d) time

19. The true value for the UK of not smoking is ....
    a) more working
    b) more taxes
    c) good health
    d) more money

20. This text is about ....
    a) taxes which are not paid by smokers
    b) diseases that smokers get
    c) how much smoking costs the UK
    d) how much the UK gets if everyone stopped smoking

B) Answer the following questions:

21. How could families earn more money if they are non-smokers?

....

....

....

ALAWWAM Gem

22 Smoking cigarettes causes many problems other than the person's health. Show how.

....

....

....

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) hurt b) importance

....

....

....

24 In your opinion, what other problems does smoking cause?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into English:**

- يحذر كثير من الخبراء من الاستخدام المفرط للتليفون المحمول لأن ذلك قد يؤدى إلى مشكلات صحية ونفسية واجتماعية خطيرة وخاصة لدى الأطفال.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Besides being an important source of national income, tourism strengthens ties among the nations of the world. It also helps to spread peace, love and understanding.

....

....

....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words to your friend about:**

The house you dream to live in.

Your name is Rania and your e-mail address is: rania10@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hana and her e-mail address is: hana200@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALNAJM Gem

Revision (2) (Units 4-6)

Vocabulary Revision

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	pile (n)	كومة
beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل	post (n) (v) (ed)	نشر/ينشر (على الإنترنت)
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)	reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد	search result (n)	نتيجة البحث
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	sigh (v) (ed) (n)	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيرى	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل	targeted advertising (n)	الإعلانات المستهدفة
follower (n)	متابع	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
formal (adj)	رسمى	update (v) (d)	يُحَدِث
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/لا يستحسن	upgrade (v) (d)	يرقى/ترقية
innovator (n)	مبدع	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
linguist (n)	عالم لغوى	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد	views (n)	مشاهدات
misunderstand (v)	يسئ الفهم		

Helpful Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة	adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم
access (n)	مدخل/سبيل	addicted (adj)	مدمن
acronym (n)	أوائل حروف الكلمات	admit (v) (ted)	يعترف
actually (adv)	بالفعل	advantage (n)	ميزة

English	Arabic
advertiser (n)	مُعلِن
aim (n)	هدف
apparently (adv)	بوضوح
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر
apply (v) (y-ied)	يتقدم بطلب
arrangement (n)	ترتيب
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع
author (n)	مؤلف
basic (adj)	أساسي
behaviour (n)	سلوك
blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة
boss (n)	رئيس العمل
breath (n)	نفس
browser (n)	متصفح
button (n)	زر
call (v) (ed)	يتصل
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لمقال أو صورة
care (v) (d)	يهتم
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر
cite (v) (d)	يستدعى
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق
compare (v) (d)	يقارن
confused (adj)	مرتبك
connect (v) (ed)	يصل
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
copy (n) (v) (y-ied)	نسخة/ينسخ
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد

English	Arabic
deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
debate (n)	مناظرة
develop (v) (ed)	يطور
disappointed (adj)	محبط
donation (n)	تبرع
employee (n)	موظف
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلي/يستضيف
everyday (adj)	يومي
excuse (n)	عذر
experience (n) (v) (d)	خبرة/تجربة/يجرب/يمر بتجربة
expression (n)	تعبير
extra (adj)	إضافي
face-to-face	وجها لوجه
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل
fake (adj)	مزيف
feelings (n)	مشاعر
findings (n)	اكتشافات
forum (n)	منتدى
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر
friendship (n)	صداقة
generous (adj)	كريم
gift (n)	هدية
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
guide (v) (d) (n)	يرشد/مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)
headline (n)	عنوان رئيسي
health (n)	صحة
highlight (v) (ed)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية

ALMAW Gem

ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
image (n)	صورة
immediate (adj)	فورى
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
including	مشتملا على/بما فيه
increase (v) (d)	يزيد
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهاز/يثبت برنامج
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل
interest (n)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمام
junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
knowledge (n)	معرفة
large (adj)	كبير
leader (n)	قائد
logical (adj)	منطقى
lovely (adj)	جميل
mark (n)	درجة/علامة
meeting (n)	اجتماع
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
moral (n)	مغزى/درس اخلاق/خُلق
necklace (n)	قلادة
nephew (n)	ابن الأخ (الأخت)
obvious (adj)	واضح
online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
parcel (n)	طرد بريدى

personal (adj)	شخصى
platform (n)	منصة/رصيف القطار
poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
positive (adj)	إيجابى
powerful (adj)	قوي/ذو نفوذ
presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
pretty (adj)	جميل
privacy (n)	خصوصية
procedure (n)	إجراء
profile (n)	الملف الشخصى
prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتب/مجلات)
purpose (n)	غرض
race (n)	سباق
rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
record (v) (ed) (n)	يسجل/سجل
register (v) (ed)	يسجل
regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
relationship (n)	علاقة
remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل
reply (v) (y ied)	يرد
represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن
request (n)	طلب
require (v) (d)	يتطلب
resource (n)	منبع/مورد

response (n)	رد/استجابة	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل	symbol (n)	رمز
scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة	task (n)	مهمة
section (n)	قسم	teen (n)	مراهق
series (n)	سلسلة	teenager (n)	مراهق
site (n)	موقع	title (n)	عنوان
skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شئ محدد	treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد
software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر	upset (v) (ed) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج
spread (v)	ينشر	version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)
stamp (n) (n) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم	victim (n)	ضحية
steal (v)	يسرق	voice (n)	صوت آدمى
sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
suddenly (adv)	فجأة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
suitable (adj)	مناسب	wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية
suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن		

Expressions & Idioms

according to	طبقا لـ	do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة
after all	على أية حال	do a history essay	يعد مقال تاريخى
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	do exercise	يمارس تمرينات
as usual	كالمعتاد	do research	يقوم ببحث علمى
at that time	فى ذلك الوقت	do the same	يفعل نفس الشىء
at the beginning	فى البداية	ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
at the same time	فى نفس الوقت	feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة
change his mind	يغير رأيه	feel sad	يشعر بالحزن

© ALAWA Gem

feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع
for ages	لعصور(لفترة طويلة)
get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
get lost	يضل الطريق
get upset	يصبح منزعجا
get worse	يسوء
give advice	يعطي نصيحة
give opinion	يعطي رأيا
go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
have a cold	يصاب بالبرد
have a problem	لديه مشكلة
have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
have an effect on	له تأثير على
have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
have much fun	يتمتع بمرح كبير
in a few years' time	في خلال سنوات قليلة
in general	بشكل عام
in person	شخصيا
in short	باختصار
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارا جديدة
keep .... warm	يحافظ على الدفء
keep .... safe	يحافظ على .... آمنا
keep .... entertained	يسلي/يجعلهم مسرورين
keep attention on	يبقى اهتماما بـ
keep in contact with	يبقى على اتصال مع
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
lose touch	يفقد الاتصال
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع
make different sounds	يصدر أصواتا مختلفة
make friends	يصادق/يكون صداقات
make rules	يضع القواعد
miss the train	يفوته القطار
on your own	بمفردك
pass an exam	يجتاز اختبار
pay attention to	يهتم بـ
post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
take a selfie	يأخذ صورة شخصية (أمامية)
take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
take notes	يدون ملاحظات
that's why	لهذا السبب

ALAWA Gem

Prepositions

adapt to	يتأقلم مع
add to/into	يضيف إلى
advice about	نصيحة بشأن
apply for	يتقدم لوظيفة
argue with	يجادل مع
ask for	يطلب
bad for	سيء لـ
breath out	زفير
bring back	يعيد ذكريات
careful about	حريص بشأن
chat with	يدردش مع
deal with	يتعامل مع
disagree with	لا يتفق مع
divided into	مقسم إلى
fall out	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
feel about	يشعر بشأن
find out	يكتشف
full of	ملىء بـ
get into	يبدأ (الاستمتاع/الاهتمام بـ)
get on with	ينسجم مع

go back	يرجع
go past	يمر بـ
hang out with	يقضى وقتا مع
information about	معلومات عن
interested in	مهتم بـ
loads of	كثير من
pay for	يدفع مقابل
plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من
run off	يجرى بعيدا
set of	مجموعة من
share with	يشارك مع
smile at	يبتسم بوجه
suitable for	مناسب لـ
take .... away	يأخذ بعيدا عن
talk about	يتحدث عن
talk to	يتحدث إلى
thank for	يشكر على
work for	يعمل لصالح
worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adapted	متأقلم
addict	يدمن	addict addiction	مدمن إدمان	addictive addicted	يؤدى إلى الإدمان مدمن
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	مُعلِن إعلان	--	
aim	يهدف	aim	هدف	aimless	بلا هدف
appear	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر

apply	يطبق	application (app)	تطبيق	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	assisting	مساعد
browse	يتصفح	browse browser	تصفح متصفح	---------------------------------------	
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعي
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصالات	communicative	اتصالي
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative compared	نسبي مقارن
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
consult	يستشير	consultation	إستشارة	consultative	إستشاري
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	critical criticised	نقدي منتقد
donate	يتبرع	donor donation	متبرع تبرع	---------------------------------------	
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب العمل	employed employable	موظف صالح للعمل
entertain	يسلي	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلي
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
guess	يخمن/يظن	guessing	تخمين/ظن	---------------------------------------	
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالي (مبدع) خيالي (بعيد عن الواقع)
improve	يحسن	improvement improving	تحسين/تحسن تحسين	improved	محسن
influence	يؤثر	influence	تأثير	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعي
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز/يمكن تمييزه

record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	--	
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
represent	يمثل	representation	تمثيل/إنابة عن	representative	ممثل
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	--	
--		similarity	تشابه	similar	متشابه
subscribe	يشترك فى	subscription	اشتراك	--	
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض
treat	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

Words, Synonyms and Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust	reject	يرفض/ينبذ
adult	بالغ	grown-up	adolescent	طفل
apparently	بوضوح	obviously	unlikely	غير محتمل
appear	يظهر	come out	disappear	يختفى
assistant	مساعد	helper	opponent	خصم
basic	أساسى	main	minor	فرعى/غير أساسى
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request	give	يعطى
care	يهتم	pay attention	ignore	يتجاهل
compare	يقارن	contrast	discard	يستبعد
criticise	ينتقد	condemn	approve	يستحسن
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse	يرفض
debate	مناظرة	argument	agreement	اتفاق
disappointed	محبط	depressed	cheerful	مرح
donation	تبرع	charity	blockage	غلق/منع
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse	annoy	يضايق
fake	مزيف	forged	genuine	أصلى/حقيقى

ALADWAA Gem

fantastic	رائع	wonderful	boring	ممل	
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss	employ	يوظف	
frown	يعبس بوجهه/يقطب حواجبه	disapprove	approve	يستحسن	
generous	كريم	hospitable	mean	بخيل	
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose	question	يتساءل	
highlight	يسلط الضوء على	focus	neglect	يهمل	
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere	deceitful	مخادع	
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate	delayed	مؤجل	
interest	اهتمام	concern	indifference	لا مبالاة	
memory	ذكرى	remembrance	forgetfulness	نسيان	
misunderstand	يسيء الفهم	misjudge	understand	يفهم	
modern	حديث	contemporary	old/ancient	قديم	
obvious	واضح	apparent	ambiguous	غامض	
organise	ينظم	arrange	ruin	يدمر	
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy	publicity	دعاية/شهرة	
procedure	إجراء	method	inaction	عدم إجراء	
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint	discouraging hindrance	مثبط إعاقة	
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient	improper	غير مناسب	
recognisable	مميز	definite	ambiguous	غامض	
register	يسجل	enroll	erase	يمحو/يزيل	
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent	praise	يمدح	
relationship	علاقة	connection	separation	انفصال	
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy	dishonest	غير أمين	
represent	يمثل	serve	differ	يختلف	
request	طلب	demand	reply	يرد	
require	يتطلب	involve	offer	يعرض	
response	رد/استجابة	reaction	request	طلب	
similar	مشابه	alike	different	مختلف	
subscribe	يشترك فى	contribute	refuse	يرفض	
support	دعم	assistance	discouragement	عدم تشجيع	
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis	negligence	إهمال	
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility	انعدام المسئولية	
treat	يعامل	deal with	abandon	يترك	
upgrade	يرقى	promote	reduce	يقلل/يخفض	
warn	يحذر	alert	mislead	يخدع	
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust	maintain	يحافظ على	

Notes on Vocabulary

No.	Word	Meaning	Example
1	everyday (adj)	يومى (صفة يأتى بعدها اسم)	Stress has become one of the common qualities of everyday life.
	every day (adv)	كل يوم (ظرف)	When I was young, I used to play football every day.
2	communicate	يتواصل/يتفاهم	Many people all over the world use English to communicate with others.
	contact	يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	Anyone with tickets will be contacted by phone. Have you kept in contact with any of your friends from school?
	connect	يصل/يربط بين شيئين	A ferry connects the island with the mainland.
3	meeting	(اجتماع) لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد	The club's monthly meeting will be held next Monday evening.
	conference	(مؤتمر) لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة	The 1991 Middle East peace conference was in Madrid.
	interview	(مقابلة شخصية) لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة	The magazine has an exclusive interview with the couple.
	appointment	(موعد) مع صديق/طبيب	Why don't you make an appointment with one of our doctors?
4	يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل بأكثر من صيغة 1. make + مفعول + (to المصدر بدون) 2. make + مفعول + adjective 3. make + it + adjective + (to + المصدر)		My parents always made us do our homework before going to bed. The writer's first novel made him famous. Modern means of communication make it easy to share ideas with all people.
5	debate	مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون	The university is hosting a debate on gun control between the main candidates.
	discussion	مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شىء مهم)	Discussions about the peace plan took place in Washington last week.
6	society	المجتمع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)	We need to do more to help the poorer members of our society.
	community	المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)	Small rural communities rely on agriculture.

	Word	Meaning	Examples
7	title	١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية) ٢- لقب ٣- مسمى وظيفى	▸ What's the title of her new book? ▸ The title "Mr." is used with a grown-up male. ▸ He has an impressive job title in the company.
	address	١- عنوان (مكان) ٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى ٣- خطاب/يخاطب	▸ Write your name, address, and phone number in the spaces provided. ▸ Do you have the address of our website? ▸ She was asked to give a formal address at the ceremony.
8	load	يحمل (بضائع/برامج)	▸ The port workers are loading the truck now.
	unload	يفرغ حمولة	▸ It was my job to unload the boxes from the van.
	overload	يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)	▸ The truck was overloaded with wood.
	download	يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	▸ Wait until the program has finished downloading.
	upload	يرفع إلى الإنترنت	▸ It might take 10 minutes to upload these files to the Internet.
9	effective	(مؤثر/فعّال) له تأثير	▸ You need more effective communication within the organisation.
	impressive	مؤثر (يترك انطباعًا جيدًا)	▸ The list of Mohamed Salah's achievements is pretty impressive.
	affecting	مؤثر (يوحى بالشجن)	▸ King Lear is really an affecting drama with the death of the hero.
10	experience	١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)	▸ You don't need any experience to work here. ▸ I had a bad experience in the last place I worked in.
	experiment	تجربة (علمية/معملية)	▸ Researchers now need to conduct further experiments.
11	publish	(ينشر)ومن الممكن أن تبنى للمجهول	▸ The newspaper is published daily.
	spread	١- ينتشر/يمتد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)	▸ Cholera spread quickly through the refugee camp. ▸ Some websites help spread rumours about people.
12	each	نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، كل واحد فى مرة	▸ Grill the fish for five minutes on each side. ▸ Each of these people has some useful talent or experience.
	every	نستخدم (every)عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شئ) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل)	▸ I can remember every detail of our conversation.
13	platform	رصيف القطار/منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث) منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)	▸ The train to Paris will depart from platform 3. ▸ The two candidates shared a platform for the question and answer session. ▸ Facebook is the most famous social platform all over the world.
	pavement	رصيف الشارع	The man suddenly stepped off the pavement into the road.

ALWAN Gem

No.	Word	Meaning	Examples
14	represent	يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)	Mr Michael was chosen to represent the company at the conference.
	act	١ - يتصرف ٢ - يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى فيلم/مسرحية/مسلسل/اعلان	He's been acting strangely ever since his mom died. She is acting the role of Lady Macbeth six evenings a week.
15	treat	يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	The clinic has treated several thousand patients free of charge.
	cure	يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	The doctor managed to cure her of her illness.
	heal	تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	This will help to heal your cuts and scratches.
16	work with	يعمل/يتعامل مع	He joined a course to learn how to work with disabled children.
	work for	يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	My father works for a small factory which makes children's clothes. We all should work for making our country a better place to live in.
	work in	يعمل فى	My friend hopes to work in the field of computer software.
	work on	يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The researchers are working on a new machine to save energy.
	work as	يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My cousin has been working as a police officer for fifteen years.
17	let	يترك/يسمح المصدر بدون (to)	My teacher lets our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	make	يجعل (المصدر بدون (to)	My teacher makes our class do a quiz before the lesson.
	cause	يسبب المصدر (to)	The corona crisis caused a lot of factories to close down.
	allow	يسمح (المصدر + to)	We refused to allow our children to stay up until midnight.
18	memory	ذاكرة/ذكرى (شئ معنوى غير ملموس)	He suffered memory loss for weeks after the accident. Her poems are often based on childhood memories.
	souvenir	تذكار (شئ مادى يذكر برحلة/حدث)	I bought the ring as a souvenir of Greece.
	anniversary	ذكرى سنوية	He bought her a diamond ring on their tenth wedding anniversary.
19	title	عنوان رئيسى فى جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب/لقب لوظيفة	The title of the first chapter is "Getting Started."
	subtitle	١ - عنوان فرعى (تحت عنوان رئيسى)/عنوان فرعى لكتاب ٢ - ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة	The opera's subtitle is 'The School for Lovers'. The film is in Chinese with English subtitles.
	caption	تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة	The caption on the picture says "This year's contest winners."

ALADWAA Gem

Prefix / Suffix

Prefix البادئة

- البادئة هى مجموعة من الحروف تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديد ومنها (mis- re – un) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples			
mis	تعطى معنى يسئ	misunderstand	يسئ الفهم	misuse	يسئ الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread	يعيد قراءة	rewrite	يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo	يلغى العمل	unrecognisable	لا يمكن تمييزه

Suffix اللاحقة

هى مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة ومنها (able- er - less) واستخدام كل منها كالتالى:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples			
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable	يمكن فهمه	recognisable	يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer	مهتم/مراعى	writer	كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless	غير حريص	useless	بلا فائدة

ALMAN Gem

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary

1. .... are used in text messages to save space and time.
   a) Sentences b) Abbreviations c) Essays d) Forms
2. A .... advert is an advertisement that appears across the top of a page on the internet.
   a) banner b) radio c) cookie d) hidden
3. You should not attempt these heavy exercises without first .... your doctor.
   a) preventing b) applying c) advising d) consulting
4. Most websites use .... to arrange the content of the website in a way that matches your preferred interests.
   a) antiviruses b) versions c) cookies d) updates
5. The new program makes .... videos and songs from the internet faster.
   a) downloading b) loading c) uploading d) overloading
6. Sometimes I'm lazy and just send a heart .... in a message to show how I feel about something.
   a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal
7. The factory owner had to .... several workers due to the economic crisis.
   a) hire b) deploy c) fire d) apply
8. Father .... with annoyance when he read my younger brother's bad school reports.
   a) smiled b) smelled c) signed d) frowned
9. Omar Khairat is known as a great .... in the field of modern Egyptian music.
   a) user b) innovator c) consumer d) inviter
10. Don't .... me—I'm not criticizing your decision.
    a) mismanage b) misuse c) misunderstand d) misbehave
11. I found the missing certificate in a .... of documents on my desk.
    a) pile b) hole c) hill d) pool
12. More details about the new invention will be .... on the website tomorrow.
    a) passed b) delivered c) spread d) posted
13. You must look for scientific information only from .... sources.
    a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex
14. The clerk .... wearily يضجر as he looked at all the documents he had to do.
    a) laughed b) sighed c) perplexed d) marked
15. To watch the full movie, you should .... to the official website.
    a) subscribe b) ascribe c) describe d) unsubscribe
16. The criminal's .... sounded sincere but I knew he was lying.
    a) sign b) tone c) mark d) stone
17. The computer company has just recently .... their server software.
    a) doubled b) duplicated c) dated d) updated
18. Windows users can .... it to the new version if their own version is original.
    a) upload b) enroll c) upgrade d) rule

ALAWWA Gem

19. The famous actor's posts and videos receive millions of .... from his fans.
 a) sponsors b) views c) prizes d) awards
20. The homeless boy came to .... a free meal from the cafe owner.
 a) beg b) order c) reply d) deliver

Helpful Vocabulary

21. The lazy student .... that he had made a mistake.
 a) adapted b) advised c) admitted d) devised
22. All governments should provide people with their .... needs like food, shelter and security.
 a) luxurious b) free c) basic d) costly
23. The organisation will be hosting a two-day .... on childcare.
 a) procedure b) search c) interview d) forum
24. The report .... the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
 a) lined b) highlighted c) dimmed d) signalled
25. You should be careful about the programs you .... on your mobile.
 a) inhale b) export c) install d) report
26. You have to register to be able to post a/an .... in this website.
 a) comment b) mark c) letter d) abbreviation
27. Mother stood looking at me with an angry .... when she saw the broken vase.
 a) impression b) depression c) progression d) expression
28. The wedding of the famous actor and actress made .... news.
 a) address b) headline c) subtitle d) tale
29. All the information you need for the report is now available .... from many websites.
 a) inline b) off line c) online d) airline
30. We should all be .... about the future of our country.
 a) positive b) negative c) affirmative d) affective
31. The .... of joining the club will take two weeks at least.
 a) timetable b) procedure c) program d) timing
32. The bird is easily .... because of its bright red feathers.
 a) available b) acceptable c) recognisable d) affectionate
33. The new Facebook policy is designed to protect the .... of your personal information.
 a) publicity b) property c) prosperity d) privacy
34. The use of computer technology has .... into all fields of work.
 a) published b) printed c) spread d) copied
35. Mandela became a .... of searching for freedom and honesty.
 a) flag b) symbol c) view d) sight
36. You can get only a free trial .... from the antivirus website.
 a) version b) session c) perfection d) fiction
37. The charity thanked the businessman for the generous .... to help the poor.
 a) request b) expense c) donation d) cost
38. My friend says he's unable to give up smoking; he's completely ....
 a) affected b) addicted c) reflected d) infected

AL WAN Gem

39 The password of the twitter account may be up to 12 .... long.
a) characters b) words c) expressions d) personalities

40 Everyone .... difficult problems at some time in their lives.
a) exhales b) experiments c) expires d) experiences

Expressions, Idioms, Prepositions, Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Notes

41 My friend believes that nothing will make him .... his mind about his work.
a) change b) make c) intense d) avoid

42 My younger brothers seem to argue .... each other all the time.
a) at b) with c) about d) over

43 My parents have been the most .... people in my life.
a) influence b) influencing c) influential d) influenced

44 The verb "maintain" can be the opposite to the verb ....
a) accept b) preserve c) keep d) waste

45 My father has lots of happy .... of his stay in Saudi Arabia which he will never forget.
a) memories b) souvenirs c) anniversaries d) occasions

46 Ahmed had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to.................. his research.
a) make b) devise c) do d) discover

47 The minister will make a/an .... to the Parliament to explain the new plan.
a) title b) reform c) report d) headline

48 Samy spent most of the day .... out with his school friends.
a) improving b) removing c) hurting d) hanging

49 We decided not to tell mum about losing the mobile as she'll .... upset.
a) fall b) get c) make d) give

50 I was able to .... in touch with some of my friends after university.
a) lose b) miss c) guard d) keep

51 The museum has a big .... of ancient Egyptian statues.
a) collect b) collection c) collective d) collected

52 The young man had .... out with his parents before moving out.
a) got b) woken c) fallen d) flown

53 The young doctor is attending a three-day .... on new treatments of the virus.
a) conference b) meeting c) interview d) appointment

54 The adjective "genuine" is an antonym to the adjective ....
a) original b) fake c) modern d) native

55 The new secretary seems to get .... with everybody in the company.
a) at b) off c) below d) on

56 The .... group of the manager will include representatives from all areas of the company.
a) consult b) consultant c) consultative d) consuming

57 The verb "condemn" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
a) criticise b) reward c) praise d) approve

58 The word "concern" is a synonym to the word ....
a) negligence b) apology c) interest d) ignorance

ALWAN Gem

59 Antibiotics are still the most .... treatment for some diseases.

a) effective b) affecting c) impressive d) sorrowful

60 The athlete was given the VIP .... after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.

a) treat b) treatment c) treated d) treatable

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

linguists – rise – save – media – emojis - abbreviations

With the popularity and ....(1).................... in use of online text-based communications came a new texting language, tailored to the new communication ....(2).................... . Today, text and chat ....(3).................... are used in many online communications including Twitter, instant messaging, email, and in online games. In time, ...(4).................... which look like pictures were also introduced to messages and chats. Some ....(5).................... think that this can affect language badly. However, young people think that this is part of the development in all fields and this can ....(6).................... time and efforts.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

passwords – download – website – post – privacy – online

There are some simple rules which you must follow if you want to stay safe online. Don't ....(1).................... any personal information online – like your address, email address or mobile number. Think carefully before posting pictures or videos of yourself. Once you've put a picture of yourself ....(2).................... most people can see it and may be able to ....(3).................... it, it's not just yours anymore. Keep your ....(4).................... settings as high as possible. Never give your....................(5).................... to anyone. Don't meet up with people you've met online. Speak to your parents or teachers about people suggesting you do. If you see something online that makes you feel uncomfortable, unsafe or worried: leave the ....(6)...................., turn off your computer if you want to and tell a trusted adult immediately.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

4 Choose the correct answer:

The internet has made meeting new people who share your interests / conflicts so much easier! However, making friends online is still a topic for much agreement / debate. Like most other things, online friendships have their pros and savings / cons. You can be friends with people from different countries. The internet has no boundaries, it allows you to meet people from all over the world. You won't meet most of them in fictional / real life. Maybe some of your online friends live close / remote enough and you will arrange meetings with them, but you surely won't be able to meet all of your online friends. You will never be able to stay / hang out together, laugh at stupid jokes or go to the cinema with them.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

ALADWAA Gem

Language

Unit (4)

Could/couldn't have + past participle
Should/shouldn't have + past participle

1 Could + inf.

Could

Affirmative: كل الضمائر + could + inf.

Negative: كل الضمائر + couldn't + inf.

١- طلب مؤدب فى المضارع
Could you help me carry this bag?

٢- للاقتراح فى المضارع
You could study science at college.

٣- للتوصيات
You could read Hamlet. It's fantastic.

٤- للمقدرة فى الماضى
I could swim when I was 10.

٥-تستخدم couldn't لعدم المقدرة فى الماضى
I couldn't answer all the questions.

2 Could have + P.P.

Could have + P.P.

Affirmative: could have + P.P.

Negative: couldn't have + P.P.

١- احتمال حدوث شىء فى الماضى
Ali could have got the licence.

٢- شىء كان فى الاستطاعة ولكن لم يحدث
I could have booked 2 tickets, but
I booked only one.

٣- تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. عن استحالة حدوث شىء فى الماضى.
My father couldn't have paid the pill. He didn't have the money.

3 Should/shouldn't have + P.P. for regrets للندم

Rule	Meaning
should have + P.P. ought to have + P.P.	to talk about regret in the past. للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء ولم نفعله)
e.g. He should have looked for another job. He is now penniless.	
shouldn't have + P.P. oughtn't to have + P.P.	to say that something in the past wasn't a good idea. شىء حدث فى الماضى ولم يكن واجبًا فعله
e.g. I shouldn't have wasted much time. I'm sorry for this now.	

PART 1

Reported speech (الكلام المنقول (غير المباشر
Reported imperatives, requests, suggestions and advice
(الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة)

١ - لتحويل الأوامر والطلبات والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر، نستخدم مجموعة من الأفعال التى يتبعها مفعول غير مباشر ثم فعل فى المصدر مع to
.verb + object + to/not to + inf.

advise	ينصح	help	يساعد	teach	يعلّم
ask	يسأل	instruct	يوجّه/يعلّم	tell	يخبر
encourage	يشجّع	invite	يدعو	want	يريد
expect	يتوقّع	order	يأمر	warn	يحذّر

- "Bring your books tomorrow."
  - The teacher *told / asked /ordered* us *to bring* our books the next day.
- "If I were you, I'd do my homework daily."
  - My mother *advised* me *to do* my homework daily.
- "Don't come late again."
  - My teacher *advised* me *not to* come late again.
- "Join the local club to do sports."
  - Ali *encouraged* his friend *to join* the local club to do sports.

٢ - لا نجد علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ثم المصدر.

٣ - إذا كان فعل القول ماضٍ فلا يوجد إلا المصدر الذى بعد to والحالات الخاصة.

٤ - يتم تحويل الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان كما فى النوعين الخبرى والاستفهامى.

Unit (5)

1 seem

seem

١ - بمعنى يبدو وتفيد الشك seem to + inf.
Ali seems to be nervous.

٢- seem + adj.
You seem happy today.

٣- It seems that + sentence
It seems that he is getting better.

Affirmative:
I/they/we/you seem
He/she/it seems

Negative:
I/they/we/you don't seem
He/she/it doesn't seem

٤- seem like + noun
It seems like a good idea to live here.

ALAWN Gem

2 be supposed to

be supposed to

- Affirmative: am/is/are supposed to
- Negative: am/is/are not supposed to

١- للتعبير عن الضرورة obligation.
I'm supposed to leave now.

٢- للتوقع expectation.
The match is supposed to be on TV.

٣- للترتيبات arrangements.
He is supposed to meet me tonight.

٤- تأتى بمعنى يقال it's said.
Ahmed is supposed to be clever.

٥- للتعبير عن شىء نعتقده beliefs.
Peugeot is supposed to be a good car.

٦- فى النفى تفيد المنع والحظر prohibition.
We aren't supposed to smoke here.

3 mean/be meant to

mean/ be meant to

- Affirmative: I/ They/ We/ You mean — He/ She/ It means
- Negative: I/ They/ We/ You don't mean — He/ She/ It doesn't mean

١- mean to + inf. يقصد فعل شىء.
I didn't mean to annoy you.

٢- be meant to لبيان الحقيقة أو الغرض.
Computers are meant to help us.

٣- intention تفيد النية فى عمل شىء.
This story is meant to be for children.

٤- mean + v. ing بمعنى متضمنا.
Having a job means getting up early.

Unit (6)

The conditionals

1 The zero conditional

Type (0)	If / When	Present simple (مضارع بسيط)	,	Present simple (مضارع بسيط)

تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية (شىء لا نتحكم فيه).

If/When you drop something, it falls to the ground.
If/When we heat air, it rises.

وتستخدم الحالة الصفرية أيضا مع الأشياء التى أصبحت عادة لدى الشخص.

If/When I have a fever, I stay in bed.
If/When I use the computer for long, I always have a headache.

2 The first conditional

Type (1) — **If** + **Present simple** (مضارع بسيط) , **Subj.** + will / may / can / should للنصيحة + inf.

نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.

If Ali arrives late again, the headmaster will punish him.
If she doesn't earn much money, she won't be able to fly to the USA.

استخدامات خاصة فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى

	جملة جواب الشرط	
If الحالة الأولى	should/'d better	If you want to succeed, you should study hard.
	must/have to	If you are robbed, you have to tell the police.
	may	If I know more than 2 languages, I may take the job.
	can/will be able to	If there is an airport here, we'll be able to travel easily.
	السؤال بـ *will* أو *may*	If you finish early, will you help me?
	فعل أمر	If you are not ill, go to school.

3 The second conditional

Type (2) — **If** + **Past simple** (ماضٍ بسيط) , **Subj.** + would / might / could + inf.

تعبر الحالة الثانية عن حدث غير محتمل فى المضارع أو المستقبل وفى إعطاء النصيحة.

If I were a bird, I could fly. (I'm not a bird. Untrue in the present)
If I were you, I'd help him. (Giving advice)

4 The third conditional

Type (3) — **If** + **Past perfect** (ماضٍ تام) , **Subj.** + would / could / might + have + P.P.

نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.

If they had known I was ill, they would have visited me. (لم يعلموا بمرضى ولم يزورونى)

wish / If only

Wish & If only	
	+ past simple ⟶ refers to the present
	+ past perfect ⟶ refers to the past
	+ would / could ⟶ refers to the future

١- نستخدم wish + past simple للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص موقف نتمنى أن يكون مختلف.

- I wish he were/was with us now.
- I wish I lived near my school.

بعد wish نستخدم were / was مع I / he / she / it و were فقط مع they/ we/ you

٢- نستخدم wish + could للتمنى أو الندم فى المضارع بخصوص عدم القدرة لفعل شىء.

- I wish he could know Spanish.
- I wish I could make my own clothes.

٣- نستخدم wish + past perfect للندم عن شىء حدث أو لم يحدث فى الماضى.

- I wish he hadn't insulted his friend.

٤- نستخدم wish + would/could للتعبير عن الرغبة فى تغيير مستقبلى غير محتمل الحدوث أو الرغبة فى التعبير عن عدم الرضا أو الحزن .

- I wish they would build a new station near my home.

٥- نستخدم could مع كل الضمائر ونستخدم would مع كل الضمائر ما عدا I/We.

- If only he would help me.
- I wish I could play Squash.

٦- عند استخدام wish وبعدها would لا بد أن يكون الفاعلين مختلفين مثل:

- He wishes he could play tennis.
- ~~He wishes he would play tennis.~~

٧- تعبر could بعد wish عن عدم القدرة وتعبر would عن عدم الرغبة

- I wish my son would drive my car. (He doesn't want to …)
- I wish my son could drive my car. (He can't drive ….)

٨- نستخدم (could have + P.P.) بدلًا من الماضى التام للتعبير عن (ندم) عن موقف فى الماضى.

- If only I could have studied French at university. I know English only.

٩- إذا لم يوجد فاعل بعد wish يأتى to + inf.

- My brother wishes to have a better job.

Alternatives to using if بدائل if

Alternative		Example
provided that on condition that as long as	جملة (حالة 1 و 2)	He can go and play with his friends, provided / on condition (that) / as long as he finishes his homework first.
Suppose /Supposing / Imagine (that)	جملة	Suppose / Supposing / imagine (that) you met the president, what would you ask him to do?
Unless	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) + جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)	
	I can't buy the car unless I have enough money.	
Without	N/v.ing	You won't succeed without studying hard.
But for	Noun	But for doctors, we might die.
In case of	Noun	In case of emergency, call this number.
In case	جملة	Bring the washing from outside in case it rains.
Should حالة أولى أو ثانية	Subj. + inf.	Should you take this medicine, take it before meals.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + n/adj.	Were I you, I wouldn't spend so much money.
Were حالة ثانية	Subj. + to + inf.	Were he to travel, he'd be sad.
Had حالة ثالثة	Subj. + P.P.	Had you finished early, you'd have watched the film.
If it weren't for حالة 2	N/v.ing	If it weren't for money, we couldn't buy anything.
If it hadn't been for حالة 3	N/v.ing	If it hadn't been for Ahmed, I'd have been helpless.

Grammar Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Unit (4)

1. We had a lovely room in the hotel. We .... a fantastic view.
   a) couldn't have seen b) should have seen
   c) could see d) could have seen
2. Father didn't find any tickets, he .... have booked earlier.
   a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) must
3. I .... bread but I didn't know we needed it.
   a) could buy b) shouldn't have bought
   c) could have bought d) might have bought
4. My father advised me .... a ticket in advance if I want to travel in August.
   a) to buying b) buying c) to be bought d) to buy
5. When I was a student, I .... study all night before an exam.
   a) could b) should c) can d) shouldn't
6. You .... have heard me right. I definitely said 74 not 47.
   a) must b) shouldn't c) could d) couldn't
7. You really .... have taken so much trouble over me.
   a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) can't
8. Father ordered his daughters .... the door for anyone while he is out.
   a) to open b) not to open c) opening d) to not open
9. Samir hasn't arrived yet. He .... have lost the way.
   a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) should d) could
10. As he was innocent, he wanted people .... what he had done.
    a) knowing b) not to know c) to know d) to be known
11. Ahmed's parents warned him .... university without getting a degree.
    a) not to leave b) to leave c) leaving d) not leaving
12. I don't know who rang, but it .... have been Kamal.
    a) must b) could c) can't d) shouldn't
13. When the new road was built, I .... to work in half an hour.
    a) should drive b) could have driven
    c) could drive d) should have driven
14. Khaled is expecting his friends .... very soon.
    a) arrive b) to arriving c) arriving d) to arrive
15. He .... have bought the same car. He was wrong to do it.
    a) shouldn't b) would c) should d) could
16. We .... have left the dog on its own. So we didn't.
    a) could b) should c) shouldn't d) couldn't

ALAWWA Gem

17. Ali's father warned him .... too much money.
 a) to spend b) not to spend c) to not spend d) to spending
18. After only six months, Suzan .... the violin quite well.
 a) could have played b) couldn't play
 c) could play d) couldn't have played
19. It's a pity you didn't ask because I .... you.
 a) could have helped b) can't help
 c) must help d) shouldn't have helped
20. The lifeguard instructed people .... near the rocks.
 a) to not swim b) to swimming c) to swim d) not to swim

Unit (5)

21. I advise you to do whatever .... best to you.
 a) supposed b) seems c) meant d) is supposed
22. You .... to buy a ticket. You will be fined if you take the train without one.
 a) seem b) are meant c) means d) are supposed
23. Come on, Hala , you .... to be helping me.
 a) are meant b) seem c) are seemed d) supposed
24. Although the exam .... easy, some students see it very difficult.
 a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) is seemed
25. You .... to be here an hour ago!
 a) meant b) seem c) are supposed d) were supposed
26. I thought we .... to be met at the airport.
 a) supposed b) seem c) were supposed d) meant
27. These new rules .... to protect people not to frighten them.
 a) are meant b) means c) supposed d) seem
28. He can't think properly. It .... clear that he has had some problems.
 a) is seemed b) is supposed c) supposes d) seems
29. The diagram .... to show the different stages of the process.
 a) meant b) is meant c) is seemed d) supposed
30. The candidate is liked by only few people. It .... likely that he will lose the election.
 a) seemed b) is seemed c) doesn't seem d) seems
31. How .... to know you were waiting for me?
 a) I was supposed b) do I seem c) was I supposed d) do I mean
32. The play .... to be really good.
 a) is meant b) meant c) is seemed d) supposed
33. Strange as it may ...., exactly the same symptoms happened to me.
 a) suppose b) mean c) seem d) be seemed
34. I haven't seen it myself, but it .... to be a great movie.
 a) is seemed b) is supposed c) means d) supposed
35. Dieting .... being careful about which foods you buy.
 a) seems b) is supposed c) is meant d) means

ALAWWA Gem

36 She .... to be a smart woman. She can find a solution to any problem.
a) is seemed b) seems c) supposed d) was meant

37 She .... to have had hundreds of lovers.
a) is supposed b) is seemed c) supposed d) seem

38 The high cost of housing .... that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) supposes c) is supposed d) means

39 Don't make decisions now. You .... to be nervous.
a) seem b) mean c) are meant d) supposed

40 You are not supposed to walk on the grass. This means that it is ....
a) allowed b) no allowed c) forbidden d) advisable

Unit (6)

41 If the trip to Egypt .... longer, I would have visited my friends in Assuit.
a) is b) was c) were d) had been

42 It's cold today. I wish it .... warmer.
a) is b) has been c) were d) had been

43 The star .... difficult to see unless the sky is very clear.
a) is b) would be c) was d) would have been

44 It is best to keep a medical kit عدة طبية ready .... emergency.
a) unless b) in case of c) if d) without

45 I wish I .... the answer, but I don't.
a) know b) would know c) had known d) knew

46 If I had known that you were joining the discussion group, I .... too. I love birds!
a) will join b) would join c) would have joined d) joined

47 If I ...., I will become very fat.
a) don't exercise b) won't exercise c) wouldn't exercise d) hadn't exercised

48 If I .... a gun in the street, I would take it to the police.
a) find b) found c) had found d) will find

49 She wishes she .... blue eyes.
a) had b) has c) had had d) would have

50 Anyone can join the course, ... there is space available.
a) in case of b) provides c) unless d) provided that

51 If I drink too much coffee, I always .... awake all night long.
a) would stay b) will stay c) stay d) may stay

52 I have to work on Sunday. I wish I .... have to work on Sunday.
a) don't b) won't c) wouldn't d) didn't

53 He was offered the job .... he went on a month-long training course.
a) unless b) on condition that c) in case of d) without

54 We .... leave on Monday if it snows today.
a) will have to b) would c) would have to d) have to

55 If I .... with people I didn't know very well, I would never be rude to them.
a) were b) am c) had been d) will be

ALADWAA Gem

56 I wish you .... borrow my things without permission.

a) don't b) won't c) wouldn't d) shouldn't

57 If you had worked harder, you .... your exams.

a) will pass b) would pass
c) would have passed d) wouldn't have passed

58 If I go to bed late, I .... drowsy in the morning.

a) felt b) won't feel c) might feel d) feel

59 What .... to your family if you were to immigrate?

a) would happen b) is happening
c) will happen d) would have happened

60 He wouldn't have visited me unless I .... him.

a) hadn't phoned b) had phoned c) phoned d) would phone

2 Choose the correct answer:

When Hesham was a student, he was very clever. He was ....(1).................. (seemed / supposed) to be a doctor, but he got 90% and ....(2).................. (joined / joins) the faculty of science. All his friends said that he ....(3).................. (could / couldn't) have got better marks, but he wasted much time. He wishes he ....(4).................. (has / had) joined the faculty of medicine. He said that he ....(5).................. (should / must) have done his best to achieve his ambition. His father has told him that he can achieve his goal by ....(6).................. (be / being) a doctor in the faculty of science.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

My friend is tired and upset. He ....(1).................. (seems / supposed) to have a lot of problems. He is ....(2).................. (supposed / seemed) to buy a large flat, but he doesn't ....(3).................. (has / have) the money needed. The flat he lives in ....(4).................. (supposed / seems) to be small and unhealthy. I've advised him ....(5).................. (look / to look) for one in the new areas built by the government. The flats, there, are ....(6).................. (meant / seemed) to be healthy and the streets are wide.

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

4 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the verbs:

Jomana is a famous, well-paid actress and this was all due to luck. If she ....(1).................. (not be) famous, we ....(2).................. (not know) her. If she ....(3).................. (not be) surfing on the internet, she wouldn't have found an acting website. Unless she ....(4).................. (posted) a profile and picture, a talent agent wouldn't have called her. If a talent agent hadn't called her, she ....(5).................. (wouldn't do) such a great job in the film and ....(6).................. (become) famous!

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6) ....

Act (2) scenes (i - ii - iii)
Act (3) scenes (i - ii - iii - iv)

Key Vocabulary

apologise	يعتذر	mice	فئران
beggar	متسول	patience	الصبر
call out	ينادى بصوت عال	persuade	يقنع
disagreement	عدم اتفاق	philosopher	فيلسوف
disbelief	عدم اعتقاد	plot against	يتآمر ضد
double	ضعف	port	ميناء
faithful	مخلص	pretend	يتظاهر
follow	يتبع	profit	ربح/يربح
forgive	يسامح/يصفح عن	reward	مكافأة/يكافئ
guard	حارس/يحرس	rise	ينهض
hard-hearted	قاسي القلب	room	فراغ
hut	كوخ	shelter	ملجأ/يلجأ إلى
joke	مزحة/نكتة	spies	جواسيس
lightning	البرق	straw	قش
lock ... out	يحبس ... خارجا	torch	مصباح

Phrases & Expressions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الظهر	set eyes on you	يلمح/يرى
change his mind	يغير رأيه	try walking in a poor person's shoes	يجرب التصرف مثل الفقير
go mad	يصاب بالجنون	turn his back on	يدير ظهره لـ

AL WM Gem

Summary

Act (2) Scene i

The setting is the Earl of Gloucester's castle. Edmund knows that the Duke of Cornwall will be arriving that evening. Edmund engages his brother in a fake battle معركة مزيفة, intentionally عمدا wounding himself to draw Gloucester's sympathy تعاطفه. In response to Edmund's explanation of his brother's attack, Gloucester promises to find Edgar and bring him to justice العدالة. Gloucester also reveals his wish to make Edmund his heir. Regan and Cornwall enter. Without hesitation تردد, they fall for Edmund's story and join in condemning ادانة Edgar. Cornwall proclaims يزعم that Edmund shall join forces with him. Regan and Cornwall flatter ينافق Gloucester by asking his advice on an appropriate response رد مناسب to letters received from Lear and Goneril.

Act (2) Scene ii

The scene opens on Edgar, alone in the woods. Edgar makes a plan in which he will disguise himself as a beggar, changing his clothes and making his face and hair look dirty. In this costume زى, he will be known as Poor Tom. Lear and his followers arrive at Gloucester's castle. Kent hails يحيى the King, who asks who has placed his messenger in stocks أداة تعذيب. Lear refuses to believe that Regan and Cornwall would imprison and humiliate يهين someone in the King's service. Regan greets her father with seeming affection, and Lear expresses the sorrow that Goneril has caused him. Regan advises Lear to seek Goneril's forgiveness, which provokes يثير the King to anger and cursing لعنة.

Act (2) Scene iii

Regan refuses to host يستضيف her father and his soldiers. Goneril, conspiring يتأمر with her sister, proposes that Lear dismiss his soldiers. The King, angered by his daughters' rejection, calls for his horse. Lear states that he would rather live outside under the stars or beg shelter in France than stay in the company صحبة of those who disrespect his proper place as father and King. Regan and Goneril instruct Gloucester not to stop their father from wondering into the night. Regan and Goneril remain unmoved and unconcerned that the old King is going out in a severe storm.

Act (3) Scene i

The setting is a field in the countryside in a storm. Talking with a soldier, Kent learns that Lear and his Fool are out in the storm. Kent relates that the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall are in disagreement. Kent also knows that the King of France is moving with an invasion غزو force to offer assistance to Lear. Kent instructs the soldier to go quickly to Dover, and when there, to make known the treatment that Lear has suffered. Kent gives the messenger a ring for delivery to Cordelia. Kent leaves to search for Lear.

AL-WAN Gem

Act (3) Scene ii

The storm continues in the fields. Lear's mood matches the nature as he rages يثور against his daughters' treatment. The Fool attempts to reason يجادل with his King, noting that the shelter of a dry house is better to a stay in the storm's fury. Kent arrives and points to a nearby hut, which promises some protection, while he returns to Goneril and Regan's house to ask that they admit the King.

Act (3) Scene iii

The setting is Gloucester's castle, where Gloucester and Edmund are talking. Gloucester tells his son that he isn't satisfied راضي at Regan and Goneril's treatment of King Lear. Gloucester also tells Edmund that he has a letter which he is hiding in his bedroom about the French soldiers who have already arrived in England. Gloucester exits to look for the King and help him. Alone, Edmund plans to win Cornwall's trust by revealing the plan to aid the King and the letter.

Act (3) Scene iv

Although Kent directs Lear to a hut for shelter, the King refuses to protect himself from the storm. The Fool runs from the hut, exclaiming that a mad man has taken possession of the hut. The mad man is Edgar disguised as Poor Tom. The King has a conversation with Edgar not knowing him. Gloucester enters the scene, carrying a torch. He has found both warm shelter and food for the King, but Lear declines, claiming that he needs to talk more with the beggar. The disguised Edgar complains of the cold and everyone moves into the shelter. Gloucester persuades the King to go with him with Kent and the Fool. Kent asks Gloucester to take the mad man with them.

ALADWAA Gem

Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should .... to your customers for making them wait for a long time.
   a) punish b) apologise c) afford d) stand
2. We stood watching in .... as the car rolled into the water.
   a) disbelief b) pleasure c) satisfaction d) planning
3. Despite his problems, his friends have remained .... to him and helped him a lot.
   a) useless b) unaffected c) faithful d) influenced
4. I'll never .... my friend for losing my expensive camera which I had lent him.
   a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
5. A flash of .... lit up the sky during yesterday's violent storm.
   a) thunder b) lightning c) rain d) earthquake
6. I don't have the .... to wait in line for hours just to buy a ticket.
   a) patience b) planning c) organisation d) acceptance
7. They were accused of .... against their country and helping the enemy.
   a) innovating b) suspecting c) playing d) plotting
8. I .... not to see Lamia, and carried on walking down the street.
   a) protected b) prevented c) pretended d) ignored
9. We sat in the shade, ... from the burning heat of the sun.
   a) sheltering b) subjecting c) improving d) assigning
10. Farmers usually use .... to feed their animals and make beds for them to sleep on.
    a) cream b) wood c) straw d) wool
11. Why does Edmund wound himself intentionally?
    a) To defend his country. b) To donate blood.
    c) To help his father. d) To convince his father of Edgar's plot.
12. To escape from his father's soldiers, Edgar disguised as a ....
    a) beggar b) soldier c) philosopher d) fool
13. King Lear was angry when he saw Kent in the stocks because ....
    a) he didn't want to reward him
    b) he was in his service
    c) he hurt Oswald
    d) he didn't want to please his daughters
14. Goneril wanted King Lear to keep .... of his soldiers.
    a) all b) none c) half d) quarter

ALADWAA Gem

15 To whom does Kent ask the soldier to give the ring?

a) Regan. b) Goneril.

c) The King of France. d) Cordelia.

16 Why would Edmund tell the Duke about the letter which his father keeps?

a) To win his trust. b) To defend his country.

c) To be rewarded with money. d) To be given more land.

2 Answer the following critical thinking questions:

1 What do you think of Edmund?

....

....

2 What is your opinion of Regan and Goneril's treatment of their father?

....

....

3 If you were King Lear, would you prefer to wonder in the storm rather than accept Regan and Goneril's conditions to host him? Why? Why not?

....

....

4 Why do you think King Lear called the beggar a "philosopher"?

....

....

5 Do you think Cordelia will help her father? Why? Why not?

....

....

ALAWAM Gem

Test 1 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The YouTube website enables customers to .... only trailers of new movies legally.
   a) download b) loading c) uploading d) overloading
2. A/An .... an icon, similar to an emoticon, used in electronic messages and on websites.
   a) character b) emoji c) abbreviation d) signal
3. The head teacher's .... was sharp with anger because of the student's bad behaviour.
   a) sign b) mark c) tone d) stone
4. I didn't want to go to the party, but my friends .... me into it.
   a) protected b) prevented c) discouraged d) persuaded
5. Everyone admire the Baron palace's beautifully restored .... gardens which were reopened lately.
   a) normal b) formal c) disorganised d) disgusted
6. The government made it easier to have many official service .... as a precaution against COVID-19.
   a) inline b) off line c) online d) airline
7. It's your own fault, you .... have gone to bed so late.
   a) should b) must c) can't d) shouldn't
8. You .... to pay the rent before the third day of the month.
   a) are supposed b) mean c) seem d) are seemed
9. As it was the time to close, all the customers were politely asked .... the shop.
   a) leaving b) to leaving c) to leave d) to have left
10. He didn't find the keys anywhere. You .... have left them on the bus.
    a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) could
11. When she went out this morning, she left her briefcase here. She .... to leave it behind.
    a) couldn't mean b) could mean
    c) could have meant d) couldn't have meant
12. It .... like a good idea to postpone the meeting until next Monday.
    a) seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) is seemed
13. Doctors said they could not treat the boy unless his parents .... their permission.
    a) had given b) gave c) give d) were given
14. I'm sure he didn't .... any harm.
    a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) supposed
15. He wishes he .... buy a new car.
    a) might b) could c) should d) would
16. If I hear any news, I .... you.
    a) would phone b) phoned c) phone d) will phone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The winter months in North America are December, January, February, and March. Winter is the best season of the year. During the winter months, temperatures are usually colder and there are fewer hours of daylight. Cold winter temperatures are caused by the tilting of the Earth. When Earth's Northern Hemisphere is tilted away from the sun, there are fewer hours of daylight and the temperature is colder. When the Northern Hemisphere tilts towards the sun, there is more daylight time and the temperatures are warmer. The tilting of the Earth as it spins causes the seasons to change.

Animals have special ways of preparing themselves for winter. Some animals, like birds and butterflies travel long distances, or migrate, to warmer temperatures during the winter months. Other animals go to sleep, or hibernate, during the winter. Bears, gophers, snakes, and bats hibernate. Squirrels and raccoons don't migrate or hibernate. Instead, they gather extra food during the fall months and store it away so they have plenty to eat during the winter.

In some areas, winter is a time when snow falls and gathers on the ground. People who live in these places can enjoy special winter activities like skiing, sledding, or snowboarding. They can also build snowmen and snow castles. When the water in lakes and ponds freeze, people can ice skate or play ice hockey. Some people even cut a hole in the ice and go ice fishing!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Which sentence is an opinion?

a) The winter months are December, January, February and March.

b) Winter is the best season of the year.

c) There is more daylight during the summer months.

d) The tilting of the Earth causes the seasons to change.

18 During the winter months, the Northern Hemisphere is ....

a) tilted away from the sun b) tilted towards the sun

c) tilted away from the moon d) tilted towards the earth

19 The synonym of the word "tilting" is ....

a) leaning b) straightening

c) flattening d) destroying

20 All the following animals hibernate during the winter months except ....

a) bats b) gophers

c) bears d) butterflies

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do squirrels and raccoons do to prepare for the winter?

....

....

....

ALAWA Gem

22 Find words from the passage that mean:

a) travel long distances.

b) to sleep through the winter.

....

....

....

23 Name three activities mentioned in the article that require a frozen pond or lake.

....

....

....

24 Write two sentences describing some things you like to do in the winter.

....

....

....

25 **Translate into English:**

- تعمل الحكومة على إنشاء العديد من مراكز الشباب وتزويدها بالإمكانيات الحديثة لتسهل عليهم ممارسة الرياضة وقضاء أوقات فراغهم بطريقة مفيدة.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Television with its varied programmes has its great influence on the minds of people everywhere. It has become an important means of shaping the public opinion.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- How has the development of medical sciences made our life better?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 2 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The teacher .... at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
   a) smiled b) smelled c) signed d) frowned
2. Experts warn us not to .... our personal and financial data on unknown websites.
   a) pass b) deliver c) publish d) post
3. All the fans gave a .... of relief when the referee gave the final whistle.
   a) cry b) sigh c) site d) view
4. I couldn't .... my antivirus software because it cost much money.
   a) upload b) enroll c) upgrade d) rule
5. My suitcase was so full that I didn't have .... for anything else.
   a) room b) line c) rooms d) rule
6. Parents always put their own needs to the bottom of the .... They care for their children first.
   a) hill b) mountain c) land d) pile
7. The words .... to be a good name for the shop , but no one liked them.
   a) meant b) means c) were meant d) meaning
8. I strongly encourage everyone .... or see King Lear. It's an important play.
   a) read b) to read c) reading d) to reading
9. You .... have refused the cake. It was rude.
   a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) can't
10. The traffic policeman didn't give him a ticket. He .... have noticed that he was using the mobile phone while driving.
    a) might b) shouldn't c) must d) couldn't
11. It .... to me that students have to work hard to get high marks.
    a) is supposed b) seems c) is meant d) is seemed
12. Students .... to bring electronic devices into the exam room.
    a) are not supposed b) are seemed c) supposed d) are supposed
13. Ali .... the news if he wanted to know what was happening in the world.
    a) will watch b) would have watched c) can watch d) would watch
14. It .... to be some kind of joke, but it turned to be something silly.
    a) means b) was meant c) is supposed d) seems
15. If scientists' predictions are correct, average global temperatures .... by 6 degrees.
    a) may rise b) are risen c) rose d) should rise
16. Visitors are welcome, ... they don't make troubles.
    a) without b) unless c) as long as d) provides

ALWAN Gem

PART 1

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My tooth hurt through the night. I had to take a painkiller to lessen the pain. Worst of all I did not get a wink of sleep the whole night through.

The next morning. I told my mother about my toothache. It was obvious I could not go to school. So, instead she took me to the dentist. I was horrified, but I had no choice.

At nine o'clock we waited outside the dentist's office. The nurse came and opened the door. I was the first patient. She wrote down my particulars and told me to wait a moment. The dentist had not arrived yet. Meanwhile the tooth still ached like mad.

The burly dentist arrived and I was ushered to the dentist's chair. Normally I would run away from the frightening surgery with all its horrible drills and pliers, but I did not. I had to get the offending tooth out.

So, I sat down on the reclining chair while the dentist kept saying some reassuring words. I relaxed somewhat. He asked me to open my mouth. I did so. He said that the tooth had to come out. I nodded dumbly in reply.

I felt a slight prick of pain when he gave me an injection, but that was nothing compared to the toothache. Soon, miraculously, all pain disappeared. The anaesthetic definitely worked very quickly. Then before I knew it, the dentist told me that I could go. I looked at him quizzically and he told me he had already pulled the tooth out. What wonder, I did not even feel it.

The dentist put a wad of cotton over the wound and he told me to keep my mouth shut for a while. I nodded, smiled and went out into the waiting room where my mother was waiting for me. The visit to the dentist was not too bad after all.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The writer's tooth made him .... all night.
   a) angry b) awake c) horrified d) happy
18. In the writer's opinion, the surgery was ....
   a) fantastic b) frightened c) terrifying d) untidy
19. On leaving the dentist's office, the writer was completely ....
   a) happy b) terrified c) sad d) angry
20. The synonym of the word "obvious" is ....
   a) easy b) difficult c) obscure d) clear

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Find words from the passage that mean:
   a) to show someone where they should go.
   b) amazingly

....

....

....

ALAWWA Gem

22 In two sentences describe the dentist.

....

....

....

23 How do you think people felt during operations before inventing anaesthetic?

....

....

....

24 Modern technology has helped medicine a lot. Explain.

....

....

....

25 **Translate into English:**

- يقول خبراء الاقتصاد أن جذب الاستثمارات الأجنبية أحد أهم الحلول للمشكلات الاقتصادية التى نعانى منها مما يدفع الحكومة لتقديم المزيد من التسهيلات للمستثمرين.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

Individuals differ in their ability to understand complex ideas and to adapt effectively to the environment. So, they must be taught in different ways.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- How can we make schools an exciting place for education?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALMAM Gem

Test 3 Units 4-6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You should .... your lawyer before exchanging contracts.
   a) prevent b) apply c) advise d) consult
2. Firefighters took more than an hour to bring the .... under control.
   a) quarrel b) battle c) fire d) fight
3. Eating sensibly and taking regular exercise is a fairly .... method of losing weight.
   a) removable b) reusable c) reliable d) complex
4. It isn't acceptable to see children .... food from strangers.
   a) begging b) ordering c) replying d) delivering
5. The film is basically a story of a .... who gave important information to the enemy.
   a) leader b) spy c) king d) duke
6. I have never .... to the view that schooldays are the happiest days of your life.
   a) ascribed b) approved c) subscribed d) frowned
7. The president has instructed the government .... more houses for youth.
   a) to have built b) building c) build d) to build
8. It wasn't necessary to tell the police. You .... have solved the problem personally.
   a) could b) might c) must d) shouldn't
9. We .... have taken a taxi when it rained. I'm sorry we didn't.
   a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) can't
10. I think you .... have listened to him. He told us very useful things about technology.
    a) shouldn't b) could c) should d) couldn't
11. This area .... to be safe, but there are fierce dogs that can harm anyone.
    a) is seemed b) supposed c) seems d) means
12. He is a comic person. He .... to make people laugh.
    a) seems b) is supposed c) means d) is seemed
13. Do you know what "luxurious" ....?
    a) means b) mean c) supposes d) seems
14. She misses him. She wishes he .... her a letter.
    a) would send b) has sent
    c) will send d) would have sent
15. Your letter won't be delivered unless it .... the correct postage.
    a) had b) will have c) has d) had had
16. If I hadn't stayed up late last night, I .... up early.
    a) will get b) wouldn't have got
    c) would have got d) would get

ALWAN Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Think about all the history and stories of our culture. We preserve them by writing them down in books. Today, we also have technology to use. In the early days, though, people did not have a language that could be written. They had only their own voices. They used their voices to pass down their history.

They told special stories and spoke about their customs. These stories are called folklore. Primitive people did not have a written language. Many of their stories were in the form of myths that explained mysteries of nature. Some were legends about past heroes of their culture. Many of the stories included elements of religion and magic. Modern methods of storytelling are available today. However, many tribes choose to continue the custom of oral storytelling and folklore. It is part of their cultural experience.

Many tribes have a history of believing in spirits. They believe that the spirits often take the form of animals found in nature. The animal spirits watch over them.

However, they also see the ancient gods as animal tricksters. A trickster is a character who plays tricks and jokes on others. A trickster often causes trouble or inconvenience. It really doesn't mean any terrible harm, though.

Many traditional ceremonies use animal costumes. The ceremonies honour the animals in the hopes that they will save their tricks for someone else. Other ceremonies are held to help the tribe prepare for a special event. They celebrate things like marriages, births, battles, harvests or hunts.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. People in the past used .... to pass down their history.
    - a) one language
    - b) technology
    - c) different languages
    - d) voices

18. The underlined pronoun "them" refers to ....
    - a) history
    - b) history and stories
    - c) culture
    - d) stories

19. People in the past believed that their gods could be in the form of ....
    - a) religious men
    - b) hunters
    - c) animal tricksters
    - d) magicians

20. The antonym of the adjective "primitive" is ....
    - a) advanced
    - b) original
    - c) simple
    - d) ancient

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Why do you think many people continue storytelling even though other methods are available today?

....

....

....

ALAWAM Gem

22 What is a trickster?

....

....

....

23 Why do the ceremonies include animal costumes?

....

....

....

24 What kind of stories do you like? Why?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into English:**

- يجب على المدرسين فى الوقت الحاضر مواكبة الطرق الحديثة فى التربية واستخدام التكنولوجيا الحديثة التى أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة اليومية.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into Arabic:**

The government is carrying out a lot of industrial and agricultural projects in Upper Egypt. This leads to providing job opportunities for the citizens there.

....

....

....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Living in new cities has a lot of advantages and disadvantages.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALADWAA Gem

Part 2

Are you ready for tests?

Final Tests

Final Tests

Practice Test 1 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mother has .... a delicious meal of chicken and rice.
   a) prepared b) celebrated c) done d) cook
2. Do you prefer sweet food like chocolate or .... food such as fish and nuts?
   a) salt b) salty c) spicy d) small
3. Where do you have to put your hands when you .... CPR?
   a) prepare b) make c) perform d) act
4. You shouldn't smoke, it is very bad for your ....
   a) muscle b) cell c) surface d) lungs
5. All family members sang many .... while we decorated the Christmas tree.
   a) concerts b) carols c) albums d) gifts
6. The verb "neglect" can be the opposite to the verb "................" .
   a) highlight b) frown c) enjoy d) persuade
7. There will be food at the family party, so you .... to eat before you come.
   a) must b) have c) mustn't d) don't have
8. In next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist.
   a) talk b) will be talking c) talking d) have talked
9. There was food at my friend's party, so I .... eat before I went there.
   a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) had to d) don't have to
10. Did you know that Indian food is one of the .... foods in the UK?
    a) most popular b) poor c) best popular d) popular
11. You .... to take more than three books a week. It's the rule.
    a) are not supposed b) don't seem c) mean d) don't suppose
12. You can't share my apartment .... you pay the rent.
    a) in case b) provided c) if d) unless
13. Fatma said she was hungry, but she didn't eat very much after all. She ....
    a) couldn't like the food
    b) couldn't have liked the food
    c) can't like the food
    d) couldn't have been hungry
14. My parents have invited one of my friends .... with us for the weekend.
    a) to stay b) not to stay c) to staying d) to be stayed
15. I .... you with the barbeque if you like.
    a) help b) am helping c) will help d) will be helped
16. Things are better organised now – we have .... problems than before.
    a) fewer b) less c) more less d) least

ALAWAL Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

What do you have to give to a plant in your home? Most people would say food, water and light. However, an Englishman did an experiment and he found that you only have to give a plant sunlight for it to grow. In 1960, David Latimer put a plant inside a large glass bottle with a little soil. In 1972, he gave the plant some water, then he closed the bottle. He has not opened the bottle since that time, and years later, the plant is still growing inside the bottle. The plant, which is in David Latimer's house, needs light from a nearby window, but nothing else. He doesn't have to water it or give it food.

The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air. This means that the plant can use the water to survive. The plant's food source is its old leaves, which the water in the bottle helps to recycle. The plant is now more than 50 years old and it will continue growing inside the bottle for many more years.

Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space. The plants will be a sustainable food source, and they will also help to take pollution from the air of a spaceship.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. What does David Latimer give to his plant every day?
    a) Some water. **b)** Food and water. **c)** Old leaves. **d)** Nothing.

18. When did David Latimer last open the glass bottle?
    a) 1960. **b)** 50 years ago. **c)** 1972. **d)** Last year.

19. What does the plant need from outside the bottle?
    a) Light. **b)** Water. **c)** Oxygen. **d)** Leaves.

20. In the future, this plant will ....
    a) go into space **b)** stop growing
    c) be a sustainable food **d)** take pollution from the air

B) Answer the following questions:

21. How was the plant able to live inside the glass bottle?

....

....

....

22. Why are scientists interested in this plant?

....

....

....

23. How might plants like this help people in space?

....

....

....

ALADWA Gem

24 Suggest two other things that can replace traditional food types.

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

The immune system is made of the cells and organs in our bodies working together to protect us from infections and diseases. The immune system keeps us healthy because people with strong immune systems get ill less often.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف أن يســتفيد من أخطائــه المختلفة. التعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعا اكتسابها، فمن لا يتعلم مــن أخطائه لا ينجح أبدًا.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of about (180) words on:**

- Describe a dish that has a great deal of popularity in Egypt but is not Egyptian. Why do people eat it?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALADWAA Gem

Practice Test 2 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. CPR is a famous ....
   a) abbreviation b) acronym c) word d) punctuation
2. Ali .... what the teacher said and did the wrong homework last night.
   a) misunderstood b) deceived c) ruined d) fell out with
3. They have just .... the timetable, so we know these train times are correct.
   a) deleted b) got into c) solved d) updated
4. It is .... not to share a box of chocolates.
   a) mean b) nasty c) careless d) wise
5. Poor hygiene can increase the danger of .... of diseases.
   a) affection b) infection c) defection d) perfection
6. Mohamed Salah is considered the cream of the .... in the Egyptian football team.
   a) product b) wheat c) crop d) manufacture
7. I didn't know you were in my city yesterday, you .... me!
   a) could phone b) should have phoned
   c) should phone d) would have phoned
8. The teacher told the students .... their books at page 150.
   a) to open b) open c) you open d) opening
9. I .... send the report to the General Manager; he needed it urgently.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) didn't have to
10. My brother would have been a doctor if he .... his exams.
    a) passed b) would pass c) had passed d) pass
11. I have .... friends in the world.
    a) the best b) good c) best d) the better
12. What do you mean .... about the leaky pipes?
    a) to do b) doing c) to doing d) to have done
13. I wish I ...., I wouldn't have felt guilty.
    a) will apologise b) apologised c) hadn't apologised d) had apologised
14. I don't have enough money to buy lunch. .... you lend me a couple of dollars?
    a) Might b) Could c) May d) Shall
15. I read in the paper that they .... the price of gas again.
    a) increase b) are going to increase c) are increased d) will be increasing
16. The better the party the night before, the .... it is to get up in the morning.
    a) most difficult b) difficult c) more difficult d) least difficult

ALMAWNA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last year, my friend Hamid and I decided to visit an old friend called Adam. We had first met Adam at Cairo University, but we lost touch with him when he moved to Thessaloniki in the north of Greece. I had always wanted to see Athens and so Hamid agreed to spend a few days there before we went to meet our friend. We decided to use an old guidebook of the city that my cousin, Sami, had given to me. It was supposed to be the best guide to the city. It seemed to be very detailed and it had a lot of maps.

At the time, I didn't realise that it had been more than fifteen years since my cousin last visited Athens. If we had known that his book had been written in 2003, we wouldn't have used it! It told us to avoid a lot of hazardous places in the city, so we did. Adam later told us that those areas were fantastic. We should have realised that a lot of changes had been made to the city for the 2004 Olympic Games. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved. If we had known about them, we would have gone to see those areas for ourselves.

When we left Adam, he gave us an up-to-date and reliable new guide to Greece, which we used to visit some of the islands. You could also read it online and download maps and updates. It was fantastic! If I went travelling again, I would definitely use an up-to-date guide.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Why didn't Hamid and the writer keep in touch with Adam?
a) They fell out with him. b) He lived in a different country.
c) He went to a different school. d) He spoke a different language.

18 What did the writer first think of the guidebook his cousin gave him?
a) It seemed to be good. b) It was very old.
c) He did not trust it. d) It was new and reliable.

19 Why did the writer and Hamid not visit some parts of Athens?
a) Adam ordered them not to go there.
b) The guidebook did not recommend them.
c) The Olympic Games were happening.
d) They did not have time.

20 How did they get information to travel around the islands?
a) From an online guide. b) From a guide that Adam wrote.
c) From a book. d) From a man who knew the islands.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What had changed in Athens since 2003?

....

....

....

22 What do you think the word "hazardous" in the text means?

....

23 What do you think the writer learnt from his trip to Greece?

....

24 What problems do you think online guides might have?

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

You can benefit from using the internet if you are careful. You mustn't share your password with anyone. If you do, they will be able to see your private information.

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- لقد تأثر سوق العمل والاقتصاد العالمى كثيراً فى كل أنحاء العالم بجائحة كورونا حيث تضررت العمالة اليومية، كما ظهرت العديد من الوظائف التى تؤدى من البيت وانتشر التسوق عبر الإنترنت.

....

27 **Write an essay of about (180) words on the following topic:**

Write a blog about your life so far. What are your wishes and regrets?

....

Practice Test 3 (Modified)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Firefighters have to .... quickly when there is an emergency.
   a) sigh b) divide c) persuade d) react
2. This cave is very dark. Does anyone have a ....?
   a) sword b) post c) torch d) frown
3. If you are rude to someone, you should ....
   a) apologise b) perform c) shelter d) deceive
4. In their game, some of the children .... to be animals.
   a) rewarded b) did c) pretended d) looked
5. I love reading my favourite writer's blog .... because I learn so much.
   a) passes b) posts c) pasts d) views
6. The film review was moderate in .... as it didn't attack the actors much.
   a) sound b) detail c) tone d) a hurry
7. You .... sit on that wall. It is dangerous.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to
8. The students all feel .... now that the exams have finished.
   a) the happiest b) happier c) more happy d) happiest
9. In the future, I think we .... electric cars.
   a) drive b) be driving c) will be driving d) are driving
10. Ahmed feels ill and wishes he .... eaten so many sweets.
    a) hasn't b) didn't c) won't d) hadn't
11. He .... happy to be chosen as the best player in the match.
    a) seems b) seems to c) is supposed d) means
12. Look! Our car isn't in the driveway! Somebody .... it.
    a) could have stolen b) must be stealing c) must have stolen d) might have stolen
13. Don't sit on that bench, I .... it.
    a) will paint b) am going to paint c) will be painting d) will have painted
14. The more spices a meal has, the .... expensive it becomes.
    a) most b) more c) little d) much
15. If dad .... here, he would know what to do.
    a) had been b) were c) will be d) is
16. Hesham doesn't speak very clearly. ....
    a) It is difficult to understand b) He is difficult to understand
    c) He is difficult to understand him d) It is difficult to understand it

ALMAWMA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

When you learn English, you should remember that languages are always changing. New words and phrases will appear and sometimes old words start to have new meanings. If you want to be really effective at learning a language, it is important to know about these new words. A list is published online every year. For example, unfriend is a new verb that is used when you stop being friends with someone on social media. The phrase fake news was added to dictionaries in 2019 after many false stories started to appear on social media. The phrase social distancing was first used in 2020 during the health emergency, and it means keeping away from other people.

The German word uber has recently been used in informal English to mean 'very successful', adding to the many other foreign words used in English, such as café (from French) and the small motorbike called a moped (from Swedish).

You might wish that English followed the example of the Portuguese language to make spelling easier. Portugal and Brazil both speak the same language, but the Portuguese recently changed the spelling of many words to follow the same rules that they use in Brazil because they are much easier. At the moment, however, if you learn English in many parts of the world, you usually have to learn the British English spellings, which can be more difficult than American English spellings.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. It is important to .... changes to the English language.
    a) be aware of b) take control of
    c) be tempted by d) bring back

18. You can use the verb "unfriend" when you want to stop .... friends on social media.
    a) losing touch with b) keeping in touch with
    c) subscribing d) uploading

19. The German word uber is an example of ....
    a) an informal use of an old word
    b) a foreign word used by successful people
    c) a new informal word in English
    d) a very common word in English

20. They changed the spelling of Portuguese because they wanted it to be ....
    a) like English b) more traditional
    c) the same as the American spelling d) easier

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Why were phrases such as fake news and social distancing added to dictionaries recently?

....

....

....

GALAXY Gem

22 What has not changed about the English language, according to the article?

....

....

....

23 Why do you think English uses words from other languages?

....

....

....

24 Do you think people should change the rules of a language to make it easier to learn? Why/Why not?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

The world is experiencing a lot of epidemics, such as COVID-19. So, we should all follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being infected with serious diseases.

26 **Translate into English:**

- يُـعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. ومع ذلك، فإن هذا يفتقر إلى العمل الجماعى ولا يطور المهارات.

27 **Write an essay of about (180) words on the topic:**

- Persuade a friend of yours of how it is important to stay safe and healthy.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ELAWWAL Gem

Final Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The new supermarket has a giant a flashing neon .... at the entrance.
   a) signal b) mark c) sign d) landmark
2. The .... of calories a person needs each day depend on the type of work they do.
   a) account b) quality c) weight d) amount
3. The Corona Virus pandemic increased the importance of .... to provide food for our own country.
   a) economy b) agriculture c) literature d) culture
4. A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
   a) linguist b) botanist c) astrologist d) biologist
5. My new car is a better and more .... car than my last one.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
6. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their .... and religions.
   a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races
7. You .... leave your bags with someone you don't know.
   a) have to b) mustn't c) had to d) don't have to
8. I must finish this essay today. It .... be handed in by tomorrow.
   a) has to b) mustn't c) had to d) needn't
9. They are confident. It .... that they know what they're doing.
   a) is meant b) supposed c) supposes d) seems
10. We find that we have far .... time to relax now that we have children.
    a) less b) much c) many d) a lot of
11. There aren't as many people at this meeting .... at the last one.
    a) so b) than c) as d) like
12. This time next week, I .... at the Hilton if you need to contact me.
    a) will wait b) will be staying c) am going to wait d) wait
13. Although he is a liar, he expects people .... him.
    a) to believe b) to be believed c) believing d) believe
14. I wish I .... help you.
    a) can b) will c) would d) could
15. I don't like stories .... have unhappy endings.
    a) which b) they c) who d) whose
16. Everything is going well. We .... any problems so far.
    a) didn't have b) don't have c) haven't had d) hadn't had

ALMAWMA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Scientists study the world and learn about how it works. As they study the world, the scientists use a process called the scientific method. They ask important questions and search for the answers. Sometimes they make amazing discoveries! There are times when a scientist is unable to answer his own question.

If he has taken good notes, another scientist may come along later and use his notes to find the answer. Every year there is new knowledge.

The scientific method is a step-by-step process. You can use it to conduct an experiment. You start by making observations about something that interests you. Based on your observations, you make a hypothesis. A hypothesis is a smart guess you make by using what you know. You guess what you think could happen. Now you are ready to begin your experiment.

During your experiment you should take notes. These notes are your experiment data. You constantly make observations during this time. You may discover things that make you to revise your experiment. Eventually, you conclude your experiment.

Next, you begin to look over your notes. You decide what you found out in your experiment. You make a final statement about whether or not your hypothesis was correct. You use reasons and evidence to support your statement.

Using the scientific method can be challenging. However, it can also be rewarding. All the steps are organised in a process. When you provide observations and data as evidence to support your conclusion, your ideas are more likely to be accepted.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is the scientific method?

a) Doing a step-by-step process for studying the world.
b) Asking important questions.
c) Searching for the answers.
d) Conducting an experiment.

18 What is the last step in the scientific method?

a) Taking notes. b) Making a hypothesis.
c) Making a final statement. d) Making observations.

19 When you find something that interests you, how do you make a hypothesis?

a) By making observations. b) By taking notes.
c) By making a hypothesis. d) By making a final statement.

20 The antonym of the word "conclude" is ....

a) close b) start c) finish d) end

B) Answer the following questions:

21 What do scientists do to study the world and learn about how it works?

....

....

....

EL MOASSER Gem

22 Why is it important to take good notes when you are conducting an experiment?

....

....

....

23 How do you think scientists should be honoured?

....

....

....

24 Name two things you might like to investigate this year for a science project.

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

The attack of the Coronavirus known as COVID-19 forced governments to impose strict precautionary measures. They closed schools, universities and entertainment places and imposed curfew.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- بسبب المشروعات الزراعية الكبيرة فى مصر فى السنوات القليلة الماضية زادت صادرات مصر من المنتجات الزراعية إلى كل دول العالم بشكل كبير مما ساهم فى زيادة الدخل القومى.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- What are the ways in which technology is changing our lives and what can we expect in future?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALNAWA Gem

Final Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We all .... father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
   a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed
2. My grandmother always keep a sewing .... in her handbag.
   a) kit b) tool c) device d) machine
3. Egypt .... its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
   a) accept b) reward c) celebrate d) report
4. The Nile is our most important .... water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
   a) believable b) noticeable c) avoidable d) sustainable
5. We intend to make a/an .... written complaint against the car agency.
   a) normal b) formal c) occasional d) feast
6. The applicant .... no time in introducing himself to the interviewer.
   a) wasted b) missed c) profited d) benefited
7. I .... see the head teacher yesterday as she had called me to her office.
   a) have to b) needn't c) had to d) mustn't
8. When did you .... give the books back?
   a) had to b) must c) needn't d) have to
9. Vegetable curry is usually .... than the other meals on the menu.
   a) spicier b) spicy c) spiciest d) most spicy
10. Yesterday it was 39°C, the .... day of the year so far.
    a) most hottest b) hottest c) hot d) hotter
11. If you get late again tonight, I .... for you. So, we're clear.
    a) wait b) will be waiting c) won't be waiting d) am waiting
12. Khalid didn't know where the ball was, but he thought his sister .... have been playing with it.
    a) could b) must c) can't d) mustn't
13. I'm going to buy this book. It .... to be very good.
    a) seemed b) is seemed c) is supposed d) supposed
14. Do you think I'd be here if I .... a choice?
    a) had had b) have c) were d) had
15. "Do you think it will rain?" ....
    a) I hope not b) I don't hope c) I don't hope so d) I hope no
16. "You don't know where Hany is, ...?" "Sorry, I have no idea".
    a) don't you b) do you c) are you d) is he

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Every day many people are involved in road accidents. Some are killed. Many more are injured or maimed. So it is important for us to learn to use the roads properly and safely. No sane person would like to be involved in an accident.

As the roads are very busy nowadays, we should be very careful when crossing one. It is safer to use a pedestrian crossing or an overhead bridge whenever one is available. Never cross a road by dashing across it. That is inviting trouble. If there are no crossings, then we must look carefully left and right and cross only when it is safe to do so.

Some of us take the bus to school. It is important that we do not try to get on or off a bus while it is still moving. I tried to get on a moving bus once. It dragged me a short distance and nearly ran over me. I was lucky to escape with only some scratches on my legs. Also we must not fool around while on the bus. A suddenly lurch can send us knocking our heads against something hard.

Using a bicycle can be dangerous too. We must pay attention on the road and never cycle too far out to the middle of the road. We must obey all traffic rules. Also we must make sure our bicycles are in good conditions with working brakes, light, etc.

These are some things we can do to avoid accidents. However there is no guarantee that we will never be involved in one. The important thing is to stay alert at all times while using the roads.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. In order to prevent accidents, how should people use the roads?
   a) All the time. b) Properly and safely.
   c) Two or three days a week. d) Only on holidays.
18. Bicycles are in good conditions if they ....
   a) have working brakes and lights b) cycle in the middle of the road
   c) are in many bright colours d) equal wheels
19. The synonym of the word "available" is ....
   a) unavailable b) restricted c) accessible d) closed
20. What is the alternative to crossing busy roads?
   a) Using a pedestrian crossing. b) An overhead bridge.
   c) Waiting for holidays to cross them. d) Both a and b.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. What should we do if we decide to catch the bus? Mention two things.

....

....

....

22. What should a person do if there are no crossings?

....

....

....

ALAWAM Gem

23 Accidents might occur while we are on the bus. Explain.

....

....

....

24 What do you think will happen if we use the roads carefully or carelessly?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Cheating is a dishonest way of gaining success. That's why; strict measures are taken by the Ministry of Education to prevent cheating.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- أظهرت أزمة فيروس كورونا المستجد أهمية تعاون الدول لحل المشكلات المختلفة التى تواجه العالم التى أصبح البحث عن لقاح لهذا الفيروس من أهمها.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Fighting pollution and its bad effects are the responsibility of governments and individuals.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALWAN Gem

Final Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was able to .... only a trial version of the games from the Internet for free.
   a) load b) overload c) upload d) download
2. The airline .... some of its stuff to decrease their losses.
   a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed
3. The artist painted the .... of a boat against the setting sun.
   a) direction b) profile c) character d) site
4. All laws have very .... penalties for people who sell drugs.
   a) simple b) severe c) fragile d) merciful
5. The young writer began his career writing .... for the local magazine.
   a) leaflets b) brochures c) articles d) captions
6. Many Egyptian farmers keep .... such as cows and buffaloes to help them in their fields.
   a) livestock b) dairy c) household d) poultry
7. I .... go to the post office to receive the parcel. The postman delivered it.
   a) didn't have to b) don't have to c) have to d) had to
8. She .... come with us if she doesn't want to.
   a) has to b) needn't c) mustn't d) must
9. This exercise is too difficult. I think you should make it ....
   a) as simple b) most simple c) more simpler d) simpler
10. When she comes, they .... dinner.
    a) have b) will be having c) are going to having d) have
11. I'm not feeling well. In fact, I think I .... sick!
    a) am b) will be being c) am going to be d) will have been
12. He said that he never wanted to see you, but I'm sure he didn't .... it.
    a) meant b) seem c) suppose d) mean
13. The plastic melts if it .... too hot.
    a) gets b) got c) is getting d) had got
14. My friends have invited me .... the pyramids with them.
    a) visiting b) to visiting c) to visit d) to have visited
15. You can't stop me .... what I want.
    a) that I do b) do c) doing d) to do
16. .... a hotel, we looked for somewhere to have dinner.
    a) Having found b) Finding c) After founding d) We found

Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Mount Everest is the tallest mountain on Earth. Mount Everest is still growing a few millimeters every year! Its peak is located on the border between Nepal and Tibet in China. It is part of the great Himalayan Mountain range.

For many years, climbers tried and failed to reach the summit of Mount Everest. In 1953, the British put everything they had into giving it one more try. They hoped that their climbers would reach the top in time for the coronation of Queen Elizabeth.

Ten different climbers from all over the world were chosen to make the trek. In April and May, supplies were relayed up the mountain, and camps were set up every 1,000 to 2,000 feet.

On May 29, 1953, two of the climbers set out for the summit from their camp at 27,900 feet. On that morning, Edmund P. Hillary (from New Zealand) and Tenzing Norgay (from Nepal) accomplished one of the greatest climbing feats ever. They were the first to reach the summit of Mount Everest. When they returned home, journalists kept asking the two men who reached the summit first. Each time they were asked, the response was the same: "We reached it together, as a team."

Between 1921 and 2007, over two thousand people have climbed Mount Everest, some more than once. Since the first ascent in 1953, more than 600 climbers from 20 different countries have reached the summit. However, over two hundred climbers have died attempting to climb Mount Everest, most commonly from avalanches, but also from falls in crevasses, cold, or high-altitude sicknesses.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 What is this passage mostly about?
- **a)** The first people who climbed on Mount Everest.
- **b)** The location of Mount Everest.
- **c)** The first climbers to reach the top of Mount Everest.
- **d)** The first time Queen Elizabeth climbed Mount Everest.

18 Read the following sentence from the article and choose the meaning for the underlined word.
They hoped that their climbers would reach the top before the coronation of Queen Elizabeth.
- **a)** Birth.
- **b)** Special feast held by a king or queen.
- **c)** Birthday celebration.
- **d)** Ceremony for crowning a king or queen.

19 Where is Mount Everest located?
- **a)** In Asia.
- **b)** In Western Europe.
- **c)** In North America.
- **d)** In South America.

20 Which sentence is an opinion?
- **a)** On May 29, 1953, two climbers reached the summit of Mount Everest.
- **b)** For many years, climbers had tried to reach the summit of Mount Everest.
- **c)** Mount Everest is part of the great Himalayan Mountain range.
- **d)** Edmund P. Hillary and Tenzing Norgay accomplished one of the greatest climbing feats ever.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Do we know the name of the first person to reach the summit of Mount Everest? Explain.

....

....

....

22 Find words from the passage that give the antonym of:

a) descent b) succeeded

....

....

....

23 What do you think of all those people who climbed Everest?

....

....

....

24 Why do you think people want to do this dangerous things like climbing Everest? Give two reasons.

....

....

....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Music eases our nerves and renews our energies. It inspires us with courage and fills us with hope. It cures sick minds and heals troubled souls.

....

....

....

26 Translate into English:

- للسياحة دور هام فى الاقتصاد فى مصر فهى توفر الكثير من فرص العمل كما أنها ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الأجنبية التى تحتاجها مصر.

....

....

....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

"An exciting journey that you will never forget"

- Your name is Yasser and your e-mail address is: yasser_19@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Medhat and his e-mail address is: medhat200@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALMOASSER Gem

Final Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Being able to adapt to different situations is one of the .... life skills.
   a) fictional b) extra c) additional d) basic
2. Within less than an hour, the fire had .... to the fuel stores.
   a) published b) spread c) printed d) sprayed
3. Nowadays, all .... should spend money on training their staff.
   a) customers b) buyers c) employers d) clients
4. All airports have special machines to .... passengers' bags.
   a) scan b) skim c) expect d) state
5. Modern freezing .... enable the chickens to be stored for weeks.
   a) diseases b) routes c) techniques d) causers
6. A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
   a) licence b) degree c) permission d) questionnaire
7. If I hadn't broken my leg. I .... the race.
   a) would win b) might have won c) will win d) win
8. You .... keep medicines where children can get them.
   a) have to b) must c) mustn't d) needn't
9. Was the film .... funny as his last one?
   a) much b) as c) more d) less
10. Do you like my new solar watch? Here, I .... you how it works.
    a) show b) will be showing c) am showing d) will show
11. I .... have taken the job if they had offered it to me earlier.
    a) could b) shouldn't c) must d) couldn't
12. I .... to have left my book at home.
    a) supposed b) am meant c) mean d) seem
13. .... late, we will have to start without him.
    a) Were he to be b) Should he be c) Had he been d) Unless he is
14. The .... planet in the solar system is Jupiter.
    a) large b) larger c) largest d) most large
15. I'm tired. I'd rather .... out this evening, if you don't mind.
    a) not going b) not to go c) don't go d) not go
16. Have you been to ....?
    a) Canada or United States b) the Canada or the United States
    c) the Canada or United States d) Canada or the United States

ALADWAA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Let me out," the explorer said, "or I'll make the sun go away. Right here in the middle of the day I'll make something eat up your sun." The jungle people did not believe him. They laughed and poked sticks at him through the bars of the cage. "All right," he said, "You'll see. My magic is strong. Now I'll make the sun go away in the middle of the day."

And the sun did go away! At least it seemed to. Something seemed to eat up the sun a little at a time until it was all gone and the day was as dark as midnight. The jungle people moaned and cried. They were very afraid of this explorer whose magic was strong enough to take their sun away. "Make the sun come back," they cried, and we'll do anything you say. We'll set you free and give you food and great treasures." "All right," the explorer said. "I'll make the sun come back." And the sun did come back after a while.

What the jungle people did not know was that day, the sun was eclipsed by the moon. Eclipse means to hide something by coming in front of it. When this happens, it can turn as dark as night right in the middle of the day.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The main idea in the passage is ....
   a) the explorer's trick to be set free
   b) magic and the sun
   c) the jungle people's kindness
   d) the explorer's power to hide the sun

18. The thing that was really eating up the sun was ....
   a) magic
   b) a dragon
   c) an eclipse
   d) the explorer

19. The explorer seemed to have much knowledge with ....
   a) primitive people
   b) astronomy
   c) medicine
   d) magic

20. The synonym of the word "moaned" is ....
   a) slept
   b) ran
   c) frightened
   d) groaned

B) Answer the following questions:

21. What did the jungle people do when the explorer threatened to take the sun?

....

....

....

22. How was the explorer more knowledgeable than the jungle people?

....

....

....

© ALAWMA Gem

23 Why do you think the jungle people imprison the explorer?

....

....

....

24 What do you think of what the explorer did?

....

....

....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Many of our old cities don't suit modern life. They consist of a variety of buildings and narrow streets full of petrol fumes and noise which affect people's health.

....

....

....

26 Translate into English:

- إن مصر هبة النيل وبدونه ستصبح مصر صحراء جرداء لذلك يجب علينا الحفاظ عليه وترشيد استهلاكنا من المياه مما يساعدنا فى مواجهة أزمة سد النهضة.

....

....

....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- The pros and cons of modern means of transport.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor encouraged the child to increase the .... of food that he eats.
   a) mixture b) variety c) combination d) collocation
2. To do this job done, you need a computer .... to the Internet.
   a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered
3. It's important to .... a virus checker on your mobile or tablet.
   a) break b) smash c) attach d) install
4. If you change your .... about the wall colour, it's easy to just paint over it.
   a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter
5. The shoe factory has come under .... for using child labour.
   a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot
6. The famous actress complained that the magazine had invaded her .... by printing the photos with her children.
   a) privacy b) priority c) protect d) coverage
7. You .... see a doctor. It's not so serious.
   a) had to b) didn't have to c) mustn't d) needn't
8. For some students mathematics is the .... subject they take.
   a) difficult b) more difficult c) most difficult d) much difficult
9. If the weather stays good, we .... a game of tennis tomorrow.
   a) would play b) will play c) would have played d) will be playing
10. My elder brother taught me how .... a bike.
    a) to ride b) riding c) to be riding d) ride
11. Why hasn't the teacher come to school today? She .... to be ill.
    a) means b)is meant c) was seemed d) is supposed
12. If you .... much money last year, you wouldn't have suffered a lot.
    a) had wasted b) hadn't wasted c) wasted d) didn't waste
13. At the same time tomorrow, we .... through the streets of downtown.
    a) will walk b) are going to walk c) will be walking d) walk
14. If you had this house, a husband, and three children to look after, you .... tired like me.
    a) looked b) would have looked c) will look d) would look
15. Are you looking forward .... on holiday?
    a) to going b) that you go c) to go d) going
16. I haven't seen her for ...., I've forgotten what she looks like.
    a) so along b) a such long time
    c) such a long time d) so long time

ALAWAN Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I live in a housing estate like all my neighbours. The one thing about living in a housing estate is that we have many neighbours.

Next to my house on the right lives a family whose parents seem to be always scolding the children. I do not know them very well because they always appear angry. Never a day passes without hearing the children crying and the parents shouting at the top of their voices.

On the other side of my house, however, lives a very quiet and polite family. Mr. Saber is a quiet man who seems to manage his family very well. Though he has four children, which is one more than the other family, I never hear him scold his children. So his children never cry.

Further down the road is a family whose radio is switched on most of the time, except late at night. His immediate neighbours must have a tough time putting up with the noise of the radio.

Then there is a family whose members seem to live in a world of their own. Many times we have met along the road and not once has any of them even nod his or her head in acknowledgement. They are not blind or deaf. Yet they can walk straight past as if I am not there at all. I would not say that they are unfriendly. I guess they are simply not interested in knowing their neighbours.

These are some of the neighbours living near me. There are others that I have yet to meet. However I am careful not to intrude on their privacy. The friendly ones smile or raise their hands. The not-so-friendly ones look away. I have to live among them, friendly or not.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. How many children does the first family have?
   a) Four. b) Two. c) Three. d) Five.

18. Which one of the following isn't true about the writer and his neighbours?
   a) All the writer's neighbours are bad.
   b) All the writer's neighbours live in housing estates.
   c) The writer doesn't intrude on his neighbours' privacy.
   d) The writer has to live among his good and bad neighbours.

19. The antonym of the word "scolding" is ....
   a) making angry b) praising
   c) surprising d) punishing

20. The children's behaviour is affected by ....
   a) the number of the family b) the name of the family
   c) the neighbours' behaviour d) the parents' management

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Find words from the passage that mean:
   a) interfere b) greeting

....

....

....

22 What do the members of the family who seem to live in a world of their own do?

....

23 How would you like your neighbours to be?

....

24 What would you do if your neighbours are not good?

....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Online learning is becoming more popular today as more people have access to computers and the Internet. It was the only solutions for students to complete their study during the crisis of COVID-19.

....

26 Translate into English:

- تحقق أفلام الخيال العلمى وأفلام الحركة أرباحـًا كبيرة فى جميع أنحاء العالم بسبب إعجاب الشباب بها بينما أصبحت الأفلام الرومانسية فى ذيل قائمة الإيرادات فى كثير من بلاد العالم.

....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

"A goal you hope to achieve in the future"

- Your name is Wafaa and your e-mail address is: wafaa1000@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Hanan and her e-mail address is: hanan200@yahoo.com.

....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Doctors say that the small blood vessels in the nose .... easily, so some fighting sports player wear a face mask.
   a) breed b) heal c) treat d) bleed
2. It was real fun to .... together with his old school friends.
   a) go b) make c) get d) intend
3. There is clear .... that smoking causes heart disease.
   a) law b) case c) invention d) evidence
4. What was the .... of that book you were reading last week?
   a) address b) title c) rank d) award
5. If your memory problems do not improve, you should .... a specialist.
   a) consult b) detect c) predict d) hire
6. The two villages are similar in size but very different in ....
   a) feeling b) character c) letter d) assumption
7. You .... stand on the plane. There are seats for everyone.
   a) had to b) have to c) must d) don't have to
8. There were lots of buses, so we .... drive to the airport.
   a) didn't have to b) needn't c) must d) had to
9. *The Lord of the Rings* was the .... film I have ever seen.
   a) much exciting b) most exciting c) exciting d) more exciting
10. The plane from Saudi Arabia .... Cairo Airport at 4:30.
    a) will have reached b) is reaching c) is going to reach d) reaches
11. Nobody knows where the jewels have gone. They .... have been stolen.
    a) should b) must c) could d) can't
12. He is a liar, which .... that we'll never believe him.
    a) seem b) means c) suppose d) mean
13. I .... you twenty pounds if you fix my computer for me.
    a) would have given b) would give c) will give d) give
14. .... they seen us, we would have been in trouble.
    a) Should b) If c) Had d) Were
15. When Marwa came to Britain, she had to get used .... on the left.
    a) for driving b) to drive c) to driving d) driving
16. We don't have .... on holiday right now.
    a) enough money to go b) money enough to go
    c) enough money for go d) money enough for going

ALAWWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Interests are important to think about. But it is most important to know about your values. Work values seem to affect one's choice of jobs even more than interests. So, sometimes one may go through a conflict between his interests and his work values. Some people, for instance, might accept jobs that don't fit their work values. That means that something important to them is missing. In other words they have to do something in their job which doesn't fit their work values.

One work value is working under pressure. Some people like to work that way. Others can't stand it. Suzan loves pressure. She works best when she has to meet a deadline. She loves a job where she has to hurry. She would be bored in a job without pressure. On the contrary, Fatma can't stand pressure. She gets nervous and makes mistakes. Pressure even makes her sick. She won't be able to stay very long in a pressure cause job. Some occupations are more likely to have time pressure than others. For example, working for a newspaper always has deadlines. All jobs involve some degree of pressure, whether it's hitting targets, meeting deadlines or managing multiple tasks at once – some jobs more than others (think: surgeons or firefighters, for example). In other words, the ability to work under pressure is a skill highly sought after by employers, and it is, therefore, important you provide an answer that proves you're perfectly capable of keeping your cool in difficult and stressful situations.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. According to the writer our choice of jobs is influenced by ....
a) our education b) work values c) personality d) salaries

18. According to the passage working under pressure means ....
a) meeting a deadline b) finishing at any time
c) making mistakes d) enjoying our job

19. The synonym of "conflict" is ....
a) balance b) agreement c) harmony d) struggle

20. In most time, pressure leads to ....
a) relaxation b) satisfaction c) freedom d) sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

21. What happens to people who don't like their jobs?

....

....

....

22. Explain in two points how working under pressure is something bad.

....

....

....

ALADWAA Gem

23 What skills should a person have to work under pressure? Mention two skills.

....

....

....

24 Do you like working under pressure or not? Why?

....

....

....

25 Translate into Arabic:

One of our environmental problems is the rise in the temperature of the earth. The heavy rains that we have witnessed lately is a warning to man to stop polluting the atmosphere.

....

....

....

26 Translate into English:

- تضرب مصر مثالًا كبيرًا للتسامح بين الأديان من خلال التعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذى يرجع لمئات السنين والذى حماها من الفتنة الطائفية على مر العصور.

....

....

....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- A famous person and the services he/she did to humanity.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALMAWSAM Gem

Final Test 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People complained that the rubbish lay in .... on the street and this was collected at once.
   a) piles b) hays c) holes d) wreckages
2. The famous tennis player Venus Williams won several important singles .... before retiring.
   a) titles b) names c) headings d) tours
3. To .... healthy, you should follow the rules of personal and public cleanliness.
   a) leave b) move c) stay d) remove
4. The Japanese bride insisted on wearing a/an .... Japanese kimono on her wedding.
   a) styled b) technological c) inventive d) traditional
5. My uncle made a fortune by .... in used cars and new flats.
   a) inspiring b) investing c) moving d) respecting
6. Mona's teaching experience gives her a/an .... when working with children.
   a) disadvantage b) danger c) advantage d) experiment
7. We .... to school tomorrow as it is a holiday.
   a) needn't go b) needn't have gone c) have to d) must
8. As you get older, you get ....
   a) tolerant b) more tolerant c) most tolerant d) the most tolerant
9. What .... at the party tonight?
   a) you wearing b) do you wear c) are you worn d) are you wearing
10. They were warned .... the mountain in such bad weather.
   a) to climb b) climbing c) not to climb d) to not climb
11. She has been on the phone for an hour. She .... to have an interesting conversation!
   a) is meant b) supposed c) seems d) is seemed
12. .... his phone number, I would call him.
   a) Were I to know b) If I know c) Unless I knew d) Had I known
13. Which of the three supermarkets do you think has .... range of products?
   a) widest b) the widest c) wider d) the most wide
14. Hisham .... at the club tonight. We should go and see him. He's a great player.
   a) will be playing b) will play c) is going to play d) plays
15. I phoned the restaurant .... a table.
   a) for reserve b) to reserve c) for reserving d) for to reserve
16. It's two years .... Joe.
   a) that I don't see b) since I last saw
   c) that I haven't seen d) since I didn't see

ALMOALEM Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

I walk a kilometre or so to school every morning. Sometimes I come across a mad woman dressed in a dark dirty sari. She probably has not had a bath for years. Her hair is matted, teeth stained red with betel-nut and eyes blood-shot with the look of madness. I always keep my distance from her for my own safety for I cannot be sure what she will do next. Also she smells terrible up close.

She is by no means violent but she has the nasty habit of following people who pass by. Normally when I see her I cross over to the other side of the road just to avoid her. Usually that works. Sometimes she crosses the road too. So I run. Fortunately she cannot run very fast and gives up after a while.

One morning, as I crossed the road to avoid her, she tried to cross too. I started to run. She started to run too but tripped on her sari. She fell down hard on the road and lay there in a heap. I wanted to keep running but I saw that she was in great danger of being run over by a car. So I ran over to her to pull her to the roadside.

As much as I disliked it, I had to help her. The other passers-by did not seem to bother. So I held my breath and pull her by her arms towards the roadside. By now people and cars had stopped to watch. No one helped but at last I managed to drag her to safety.

She opened her eyes and gave me a smile. I could only stare at her dumbly. Then I turned and hurried to school to wash my hands.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. One of the following isn't true about the old woman.
   a) Her clothes were dirty and her air was untidy.
   b) She was violent.
   c) She follows and runs after people who pass her.
   d) She liked the writer's help.

18. The expression "I held my breath" means ....
   a) I stopped breathing **b)** I didn't have oxygen
   c) I was sad **d)** I hated it

19. When people saw the woman in danger, they ....
   a) came to help **b)** did nothing
   c) ran away **d)** thanked the writer

20. The writer proved to be ....
   a) violent **b)** fool
   c) coward **d)** kind

B) Answer the following questions:

21. How does the mad woman look?

....

....

....

ALAWA Gem

22 Give two reasons that make the writer walk away from the woman.

....
....
....

23 What do you think would have happened if the writer hadn't helped the woman?

....
....
....

24 What do you think we should do to the street people?

....
....
....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork, together with tolerance, is essential for the success of any project.

....
....
....

26 **Translate into English:**

مهما كان طموحك للمستقبل عليك أن تعمل بجد وصبر لكى تستطيع تحقيقه ولكن تذكر أيضًا أن التخطيط الجيد يساعدك فى ذلك.

....
....
....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Many people think that money is the main cause of happiness. State your opinion.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... advertising are those advertisements who appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
   a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging .... with some friends.
   a) on b) in c) out d) at
3. British Airways has a very good safety .... Accidents are rare on their flights.
   a) prize b) record c) revision d) medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in .... sales of the new product.
   a) pulling b) depriving c) boosting d) discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much .... for his successful football career.
   a) disrespect b) rudeness c) affection d) respect
6. At the end of the 17th century England was still ...., depending mainly on agriculture.
   a) rural b) urban c) space d) spicy
7. The bigger the flat is, the .... time she takes to clean it.
   a) longer b) longest c) long d) more long
8. I often .... work at the weekend to get everything done.
   a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) didn't have to
9. I .... for my results all the next month.
   a) wait b) will wait c) will be waiting d) will be waited
10. Why did you leave the exam room? You .... have checked your answers more thoroughly.
    a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) oughtn't
11. I'm .... to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow but I think I'm going down with flu.
    a) seemed b) suppose c) seem d) supposed
12. I would have been in bad trouble, if she .... me.
    a) hadn't helped b) were c) is d) will be
13. The mobile phone must be one of the .... inventions of all time.
    a) useful b) most useful c) less useful d) more useful
14. We have to hurry. The train .... in five minutes.
    a) is leaving b) leaves c) will have left d) won't leave
15. I didn't hear you .... You must have been very quiet.
    a) came b) to come c) come d) to coming
16. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was .... journey.
    a) three hours b) three hour c) a three-hours d) a three-hour

ALWAN Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting.

This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things of our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way.

So I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The writer has liked reading since ....
    a) his graduation b) his childhood c) his marriage d) his youth
18. Through reading, the person becomes ....
    a) knowledgeable b) available c) famous d) honourable
19. The word "bygone" means ....
    a) the things that will happen in the future
    b) the things that happen daily
    c) the things that will never happen
    d) the things that happening in a past time
20. In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a ....
    a) disaster b) responsibility c) hobby d) danger

B) Answer the following questions:

21. What books does the writer like reading?

....

....

....

22. Reading can save you from danger. Give two examples.

....

....

....

ALWAN Gem

PART 2

23 Find words from the passage that mean:

1. to deal successfully with a difficult situation
2. having a lot of knowledge

....

....

....

24 Do you like reading? Why? Why not?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

In the past, trade was on a small scale. Today, trade has greatly developed and increased. Goods are now transported quickly and safely.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- تعانــى العديد من دول العالم من مشـكلة اللاجئين الذين تجبرهم الحروب والصراعات والمشـكلات الاقتصادية الكبيــرة على ترك أوطانهم والبحث عن حياه أفضل.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

Your favourite social networking site.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper .... around the world.
   a) addresses b) headquarters c) headlines d) backlines
2. I couldn't .... in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
   a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't ....
   a) proved b) approved c) disapproved d) improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an .... of the USA as a very rich country.
   a) photo b) location c) site d) image
5. A specialist did a full heart .... for the patient before the operation.
   a) examination b) process c) intention d) surgery
6. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are .... to many people.
   a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted
7. We .... have a ticket with your name on or we couldn't travel.
   a) have to b) had to c) must d) needn't
8. Employees .... accept the new conditions or be dismissed.
   a) will have to b) don't have to c) needn't d) can't
9. The higher the temperature, the .... the demand for ice cream.
   a) great b) greatest c) greatly d) greater
10. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I .... something nice in my wardrobe.
    a) find b) am going to find c) will find d) am finding
11. The presenter asked the writer .... about Shakespeare's early life.
    a) to talk b) to talking c) talking d) talk
12. A company's logo .... to help people easily identify its products.
    a) meant b) means c) meaning d) is meant
13. If you like it, ... it?
    a) you will buy b) would you have bought
    c) would you buy d) will you buy
14. If we had a map, we .... able to get out of here.
    a) shall be b) would be c) should have been d) would have been
15. This isn't my book. It's ....
    a) my sister b) from my sister c) of my sister's d) my sister's
16. They are very kind to me. They treat me .... their own son.
    a) as if I were b) as if I would be c) as if I had d) as I am

ALAWWA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can ....
 a) run factories b) end your life c) make you happy d) darken your room
18. If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?
 a) The electrician. b) The children. c) The parents. d) The neighbours.
19. Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as ....
 a) there is much electricity in it b) hot water can scald your skin
 c) you may slip easily and become bedridden d) fire can break out at any time
20. Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are ....
 a) milk b) medicine c) fruit d) sweets

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded? Mention two dangers.

....

....

....

22. Find words from the passage that mean:
 a) to kill someone by causing electricity to flow through their body.
 b) to burn the skin with boiling liquid or steam.

....

....

....

ALADWAA Gem

23 Why is the kitchen considered a dangerous place to cause accidents?

....

....

....

24 What do you think is the most dangerous place at home? Why?

....

....

....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Education is a process by which people acquire knowledge, skills and values. It helps people become useful members of the society. Parents and teachers have the chief responsibility for education.

....

....

....

26 Translate into English:

- رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانـًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

....

....

....

27 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

AL MOASER Gem

Final Test 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This furniture is still in its .... condition, so it is valuable.
   a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting
2. The government must now deal .... the problem of high unemployment.
   a) in b) at c) with d) of
3. Social media have attracted .... because of their increasing popularity.
   a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals
4. In this programme, old soldiers talk about their .... of the war.
   a) memories b) souvenirs c) memorials d) anniversaries
5. The two little sisters .... arms happily as they walked to school.
   a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called
6. My brother is doing a .... in economics to have a promotion.
   a) journey b) course c) search d) trip
7. To get a cheap ticket, he .... book in advance.
   a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) had to
8. She earns at least as much .... Maher, and probably more.
   a) as b) than c) more d) of
9. This is my last day here. I .... to England tomorrow.
   a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't
10. The results were completely wrong. As a scientist she .... have planned the experiment more carefully.
    a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should
11. A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It .... difficult.
    a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed
12. If I had another 5000 pounds, I .... a car.
    a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy
13. That chocolate ice cream tastes ....
    a) deliciously b) more deliciously c) delicious d) the most deliciously
14. Samy has told us that he .... when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
    a) is working b) works c) will work d) will be working
15. I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. .... is getting married.
    a) A friend of mine b) A friend of me c) One my friends d) A friend's
16. They live on a busy road. .... a lot of noise from the traffic.
    a) It must have b) There must be c) It must be d) There must have

GALAXY Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also *more compact*. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 Humans fear that one day computers and robots ....
- a) are busier than humans
- b) are cleverer than humans
- c) will make humans jobless
- d) will make humans listen to certain noise

18 The BEST title for this passage would be ....
- a) Computers and Robots
- b) Old and New Computers.
- c) Robots are Security Guards
- d) The Electronic Invention

19 Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as *more compact*.
- a) Huge.
- b) Cheaper.
- c) Smaller.
- d) Costly.

20 Which of the following statements in NOT TRUE?
- a) Robots are controlled by a computer.
- b) Robots are mechanical people.
- c) Robots do not get tired of working.
- d) Robots are used in factories in Japan.

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why did the first computers fill up almost the whole floor?

....

....

....

NLANWA Gem

22 Why do humans have to feed the computers with information and tell them what to do?

....

....

....

23 Find words from the passage that give the meaning of:

a) expensive b) collect

....

....

....

24 In your opinion, how would computers will be like in the future?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

26 **Translate into English:**

- عـلاوة علـى المناظر الطبيعية الخلابة والطقـس المعتدل تمتلك مصر العديد من الأعمال الهندسـية المذهلة القديمة والحديثـة لذلك تجذب الزائرين والسائحين من جميع أنحاء العالم.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

"A country or city you would like very much to visit."

- Your name is Magdy and your e-mail address is: magdy4@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Ayman and her e-mail address is: ayman_2020@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALAWAM Gem

Revision Test 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Kareem was thankful for his friends' .... during his health problems.
   a) support b) seduction c) neglect d) struggle
2. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting ....
   a) accident b) event c) incidents d) process
3. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the .... space.
   a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) proper
4. The Egyptian Food Bank's .... is to provide food for homeless people.
   a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim
5. A spy is someone who .... against his country and give secrets to its enemy.
   a) innovates b) suspects c) plays d) plot
6. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started .... up and turning into a quarrel.
   a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating
7. To get there on time, I .... leave home by 8:30.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) needn't
8. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the .... I have ever had.
   a) most enjoyable b) more enjoyable c) enjoyable d) less enjoyable
9. Hurry up! The conference .... in 20 minutes.
   a) will be beginning b) begins c) won't begin d) has begun
10. Ali's mother taught him .... and encouraged him to become a doctor.
    a) read b) to reading c) reading d) to read
11. She .... to speak Italian in an English class.
    a) is supposed b) is meant c) is not supposed d) is seemed
12. If we .... there, we would never have found what was happening.
    a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) haven't gone d) weren't
13. I studied a lot for the exam. I ....
    a) am not failing b) am not going to fail c) don't fail d) won't be failing
14. It's not .... beautiful a house as I'd imagined.
    a) much b) more c) the d) as
15. We couldn't buy anything because .... of the shops were open.
    a) all b) nothing c) no-one d) none
16. We watched TV all evening .... we didn't have anything better to do.
    a) because of b) while c) since d) when

ALADWAA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years.

The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day.

The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. There are .... types of elephants in the world.
    - a) one
    - b) two
    - c) three
    - d) many
18. The Asian elephant can be found in ....
    - a) Indonesia
    - b) America
    - c) Australia
    - d) Holland
19. The synonym of the word "poaching" is ....
    - a) slaughtering
    - b) immigrating
    - c) killing
    - d) stealing
20. What happens to an orphan elephant?
    - a) It is looked after by another female elephant.
    - b) It is abandoned.
    - c) It is looked after by the whole herd.
    - d) It is killed.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. How is the elephant similar to humans in terms of giving birth?

....

....

....

ALNOMAN Gem

22 There are similarities between the African and Asian elephants. Mention two.

....

....

....

23 Give two reasons why elephants are captured alive.

....

....

....

24 Why do you think the elephant is found only in Asia and Africa?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. That's why all governments try to develop it all the time.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- للرياضة أثر كبير فى محاربة مشــكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساســية لشــخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

....

....

....

27 **Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:**

- You bought a new TV, but it had a lot of problems after a week. Write to the company which sold it to you complaining and asking them to replace it for you. Your name is Ehab Ahmed Ibrahim. The company's e-mail address is: service@ted.eg.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALAWWA Gem

Revision Test 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the top-selling .... is Microsoft Office.
   a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable
2. This ointment is very strong and it will help .... the wound.
   a) heal b) cure c) treat d) spread
3. Gmail websites must check all mails for any .... before allowing upload and download.
   a) virus b) germ c) bacterium d) tumour
4. People living in town are not happy .... the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
   a) at b) with c) over d) in
5. I'll never .... Samy for what he did to my pet cat.
   a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
6. Strong measures are still needed to .... the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
   a) contain b) involve c) enclose d) include
7. Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.
   a) need to b) had to c) didn't have to d) mustn't
8. It's getting .... to find a good job.
   a) so more difficult b) more and more difficult
   c) more harder d) the most difficult
9. He .... on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
   a) will work b) works c) will have worked d) will be working
10. The information you sent .... have included details of courses taken at university.
    a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) may not
11. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He .... it.
    a) doesn't seem b) doesn't suppose c) wasn't meaning d) didn't mean
12. I would get up earlier, if there .... a good reason to.
    a) was b) have been c) is d) had been
13. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the .... cause of death among sea birds.
    a) more common b) common c) commonest d) commoner
14. Osama will be working in the garden while Hala ....
    a) will cook b) is cooking c) was cooking d) cooks
15. I asked two people the way to the station, but .... help me.
    a) either b) none c) neither d) both
16. I couldn't sleep .... very tired.
    a) although being b) in spite of being c) despite of being d) despite I was

ALAWAA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals *were the opposite of hers*. So Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how sally got her wish at last!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?
 a) Trees and nature. **b)** Food.
 c) Sportsmen. **d)** Animals.

18. The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means ....
 a) she was against owning a cat at home
 b) she liked animals more than her daughter
 c) she didn't like her daughter
 d) she didn't like to help her daughter

19. The word "................" is the antonym of "curled up".
 a) twisted **b)** bowed
 c) straight **d)** bent

20. What was Sally's wish?
 a) To wear clothes with animals on them. **b)** To have a cat as a pet.
 c) To visit the place where animals live. **d)** To make her mother love animals.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Why did Sally love to watch programs about animals?

....

....

....

22. Why did Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat?

....

....

....

AlAwa Gem

23 What do you think Sally heard when she was near the pavement?

....

....

....

24 What do you think happened to the cat?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this serious problem.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبة التطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

AL ADWAA Gem

Final Test 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flood .... great problems for the local farmers.
   a) reasoned b) applied c) caused d) shared
2. Bill Gates is one of the greatest .... of computer technology.
   a) poets b) editors c) explorers d) innovators
3. When we were young, our grandfather's stories .... us a lot.
   a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained
4. In time, the new students gained confidence and .... on with other classmates.
   a) went b) got c) came d) received
5. My mother has always remained .... to the values she learned as a child.
   a) useless b) unaffected c) faithful d) influenced
6. My father always advises us to be .... to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
   a) immune b) respiratory c) prohibited d) allowed
7. I .... see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
   a) needn't b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must
8. A Mercedes is one of the .... cars you can buy.
   a) more expensive b) expensive c) most expensive d) little expensive
9. My horoscope برج الحظ says that I .... an old friend this week.
   a) am going to meet b) am meeting c) meet d) will meet
10. The teacher wanted her students .... their homework before the new lesson.
    a) do b) to do c) doing d) to doing
11. Don't speak to the boss now. He .... to be angry about something.
    a) seems b) means c) is meant d) supposed
12. .... they had much time, they would have studied better.
    a) If b) Were c) Had d) Have
13. The youth conference in Sharm El-Sheikh .... next Saturday.
    a) ends b) are ending c) end d) will end
14. I chose this car as my favourite because it's .... all the ones I have driven.
    a) the fastest from b) the fastest of c) more faster than d) the fastest as
15. These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to ....
    a) take off b) take them off c) take off them d) take it off
16. I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything .... was true.
    a) what was said b) what they said c) that they said d) they say

ALADWAA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt. Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use *auditory* clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places.

People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. The clocks are used to measure the ....
   a) smaller units of time b) day
   c) month d) year
18. What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
   a) Why clocks are used.
   b) How sundials work.
   c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.
   d) What types of clocks have been invented.
19. The synonym of "melt" is ....
   a) dissolve b) harden
   c) solidify d) freeze
20. The word "*auditory*" most closely means ....
   a) related to machines b) related to numbers
   c) related to hearing d) related to the sun

B) Answer the following questions:

21. If it weren't for clocks, what would the world be like?

....

....

....

ALAWA Gem

22 How can airplanes depend on the clock?

....

....

....

23 How are mechanical clocks different from those before?

....

....

....

24 What do you think we will use to measure time in the future?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Hosting the African Cup of Nations in 2019 confirmed Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It was also a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة التى أكدت على دور المرأة وحقوقها مثل نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALADWAA Gem

Final Test 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our .... journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
   a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his .... at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
   a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There was .... and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
   a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based .... figures from six different cities.
   a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The title passes by .... from the queen to the eldest son.
   a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
6. The tumor in the patient's brain was surgically .... by a team of top surgeons.
   a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
7. Asmaa .... have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
   a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
8. Hossam has been working .... and harder since he graduated.
   a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
9. Look at these big black clouds! It ....
   a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
10. This medicine went bad. you .... have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
    a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
11. Why are you late? You .... to be here at 9 o'clock.
    a) seem b) were supposed c) seemed d) mean
12. If he should be late, we .... to go without him.
    a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
13. There are more accidents on this road because it's .... than the others.
    a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) the narrowest
14. Next year, no doubt, more people .... the competition as the prize money increases.
    a) will enter b) are going to enter c) are entering d) will be entering
15. Robert .... away two or three times a year.
    a) is going usually b) goes usually c) is usually going d) usually goes
16. We .... by a loud noise during the night.
    a) woke up b) are woken c) were woken up d) were waking up

AL-NOWA Gem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the ....

a) light b) reflection c) eye d) brain

18 How does light travel?

a) In black waves. b) In strange waves. c) In straight waves. d) In reflected waves.

19 We can see .... when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.

a) the mirror b) ourselves c) the light wave d) our eyes

20 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to ....

a) magnify, or make things larger

b) see ourselves through glasses

c) to see mountains in water

d) see things in the dark

B) Answer the following questions:

21 Why can we see objects?

....

....

....

22 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

....

....

....

ALAWAN Gem

23 Why doesn't a lake filled with people boating and swimming act like a mirror?

....

....

....

24 Which science specialises in studying light and reflection?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- يختلف الناس فى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته لكنهم جميعًـا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- Write a blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALNOWAA Gem

Final Test 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This report .... some of the problems faced by old people after retirement.
   a) perplexes b) denies c) lightens d) highlights
2. The new owners have changed the .... of the whole building.
   a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent
3. The child must be .... from his mother while she receives the radioactive treatment.
   a) united b) separated c) kept d) stayed
4. My little brother always refuses to .... his toys with any other child.
   a) share b) divide c) spill d) unite
5. I feel really .... about forgetting my wife's birthday again.
   a) shy b) guilty c) innocent d) proud
6. The old woman .... her husband by only a few years.
   a) kept b) dissolved c) called d) survived
7. I'd like to know who .... up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
   a) cleans b) does clean c) will be cleaning d) will have cleaned
8. This is a dangerous tour. Children .... accompanied by an adult.
   a) mustn't be b) needn't have been c) must d) must be
9. We .... wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
   a) must b) don't have to c) mustn't d) have to
10. The .... expensive holidays are often the best.
    a) less b) lesser c) little d) least
11. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow .... dry and sunny.
    a) is being b) will be being c) will be d) will have been
12. You may be older than me, but that doesn't .... you're cleverer.
    a) mean b) seem c) supposed d) meaning
13. Had I realised what you intended, I .... my permission.
    a) wouldn't give b) will give c) would not have given d) won't give
14. We could change the colour, I suppose. This is a/an ....
    a) ability b) request c) permission d) suggestion
15. Galal .... in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.
    a) lived b) has lived c) has been living d) is living
16. She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help ....
    a) laughing b) to laugh c) that she laughed d) laugh

ALMOASER Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seemed so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher. The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?
    a) She wrote books. b) She read books.
    c) She wrote compositions. d) She wrote novels.
18. Sara was called 'bookworm' because ....
    a) she kept worms in her books
    b) she liked worms
    c) she liked to read books about worms
    d) she loved to read
19. How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?
    a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) None.
20. The phrase 'sold like hotcakes' means ....
    a) the books were selling very well
    b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
    c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
    d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Why did the publisher want to publish Sara's work?

....
....
....

22. Why was Sara reluctant to write the novel at first?

....
....
....

ALWAN Gem

23 Find words from the passage that give the antonym of:

a) ashamed b) earlier

....

....

....

24 What do you think the role of the family and friends in the person's success?

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- مع تناقص مساحة الأرض الزراعية لاستخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

AL AWAM Gem

Final Test 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man .... a lot of weight when she was ill.
   a) missed b) lost c) won d) earned
2. The frozen-foods .... is in the back area of the shop.
   a) college b) centre c) section d) sale
3. The club provides a .... for people who share an interest in history.
   a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum
4. Egypt has always had a good .... with the neighbouring countries.
   a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel
5. The publishing company is giving .... a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
   a) into b) off c) on d) away
6. It is known that iron .... with water and air to produce rust.
   a) refers b) rejects c) reacts d) reforms
7. She .... drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
   a) has to b) had to c) must d) mustn't
8. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the ....
   a) more pretty b) most pretty c) prettiest d) pretty
9. They .... dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
   a) will be having b) will have c) are going to have d) have
10. Most teachers encourage their students .... harder.
    a) to work b) work c) working d) to working
11. When .... to take your next exams?
    a) supposed you b) you supposed c) you are supposed d) are you supposed
12. If she .... well in her exams, she will go to college in October.
    a) did b) does c) had done d) will do
13. Mr. Kareem .... early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
    a) is retiring b) will retire c) is going to retire d) will have retired
14. His results are not .... his colleague's.
    a) so good like b) to good like c) as good as d) so good than
15. I'm not going to bed yet. I'm not tired. If I .... to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.
    a) go b) went c) had gone d) am going
16. The police officer stopped us and asked us where ....
    a) were we going b) are we going c) we are going d) we were going

AL WAGem

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things.

There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs. They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall.

Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Dogs helped people go to America by ....
    - a) pulling sleds in the snow
    - b) helping with farming
    - c) helping find things
    - d) none of the previous answers
18. The best antonym for pet is ....
    - a) wild animal
    - b) domestic animal
    - c) large animal
    - d) friendly animal
19. A dog's fur is the dog's ....
    - a) nose
    - b) eyes
    - c) hair
    - d) ears
20. Straight hair is ....
    - a) curly
    - b) long
    - c) brown
    - d) not curly

B) Answer the following questions:

21. In what can all dogs do well?

....

....

....

22. How old was the oldest dog?

....

....

....

ONLINE Gem

23 Dogs are useful animals. Give evidence.

....

....

....

24 There are differences between dogs. Mention two.

....

....

....

25 **Translate into Arabic:**

Although the internet has become the most important means for information and knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It also helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

....

....

....

26 **Translate into English:**

- يســاعدنا تعلــم اللغات الأجنبيــة على فهم الاتجاهات العلميــة والثقافية الحديثة كما يمكننا مــن مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجــالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

....

....

....

27 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALAWAM Gem

Final Test 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by .... than by using force.
   a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuasive d) persuaded
2. The young architect is .... noises about starting his own business.
   a) making b) doing c) replying d) applying
3. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
   a) Dermatitis b) Hydroponics c) Astronomy d) Botany
4. Some archaeologists discovered some .... of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
   a) photos b) images c) accounts d) decryptions
5. The car agency was accused of .... the customer about the condition of the car.
   a) accepting b) awarding c) honouring d) deceiving
6. The ship was forced to change its main .... during the storm.
   a) road b) technique c) course d) coarse
7. Your flat has been robbed! This .... that you have to report to the police.
   a) seems b) means c) meant d) is meant
8. You .... come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
   a) have to b) needn't c) must d) mustn't
9. My dog is .... than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
   a) bigger b) the biggest c) big d) biggest
10. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She ....!
    a) is slipping b) will slip c) is going to slip d) slips
11. He .... by the time he was four.
    a) won't swim b) could swim c) should swim d) mustn't have swum
12. We .... at home if it hadn't rained.
    a) would stay b) would have stayed c) wouldn't have stayed d) won't stay
13. In the last few months, competition has become ....
    a) much tougher b) more tough c) more tougher d) much more tougher
14. **A:** Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? **B:** Okay. I .... you there.
    a) will be seeing b) see c) will have seen d) will see
15. There's somebody walking behind us. I think ....
    a) we are being followed b) we are following
    c) we are being following d) we are followed
16. I had no .... a place to stay. In fact it was surprisingly easy.
    a) trouble to find b) difficulty finding
    c) difficulty to find d) trouble find

ALAWMA Gem

PART 2

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A material is what something is made of. There are 5 basic materials. Most things are made metal, glass, wood, cloth and plastic. There are some other materials. But they are not used as much as these 5 materials.

Metal is very heavy. And it is very hard and strong. It usually feels cool when touched. We use metal to make forks, knives, keys and cars. We use it for these things because it is very strong.

Glass is very smooth. It feels cool to touch. It is not as heavy as metal. It is hard. But it is not strong. It breaks very easily! Then why do we use it? We use it because it is clear! You can see through glass! That's why we use it for windows and glasses.

Wood is lighter than metal and glass. It is not as strong as metal. But it is much stronger than glass. We use wood to make lots of things. Things made from wood are usually light and hard and strong. Chairs, pencils and tables are made from wood.

Cloth is very light. It is much lighter than wood. And it is very soft. We use cloth to make lots of things. For example, it is used to make clothing and blankets.

Plastic is also very light. But it is different from cloth. Sometimes it is soft. And sometimes it is hard. Plastic can be used to make thin plastic bags. These are light, soft, and strong. But plastic can also be used to make bicycle helmets. These are light, hard, and strong. A helmet and a bag seem different. But they are both made from plastic.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. Which sentence from the passage best describes the main idea?
 a) We use cloth to make lots of things. b) Metal is very heavy.
 c) There are 5 basic materials. d) A helmet and a bag seem different.

18. According to the passage, which of these things is a material?
 a) Chairs. b) Clothing. c) Windows. d) Wood.

19. According to the passage, how does glass feel?
 a) Smooth and cool. b) Warm and soft.
 c) Light and hard. d) Sharp and heavy.

20. In paragraph 4, the passage says, "Wood is lighter than metal and glass." What is the main purpose of this sentence?
 a) To explain something. b) To recommend something.
 c) To compare something. d) To demonstrate something.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. What are the five materials mentioned in the passage?

....

....

....

22. Which material would you use if you wanted to make something that was strong and very light?

....

....

....

ALAWA Gem

23 In this passage, we learn about 5 different materials. Which of these materials do you think is best? Why?

....

....

....

24 What materials are used if we want to make a wardrobe with a mirror in the middle?

....

....

....

25 Translate into Arabic:

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

....

....

....

26 Translate into English:

- يمثل العام الدراسي الجديد تحديًا كبيرًا في ظل استمرار جائحة فيروس كورونا حيث تفتح المدارس والجامعات أبوابها للطلاب مع اتخاذ كل الإجراءات اللازمة للوقاية من هذا المرض الخطير.

....

....

....

27 Write an e-mail of (180) words on the following topic:

Your friend has been using social media and neglecting social relationship with his friends and relatives. He regrets this and asks you to help him make up for it.
Your name is Wael and your e-mail address is: wael30@gmail.com.Your friend's name is Sameh and his e-mail address is: sameh100@yahoo.com.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALWAN Gem

Answers to

Final Revision & Tests

Booklet

Final Revision (1)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sustainable
2. a) celebrated
3. d) prepared
4. b) crops
5. c) infection
6. b) variety
7. a) traditional
8. d) perform
9. b) agriculture
10 c) out
11. d) innovations
12. a) react
13. a) severe
14. b) techniques
15. c) Livestock
16. d) occasion
17. d) production
18. c) together
19. b) served
20. a) amount
21. c) argument
22. d) available
23. a) bleeding
24. b) boosted
25. c) chemical
26. c) collaboration
27. d) efficiently
28. b) examination
29. c) extracts
30. a) Hydroponics
31. b) immune
32. d) injury
33. c) link
34. a) muscles
35. b) native
36. c) option
37. b) performance
38. d) persuasive
39. d) responsibilities
40. c) solution
41. a) do
42. c) down
43. c) effective
44. d) infection
45. b) tasty
46. a) around
47. b) gets
48. c) severe
49. b) reaction
50. d) take
51. b) place
52. c) productive
53. b) press
54. a) list
55. c) announcement
56. d) kit
57. a) sustainable
58. d) else
59. a) sign
60. c) make

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. Agriculture **2.** Nations **3.** hunger **4.** food **5.** member **6.** countries

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. types **2.** tasty **3.** dishes **4.** spicy **5.** serve **6.** menu

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. health **2.** situation **3.** infection **4.** effective **5.** hygiene **6.** rules

5 Choose the correct answer:

1. bleeding **2.** protective **3.** injured **4.** area **5.** remove **6.** bandage

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) doesn't have to
2. c) had to
3. a) didn't have to
4. d) must
5. a) had to
6. b) didn't have to
7. d) don't have to
8. d) mustn't
9. a) has to
10 c) had to
11. d) mustn't
12. b) don't need to
13. a) must
14. c) had to
15. b) needn't
16. a) mustn't
17. c) need to
18. d) have to
19. b) have to
20. A) mustn't
21. a) the least
22. c) most intelligent
23. d) the better
24. b) happier
25. c) most frightening
26. d) least expensive
27. a) as tall as
28. b) most inspiring
29. a) more nervous than
30. b) biggest
31. d) as modern as
32. c) most challenging
33. a) older than
34. c) more interesting
35. a) as tall as
36. d) more quickly
37. b) Less
38. a) fewer
39. c) harder
40. d) more
41. a) is going to fall
42. d) will be working
43. a) meets
44. c) will be doing
45. a) will be driving
46. d) are you going to do
47. b) will have
48. b) will be organising
49. c) are going to own
50. c) Will you be going
51. d) is going to hit
52. c) will be leaving
53. b) am having
54. a) opens
55. d) am going to make
56. c) is visiting
57. a) starts
58. c) is going to become
59. d) 'll be using
60. a) is leaving

2 Choose the correct answer :

1. has to **2.** had **3.** has to **4.** be followed **5.** must **6.** needn't

3 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives.

1. larger **2.** more modern **3.** younger **4.** friendliest **5.** wide **6.** cleanest

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. be **2.** will **3.** will **4.** ask **5.** am going to tell **6.** be having

King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) beauty
2. b) deceived
3. a) duty
4. d) away
5. b) guilty
6. a) inheritance
7. c) loyalty
8. d) title
9. b) trust
10. c) exited
11. b) The daughter who loves him best
12. a) More than health, beauty and riches
13. b) Give his kingdom to his two other daughters
14. a) That he has made a bad decision
15. b) The King of France
16. d) get his father's title and inheritance.
17. c) keep the king waiting when he needs something.
18. a) coldly
19. b) help the king
20. d) Goneril complained about his soldiers

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Student's own answer.

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) celebrated
2. a) traditional
3. a) reacted
4. c) wise
5. d) cell
6. b) out
7. b) mustn't
8. c) don't need to
9. d) had to
10. c) have to
11. c) the largest
12. b) the most important
13. d) the better
14. b) leaves
15. c) will be working
16. d) will increase

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a)one
18. b)The person's body temperature goes down
19. c) sleepy
20. d) certain brain activity.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. We shouldn't consume caffeine late in the day and we should reduce irregular or long daytime naps.
22. 1- Rapid 2- cycle
23. sleep helps you to function properly; sleep helps you to learn; sleep helps you to create new memories; sleep helps you concentrate; and sleep helps you respond quickly.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- With the continuous spread of COVID-19, the Ministry of Education resorted to drawing up/ designing a plan to combine school education with online learning so that students can go back to schools this year.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- إن السلام بين الأمم حيوى، فهو يعطى كل بلد الفرصة لتنفيذ خطط التنمية الخاصة بها، كما يوفر المال الذى ينفق على الحروب والأسلحة المدمرة/أسلحة الدمار.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) infection
2. b) techniques
3. c) together
4. a) foolish
5. b) electric
6. d) tell
7. c) don't have to
8. a) mustn't
9. d) needn't\ must
10. a) worst
11. d) the best
12. c) longer
13. a) more complex
14. c) is going to explode
15. d) will walk
16. b) will be sitting

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) A special water with chemicals poured onto it
18. a) The new recycled items are sold cheaper than the original ones.
19. c) factory
20. d) scientific

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Soda cans, magazines, cereal boxes, bottles of juice
22. Recycling allows items to continue their lives as something else.
23. Recycling reduces waste. Recycling saves energy.
24. 1- disappear 2- bin

25. Translate into English:

- It is said that literature and art are the mirror of society which reflects its civilization and values which develop over the ages. Therefore, the state pays attention to them and tries to provide the necessary support to develop them.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يجب أن نكون متفائلين ونفكر دائمًا فى الجوانب الجيدة فى حياتنا، فالتشاؤم هو عدو قاتل يهزم آمالنا ويعوق طموحاتنا.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) perform
2. a) severe
3. d) production
4. b) income
5. a) signs
6. c) space
7. c) need to
8. b) must
9. d) don't have to
10. a) as big as
11. b) friendlier
12. c) harder
13. d) leaves
14. a) is going to collapse
15. c) will phone
16. b) will be having

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) would have more money
18. a) money
19. c) good health
20. c) how much smoking costs the UK

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Smokers cost it money when they don't go to work, on wages that you don't get when you don't go to work, and on work lost at the company when you are sick. When they die, they stop paying taxes.
22. Fire started by cigarettes kills fifteen hundred people yearly and injures another four thousand.
23. 1- injure 2- value
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Many experts warn of the overuse of mobile phones because this will lead to serious social, psychological and health problems especially for children.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- بالإضافة إلى كونها مصدرًا للدخل القومى تقوى السياحة العلاقات بين أمم العالم، كما تساعد على نشر السلام والحب والتفاهم.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Final Revision (2)

Vocabulary Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) Abbreviations
2. a) banner
3. d) consulting
4. c) cookies
5. a) downloading
6. b) emoji
7. c) fire
8. d) frowned
9. b) innovator
10. c) misunderstand
11. a) pile
12. d) posted
13. c) reliable
14. b) sighed
15. a) subscribe
16. b) tone
17. d) updated
18. c) upgrade
19. b) views
20. a) beg
21. c) admitted
22. c) basic
23. d) forum
24. b) highlighted
25. c) install
26. a) comment
27. d) expression
28. b) headline
29. c) online
30. a) positive
31. b) procedure
32. c) recognizable
33. d) privacy
34. c) spread
35. b) symbol
36. a) version
37. c) donation
38. b) addicted
39. a) characters
40. d) experiences
41. a) change
42. b) with
43. c) influential
44. d) waste
45. a) memories
46. c) do
47. c) report
48. d) hanging
49. b) get
50. d) keep
51. b) collection
52. c) fallen
53. a) conference
54. b) fake
55. d) on
56. c) consultative
57. a) criticize
58. c) interest
59. a) effective
60. b) treatment

2 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. rise **2.** media **3.** abbreviations **4.** emojis **5.** linguists **6)** save

3 Fill in the gap with the suitable word:

1. post **2.** online **3.** download **4.** privacy **5.** passwords **6.** website

4 Choose the correct answer:

1. interests **2.** debate **3.** cons **4.** real **5.** close **6)** hang

Language Exercises

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) could see
2. b) should
3. c) could have bought
4. d) to buy
5. a) could
6. d) couldn't
7. a) shouldn't
8. b) not to open
9. d) could
10 c) to know
11. a) not to leave
12. b) could
13. c) could drive
14. d) to arrive
15. a) shouldn't
16. d) couldn't
17. b) not to spend
18. c) could play
19. a) could have helped
20. d) not to swim
21. b) seems
22. d) are supposed
23. a) are meant
24. c) seems
25. d) were supposed
26. c) were supposed
27. a) are meant
28. d) seems
29. b) is meant
30. d) seems
31. c) was I supposed
32. a) is meant
33. c) seem
34. b) is supposed
35. d) means
36. b) seems
37. a) is supposed
38. d) means
39. a) seem
40. c) forbidden
41. d) had been
42. c) were
43. a) is
44. b) in case of
45. d) Knew
46. c) would have joined
47. a) don't exercise
48. b) found
49. a) had
50. d) provided that
51. c) stay
52. d) didn't
53. b) on condition that
54. a) will have to
55. a) were
56. c) wouldn't
57. c) would have passed
58. d) feel
59. a) would happen
60. b) had phoned

2 Choose the correct answer :

1. supposed **2.** joined **3.** could **4.** had **5.** should **6.** being

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. seems **2.** supposed **3.** have **4.** seems **5.** to look **6.** meant

4 Fill in the gaps with the right forms of the adjectives.

1. weren't **2.** wouldn't know **3.** hadn't been

4. had posted **5.** wouldn't have done **6.** become

King Lear

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) apologize
2. a) disbelief
3. c) faithful
4. d) forgive
5. b) lightning
6. a) patience
7. d) plotting
8. c) pretended
9. a) sheltering
10. c) straw
11. d) To convince his father of Edgar's plot.
12. a) beggar
13. b) he was in his service.
14. c) half
15. d) Cordelia
16. a) To win his trust.

Answer the following critical Thinking questions:

Student's own answer.

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) download
2. b) emoji
3. c) tone
4. d) persuaded
5. b) formal
6. c) online
7. d) shouldn›t
8. a) are supposed
9. c) to leave
10. d) could
11. c) could have meant
12. a) seemed
13. b) gave
14. c) mean
15. b) could
16. d) will phone

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) winter is the best season of the year.
18. a) tilted away from the sun.
19. a) leaning
20. d) butterflies

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Squirrels and raccoons gather extra food in the fall so they have enough to eat during the

22. 1- Migrate 2- hibernate

23. You can ice skate, place ice hockey, or go fishing on a frozen pond or lake.

24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- The government is working on setting up/ building many youth centres and providing them with modern facilities to make it easier for them to practise sport and spend their free time usefully.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- للتليفزيون ببرامجه المتنوعة أثر كبير على عقول الناس فى كل مكان؛ لذا أصبح وسيلة هامة لتشكيل الرأى العام.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) frowned
2. d) post
3. b) sigh
4. c) upgrade
5. a) room
6. d) pile
7. c) were meant
8. b) to read
9. c) shouldn't
10. d) couldn't
11. b) seems
12. a) are not supposed
13. d) would watch
14. b) was meant
15. a) may rise
16. c) as long as

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) awake
18. c) terrifying
19. a) happy
20. d) clear

B) Answer the following questions:

21. 1- usher 2- miraculously
22. He was burly, kind and clever. He seems to have a lot of experience.
23. I think they felt a lot of pain.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Economists say that attracting foreign investments is one of the most important solutions of the economic problems which we suffer from. This urges the government to offer more facilities for investors.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- يختلف الأفراد فى قدرتهم على فهم الأفكار المعقدة والتأقلم بفاعلية للبيئة؛ ولذلك يجب أن يتم تعليمهم بطرق مختلفة.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) consult
2. c) fire
3. c) reliable
4. a) begging
5. b) spy
6. c) subscribed
7. d) to build
8. a) could
9. a) ought to
10. c) should
11. c) seems
12. b) is supposed
13. a) means
14. a) would send
15. c) has
16. c) would have got

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) voices
18. b) history and stories
19. c) animal tricksters
20. a) advanced

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It's part of their tradition.
22. A character who plays tricks and jokes on others.
23. If they honour the trickster, maybe it won't play tricks on them.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into English:

- Nowadays, teachers should keep up with the new methods of education and using modern technology which has become an important part of everyday life.

26. Translate into Arabic:

- تنفذ الحكومة الكثير من المشروعات الصناعية والزراعية فى صعيد مصر مما يؤدى إلى توفير فرص العمل للمواطنين هناك.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Practice Test

Test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) prepared
2. b) salty
3. c) perform
4. d) lungs
5. b) carols
6. a) highlight
7. d) don't have
8. b) will be talking
9. b) didn't have to
10. a) most popular
11. a) are not supposed
12. d) unless
13. b) couldn't have liked the food
14. a) to stay
15. c) will help
16. a) fewer

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) Nothing.
18. c) 1972.
19. a) Light.
20. c) be a sustainable food

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The plant produces oxygen, which also puts water into the air.
22. Scientists are interested in this experiment because they think we will be able to learn important lessons about using plants like this in space.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يتكون الجهاز المناعى من خلايا وأعضاء فى جسمنا تعمل معًا لتحمينا من العدوى والأمراض والجهاز المناعى يحافظ على صحتنا؛ لأن الناس الذين لديهم جهاز مناعى قوى يمرضون بدرجة أقل غالبًا.

26. Translate into English:

- Everybody makes mistakes, but most of us don't learn from their different mistakes. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all should acquire as the person who doesn't learn from his mistakes never succeeds.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) abbreviation
2. a) misunderstood
3. d) updated
4. a) mean
5. b) infection
6. c) crop
7. b) should have phoned
8. a) to open
9. c) had to
10. c) had passed
11. a) the best
12. a) to do
13. d) had apologised
14. b) Could
15. b) are going to increase
16. c) more difficult

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) He lived in a different country.
18. a) It seemed to be good.
19. b) The guidebook did not recommend them.
20. a) From an online guide.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Areas that had not been very interesting in 2003 became very interesting after they were improved.
22. The word "hazardous" in the text means dangerous or risky.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يمكن أن تستفيد من استخدام الإنترنت إذا كنت حريصًا، ولكن لا يجب أن تشارك كلمة السر الخاصة بك مع أى حد، فلو فعلت فسيكون قادرًا على الاطلاع على معلوماتك الخاصة.

26. Translate into English:

- The labour market and the international economy all over the world have been greatly affected by the Corona Pandemic. The daily labour was harmed and many jobs which can be done at home have emerged and online shopping has spread much.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) react
2. c) torch
3. a) apologise
4. c) pretended
5. b) posts
6. c) tone
7. a) mustn't
8. b) happier
9. c) will be driving
10. d) hadn't
11. a) seems
12. c) must have stolen
13. b) am going to paint
14. b) more
15. b) were
16. b) He is difficult to understand

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) be aware of
18. b) keeping in touch with
19. c) a new informal word in English
20. d) easier

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because people have used them in their daily lives.
22. It hasn't changed to make spelling easier.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يمر العالم بالكثير من الجائحات مثل كوفيد-١٩، لذلك يجب أن نتبع قواعد النظافة لتجنب الإصابة/العدوى بهذه الأمراض الخطيرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Home education is one of the ways with which students can learn and acquire knowledge with the help of teachers online. However, this lacks teamwork and don't develop skills.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Final Test

Test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) sign
2. d) amount
3. b) agriculture
4. a) linguist
5. c) reliable
6. d) races
7. b) mustn't
8. a) has to
9. d) seems
10. a) less
11. c) as
12. b) will be staying
13. a) to believe
14. d) Could
15. a) which
16. c) haven't had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) Doing a step-by-step process for studying the world.
18. c) making a final statement.
19. a) by making observations.
20. b) start

B) Answer the following questions:

21. They ask important questions and search for the answers. Sometimes they make amazing discoveries!
22. they are the experiment data
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- أجبر هجوم فيروس كورونا المعروف بكوفيد-١٩ الحكومات على فرض إجراءات احترازية صارمة؛ حيث قاموا بإغلاق المدارس والجامعات وأماكن الترفيه، كما قاموا بفرض حظر التجول.

26. Translate into English:

- Because of the big agricultural projects in Egypt in the last few years, Egypt's agricultural products exports to all world countries have greatly increased. This has contributed to the increase in the national income.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **b)** begged
2. **a)** kit
3. **c)** celebrate
4. **d)** sustainable
5. **b)** formal
6. **a)** wasted
7. **c)** had to
8. **d)** have to
9. **a)** spicier
10. **b)** hottest
11. **c)** won't be waiting
12. **a)** could
13. **c)** is supposed
14. **d)** had
15. **a)** I hope not.
16. **b)** do you

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **b)** properly and safely
18. **a)** have working brakes and lights.
19. **c)** accessible
20. **d)** Both A and B.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. we should not try to get on or off a bus while it is still moving. we must not fool around while in the bus.
22. we must look carefully left and right and cross only when it is safe to do so.
23. A suddenly lurch can send us knocking our heads against something hard.
24. I think if we use them carefully, we will be able to use them for a long time. If we use them carelessly, we will never be able to use them again.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن الغش وسيلة غير أمينة للحصول على النجاح؛ لذلك يتم اتخاذ إجراءات صارمة/ حازمة عن طريق وزارة التربية والتعليم لمنع الغش.

26. Translate into English:

- The crisis of the Novel Corona virus has shown the importance of cooperation between countries to solve the different problems that the world faces. Searching for a vaccine for this virus has become one of its important problems.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) download
2. c) fired
3. b) profile
4. b) severe
5. c) articles
6. a) livestock
7. a) didn't have to
8. b) needn't
9. d) simpler
10. b) will be having
11. c) am going to be
12. d) mean
13. a) gets
14. c) to visit
15. c) doing
16. a) Having found

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. c) the first climbers to reach the top of Mount Everest
18. d) ceremony for crowning a king or queen
19. a) in Asia
20. d) Edmund P. Hillary and Tenzig Norgay accomplished one of the greatest climbing

B) **Answer the following questions:**

21. No, we do not know the name of the first person to reach the top. They told reporters they reached the summit together as a team.
22. 1- ascent 2- failed
23. The student's own answer.
24. The student's own answer.

25. **Translate into Arabic:**

- تريح الموسيقى أعصابنا وتجدد طاقاتنا، كما تلهمنا بالشجاعة التى تملؤنا بالأمل وتعالج العقول وتريح الأرواح المضطربة.

26. **Translate into English:**

- Tourism has an important role in the economy of Egypt. It provides many job opportunities and it is the second earner of foreign currency which Egypt needs.

27. **Write an essay of about 180 words on:**

Student's own answer.

Test 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **d)** basic
2. **b)** spread
3. **c)** employers
4. **a)** scan
5. **c)** techniques
6. **d)** questionnaire
7. **b)** might have won
8. **c)** mustn't
9. **b)** as
10. **d)** will show
11. **a)** could
12. **d)** seem
13. **b)** Should he be
14. **c)** largest
15. **d)** not go
16. **d)** Canada or the United States

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **a)** The explorer's trick to be set free
18. **c)** an eclipse
19. **b)** astronomy
20. **d)** groaned

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The jungle people did not believe him. They laughed and poked sticks at him through the bars of the cage.
22. He knew that there was an eclipse and used it as a trick to be set free.
23. I think they were cruel people or they thought he was going to harm them. Or The student's answer
24. I think he was very clever to make the people give him what he wanted

25. Translate into Arabic:

- كثيــر مــن مدننا القديمة لا تناســب الحياة الحديثة، فهى تتكون من مجموعة متنوعة من المبانى والشــوارع الضيقة، وتمتلئ بعوادم البنزين والضوضاء التى تؤثر على حياة الناس.

26. Translate into English:

- Egypt is the gift of the Nile. Without it, Egypt would be a barren desert. Therefore/So, we should keep it and rationalize our consumption of water and this will help us face the crisis of the Renaissance Dam.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) variety
2. a) connected
3. d) install
4. b) mind
5. b) fire
6. a) privacy
7. d) needn't
8. c) most difficult
9. b) will play
10. a) to ride
11. d) is supposed
12. b) hadn't wasted
13. c) will be walking
14. d) would look
15. a) to going
16. c) such a long time

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) Three
18. a) All the writer's neighbours are bad.
19. b) Praising
20. d) the parents' management

B) Answer the following questions:

21. 1- intrude 2- acknowledgement
22. They walk straight past without noticing others. No one of them nod their head . They are not interested in knowing their neighbours.
23. The student's own answer.
24. The student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يصبح التعليم عبر الإنترنت أكثر شهرة؛ حيث يزيد عدد الناس الذين يستطيعون الدخول على الكمبيوتر والإنترنت، وكان الحل الوحيد للطلاب ليستكملوا دراستهم أثناء أزمة كوفيد١٩.

26. Translate into English:

- Science fiction and action movies achieve great profits all over the world because young people admire them whereas romantic movies has become at the bottom of the office box in many countries of the world.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) bleed
2. c) get
3. d) evidence
4. b) title
5. a) consult
6. b) character
7. d) don't have to
8. a) didn't have to
9. b) most exciting
10. d) reaches
11. c) could
12. b) means
13. c) will give
14. c) Had
15. c) to driving
16. a) enough money to go

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) work values
18. a) meeting a deadline
19. d) struggle
20. d) sickness

B) Answer the following questions:

21. They might accept jobs that don't fit their work values
22. people get nervous and make mistakes.
23. Skillful and cool
24. The student's opinion and giving reasons

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إحدى مشكلاتنا البيئية هى ارتفاع درجة حرارة الأرض، فالأمطار الغزيرة التى شاهدناها مؤخرًا هى تحذير للإنسان لكى يوقف تلويث الغلاف الجوى.

26. Translate into English:

- Egypt gives a great example of religious tolerance through the peaceful co-existence of Muslims and Christians which dates back to hundreds of years. It protected it from sectarian strife over the ages.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) piles
2. a) titles
3. c) stay
4. d) traditional
5. b) investing
6. c) advantage
7. a) needn't go
8. b) more tolerant
9. d) are you wearing
10. c) not to climb
11. c) seems
12. a) were I to know
13. b) the widest
14. a) will be playing
15. b) to reserve
16. b) since I last saw

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) she was violent.
18. a) I stopped breathing
19. b) did nothing
20. d) kind

B) Answer the following questions:

21. She is dressed in a dark dirty sari. She probably has not had a bath for years. Her hair is matted, teeth stained red with betel-nut and eyes blood-shot with the look of madness.
22. He isn't sure what she will do. Also she smells terrible up close.
23. The student's answer.
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يجب على كل الكائنات الحية أن تتعاون لتحقيق أهدافها. فالعمل الجماعى مع التسامح ضروريان لنجاح أى مشروع.

26. Translate into English:

- Whatever your future ambition is, you must/should work hard and patiently in order to achieve it. But remember that good planning also helps you with that.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Targeted
2. c) out
3. b) record
4. c) boosting
5. d) respect
6. a) rural
7. a) longer
8. b) have to
9. c) will be waiting
10. b) should
11. d) supposed
12. a) hadn't helped
13. b) most useful
14. b) leaves
15. c) come
16. d) a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) his childhood
18. a) Knowledgeable
19. d) the things that happened in a past time
20. c) hobby

B) Answer the following questions:

21. story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that he finds interesting.
22. Through reading, the person can avoid diseases. Also the person does not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the dangerous animals. He/ She can read all about them in a book.
23. 1- cope with 2- informed
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- فى الماضى كانت التجارة على نطاق صغير، لكن اليوم تطورت وزادت التجارة بشكل كبير حيث تنقل البضائع بسرعة وبأمان.

26. Translate into English:

- Many world countries suffer from the problem of refugees whom wars, fights and economic problems force to leave their countries looking for a better life.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) headlines
2. a) keep
3. d) improved
4. d) image
5. a) examination
6. c) attractive
7. b) had to
8. a) will have to
9. d) greater
10. c) will find
11. a) to talk
12. d) is meant
13. d) will you buy
14. b) would be
15. d) my sister's
16. a) as if I were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) end your life
18. a) the electrician
19. c) You may slip easily and become bedridden.
20. d) sweets

B) Answer the following questions:

21. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches it.
22. 1- electrocute 2- scald
23. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas-cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns.
24. Student's own answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- إن التربية/التعليم عملية يكتسب بها الناس المعرفة والمهارات والقيم، كما تساعد الناس أن يصبحوا أفرادًا نافعين فى المجتمع، وللآباء والمعلمين المسئولية الرئيسية للتعليم.

26. Translate into English:

- Despite their great benefits, social networking sites/social media sometimes causes the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) original
2. c) with
3. c) advertisers
4. a) memories
5. c) linked
6. b) course
7. d) had to
8. a) as
9. a) am going back
10. d) should
11. b) seems
12. c) could buy
13. c) delicious
14. d) will be working
15. a) A friend of mine
16. b) There must be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. c) will make humans jobless.
18. a) Computers and Robots
19. c) Smaller
20. b) Robots are mechanical people.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because they were huge.
22. Because computers cannot think or do things on their own.
23. 1- Costly 2- assemble
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- بالرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى، إلا أن هناك تصميمًا على التغلب عليها، ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموًا فى السنوات القادمة.

26. Translate into English:

- In addition to the marvelous scenery and moderate climate, Egypt has a lot of fascinating ancient and modern architectural works which attract visitors and tourists from all over the world.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) support
2. b) event
3. c) available
4. d) aim
5. d) plot
6. d) heating
7. c) had to
8. a) most enjoyable
9. b) begins
10. d) to read
11. c) is not supposed
12. b) hadn't gone
13. b) am not going to fail
14. d) as
15. d) none
16. c) since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) two
18. a) Indonesia
19. d) stealing
20. a) It is looked after by another female elephant

B) Answer the following questions:

21. The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
22. They live in herds and have the same diet.
23. 1- Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market.
    2- For domestic use, such as tourist attractions.
24. The student's answer.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال؛ لذلك تحاول الحكومات تطويره طوال الوقت.

26. Translate into English:

- Sports have a great effect on fighting different social problems such as crime and violence. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) application
2. a) heal
3. a) virus
4. b) with
5. d) forgive
6. a) contain
7. a) need to
8. b) more and more difficult
9. d) will be working
10. b) should
11. d) didn't mean
12. a) was
13. c) commonest
14. b) is cooking
15. c) neither
16. b) in spite of being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. d) Animals
18. a) She was against owning a cat at home.
19. c) Straight
20. b) To have a cat as a pet.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. It was because Sally loved animals.
22. Her mother didn't have a love for animals.
23. She heard a mewing sound
24. It was knocked down by a car.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشكلات التى تهدد العالم، وتسبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of life. Therefore/ So, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) caused
2. d) innovators
3. a) entertained
4. b) got
5. c) faithful
6. a) immune
7. d) must
8. c) most expensive
9. d) will meet
10. b) to do
11. a) seems
12. c) Had
13. a) ends
14. b) the fastest of
15. b) take them off
16. c) that they said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. a) smaller units of time
18. d) What types of clocks have been invented
19. a) dissolve
20. c) related to hearing

B) Answer the following questions:

21. I think it would be a mess.
22. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock
23. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- أكدت استضافة مصر لكأس الأمم الإفريقية عام ٢٠١٩ على دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا، كما كانت أيضـًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم أجمع.

26. Translate into English:

- The history of the feminist movement in Egypt is full of/ abundant with many great successful models who confirmed women's role and rights such as Nabwiya Musa and Aisha Abdel Rahman.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** two-week
2. **b)** arrival
3. **a)** algae
4. **c)** on
5. **a)** inheritance
6. **c)** extracted
7. **c)** has got to
8. **d)** harder
9. **b)** is going to rain
10. **c)** should
11. **b)** were supposed
12. **a)** will have
13. **c)** narrower
14. **a)** will enter
15. **d)** usually goes
16. **c)** were woken up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. **d)** brain
18. **c)** in straight waves
19. **b)** ourselves
20. **a)** magnify, or make things larger

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time.
22. They bounce directly back to our eyes.
23. because the surface must be smooth and still to create a reflection.
24. Physics

25. Translate into Arabic:

- لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة والوعي بالرعاية الصحية لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعي بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

26. Translate into English:

- People differ in the kind/type of food they prefer and the way it is cooked and even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for the delicious food and the high nutritional value.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) highlights
2. b) appearance
3. b) separated
4. a) share
5. b) guilty
6. d) survived
7. c) will be cleaning
8. d) must be
9. b) don't have to
10. d) least
11. c) will be
12. a) mean
13. c) would not have given
14. d) suggestion
15. a) lived
16. a) laughing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. b) She read books
18. d) she loved to read
19. d) none
20. a) the books were selling very well

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Because the publisher felt that Sara had the talent to write a novel.
22. Because she wasn't confident she could do it.
23. 1- proud 2- later
24. The student's answer

25. Translate into Arabic:

- للجميع فى المجتمع الحق بأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين، لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا البعض.

26. Translate into English:

- With the decrease of the area of agricultural land to be used for other purposes all over the world, it has become necessary for scientists to search for new ways to provide food for the increasing population.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) lost
2. c) section
3. d) forum
4. b) relationship
5. d) away
6. c) reacts
7. b) had to
8. c) prettiest
9. a) will be having
10. a) to work
11. d) are you supposed
12. b) does
13. c) is going to retire
14. c) as good as
15. b) went
16. d) we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

17. A) pulling sleds in the snow.
18. a) wild animal
19. C) hair
20. D) not curly.

B) Answer the following questions:

21. Hear and smell
22. 24 years old
23. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend." They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things.
24. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs.
    Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well.

25. Translate into Arabic:

- بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة إلا أن الإرهابيين يستخدمونه لنشر معتقداتهم الشريرة، كما يساعدهم أيضًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

26. Translate into English:

- Learning foreign languages help us understand the modern cultural and scientific trends. It also helps us keep up with the great progress in different scientific and technological ways.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

Test 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) persuasion
2. a) making
3. b) Hydroponics
4. b) images
5. d) deceiving
6. c) course
7. b) means
8. c) must
9. a) bigger
10. c) is going to slip
11. b) could swim
12. c) wouldn't have stayed
13. a) much tougher
14. d) will see
15. a) we are being followed
16. b) difficulty finding

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

17. C) They are wood, cloth, plastic, glass, and metal.
18. D) wood
19. A) smooth and cool
20. C) to compare something

B) **Answer the following questions:**

21. metal, glass, wood, cloth and plastic
22. wood
23. The student's answer
24. Wood and glass

25. Translate into Arabic:

- التفكير النقدى هو القدرة على التفكير وبعقلانية عما نفعل وما نعتقد، كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

26. Translate into English:

- The new school year represents/is a great challenge with the continuous spread of Corona Virus. Schools and universities open with all the precautionary measures to prevent this serious disease.

27. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Student's own answer.

AL ADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

طبقًا للتعديلات الوزارية

2021 - 2022

Final Tests

Final Test 1

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. ……………… advertising is those advertisements which appear to people out of their interest and activity on the Internet.
   a) Banner b) Commercial c) Amateur d) Targeted
2. Maher spent a lot of time listening to records and just hanging ……………… with some friends.
   a) on b) in c) out d) at
3. British Airways has a very good safety ……………… . Accidents are rare on their flights.
   a) prize b) record c) revision d) medal
4. The advertisement campaign has succeeded in ……………… sales of the new product.
   a) pulling b) depriving c) boosting d) discouraging
5. Hossam Hassan has gained much ……………… for his successful football career.
   a) disrespect b) rudeness c) affection d) respect
6. At the end of the 17th century, England was still ………………, depending mainly on agriculture.
   a) rural b) urban c) space d) spicy
7. Thanks to the efforts of the police, the terrorist ……………… was arrested.
   a) call b) ceiling c) calling d) cell
8. You can use this website in ……………… songs for free.
   a) downloading b) loading c) uploading d) overloading
9. It is really impolite to argue ……………… your parents. You shouldn't do this.
   a) at b) with c) about d) over
10. I like ……………… out with my old friend Samy. He has a great sense of humor.
    a) improving b) removing c) hurting d) hanging
11. The bigger the flat is, the ……………… time she takes to clean it.
    a) longer b) longest c) long d) more long
12. I often ……………… work at the weekend to get everything done.
    a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) didn't have to
13. I ……………… for my results all the next month.
    a) wait b) will wait c) will be waiting d) will be waited
14. Why did you leave the exam room? You ……………… have checked your answers more thoroughly.
    a) shouldn't b) should c) must d) oughtn't
15. I'm ……………… to give a conference in Cairo tomorrow, but I think I'm going down with flu.
    a) seemed b) suppose c) seem d) supposed
16. I would have been in bad trouble, if she ……………… me.
    a) hadn't helped b) weren't c) is d) will be

17. The mobile phone must be one of the .... inventions of all time.
 a) useful b) most useful c) less useful d) more useful
18. We have to hurry. The train .... in five minutes.
 a) has left b) leaves c) will have left d) won't leave
19. I didn't hear you .... You must have been very quiet.
 a) came b) to come c) come d) to coming
20. It took us quite a long time to get here. It was .... journey.
 a) three hours b) three hour c) a three-hours d) a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

My hobby is reading. I read story books, magazines, newspapers and any kind of material that I find interesting. This hobby got started when I was a little boy. I had always wanted my parents to read fairy tales and other stories to me. Soon they got fed up and tired of having to read to me continually. So as soon as I could, I learned to read. I started with simple ABC books. Soon I could read simple fairy tales and other stories. Now I read just about anything that is available.

Reading enables me to learn about so many things that I would otherwise not know. I learned about how people lived in bygone days of magic and mystery. I learned about the wonders of the world, space travel, human achievements, gigantic whales, tiny viruses and other fascinating things of our world.

The wonderful thing about reading is that I do not have to learn things the hard way. For example, I do not have to catch a disease to know that it can kill me. I know the danger so I can avoid it. Also, I do not have to go deep into the jungle to learn about the tiger. I can read all about it in a book.

Books provide the reader with so much information and facts. They have certainly helped me in my daily life. I am better equipped to cope with living. Otherwise, I would go about ignorantly learning things the hard way. So, I continue to read. Besides being more informed about the world, I also spend my time profitably. It is indeed a good hobby.

21. The writer has liked reading since ....
 a) his graduation b) his childhood
 c) his marriage d) his youth
22. Through reading, the person becomes ....
 a) knowledgeable b) available
 c) famous d) honourable
23. The word "bygone" means ....
 a) the things that will happen in the future
 b) the things that happen daily
 c) the things that will never happen
 d) the things that happened in a past time
24. In addition to helping the person to know many things, reading is a ....
 a) disaster b) responsibility
 c) hobby d) danger

25 The writer likes to read ....

a) stories
b) magazines
c) newspapers
d) all of the previous

26 Reading can help people medically because ....

a) readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
b) readers can avoid diseases by learning things the hard way
c) readers can avoid diseases through going to jungle
d) readers can catch diseases to know that they can kill

27 According to the passage, people can cope with living through ....

a) buying books
b) working abroad
c) reading about life facts
d) none of the previous

28 What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to?

a) Time.
b) Reading.
c) Books.
d) World.

29 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

The immune system is made up of special organs, cells and chemicals in our bodies. They work together to protect us from infections and diseases.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:**

3

الكل يخطئ، لكن لا يعرف معظمنا كيف يستفيد من أخطائه. إن ارتكاب الأخطاء لا يؤدى بالضرورة إلى نتائج سيئة فالتعلم من الأخطاء مهارة علينا جميعًا اكتسابها.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

6

- Your favourite social networking site.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 2

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The story of the president's visit dominated newspaper .... around the world.
 a) addresses b) headquarters c) headlines d) backlines
2. I couldn't .... in contact with many of my relatives when I moved to Sharm El Sheikh.
 a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay
3. She was told to go back to the doctor in two weeks if she hadn't ....
 a) proved b) approved c) disapproved d) improved
4. Most Arab young people have a/an .... of the USA as a very rich country.
 a) photo b) location c) site d) image
5. A specialist did a full heart .... for the patient before the operation.
 a) examination b) process c) intention d) surgery
6. Ahmed Helmy's films are popular because his ideas are .... to many people.
 a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted
7. All the tourists admired the .... of the beaches in Hurghada.
 a) stability b) rudeness c) beauty d) surprise
8. The restaurant owners were .... by a young man claiming to be the son of a millionaire.
 a) accepted b) deceived c) honoured d) awarded
9. Where do you have to put your hands when you .... CPR?
 a) prepare b) make c) perform d) act
10. Smoking is very bad for the respiratory system as it affects man's .... badly.
 a) muscle b) cell c) surface d) lungs
11. We .... have a ticket with your name on or we couldn't travel.
 a) have to b) had to c) must d) needn't
12. Employees .... accept the new conditions or they will be dismissed.
 a) will have to b) don't have to c) needn't d) can't
13. The higher the temperature, the .... the demand for ice cream.
 a) great b) greatest c) greatly d) greater
14. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I .... something nice in my wardrobe.
 a) find b) am going to find c) will find d) am finding
15. The presenter asked the writer .... about Shakespeare's early life.
 a) to talk b) to talking c) talking d) talk
16. A company's logo .... to help people easily identify its products.
 a) meant b) means c) meaning d) is meant
17. If you find the shoes that I have told you about, ... them?
 a) you will buy b) would you have bought
 c) would you buy d) will you buy

18 If we had a map, we .... able to get out of here.
a) shall be
b) would be
c) should have been
d) would have been

19 This isn't my book. It's ....
a) my sister
b) from my sister
c) of my sister's
d) my sister's

20 They are very kind to me. They treat me .... their own son.
a) as if I were
b) as if I would be
c) as if I had
d) as I am

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Our home is usually our favourite place to spend time in. However, many accidents occur at home. There are dangerous things in the house and we should be aware of them. Thus, we can avoid unnecessary pain or injury.

Electricity runs many of our home appliances. It is a very useful thing. It is also a very dangerous thing if used carelessly, for it can kill. Electrical sockets and power points are to be handled with utmost care. Young children should never be allowed to go near them. Unless we are very sure of what we are doing, repairs should only be done by a competent electrician. It is only too easy to get electrocuted. Old or faulty appliances should be discarded. If used, they are likely to start a fire somewhere or kill someone who touches them.

The kitchen has many dangerous things. Sharp knives can draw blood, mishandled gas cylinders can explode, hot water can scald and stoves can cause nasty burns. Flies and rats can contaminate food. Thus, the kitchen is not a place to be careless in. If we are careful and know how to handle things there, then the chance of an accident occurring is lessened.

The biggest danger in a bathroom is when the floor is slippery with water or soap. I have heard of many incidents of people, especially old folks, falling in the bathroom. Sometimes the fall is fatal. Often it leaves the victim bedridden. Utmost care is needed here.

Finally, the medicine cabinet should be inaccessible to young children. Dangerous drugs and pills can look like sweets to these young ones. If taken, the consequences can be disastrous. Other dangers do exist. It is up to us to watch out for them.

21 Although it is a very useful thing, electricity can ....
a) run factories
b) end your life
c) make you happy
d) darken your room

22 If there is something wrong with electricity at home, who should do the repairs?
a) The electrician.
b) The children.
c) The parents.
d) The neighbours.

23 Utmost care is needed in the bathroom as ....
a) there is much electricity in it
b) hot water can scald your skin
c) you may slip easily and become bedridden
d) fire can break out at any time

24 Young children may take dangerous drugs and pills thinking that they are ....
a) milk
b) medicine
c) fruit
d) sweets

25 Why should old or faulty appliances be discarded?

a) They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.
b) They may put out a fire somewhere or save somebody.
c) They are likely to get electrocuted somewhere or start a fire.
d) They can't start a fire somewhere or kill anybody.

26 What is the best title of the passage?

a) Car accidents
b) Home accidents
c) Kitchen accidents
d) Electricity accidents

27 The kitchen is considered a dangerous place as ....

a) it contains knifes
b) there is hot water
c) there are gas-cylinders
d) all of the previous

28 The synonym of the underlined word "contaminate" is ....

a) ripen
b) cook
c) pollute
d) eat

29 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

All over the world, a lot of people are interested in using different means of communication. These means enable them to do various tasks as quickly as they can.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:**

3

رغم فوائدها الكثيرة إلا أن مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى أحيانـًا تتسبب فى نشر الشائعات وخلق الفوضى فى المجتمع. لذلك يؤيد الكثيرون فرض الرقابة الحكومية عليها.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

6

- The role teachers can play in developing society.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 3

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. This furniture is still in its .... condition, so it is valuable.
   a) back b) original c) dispensing d) infecting
2. The government must now deal .... the problem of high unemployment.
   a) in b) at c) with d) of
3. Social media have attracted .... because of their increasing popularity.
   a) clerks b) consumers c) advertisers d) rivals
4. In this programme, old soldiers talk about their .... of the war.
   a) memories b) souvenirs c) memorials d) anniversaries
5. The two little sisters .... arms happily as they walked to school.
   a) wrapped b) contacted c) linked d) called
6. My brother is doing a .... in economics to have a promotion.
   a) journey b) course c) search d) grade
7. A .... is someone who teaches or studies languages.
   a) botanist b) chemist c) linguist d) psychiatrist
8. Owning a luxurious house does not .... mean that they were born into a wealthy family.
   a) necessarily b) uselessly c) dangerously d) properly
9. The students must finish the test within the .... of two hours, no more.
   a) location b) area c) space d) region
10. We should all be .... about the future of our country.
    a) positive b) negative c) affirmative d) affective
11. To get a cheap ticket, he .... book in advance.
    a) mustn't b) didn't have to c) needn't d) had to
12. She earns at least as much .... her brother, and probably more.
    a) as b) than c) more d) of
13. This is my last day here. I .... to England tomorrow.
    a) am going back b) go c) will be gone d) won't
14. The results were completely wrong. She .... have planned the experiment more carefully.
    a) must b) might c) shouldn't d) should
15. A lot of students can't answer the maths problem. It .... difficult.
    a) is meant b) seems c) is supposed d) is seemed
16. If I had another 5000 pounds, I .... a car.
    a) would have bought b) could have bought c) could buy d) will buy
17. That chocolate ice cream tastes ....
    a) deliciously b) more deliciously
    c) delicious d) the most deliciously

18. Samy has told us that he .... when we arrive at the station so we will have to get a taxi.
   a) is working   b) works   c) will work   d) will be working
19. I'm going to a wedding on Saturday. .... is getting married.
   a) A friend of mine   b) A friend of me   c) One my friends   d) A friend's
20. They live on a busy road. .... a lot of noise from the traffic.
   a) It must have had   b) There must be
   c) It must be   d) There must have

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Computers are machines that can help us in many ways. But they cannot think or do things on their own. Humans have to feed them with information and tell them what to do with it. They can save much time and work. For example, all the information and the office files can be stored in a computer's "memory".

The first computers were huge and costly. They filled up almost the whole floor of large offices. Later, because of the usefulness and demand for computers in business, scientists soon found ways to produce cheaper and smaller computers. They invented chips which made it possible to store more information in less space.

Today, computers are not only cheaper, but also more compact. They can just be placed on top of an ordinary writing table. They can even be carried from place to place easily. Computers are not only used in offices by companies, but they are also used at home, by families who can afford them.

Robots, on the other hand, are not mechanical people. They are only moving parts controlled by a computer. A robot can do the same work for twenty-four hours, and yet, it does not complain or get tired. In Japan and in some places in America, robots are used in factories to assemble cars. As computers become more common businesses and factories, people fear that one day computers and computer-controlled robots will put human workers out of work.

21. Humans fear that one day computers and robots ....
   a) are busier than humans
   b) are cleverer than humans
   c) will make humans jobless
   d) will make humans listen to certain noise
22. The best title for this passage would be ....
   a) Computers and Robots   b) Old and New Computers
   c) Robots are Security Guards   d) The Electronic Invention
23. Find a word in the passage that has the same meaning as more compact.
   a) Huge.   b) Cheaper.
   c) Smaller.   d) Costly.
24. Which of the following statements in NOT true?
   a) Robots are controlled by a computer.   b) Robots are mechanical people.
   c) Robots do not get tired of working.   d) Robots are used in factories in Japan.

25 The first computers filled up a room because ....

a) they could store a lot of information.
b) they were huge.
c) they were very expensive.
d) they were useful and demanded in business.

26 Humans have to feed the computers with information ....

a) so, computers cannot move or do things on their own.
b) because computers are able to think or do things on their own.
c) because computers can save much time and work.
d) because computers cannot think or do things on their own.

27 The underlined word "They" refers to ....

a) people
b) robots
c) computers
d) places

28 The computer was made smaller ....

a) because it became more expensive
b) because of the demand for it in business
c) because of globalization
d) because robots are small

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Despite the challenges the Egyptian economy is facing, there is determination to overcome them. The economy is expected to witness a growth in the following years.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يُعتبر التعليم فى المنزل إحدى الطرق التى يمكن للطلاب من خلالها التعلم واكتساب المعرفة بمساعدة المعلمين عبر الإنترنت. لذلك توفر الدولة كل سبل الدعم لتمكن الطلاب من المشاركة بفاعلية.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- A country or city you would like very much to visit.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 4

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

20

1. Kareem was thankful for his friends' .... during his health problems.
   a) support b) seduction c) neglect d) struggle
2. Egypt proved to be good at organising international sporting ....
   a) accidents b) events c) incidents d) processes
3. There's no room for more books – we've used up all the .... space.
   a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) proper
4. The Egyptian Food Bank's .... is to provide food for homeless people.
   a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim
5. A spy is someone who .... against his country and gives secrets to its enemy.
   a) innovates b) suspects c) plays d) plots
6. The discussions between the two men were simple, but they gradually started .... up and turning into a quarrel.
   a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating
7. Egypt .... its Victory Day on the enemy on the 6th of October.
   a) accepts b) rewards c) celebrates d) reports
8. The Nile is our most important .... water supply, so we should all try to keep it clean.
   a) believable b) noticeable c) avoidable d) sustainable
9. My new car is a better and more .... than my last one.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
10. I believe that people of the world can all work together, regardless of their .... and religions.
   a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races
11. To get there on time, I .... leave home by 8:30.
   a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) needn't
12. We had a great holiday. In fact, I think it was the .... I have ever had.
   a) most enjoyable b) more enjoyable c) enjoyable d) less enjoyable
13. Hurry up! The conference .... in 20 minutes.
   a) will be beginning b) begins c) won't begin d) has begun
14. Ali's mother taught him .... and encouraged him to become a doctor.
   a) read b) to reading c) reads d) to read
15. She .... to speak Italian in an English class.
   a) is supposed b) is meant c) is not supposed d) is not seemed
16. If we .... there, we would never have found what was happening.
   a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) haven't gone d) weren't
17. I studied a lot for the exam. I ....
   a) am not failing b) am not going to fail c) don't fail d) won't be failing

18. It's not .... beautiful a house as I'd imagined.
 a) much b) more c) the d) as
19. We couldn't buy anything because .... of the shops were open.
 a) all b) nothing c) no-one d) none
20. We watched TV all evening .... we didn't have anything better to do.
 a) because of b) while c) since d) when

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

The Asian elephant is another type of elephant found in the world, besides the African elephant. They share some similarities. Elephants are social creatures and live in herds. Asian elephants are normally found in countries like India, Indonesia, Malaysia and Myanmar. An adult Asian elephant stands at two to three metres and weighs approximately 5000 kilograms. At birth, it stands at around one metre and weighs approximately 100 kilograms. Like most humans, they give birth to a single baby at a time but the fetus stays much longer in the mother's womb compared to the human baby; 23 months! An Asian elephant has a life span of about 60 years. The diet of an Asian elephant is somewhat similar to African elephants. They feed mainly on vegetation, bark, fruits and flowers.

Living in a herd means that the baby elephant has a large group of adults to look after it, besides its own mother. An orphan elephant is often adopted by another female elephant. As the largest land animal in the world, an elephant requires about 150 kilograms of food and 75-95 litres of water a day. The largest threats to the Asian elephant are poaching and habitat loss. Their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market, so large-tusked males are in constant danger of being poached. Elephants are also captured alive for domestic use, such as tourist attractions.

21. There are .... types of elephants in the world.
 a) one b) two
 c) three d) many
22. The Asian elephant can be found in ....
 a) Indonesia b) America
 c) Australia d) Holland
23. The synonym of the word "poaching" is ....
 a) slaughtering b) immigrating
 c) killing d) stealing
24. What happens to an orphan elephant?
 a) It is looked after by another female elephant.
 b) It is abandoned.
 c) It is looked after by the whole herd.
 d) It is killed.
25. Elephant are similar to humans in terms of giving birth because ....
 a) the elephant stays little longer in the mother's womb
 b) the elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
 c) the elephant gives birth at the same weight.
 d) the elephant gives birth to one young at a life.

26 African and Asian elephants are similar because ....

a) they live in herds and have the same diet

b) they are captured alive for domestic use

c) they live in big families and have the same diet

d) their tusks are worth a lot of money

27 Elephants are captured alive because ....

a) their tusks are worth a lot of money on the black market

b) their tusks are sold in supermarkets

c) for domestic use, such as tourist attractions

d) both a and c

28 What is the best title for the passage?

a) Elephants benefits

b) Elephants lives

c) Elephants importance

d) Elephants description

29 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

School education plays an important role in shaping the character of children. So, the current government encourages continuous development attempts by the Ministry of Education.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:**

3

للألعاب الرياضية أثر كبير فى محاربة مشكلات المجتمع المختلفة مثل العنف والجريمة. كما يمكنها تعزيز المبادئ الأساسية لشخصية الأطفال بجانب فوائدها الصحية الكبيرة لكل الناس.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

6

- The role of charitable organisations in helping society.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 5

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. One of the top-selling .... is Microsoft Office.
   a) apply b) applications c) applied d) applicable
2. This ointment is very strong and it will help .... the wound.
   a) heal b) care c) treat d) spread
3. Gmail websites must check all mails for any .... before allowing upload and download.
   a) virus b) germ c) bacterium d) tumour
4. People living in town are not happy .... the decision to build the nearby nuclear power station.
   a) at b) with c) over d) in
5. I'll never .... Samy for what he did to my pet cat.
   a) comply b) forge c) forget d) forgive
6. Strong measures are still needed to .... the COVID-19 epidemic in many countries.
   a) contain b) involve c) enclose d) include
7. We all .... father not to drive in the storm, but he wouldn't listen to us.
   a) ordered b) begged c) attacked d) delayed
8. My grandmother always keeps a sewing .... in her handbag.
   a) kit b) tool c) device d) machine
9. The teacher asked students to cooperate together to .... a certain task.
   a) form b) reform c) perform d) inform
10. We are going to .... today because my father was promoted!
    a) compete b) complete c) celebrate d) construct
11. Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.
    a) need to b) had to c) didn't have to d) mustn't
12. It's getting .... to find a good job.
    a) so more difficult b) more and more difficult
    c) more harder d) the most difficult
13. He .... on the garden so we won't see him when we get home.
    a) will work b) works c) will have worked d) will be working
14. The information you sent .... have included details of courses taken at university.
    a) mustn't b) should c) shouldn't d) may not
15. Pay no attention to Samy's remarks. He .... to embarrass you.
    a) doesn't seem b) doesn't suppose c) wasn't meaning d) didn't mean
16. I would get up earlier, if there .... a good reason to.
    a) was b) have been c) is d) had been
17. Scientists claim that oil pollution is now the .... cause of death among sea birds.
    a) more common b) common c) commonest d) commoner

18 Osama will be working in the garden while Hala ....

a) will cook b) is cooking c) was cooking d) cooks

19 I asked two people the way to the station, but .... of them helped me.

a) either b) none c) neither d) both

20 I couldn't sleep .... very tired. I was working all day yesterday.

a) although being b) in spite of being c) despite of being d) despite I was

Read the following passage, then answer the questions: 8

Sally loved animals. All her favourite programs on television were about animals. The same goes for her school supplies and clothes. Her favourite animal was the cat. She had wanted to own a cat since she was eight years old. Unfortunately, her mother's feelings towards animals were the opposite of hers. So, Sally was forbidden to own a cat, but one day, something happened that helped Sally get her wish.

She was on her way to the shop across the street from her house. The traffic was quite heavy that day so she was extremely careful before crossing the road. When she got to the other side, she heard something and went over to the grassy area near the pavement. It was a kitten! It was badly injured and was lying here all curled up and looking very frightened. Sally gently picked it up and went home as quickly as she could.

She told her mother how sorry she felt for the kitten and begged her mother to let her look after it. Seeing how upset Sally was, her mother agreed. After a few weeks with the family, the kitten was soon loved by all and became Sally's pet. Even her mother loved the kitten. And that was how Sally got her wish at last!

21 What shape was on Sally's school supplies and clothes?

a) Trees and nature. b) Food.
c) Sportsmen. d) Animals.

22 The phrase "were the opposite of hers" means ....

a) she was against owning a cat at home
b) she liked animals more than her daughter
c) she didn't like her daughter
d) she didn't like to help her daughter

23 The word "..................." is the antonym of "curled up".

a) twisted b) bowed
c) straight d) bent

24 What was Sally's wish?

a) To wear clothes with animals on them. b) To have a cat as a pet.
c) To visit the place where animals live. d) To make her mother love animals.

25 Sally enjoyed watching programs about animals because ....

a) she was forbidden to own a cat
b) she loved T.V
c) she had wanted to own a cat
d) she loved animals

26 Sally's mother refuse to allow her to own a cat because ....

a) she didn't love wild animals
b) she loved wild animals
c) she didn't love pets
d) she feared from cats

27 Sally heard .... when she was near the pavement?

a) dog's sound
b) mewing sound
c) child's sound
d) baby's sound

28 What do you think happened to the cat according to the passage?

a) It was knocked down by a car.
b) It was knocked down by another animal.
c) It was left alone and looked very frightened.
d) It was sick.

29 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

Food shortage is one of the most serious problems threatening the world and causing starvation in many countries. All people should work hard to find solutions for this problem.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:**

3

لم يعد التعليم التقليدى مناسبًا للأجيال الجديدة ومواكبا للتطور المستمر فى جميع مجالات الحياة الحديثة. لذلك بدأت وزارة التربية والتعليم فى النظام الحديث للتعليم وخاصة فى المرحلة الثانوية.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

6

- A story of a man who conquered great difficulties to reach his ambition.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

NAJWA Gem

Final Test 6

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The flood .... great problems for the local farmers.
   a) reasoned b) applied c) caused d) shared
2. Bill Gates is one of the greatest .... of computer technology.
   a) poets b) editors c) explorers d) innovators
3. When we were young, our grandfather's stories .... us a lot.
   a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained
4. In time, the new students gained confidence and .... on with other classmates.
   a) went b) got c) came d) received
5. My mother has always remained .... to the values she learned as a child.
   a) useless b) unaffected c) faithful d) influenced
6. My father always advises us to be .... to the power of advertising and not to buy things which we don't need.
   a) immune b) respiratory c) prohibited d) allowed
7. The old man was walking up and down the room, which was a .... that he was worried.
   a) sign b) signal c) landmark d) note
8. We aren't used to eating .... a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
   a) inside b) down c) out d) across
9. The new hotel's 200 rooms come in a .... of sizes; single, double or suites.
   a) property b) variety c) difference d) site
10. The bird is easily .... because of its bright red feathers.
    a) available b) acceptable c) recognisable d) affectionate
11. I .... see the head teacher. I want to discuss something with him.
    a) needn't b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must
12. A Mercedes is one of the .... cars you can buy.
    a) more expensive b) expensive c) most expensive d) little expensive
13. I think I .... him at entrance B. I can't remember.
    a) will be meeting b) am meeting c) meet d) will meet
14. The teacher wanted her students .... their homework before the new lesson.
    a) do b) to do c) doing d) to doing
15. Don't speak to the boss now. He .... to be angry about something.
    a) seems b) means c) is meant d) supposed
16. .... they had much time, they would have studied better.
    a) If b) Were c) Had d) Have
17. The youth conference in Sharm El-Sheikh .... next Saturday.
    a) ends b) are ending c) end d) will end

Gem

18. I chose this car as my favourite because it's .... all the ones I have driven.
    a) the fastest from b) the fastest of c) more faster than d) the fastest as
19. These shoes are uncomfortable. I'm going to ....
    a) take off b) take them off c) take off them d) take it off
20. I didn't believe them at first, but in fact everything .... was true.
    a) what was said b) what they said c) that they said d) they say

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Clocks are used to measure and show the time. Clocks are used so that people can agree on the time. People use clocks to measure units of time that are shorter than natural units. Natural units are the day, the month, and the year.

The clock is a very old invention. Sundials were used in ancient times. Sundials work by measuring shadows that are cast by the sun. Candle clocks were used a very long time ago. Candle clocks work by measuring the time it takes for the wax to melt Hourglasses are similar to candle clocks because they also measure the time it takes for something to happen. Hourglasses work by measuring the time it takes for sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.

Mechanical clocks appeared in the 13th century in Europe. They work with a system of moving gears. The gears always move at the same speed. Pendulum clocks work with a swinging weight.

The swinging weight is called a pendulum. The pendulum makes the clock parts move. Now people typically use mechanical clocks or digital clocks. Digital clocks show numbers on a screen. The numbers represent the time. Some people use auditory clocks. Auditory clocks use language to tell the time aloud. Computers also use internal clocks in order to work properly.

Clocks are everywhere – in homes, schools, offices, and public places. People go to work and return home according to the clock. School days start and end according to the clock. Airplanes take off and land according to the clock. It is fun to imagine a world without clocks!

21. The clocks are used to measure the ....
    a) smaller units of time b) day
    c) month d) year
22. What is the main idea of the third paragraph?
    a) Why clocks are used.
    b) How sundials work.
    c) How hourglasses are similar to candle clocks.
    d) What types of clocks have been invented.
23. The synonym of "melt" is ....
    a) dissolve b) harden c) solidify d) freeze
24. The word "auditory" most closely means ....
    a) related to machines b) related to numbers
    c) related to hearing d) related to the sun
25. The writer believes that it would be a mess if ....
    a) there are a lot of clocks b) there are many kinds of clocks
    c) there weren't clocks d) clocks were bigger in size

26 Airplanes depend on the clock because ....
a) they take off according to the clock.
b) they land according to the clock.
c) they use clocks to book tickets
d) both a and b

27 Sundials are different from Candle clocks because they ....
a) work with a system of moving gears.
b) use the daylight.
c) use sand to pour through a small opening into a glass.
d) measure units of time that are shorter than natural

28 What is the main idea of the passage?
a) How different industries and jobs use clocks
b) The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance
c) The history of different kinds of clocks
d) The importance of specific kinds of clocks

29 **Translate into Arabic:** 3

Hosting the African Cup of Nations in 2019 confirmed Egypt's prominent role in Africa. It was also a chance to show our civilisation to the whole world.

....
....
....

30 **Translate into English:** 3

يزخر تاريخ الحركة النسائية فى مصر بالعديد من النماذج الناجحة الكبيرة. من هذه النماذج نبوية موسى وعائشة عبد الرحمن اللتان أكدتا على دور المرأة وحقوقها.

....
....
....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:** 6

- Some people think that life today is better than the past. State your opinion.

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Final Test 7

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent our .... journey in a youth hostel that was not expensive.
   a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'
2. Since his .... at the club, the coach has brought in several star players.
   a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived
3. There were .... and other seaweed growing on the top layer of the deserted lake.
   a) algae b) palm c) crop d) shrimp
4. The report is based .... figures from six different cities.
   a) at b) for c) on d) about
5. The title passes by .... from the queen to the eldest son.
   a) inheritance b) heritage c) loss d) act
6. The tumor in the patient's brain was surgically .... by a team of top surgeons.
   a) exerted b) tied c) extracted d) healed
7. If our son's illness .... any worse, we'll call the doctor or take him to hospital.
   a) falls b) gets c) turns d) devises
8. The young doctor is attending a three-day .... on new treatments of the virus.
   a) conference b) meeting c) interview d) appointment
9. The book is the product of a/an .... between two writers.
   a) examination b) coherence c) collaboration d) inspection
10. The storm caused .... damage to the farmer's house and garden which was destroyed.
    a) severe b) gentle c) high d) deep
11. Asmaa .... have at least eight hours' sleep a night.
    a) needn't b) doesn't have to c) has got to d) mustn't
12. Hossam has been working .... and harder since he graduated.
    a) hard b) hardest c) hardly d) harder
13. Look at these big black clouds! It ....
    a) will rain b) is going to rain c) rains d) is raining
14. This medicine went bad. You .... have kept it in a cool place as the label says.
    a) shouldn't b) must c) should d) mustn't
15. Why are you late? You .... to be here at 9 o'clock.
    a) seem b) were supposed c) seemed d) mean
16. If he is late, we .... to go without him.
    a) will have b) have c) would have had d) had
17. There are more accidents on this road because it's .... than the others.
    a) narrow b) more narrow c) narrower d) the narrowest

18 Next year, no doubt, more people .... the competition as the prize money increases.
a) will enter
b) are going to be entered
c) are entering
d) will be entering

19 Robert .... away two or three times a year.
a) is going usually
b) goes usually
c) is usually going
d) usually goes

20 We .... by a loud noise during the night.
a) woke up
b) are woken
c) were woken up
d) were waking up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Light from the sun or a light bulb moves in straight waves. When the light waves hit an object, they bounce off of it. This action is called reflection. For most objects, the light bounces in many directions at the same time. When this happens, it allows us to see the object. A picture of the object is sent to the brain from the eye. The brain helps us understand what we see.

Light waves also bounce when they hit a smooth, shiny surface. Hitting a surface like a mirror makes the light waves bounce directly back to your eyes. This movement allows you to see yourself. It creates a reflection. You see the objects around it instead of the mirror itself. Anything shiny may act like a mirror when the light hits it. Have you ever seen your face reflected in the rounded side of a pot or pan? You can even see reflections on the surface of water if it is smooth and still. You have probably seen beautiful pictures of mountain scenes. Often the mountains and sky are reflected on the smooth surface of the lake.

Water and glass have a special ability. They can refract, or bend, light. That's why a spoon in a clear glass of water will look bent when it really is not. The ability of glass to refract light has given us some useful products. Eyeglasses help us see clearly. Magnifying glasses enlarge our view of an object.

21 The thing that helps us understand what we see is the ....
a) light
b) reflection
c) eye
d) brain

22 How does light travel?
a) In black waves.
b) In strange waves.
c) In straight waves.
d) In reflected waves.

23 We can see .... when the light waves hit a surface like a mirror.
a) the mirror
b) ourselves
c) the light wave
d) our eyes

24 The ability to refract, or bend, light allows us to ....
a) magnify, or make things larger
b) see ourselves through glasses
c) to see mountains in water
d) see things in the dark

25 We see objects because ....
a) the light waves can hit them
b) they are smooth and have shiny surface
c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time
d) light moves in straight waves

26 How do light waves act when they hit a smooth or shiny surface?

a) They bounce directly back to our faces.
b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
c) They cause eye's illness.
d) They make light.

27 A lake filled with people boating and swimming doesn't act like a mirror because .... to create a reflection.

a) the surface must be smooth and still
b) the surface must be sharp and still
c) a picture of an object must be sent to the brain from the eye
d) anything shiny may act like a mirror

28 .... science specialises in studying light and reflection.

a) Chemistry b) Biology
c) Physics d) Sociology

29 Translate into Arabic:

3

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. So, it's the role of educated people to spread awareness about such health issues to face medical emergency.

....

....

....

30 Translate into English:

3

يختلـف النـاس فـى نوع الطعام الذى يفضلونه والطريقة التى يتم طهيه بها أو حتى مكوناته. إلا أنهم جميعـًا يتفقون فى البحث عن الطعم اللذيذ والقيمة الغذائية العالية.

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

6

- A blog post about the dangers of using social media unwisely.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 8

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This report .... some of the problems faced by old people after retirement.
   a) perplexes b) denies c) lightens d) highlights
2. The new owners have changed the .... of the whole building.
   a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent
3. The child must be .... from his mother while she receives the radioactive treatment.
   a) united b) separated c) kept d) stayed
4. My little brother always refuses to .... his toys with any other child.
   a) share b) divide c) spill d) unite
5. I feel really .... about forgetting my wife's birthday again. She must get upset.
   a) shy b) guilty c) innocent d) proud
6. The old woman .... her husband by only a few years. Their relation was an amazing one.
   a) kept b) dissolved c) called d) survived
7. The accident victim was .... from the wounds in her face and hands.
   a) bleeding b) paining c) relieving d) breeding
8. Major changes have taken .... in the Egyptian society in the last few years.
   a) part b) place c) apart d) down
9. We had a/an .... with the waiter about the bill as it was very high.
   a) fight b) treaty c) argument d) truce
10. You have to register to be able to post a/an .... in this website.
    a) comment b) mark c) emoji d) abbreviation
11. I'd like to know who .... up all the mess after the party because it is not going to be me.
    a) cleans b) does clean c) will be cleaning d) will have cleaned
12. This is a dangerous tour. Children .... accompanied by an adult.
    a) mustn't be b) needn't have been c) must d) must be
13. We .... wash these tomatoes. They've already been washed.
    a) must b) don't have to c) mustn't d) have to
14. The .... expensive holidays are often the best.
    a) less b) lesser c) little d) least
15. Here is the weather forecast. Tomorrow .... dry and sunny.
    a) is being b) will be being c) will be d) will have been
16. You may be older than me, but that doesn't .... you're cleverer.
    a) mean b) seem c) supposed d) meaning
17. Had I realised what you intended, I .... my permission.
    a) wouldn't give b) will give c) would not have given d) won't give

18 We could change the colour, I suppose. This is a/an ....

a) ability b) request c) permission d) suggestion

19 Galal .... in Assuit for ten years. Now he lives in Alexandria.

a) lived b) has lived c) has been living d) is living

20 She tried to be serious, but she couldn't help ....

a) laughing b) to laugh c) that she laughed d) laugh

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

Being an only child, there was not much that Sara could do when she was alone. Reading her books made her life seem so much more interesting. She read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'. Because of all the reading that she did, her grasp of the English language was so good that no one in her level could ever beat her at it.

Her teachers were all so proud of her. They especially enjoyed her compositions as she had a very good imagination and could write very well. One day, a surprise waited for Sara in school. Her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend of hers who was a book publisher.

The publisher was so impressed with Sara's writing that he offered Sara the chance to write her own novel. Sara wasn't so sure at first whether she had the talent to write a novel. But with her teacher's encouragement she agreed. A few months later, Sara's book was published and put on sale. They sold like hotcakes! Everyone was proud of her and Sara discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author.

Sara received a "pat on the back" from friends, family, or coworkers. She continued develop her style of writing and her own personal sense of pride and accomplishment.

21 What did Sara do to make her life more interesting?

a) She wrote books. b) She read books.
c) She wrote compositions. d) She wrote novels.

22 Sara was called 'bookworm' because ....

a) she kept worms in her books
b) she liked worms
c) she liked to read books about worms
d) she loved to read

23 How many brothers and sisters does Sara have?

a) One. b) Two. c) Three. d) None.

24 The phrase "sold like hotcakes" means ....

a) the books were selling very well
b) the books were sold together with hotcakes
c) the books were hot like cakes when sold
d) the books were sold near a bakery selling hotcakes

25 The publisher wanted to publish Sara's work because ....

a) she read so much that she earned the nickname 'bookworm'
b) she had a real talent in writing novel
c) she had no talent in writing short stories
d) her teachers were all so proud of her

26 Sara was reluctant to write the novel at first because ....

a) she was confident she could do it
b) she discovered that this was what she wanted to be an author
c) she wasn't confident she could do it
d) her teacher had shown some of her compositions to a friend

27 What is the best title of this passage?

a) Sara's life story. b) Publisher's story.
c) Sara's hobby. d) Sara's novel.

28 The writer believes that the role of the family is important because it ....

a) helps in decreasing their children's talents
b) helps in improving their children's talents
c) helps in changing their children's desires
d) helps in changing their children's minds

29 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

Everyone in society has the right to have their own opinions and beliefs. In civilised societies, there is no problem to be different from the others, but it's a must to respect each other.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:**

3

تناقصت مساحة الأرض الزراعية لاستخدامها فى أغراض أخرى فى كل أنحاء العالم. أصبح لزامًا على العلماء البحث عن طرق جديدة لتوفير الغذاء للعدد المتزايد من السكان.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

6

- The reasons why people travel abroad.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Final Test 9

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The young man .... a lot of weight when he was ill.
 a) missed b) lost c) won d) earned
2. The frozen-foods .... is in the back area of the shop.
 a) college b) centre c) section d) sale
3. The club provides a .... for people who share an interest in history.
 a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum
4. Egypt has always had a good .... with the neighbouring countries.
 a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel
5. The publishing company is giving .... a free diary with tomorrow's newspaper.
 a) into b) off c) on d) away
6. It is known that iron .... with water and air to produce rust.
 a) refers b) rejects c) reacts d) reforms
7. The teacher .... at the naughty student and asked him to sit down.
 a) smiled b) smelled c) signed d) frowned
8. More details about the new invention will be .... on the website tomorrow.
 a) passed b) delivered c) spread d) posted
9. The charity thanked the businessman for the generous .... to help the poor.
 a) request b) expense c) donation d) cost
10. The athlete was given the VIP .... after winning gold for her country at the Olympics.
 a) treat b) treatment c) treated d) treatable
11. She .... drink two cups of coffee in the morning before she felt really awake.
 a) has to b) had to c) must d) mustn't
12. She was not as intelligent as the others, but she was the ....
 a) more pretty b) most pretty c) prettiest d) pretty
13. They .... dinner at seven. It's best to call later.
 a) will be having b) will have c) are going to have d) have
14. Most teachers encourage their students .... harder.
 a) to work b) work c) working d) to working
15. When .... to take your next exams?
 a) supposed you b) you supposed c) you are supposed d) are you supposed
16. If she .... well in her exams, she will go to college in October.
 a) did b) does c) had done d) will do
17. Mr. Kareem .... early before he reaches 60. He mentioned it at the meeting recently.
 a) is retiring b) will be retiring c) is going to retire d) will have retired

18 His results are not .... his colleague's. He needs to study more.

a) so good like b) to good like c) as good as d) so good than

19 I'm not going to bed now. I'm not tired. If I .... to bed now, I wouldn't sleep.

a) go b) went c) had gone d) am going

20 The police officer stopped us and asked us where ....

a) were we going b) are we going c) we are going d) we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

There are wild dogs and pet dogs. Pet dogs are helpers and friends to people. There were no pet dogs 15,000 years ago. Men and women learned how to work with dogs. Dogs helped humans travel from Asia to North America 10,000 years ago by pulling sleds in the snow. People say dogs are "man's best friend".

They help with farming. They help with hunting. They help with fishing. They can pull things for people. They can help find things. There are many colours of dogs. There are white dogs, gray dogs, black dogs, and brown dogs. A dog's fur can be short or long. Dogs have curly hair or straight fur. There are very small dogs.

They are only 6-8 inches tall. There are very big dogs. They are about 3 feet tall. Some dogs can see well. Some dogs do not see very well. All dogs can hear well. They can hear sounds that people cannot hear. They can hear high sounds and low sounds. They can hear sound very far away. All dogs can smell very well. They can smell 40 times better than humans! Dogs live 5 to 13 years, but some dogs live much longer. One dog lived to be 24 years old!

21 Dogs helped people go to North America by ....

a) pulling sleds in the snow b) helping with farming
c) helping find things d) none of the previous answers

22 The best antonym for pet is ....

a) wild animal b) domestic animal
c) large animal d) friendly animal

23 A dog's fur is the dog's ....

a) nose b) eyes
c) hair d) ears

24 Straight hair is ....

a) curly b) long
c) brown d) not curly

25 According to the passage, all dogs do well in ....

a) hearing b) smelling
c) swimming d) both a and b

26 The age of the oldest dog reaches to ....

a) 24 years old b) 20 years old
c) 13 years old d) 15,000 years old

Gem WADIMA

27 Dogs are useful animals because ....

a) they have many colours

a) they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow

a) there are wild dogs and pet dogs

a) they can play and do nothing for men and women

28 The writer mentions that some dogs can't .... well

a) hear b) run

c) smell d) see

29 **Translate into Arabic:**

3

Although the internet becomes the most important means for knowledge, terrorists use it to spread their evil beliefs. It helps them find young people to enlist them for their violent actions.

....

....

....

30 **Translate into English:**

3

يســاعدنا تعلــم اللغات الأجنبية وخاصة اللغة الإنجليزية على فهم الاتجاهات العلمية والثقافيــة الحديثة. بالإضافة إلى أنه يمكننا من مواكبة التطور الكبير فى مجالات العلوم والتكنولوجيا المختلفة.

....

....

....

31 **Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:**

6

- The role of art in enhancing our social values.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

ALAWWA Gem

Final Test 10

40

20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We can achieve much by .... than by using force. This is the modern approach.
   a) persuade b) persuasion c) persuasive d) persuaded
2. The young architect is .... noises about starting his own business.
   a) making b) doing c) replying d) applying
3. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
   a) Dermatitis b) Hydroponics c) Astronomy d) Botany
4. Some archaeologists discovered some .... of deer and hunters dating back to prehistoric time on French cave walls.
   a) photos b) images c) accounts d) decryptions
5. The car agency was accused of .... the customer about the condition of the car.
   a) accepting b) awarding c) honouring d) deceiving
6. The ship was forced to change its main .... during the storm.
   a) road b) technique c) course d) coarse
7. It is believed that taking care of people's health will certainly lead to an increase of .... in all fields.
   a) invention b) consumption c) destruction d) production
8. Nurses are taught how to .... CPR as part of their first-aid course.
   a) do b) make c) design d) operate
9. I have read only some .... from the newspaper because I had no time.
   a) addresses b) experiments c) headlines d) extracts
10. Mona really .... wasting her time on that film; it was very boring.
    a) pleases b) affects c) regrets d) rejoices
11. Your flat has been robbed! This .... that you have to report to the police.
    a) seems b) means c) meant d) is meant
12. You .... come and visit us soon. It would be so nice to see you again.
    a) have to b) needn't c) must d) mustn't
13. My dog is .... than the other dogs in the neighbourhood.
    a) bigger b) the biggest c) big d) biggest
14. There is a banana skin lying just a few metres in front of her. Oh dear! She ....!
    a) is slipping b) will slip c) is going to slip d) slips
15. He .... by the time he was four.
    a) won't swim b) could swim
    c) should swim d) mustn't have swum
16. We .... at home if it hadn't rained.
    a) would stay b) would have stayed c) wouldn't have stayed d) won't stay

17 In the last few months, competition has become ....

a) much tougher
b) more tough
c) more tougher
d) much more tougher

18 A: Can we meet at 10:00 outside the station? B: Okay. I .... you there.

a) will be seeing
b) see
c) will have seen
d) will see

19 There's somebody walking behind us. I think ....

a) we are being followed
b) we are following
c) we are being following
d) we are followed

20 I had no .... a place to stay in. In fact, it was surprisingly easy.

a) trouble to find
b) difficulty finding
c) difficulty to find
d) trouble find

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

8

To : jim62@hrdtt.com
From : tdbusiness@hrdtt.com
Subject : A thank you message

Dear Mr. Jim Shaffer, on behalf of our entire team at our company, we would like to take this opportunity to thank you sincerely for taking out so much time and effort in meeting us last Monday. Our meeting was very enlightening and we all had a very good experience.

The meeting helped us to communicate and understand your company's goals and objectives. It also helped us a great deal to learn about the various kinds of development projects that are presently undergoing in your company.

We also hope that you liked our small presentation. We thank you sincerely for the business you brought to us. And I hope that we both reach great heights in the near future. Thanks for your help and support. We ensure that we will do our best to deliver outstanding results. As per the discussion, I have attached in this email a rough project plan for our next venture. Thank you once again for the wonderful meeting.

Yours sincerely,

Robert Spooner Senior Vice President

21 When did the team meet Mr. Jim?

a) next Monday
b) last Monday
c) last month
d) upcoming Monday

22 What does the underlined word "enlightening" mean?

a) useless
b) fruitless
c) fruitful
d) harmful

23 The outcome of the meeting is that the team became ....

a) able to communicate with each other
b) familiar with the marketing skills
c) familiar with development plans
d) aware with the goals of the company

24 The team prepared .... before the meeting to be shown.

a) a project plan
b) a small business
c) a small presentation
d) a meeting agenda

25 Which of the following is NOT mentioned in the email?

a) the time of the meeting
b) the attendees of the meeting
c) the purpose of the email
d) the time of the next meeting

26 The email contains ....

a) attached thank you letter
b) attached project plan
c) attached development plan
d) attached small presentation

27 The team promised to ....

a) meet Mr. Jim's expectation
b) to create outstanding venture
c) to achieve great results
d) both a and c

28 This email is a .... one.

a) formal
b) informal
c) direct
d) indirect

29 Translate into Arabic:

3

Critical thinking is the ability to think clearly and rationally about what to do or what to believe. It includes the ability to develop your own independent thinking.

....

....

....

30 Translate into English:

3

كانت مصر من أوائل الدول فى الشرق الأوسط التى وفرت لقاح كوفيد- ١٩ لمواطنيها. وقد عددت من مصادر الحصول على الأنواع المختلفة منه كما إنها وفرته بالمجان.

....

....

....

31 Write an essay of (180) words on the following topic:

6

- How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

AL ADWAA

Gem



English

الصف 2 الثانوى

إجابات نماذج اختبارات الفصل الدراسى الأول

2021 - 2022

Answers To Final Tests

Final Test (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) Targeted
2. c) out
3. b) record
4. c) boosting
5. d) respect
6. a) rural
7. d) cell
8. a) downloading
9. b) with
10. d) hanging
11. a) longer
12. b) have to
13. c) will be waiting
14. b) should
15. d) supposed
16. a) hadn't helped
17. b) most useful
18. b) leaves
19. c) come
20. d) a three-hour

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. b) his childhood
22. a) knowledgeable
23. d) the things that happened in a past time
24. c) hobby
25. d) all of the above
26. a) Readers can avoid diseases through reading about diseases
27. c) Reading about life facts
28. b) Reading

29. Translate into Arabic:

يتكون جهاز المناعة من أعضاء وخلايا ومواد كيميائية خاصة في أجسامنا. إنهم يعملون معًا لحمايتنا من العدوى والأمراض.

30. Translate into English:

Everyone makes mistakes, but most of us don't know how to benefit from their mistakes. Making mistakes does not necessarily lead to bad results. Learning from mistakes is a skill we all have to acquire.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) headlines
2. a) keep
3. d) improved
4. d) image
5. a) examination
6. c) attractive
7. c) beauty
8. b) deceived
9. c) perform
10. d) lungs
11. b) had to
12. a) will have to
13. d) greater
14. c) will find
15. a) to talk
16. d) is meant
17. d) will you buy
18. b) would be
19. d) my sister's
20. a) as if I were

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. b) end your life
22. a) the electrician
23. c) You may slip easily and become bedridden.
24. d) sweets
25. a) They are likely to set a fire somewhere or kill someone.
26. b) Home accidents
27. d) All of the previous
28. c) pollute

29. Translate into Arabic:

يهتم الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم باستخدام وسائل اتصال مختلفة. هذه الوسائل تمكنهم من القيام بمهام مختلفة بأسرع ما يمكن.

30. Translate into English:

Despite their great benefits, social networking sites/social media sometimes cause the spread of rumours and creating chaos in society. That's why, many people approve of imposing governmental observation on them.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) original
2. c) with
3. c) advertisers
4. a) memories
5. c) linked
6. b) course
7. c) linguist
8. a) necessarily
9. c) space
10. a) positive
11. d) had to
12. a) as
13. a) am going back
14. d) should
15. b) seems
16. c) could buy
17. c) delicious
18. d) will be working
19. a) A friend of mine
20. b) There must be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. c) will make humans jobless.
22. a) Computers and Robots
23. c) Smaller
24. b) Robots are mechanical people.
25. b) they were huge.
26. d) Because computers cannot think or do things on their own.
27. b) robots
28. b) because of the demand for it in business

29. Translate into Arabic:

بالرغم من التحديات التى يواجهها الاقتصاد المصرى فإن هناك تصميمًا على التغلب عليها ومن المتوقع أن يشهد الاقتصاد نموا فى السنوات القادمة.

30. Translate into English:

Homeschooling is one of the ways in which students can learn and gain knowledge with the help of online teachers, so the state provides all means of support to enable students to participate effectively.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **a)** support
2. **b)** events
3. **c)** available
4. **d)** aim
5. **d)** plots
6. **d)** heating
7. **c)** celebrates
8. **d)** sustainable
9. **c)** reliable
10. **d)** races
11. **c)** had to
12. **a)** most enjoyable
13. **b)** begins
14. **d)** to read
15. **c)** is not supposed
16. **b)** hadn't gone
17. **b)** am not going to fail
18. **d)** as
19. **d)** none
20. **c)** since

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. **b)** two
22. **a)** Indonesia
23. **c)** killing
24. **a)** It is looked after by another female elephant.
25. **b)** The elephant gives birth to one young at a time.
26. **a)** They live in herds and have the same diet.
27. **d)** Both a and c
28. **b)** Elephants lives

29. Translate into Arabic:

يلعب التعليم المدرسى دورًا هامـًا فى تشكيل شخصية الأطفال لذلك تحاول الحكومات تطويره طوال الوقت. تشجع الحكومة الحالية محاولات التطوير المستمرة التى تقوم بها وزارة التربية والتعليم.

30. Translate into English:

Sports have a great effect on fighting different social problems such as crime and violence. They can also reinforce the basic principles of the character of children in addition to their health benefits for all people.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) applications
2. a) heal
3. a) virus
4. b) with
5. d) forgive
6. c) enclose
7. b) begged
8. a) kit
9. c) perform
10. c) celebrate
11. a) need to
12. b) more and more difficult
13. d) will be working
14. b) should
15. d) didn't mean
16. a) was
17. c) commonest
18. b) is cooking
19. c) neither
20. b) in spite of being

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. d) Animals
22. a) She was against owning a cat at home.
23. c) Straight
24. b) To have a cat as a pet.
25. d) she loved animals
26. c) She didn't love pets.
27. b) mewing sound
28. a) It was knocked down by a car.

29. Translate into Arabic:

يعتبر نقص الغذاء أحد أخطر المشكلات التى تهدد العالم وتسبب المجاعة فى كثير من الدول، وعلى كل الناس أن يعملوا بجد ليجدوا حلولًا لهذه المشكلة الخطيرة.

30. Translate into English:

Traditional education is no longer suitable for the new generations and coping up with the continuous development in all fields of life. Therefore/So, the Ministry of Education started the new system of education especially for the secondary stage.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. c) caused
2. d) innovators
3. a) entertained
4. b) got
5. c) faithful
6. a) immune
7. a) sign
8. c) out
9. b) variety
10. c) recognisable
11. d) must
12. c) most expensive
13. d) will meet
14. b) to do
15. a) seems
16. c) Had
17. a) ends
18. b) the fastest of
19. b) take them off
20. c) that they said

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. a) smaller units of time
22. d) What types of clocks have been invented?
23. a) dissolve
24. c) related to hearing
25. c) there weren't clocks
26. d) both a and b
27. a) work with a system of moving gears.
28. b) The description of different kinds of clocks and their importance

29. Translate into Arabic:

أكدت استضافة مصر لكأس الأمم الإفريقية عام ٢٠١٩ على دور مصر البارز فى إفريقيا كما كانت أيضًا فرصة لإظهار حضارتنا للعالم أجمع.

30. Translate into English:

The history of the women's movement in Egypt is full of many successful models. Among these models are Nabawiya Musa and Aisha Abdul Rahman who emphasised the role of women and their rights.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. a) two-week
2. b) arrival
3. a) algae
4. c) on
5. a) inheritance
6. c) extracted
7. b) gets
8. a) conference
9. c) collaboration
10. a) severe
11. c) has got to
12. d) harder
13. b) is going to rain
14. c) should
15. b) were supposed
16. a) will have
17. c) narrower
18. a) will enter
19. d) usually goes
20. c) were woken up

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. d) brain
22. c) In straight waves
23. b) ourselves
24. a) magnify, or make things larger
25. c) light bounces off objects in many directions at the same time.
26. b) They bounce directly back to our eyes.
27. d) the surface must be smooth and still
28. c) Physics.

29. Translate into Arabic:

لا يمتلك الكثيرون المعرفة والوعي بالرعاية الصحية لذلك من دور المتعلمين أن يقوموا بنشر الوعي بهذه القضايا الصحية لمواجهة الطوارئ الطبية.

30. Translate into English:

People differ in the type of food they prefer, the way it is cooked, or even its ingredients. However, they all agree in the search for delicious taste and high nutritional value.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. d) highlights
2. b) appearance
3. b) separated
4. a) share
5. b) guilty
6. d) survived
7. a) bleeding
8. b) place
9. c) argument
10. a) comment
11. c) will be cleaning
12. d) must be
13. b) don't have to
14. d) least
15. c) will be
16. a) mean
17. c) would not have given
18. d) suggestion
19. a) lived
20. a) laughing

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. b) She read books
22. d) She loved to read
23. d) none
24. a) the books were selling very well
25. b) she had a real talent in writing novel
26. c) she wasn't confident she could do it.
27. d) Sara's novel
28. b) helps in improving their children's talents

29. Translate into Arabic:

لـكل فـرد فى المجتمع الحق بـأن يكون له آراؤه ومعتقداته الخاصة، ففى المجتمعات المتحضرة ليس هناك مشـكلة أن تكون مختلفًا عن الآخرين لكن من الضرورى أن نحترم بعضنا.

30. Translate into English:

The area of agricultural has decreased all over the world because it's used for other purposes. Scientists have to find new ways to feed the growing population.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) lost
2. c) section
3. d) forum
4. b) relationship
5. d) away
6. c) reacts
7. d) frowned
8. d) posted
9. c) donation
10. b) treatment
11. b) had to
12. c) prettiest
13. a) will be having
14. a) to work
15. d) are you supposed
16. b) does
17. c) is going to retire
18. c) as good as
19. b) went
20. d) we were going

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. a) pulling sleds in the snow
22. b) domestic animal
23. c) hair
24. d) not curly
25. d) both a and b
26. a) 24 years old
27. b) they helped humans travel by pulling sleds in the snow
28. d) see well.

29. Translate into Arabic:

بالرغم من أن الإنترنت أصبح أهم وسـيلة للمعلومات والمعرفة فإن الإرهابيين يسـتخدمونه لنشـر معتقداتهم الشريرة كما يساعدهم أيضـًا على الوصول للشباب وتجنيدهم لأفعالهم الشريرة.

30. Translate into English:

Learning foreign languages, especially English helps us understand modern scientific and cultural trends. In addition, it enables us to keep pace with the great development in the various fields of science and technology.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.

Final Test (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) persuasion
2. a) making
3. b) Hydroponics
4. b) images
5. d) deceiving
6. c) course
7. d) production
8. d) operate
9. c) headlines
10. c) regrets
11. b) means
12. c) must
13. a) bigger
14. c) is going to slip
15. b) could swim
16. c) wouldn't have stayed
17. a) much tougher
18. d) will see
19. a) we are being followed
20. b) difficulty finding

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

21. b) last Monday
22. c) fruitful
23. d) aware with the goals of the company
24. c) a small presentation
25. d) the time of the next meeting
26. b) attached project plan
27. d) both a and c
28. a) formal

29. Translate into Arabic:

التفكير النقدى هو القدرة على التفكير بعقلانية فيما نفعل وما نعتقد كما يشمل القدرة على تطوير تفكيرك المستقل.

30. Translate into English:

Egypt was one of the first countries in the Middle East to provide a COVID-19 vaccine to its citizens. There are many sources of obtaining different types of it, and it also provided it free of charge.

31. Write an essay of about 180 words on:

Students' own answer.